

Version
12

PDF Image Printer

User Guide

PEERNET Inc.

Copyright © 2021

Updated: 1/11/2021

Table of Contents

Welcome to PDF Image Printer	1
Legal Notices	2
Supported Operating Systems	4
Getting Help	5
What's New in Version 12	8
Licensing	10
Dashboard	12
Profile Manager	14
Printer Management	16
Driver Improvements	18
Adobe PDF	19
New Settings	20
Subscription License	28
Activating PDF Image Printer	30
Launching the License Wizard	32
Entering Your Serial Number	34
Manually Activating PDF Image Printer	38
Activation Status Results	43
Viewing Your Activation Status	45
Changing Your Activation Status	47
Renewing Your Annual Subscription	53
Edit Activation Details	58
One-Time License	59
Activating PDF Image Printer	60
Launching the License Wizard	62
Entering Your Serial Number	64
Manually Activating PDF Image Printer	68
Activation Status Results	73
Viewing Your Activation Status	75

Changing Your Activations Status	77
Save and Restore Settings	81
Export and Import Profiles	82
Backup and Restore All Settings	88
Basic Conversions	95
Create Adobe Searchable PDF Files	96
Create Non-Searchable PDF Files	102
Working with PDF Image Printer	108
Create a New Profile Settings File	111
View Your PDF File	116
Save Files Without Prompting	117
Change Output Type	122
Create a Serialized Sequence of Files	125
Change Where Files are Saved	133
Automatically Split Files	137
Reduce Searchable PDF File Size	142
Reduce Non-Searchable PDF File Size	149
Create Fax Format Files	157
Create a Custom Filename	162
With Custom Text	170
With Unique File ID (GUID)	173
With Date and Time	176
With Dynamic Output Folders	181
Set PDF Security Options	185
Set Document Information	190
Rotate Pages	193
Crop Page Margins or Areas	200
Trim Existing Margins	207
Adjust Page Brightness	211
Copy Page Contents to a New Page Size	216
Resize Images Using Resampling	221
Add Borders to Page	225

Add Watermark to Each Page	229
Text Stamp	230
Image Stamp	236
Page Numbering Stamp	241
Date and Time Stamp	248
Extract Text From the Created File	255
Using the Run Commands	259
Automatically View the Created File	260
Send Email when File Created	263
Compress Created File into ZIP	269
Working with Large Paper Size	274
Add a Custom Paper Form	275
Configure PDF Image Printer to Use a Custom Paper Size	288
Print Well Logs as One Continuous Image	292
Printer Management	296
Rename Printer	298
Change Default Profile	300
Create Copy of Printer	302
Add New Printer	304
Repair Missing Printer	306
Profile Manager	307
Save Options	313
Compression	321
Fax Mode	325
Filename Creator	329
PDF Options	341
PDF Security	345
Image Downsampling	348
Page Editing	350
Page Resizing	356
Document Information	364
Stamping	366
Text Extraction	375

Run Commands	378
Printer Overrides	381
Support Options	384
Profile Editor	387
PDF Image Printer Advanced Concepts	390
Installing the Printer Silently	391
Installing a Customized Printer	392
Automating the Printing Process	397
Using the PNSrv12 COM Object	398
Requirements and Prerequisites	399
Concepts and Terminology	401
What's New in PNSrv12Lib	404
Getting Started With PNSrv12Lib	408
PNSrv12Lib Object Reference	414
IPNSession	419
Initialization Methods	425
SetSessionPrinter	425
SetPrinterProfile	426
NewPrintSession	427
Job Tracking Methods	428
Reset	428
WaitForCompletion	429
Property Methods	430
GetProperty	430
SetProperty	430
SetCustomPaperOn	431
SetCustomPaperOptions	432
SetFaxModeOn	435
SetFaxOptions	435
SetHardwareMargins	439
SetImageCopyToOn	440
SetImageCopyToOptions	441
SetJPEGCompressionOptions	445
SetPageCropAreaOptions	446
SetPageBrightness	448
SetPageTrimOptions	449

SetPageRotationOptions	451
SetPageCropOn	452
SetPageCropMarginOptions	453
SetPDFCompressionOptions	455
SetPDFSecurity	458
SetPDFPassword	460
SetResamplingOptions	461
SetResamplingOn	464
SetSaveOptions	465
SetSaveOptionsOutputLocationAndOutputFileName	469
SetSaveOptionsOutputResolution	470
SetTextExtractionOn	471
SetTextExtractionOptions	472
SetTIFFAdvancedOptions	473
SetTIFFCompressionOptions	475
Properties	477
Jobs	477
TrackingOn	478
Events	478
OnCloseFile	478
OnEndJob	479
OnGetNextFileName	479
OnLogMessage	480
OnOpenFile	480
OnReportError	481
OnStartJob	481
IPNNextFileNameOptions	483
Properties	483
OutputFileName	483
OutputLocation	483
IPNPrintSession	485
Methods	486
Cancel	486
GetProperty	487
MakeSystemDefaultPrinter	487
Pause	488
Resume	488
WaitForJobsCompleted	489
WaitForJobsSpooled	489

WaitForJobsSpooling	490
WaitForJobsPrinted	491
Properties	492
PrinterName	492
PrintSessionGUID	493
IPNJobs Collection	494
Methods	494
Item	494
Properties	495
Count	495
IPNJob	496
Properties	498
AbortedBySystem	498
AbortedByUser	498
BytesPrinted	499
BytesSpooled	499
ConversionStatus	500
Document	500
Files	501
JobGUID	501
JobID	501
PagesPrinted	502
PagesSpooled	502
PrintSessionGUID	503
Session	503
Status	504
StatusMessage	505
SubmittedTime	505
UserName	506
IPNFiles Collection	507
Methods	507
Item	507
Properties	508
Count	508
IPNFile	509
Properties	509
Filename	509
Job	510
Session	510

Enumerations	511
pnBWCompressionMethod	511
pnColorCompressionMethod	511
pnColorReduction	513
pnDitheringMethod	514
pnFaxPageScaling	514
pnFaxPageScalingHAlign	515
pnFaxPageScalingVAlign	515
pnFaxPaperHeight	516
pnFaxPaperWidth	516
pnFaxProfile	516
pnFaxResolution	517
pnGrayscaleCompressionMethod	517
pnImageCopyScaling	519
pnImageCopyScalingHAlign	519
pnImageCopyScalingVAlign	520
pnIndexedCompressionMethod	520
pnOutputFileFormat	521
pnOverwriteActionWhenSaving	522
pnPDFContentEncodingMethod	523
pnPDFEncryption	523
pnPDFStandard	524
pnPrinterResolution	524
pnResampleUnits	525
pnRotation	525
pnTextEncoding	526
pnTextEOL	526
pnTextLayout	526
pnUnits	527
Using the Printer Script File	528
Migrating to Version 12	530
Built-In Script File Events	539
Using a Separate Script File For Each Printer	540
Printer Script File Settings	541
Save	542
Image Options	547
PDF File Format	552
PDF Security	556
Processing	559

Advanced Features	571
DevMode	578
EventNames	579

Welcome to PDF Image Printer

Thank you for choosing PDF Image Printer 12.

The PDF Image Printer is installed on your computer in the same manner as a hardware printer that creates paper copies. PDF Image Printer is based on the Microsoft® universal printer core, which is included with Windows. This ensures that PDF Image Printer will work with any Windows application that provides a print function.

Printing to the PDF Image Printer is the same as printing to any other printer driver. The difference is that PDF Image Printer creates searchable and non-searchable Adobe PDF files (*.pdf) and stores them on your computer instead of creating a paper copy.

This makes PDF Image Printer ideal for document imaging and electronic document delivery because you do not have to first print and scan hard copies. It also allows you to distribute your documents on a truly universal scale; virtually every computer includes software for viewing PDF files.

Legal Notices

PDF Image Printer 12

Copyright © 1999 - 2021 by PEERNET Inc. All rights reserved.

PEERNET is a registered trademark of PEERNET Incorporated. Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Adobe®, Acrobat®, and Acrobat Reader are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated. All other trademarks and registered trademarks are the properties of their respective holders.

PEERNET Inc.

18 Deakin Street
Suite 208
Ottawa, Ontario
K2E 8B7

Information in this document is accurate up to the time of publication, but does not necessarily reflect enhancements made to PEERNET Inc.'s products, which are released without notice. The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement. It is against the law to copy the software onto any medium, or to use the software for any purpose, except as specifically allowed in the license agreement. No part of this help system may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose other than the licensed operator's personal use, without the express written permission of PEERNET Inc.

Some of the tools and utilities associated with this application use OpenSource components. You can find the source code of their open source projects along with their respective license information in the links below. We acknowledge these developers and are grateful for their contributions to open source.

[MahApps Metro](#)

Project Code: <https://github.com/MahApps/MahApps.Metro>

Copyright © MahApps.Metro 2011-2018

License: (MIT)

<https://github.com/MahApps/MahApps.Metro/blob/develop/LICENSE>

MahApps.Metro.IconPacks

Project Code: <https://github.com/MahApps/MahApps.Metro.IconPacks>

Copyright © 2016-2019 MahApps, Jan Karger

License: (MIT)

<https://github.com/MahApps/MahApps.Metro.IconPacks/blob/develop/LICENSE>

Fluent Validation

Project Code: <https://github.com/FluentValidation/FluentValidation>

Copyright © 2008-2020 .NET Foundation, [Jeremy Skinner](#) and other contributors and is licensed under the [Apache2 license](#).

Prism

Project Code: <https://github.com/PrismLibrary/Prism>

Copyright © .NET Foundation

License: (MIT) <https://github.com/PrismLibrary/Prism/blob/master/LICENSE>

SharpConfig

Project Code: <https://github.com/cemdervis/SharpConfig>

Copyright © 2013-2020 Cemalettin Dervis

License: (MIT)

<https://github.com/cemdervis/SharpConfig/blob/master/LICENSE>

WPFLocalizeExtension

Project Code:

<https://github.com/XAMLMarkupExtensions/WPFLocalizationExtension>

Copyright © Copyright (c) 2011+ Bernhard Millauer, Uwe Mayer

License: (MIT)

<https://github.com/XAMLMarkupExtensions/WPFLocalizationExtension/blob/master/LICENSE>

Supported Operating Systems

Both 32-bit and 64-bit operating systems are supported where applicable.

- Microsoft® Windows 10
- Microsoft® Windows 8.1
- Microsoft® Windows 7
- Microsoft® Windows Server 2019
- Microsoft® Windows Server 2016
- Microsoft® Windows Server 2012 R2
- Microsoft® Windows Server 2012
- Microsoft® Windows Server 2008 R2

Getting Help

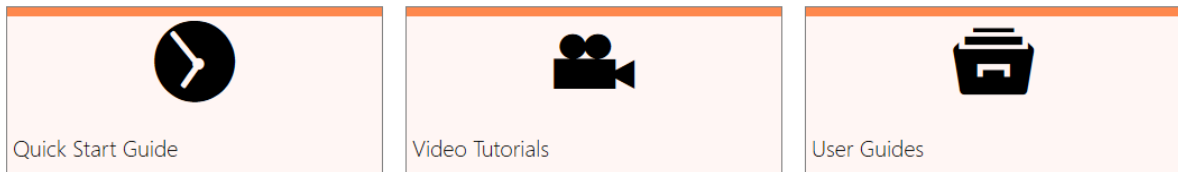
PEERNET offers a number of different help resources for PDF Image Printer. In addition to this user guide, you can also access video tutorials, how-to posts, FAQs, and the PEERNET support team.

This user guide contains information on all aspect of PDF Image Printer including:

- [Activating, re-use and renewing your Subscription License](#)
- [Activating a One-Time License](#)
- [Instructions to Save and Restore Settings](#)
- [Tutorials for Basic Conversions](#)
- [Step-by-step instructions for working with PDF Image Printer](#)
- [Technical information on using Printer Management](#)
- [Technical information on using Profile Manager](#)
- [PDF Image Printer Advanced Concepts](#)

▼ Accessing help resources

- Find quick links to help resources from the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**. Select either Quick Start Guide, Video Tutorials, or User Guide to launch whichever format of help resource best meets your needs.



- Alternatively, access help resources directly from the PEERNET website. Visit the PDF Image Printer Help Center for links the relevant *Tutorials*, *Guides*, *How-Tos*, and *FAQs*:
<https://www.peernet.com/conversion-software/print-to-pdf/help/>
- If you ever need help while using any part of the PDF Image Printer user interface, simply select the **question mark icon** from the menu bar to be taken directly to the section of the user guide that covers the part of the user interface that you working with.

▼ Video Tutorials

On the PEERNET website you will find a range of video tutorials covering topics like:

- getting started with PDF Image Printer,
- what's new to PDF Image Printer 12,
- step-by-step instructions for basic conversions,
- and tutorials on using **Profile Manager** to create personal profiles that enable and configure specific settings offered by PDF Image Printer.

▼ How-Tos

On the PEERNET website you will find a variety of how-to articles with step-by-step instructions on how to print to PDF Image Printer from a variety of common applications.

<https://www.peernet.com/conversion-software/print-to-pdf/how-tos/>

▼ FAQs

On the PEERNET website you will find a list of frequently asked questions covering all aspects of working with PDF Image Printer including installation, licensing, and operation.

Some of the most frequently asked questions for PDF Image Printer are:

- [How can I avoid being prompted every time I print with the Save As dialog?](#)
- [How do I Save and Restore settings?](#)
- [Why can I not see my AutoCAD paper sizes or why is the paper size incorrect?](#)
- [What version of the product is installed on my computer?](#)
- [Why do I get a black and white image when original document is in color?](#)

▼ **Contacting PEERNET Support Team**

Should you ever require any assistance with your PDF Image Printer do not hesitate to contact the PEERNET Support Team.

- Email the team directly at support@peernet.com
- Complete the contact form on our website:
<https://www.peernet.com/contact-inquiry/>
- Call the PEERNET offices at 1-800-883-7980 (North America) or 1-613-224-6894

The PEERNET support team is available from Monday to Friday from 8:00 AM EST to 5:00 PM excluding statutory holidays.

What's New in Version 12

PEERNET has sold a version of PDF Image Printer for the last 20 years, yet the release of PDF Image Printer 12 marks one of the most dramatic overhauls to how the virtual printer operates behind the scenes and to how the user interact with the virtual printer. PDF Image Printer 12 includes a wide range of major improvements and new features. Some that users have been asking for, and others that we've been planning for awhile and we hope will be a welcomed surprise.

PDF Image Printer now includes a user interface that is modern, clean and easy-to-use. There is a **Dashboard**, which is the hub for PDF Image Printer where users can edit their conversion settings, manage their printers and access licensing tools. In addition, the Dashboard provides quick access help and resources. With PDF Image Printer 12 we've introduced the concept of Profiles, which are a group of settings used to create the output file you want. These can be created and edited through our brand new [Profile Manager](#) interface. When created or editing a Profile within **Profile Manager**, users will have access to all output settings available in previous versions of PDF Image Printer as well as newly added features such as filename creation, stamping, and document information. Another brand new utility with PDF Image Printer 12 is [Printer Management](#), which allows users to copy, create, delete, and rename instances of PDF Image Printer without having to work with the Devices and Printers menu.

In addition to all of these front end additions, PDF Image Printer 12 includes major driver improvements. Perhaps the most significant improvement is that PDF Image Printer can now produce both searchable and non-searchable PDF files. The ability to create Adobe PDF files has been long requested and we are pleased to be able to include this feature in PDF Image Printer 12.

Existing PDF Image Printer users

If you are upgrading from an earlier version of PDF Image Printer this chapter will help you to understand the new features and changes that have been made to PDF Image Printer. These changes will make working with PDF Image Printer more accessible and efficient, but if you need assistance re-creating your printer settings once you upgrade to PDF Image Printer 12 do not hesitate to reach out to the PEERNET team. We hope you enjoy the new version and we are here to answer any questions about the changes that you may have.

New PDF Image Printer users

If you are a new PDF Image Printer user, we recommend getting started with our [Basic Conversions](#) chapter. The tutorials in that chapter will walk you through the basic instructions on how to create a Adobe Searchable PDF or Non-Searchable PDF using the system profiles that we provide with PDF Image Printer. Subsequently, we recommend reviewing our [Working with PDF Image Printer](#) chapter for step-by-step instructions on how to create personal profiles that enable and configure specific settings offered by PDF Image Printer.

Licensing

New Subscription License

Since our software company began in 1997, PEERNET has been using the same traditional software licensing system for PDF Image Printer, based on the old world of software distribution. With PDF Image Printer 12, PEERNET is entering the new world of software sales and will now be offering the software as a service system (Saas).

Much like your music or televisions streaming service subscription, a subscription license of PDF Image Printer gives your complete access to all features of the software for the period that your subscription is active.

With a subscription license, users can:

- activate and use PDF Image Printer up to the limit of number of licenses purchased
- move the software to a new computer or re-load the software after a computer crash or operating system upgrade, either through your PEERNET online account or by contacting PEERNET
- access all updates and upgrades released for PDF Image Printer free of charge
- rely on priority technical support from the PEERNET team

Existing PDF Image Printer users

Existing PDF Image Printer users with an **active On-Going Licensing and Support subscription** will have access to their upgrade to PDF Image Printer 12 free of charge, and will automatically be switched to a subscription license. As part of this transition, PEERNET will carry over your current On-Going Licensing and Support subscription annual renewal rate to your new PDF Image Printer 12 license.

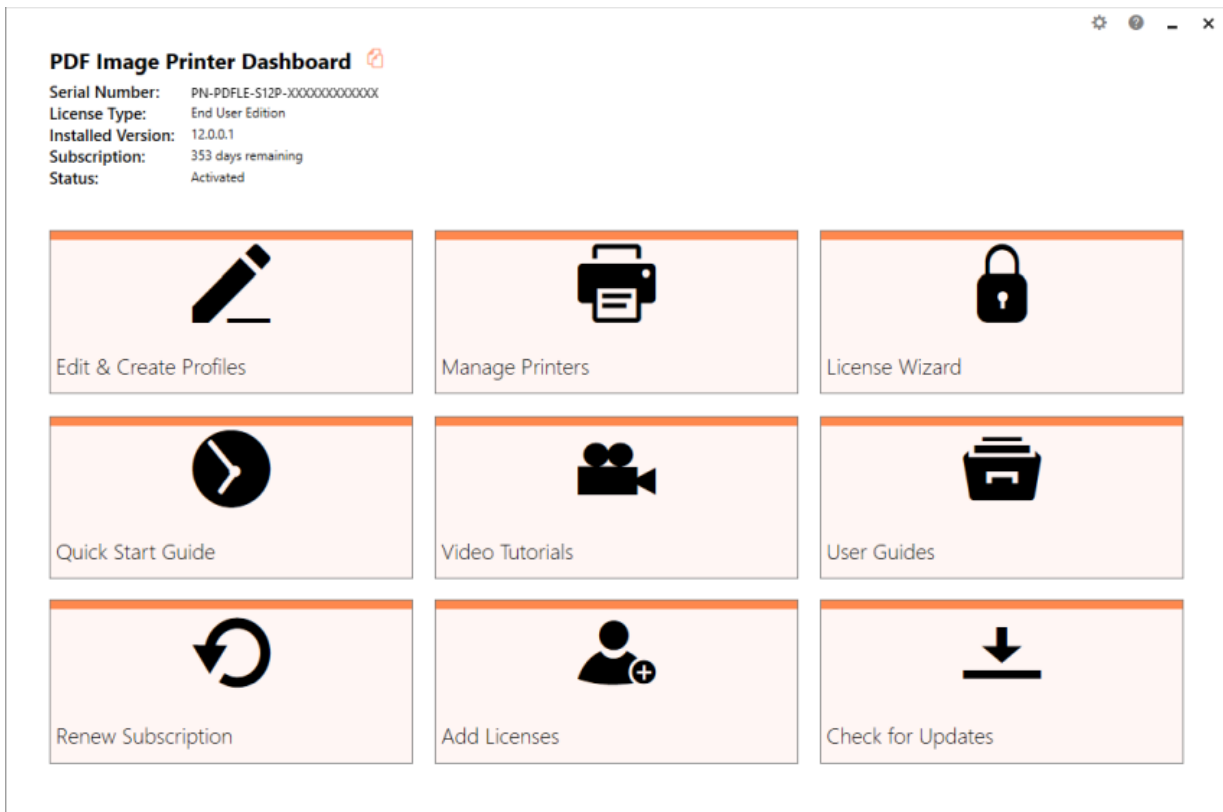
Not interested in a subscription license? Prefer traditional software licensing?

For those user who prefer traditional software licensing, PEERNET will still be selling a one-time license of PDF Image Printer 12 which is designed to run like a classic software license. A one-time license gives users access to a perpetual activation of PDF Image Printer 12 up to the limit of number of

licenses purchased. This is a classic software license meaning that you can go on using any license you purchase for as long as you like, but once a license is consumed it can never be moved/transferred to a new computer or re-used after an operating system upgrade, computer crash or reformatting (any action that would change the computer identity).

Dashboard

The **Dashboard** is a hub for all things PDF Image Printer with links to edit and create profiles, manage printers, activate the product, help resources, and more. The purpose of the **Dashboard** is to bring all tools and resources related to PDF Image Printer into one place. This will make it easier for users to find and change their output settings, edit their printer name, and access our many forms of help resources.



The available tools and resources that can be launched from the **Dashboard** are:

- **Profile Manager** - Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to launch the **Profile Manager** utility. This is where you can review and change all output settings available with PDF Image Printer.
- **Printer Management** - Select "Manage Printers" to launch the **Printer Management** utility. This is where you can duplicate the printer, rename the printer, and/or assign a specific profile to the printer.

- **License Wizard** - Depending on the **Status** of your license the text on this tile will vary, but regardless select this tile to launch the **License Wizard**. This is where you can do things like activate your product, change your serial number, or manage your licenses.
- **Quick Start Guide** - Select this tile to launch our PDF Image Printer quick start guide, which will walk you through your first print to PDF Image Printer.
- **Video Tutorials** - Select this tile to launch the PDF Image Printer video tutorial page on the PEERNET website, which offers a range of tutorial videos from basic to advanced on using PDF Image Printer.
- **User Guides** - Select this tile to launch the PDF Image Printer user guide.
- **Renew Subscription** - Select this tile to log into your PEERNET online account where you can renew your annual subscription.
- **Add Licenses** - Select this tile to log into your PEERNET online account where you can purchase additional licenses of PDF Image Printer on the same serial number.
- **Check for Updates** - This tile will notify you when there is an update pending for download and install.

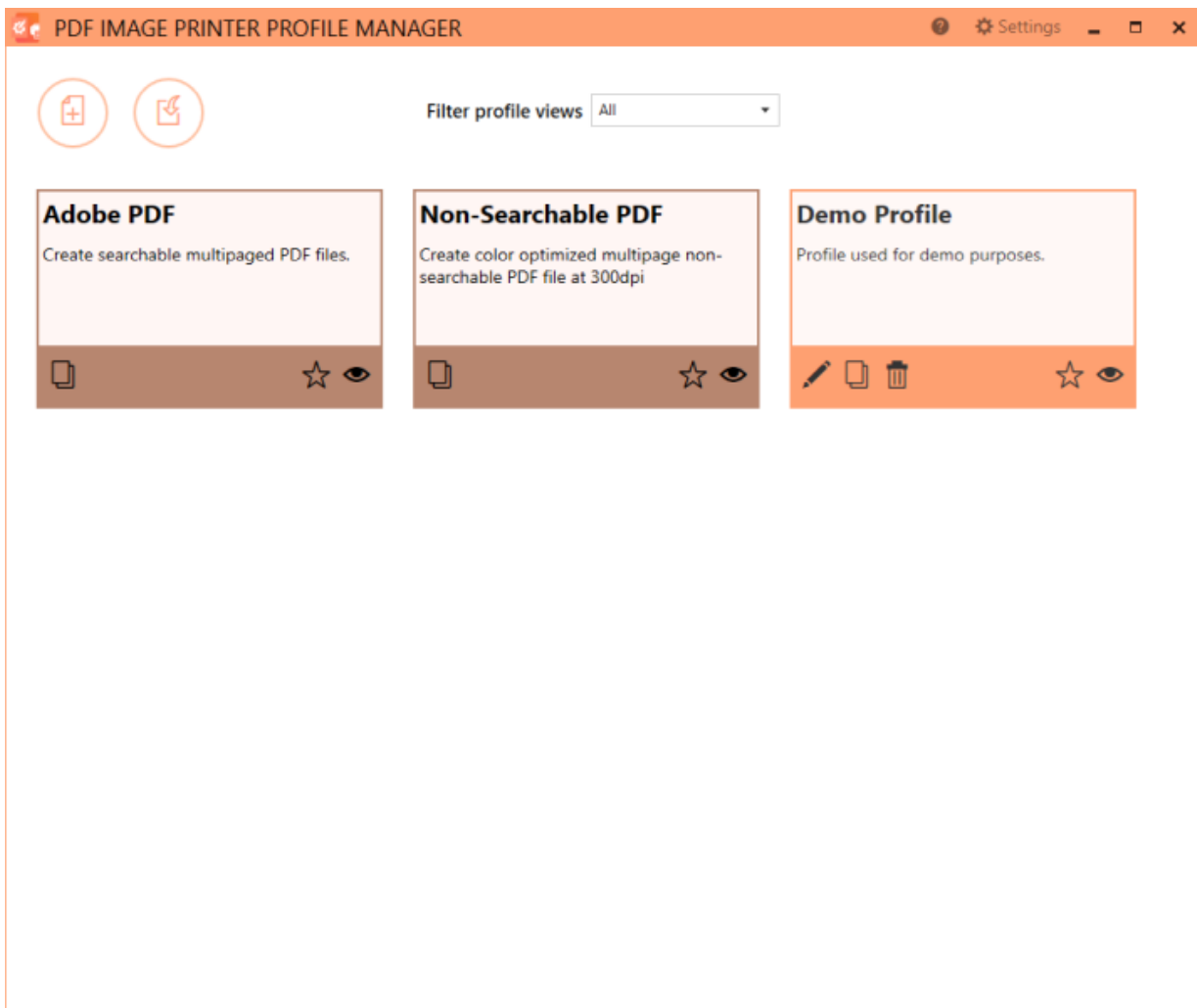
The **Dashboard** is also used to store all the status information about your license. Once you have activated your purchased copy of the software, you will find the following information in the top left-hand corner of the **Dashboard**:

- **Serial Number**
- **License Type** - ex. End User Edition
- **Installed Version**
- **Subscription** - number of days remaining in your current subscription
- **Status** - the status of your license on this computer

**Note the Dashboard may look different if you are running a one-time license as you do not have access to all PDF Image Printer features.*

Profile Manager

Profile Manager is a user friendly interface for editing and creating profiles. With PDF Image Printer 12 we've introduced the concept of Profiles, which are a group of settings used to create the output file you want. The purpose of Profile Manager is to provide an interface through which users can review all available settings and features, and easily disable/enable and configure output settings as desired. This will make it easier for users to find and change their output settings, utilize more than one profile (group of settings), and share their settings with colleagues.



Launch **Profile Manager** from the **Dashboard** by selecting "Edit & Create Profiles". On launch, you will see all of the existing profiles. If PDF Image Printer has just been installed, only the system profiles that come with the printer will be visible. System profiles are a darker color and cannot be

edited, while personal profiles are a lighter color and are yours to edit as you wish.

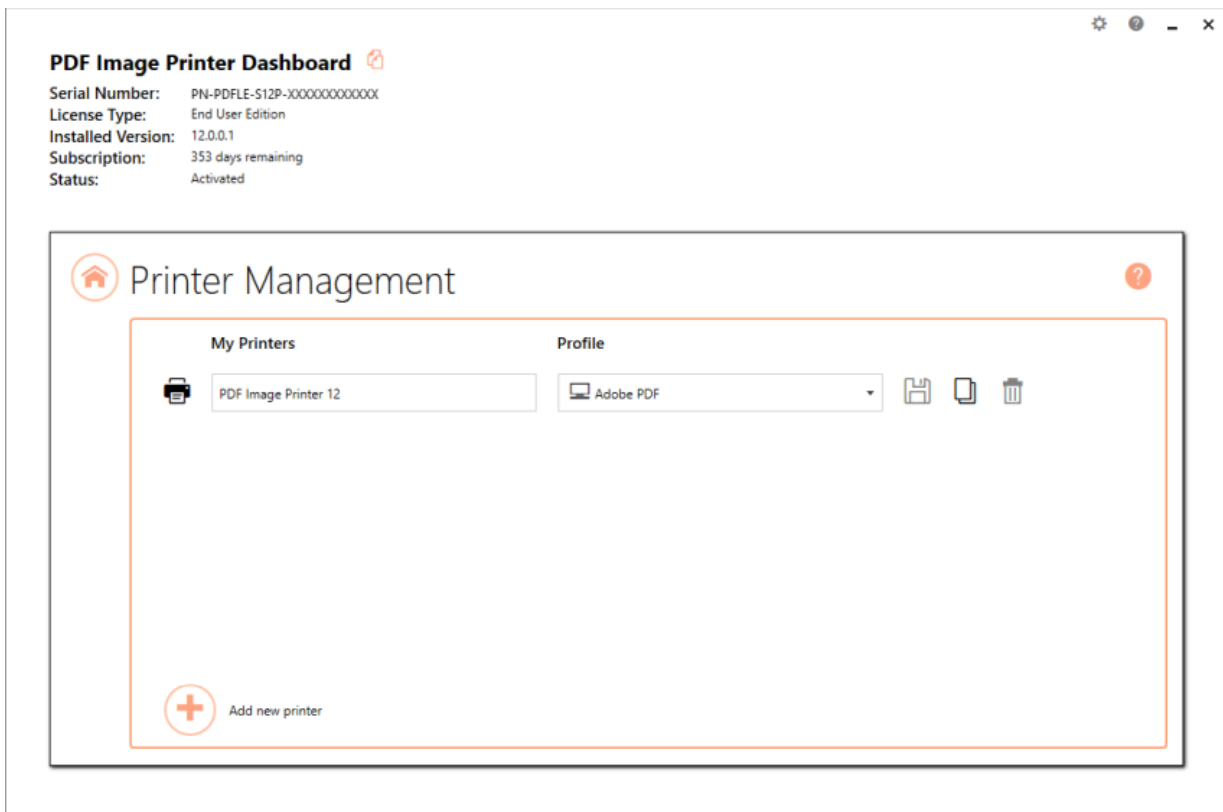
- Select **Add a profile** to create a new personal profile,
- Select the **pencil icon** to edit an existing personal profile, or
- Select the copy icon to create a new personal profile starting with the settings in the system profile.

Within the editing profile view you will have access to all settings and features available with PDF Image Printer organized into a series of tabs accessible on the left side of the window.

To learn more about the settings found on each of this individual tabs, see our [Profile Manager](#) chapter. Alternatively, for step-by-step instruction on how to enable the most common settings/features using Profile Manager, see our [Working with PDF Image Printer](#) chapter.

Printer Management

Printer Management is a quick and easy tool that allows users to copy, create, delete, and rename their PDF Image Printer. While it was possible to create copies of the printer and rename the printer through the Devices and Printer menu with previous versions, users are now able to carry out these activities directly through a PDF Image Printer interface. The purpose of **Printer Management** is to speed up the printing process. By allowing users to set the default profile used by PDF Image Printer, the need to select the desired profile during each print job is eliminated.



Launch **Printer Management** from the **Dashboard** by selecting "Manage Printers". On launch, **Printer Management** will show you all of the existing printer(s), the name of the printer(s), and the default profile currently assigned to each printer. If PDF Image Printer has just been installed, there will only be one printer listed with the name PDF Image Printer 12, and the default profile will be set to Adobe PDF.

- Edit the **printer name**,
- Change the **default profile**,

- **Duplicate** the printer, or
- **Delete** any unwanted printer(s).

To learn more about how to use Printer Management, see our [Printer Management](#) chapter.

Driver Improvements

PDF Image Printer 12 features a completely revamped graphic core, which allows for the creation of higher quality images, the option to create vector output like Adobe PDF, and the addition of many new settings that are only possible with the new vector core.

All graphic operations have been transformed into **vector graphic operation**. This means that the PDF Image Printer printer driver is now resolution independent, which gives us the freedom to scale your pages at the best quality possible.

The new graphic core adds anti-aliasing to all drawn object (ex. fonts and shapes), which makes the text and shapes look smoother and clearer in your output files.

Perhaps the largest improvement to PDF Image Printer made possible by the new vector core is the addition of the ability to create vector output. Users are now able to create searchable Adobe PDF files using PDF Image Printer 12.

Adobe PDF

With the driver improvements to feature a new graphic core that does vector graphic operations, users are now able to create **Adobe PDF**.

In the past, PDF Image Printer only allowed users to produce non-searchable PDF images, where each page was a single image, but following the vector graphic transformation, our new graphic core allows PDF Image Printer 12 to produce Adobe PDF with vectorized pages. This means that you can create searchable Adobe PDF files.

To accompany this new file output format, we have added several new PDF specific settings:

- **Document Information** - Used to add basic descriptive information to your Adobe PDF file. These descriptions are used by Adobe's search engine and also by many search engines to describe the document in their results list.
- **Image Downsampling** - Used to reduce the overall size of Adobe PDF files by reducing the quality of images embedded into the vector PDF.
- **PDF Security** - Support for 128-bit AES and 256-bit AES encryption has been added. These are more secure encryption levels as compared to older alternatives. We have also changed document permissions to offer the standard four PDF permission types as well as show a preview of the Adobe Reader settings that will be impacted based on the document restrictions enabled.
- **PDF Options** - Added ability to control font embedding, configure the initial page view when a user opens the file in a PDF Reader, and configure viewer layout when a user opens the file in a PDF Reader.

To see a complete list of new settings, see the [New Settings](#) topic.

New Settings

PDF Image Printer 12 features several new settings. Some of these new settings are made possible by the transformation to vector graphic operations (ex. stamping), while others are enhancements to existing settings to streamline and simplify their application.

All settings, including the new settings listed below, can be enabled/disabled and configured through the **profile**, via [Profile Manager](#).

Stamping

The change to vector graphic operations has allowed us to add [Stamping](#) to PDF Image Printer 12. The vector graphics ensure that your stamps can be scaled up and down as required. Existing users of PDF Image Printer may be familiar with the endorsements setting that was offered in previous versions. Endorsements have been replaced by the far more comprehensive Stamping.

The Stamping tool allows users to add text, images, page numbering or date/time information as a watermark stamp onto a page. The watermark will overlay the page content. You can adjust the size of the stamp, the transparency of the stamp, positioning of the stamp on the page, and the pages on which the stamp will appear in a multipaged document.





Add Borders



As with Stamping, the ability to [Add Borders](#) is made possible because of the change to vector graphics. Adding a border requires PDF Image Printer to shrink your current page to fit within your desired border size, which requires scaling. This setting allows you to add a custom-colored margin around the page. This setting can be used in conjunction with Stamping if you are looking to add space to the header or footer to accommodate a watermark stamp, for example.


Add Borders to Page

Add a custom-colored margin around the page. This will shrink the page contents to fit inside the bordered area.

Add a custom border to the page

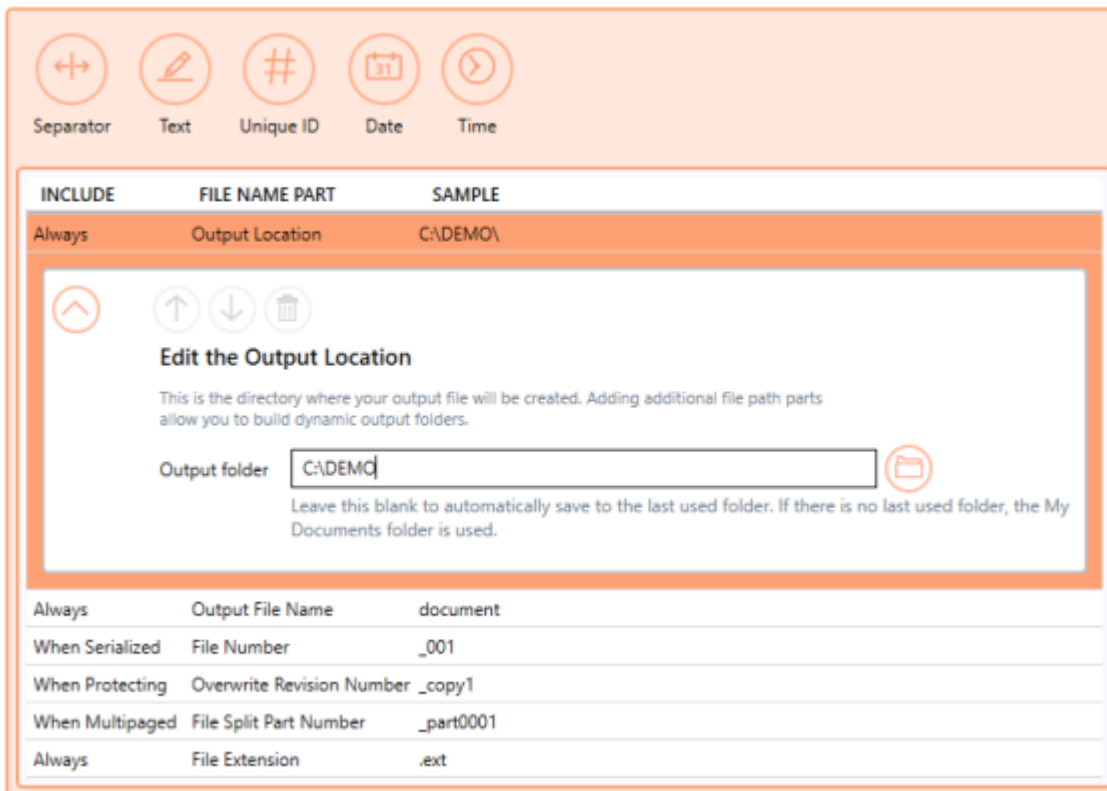
Left in  Right in 

Top in  Bottom in 

Color 

Filename Creator

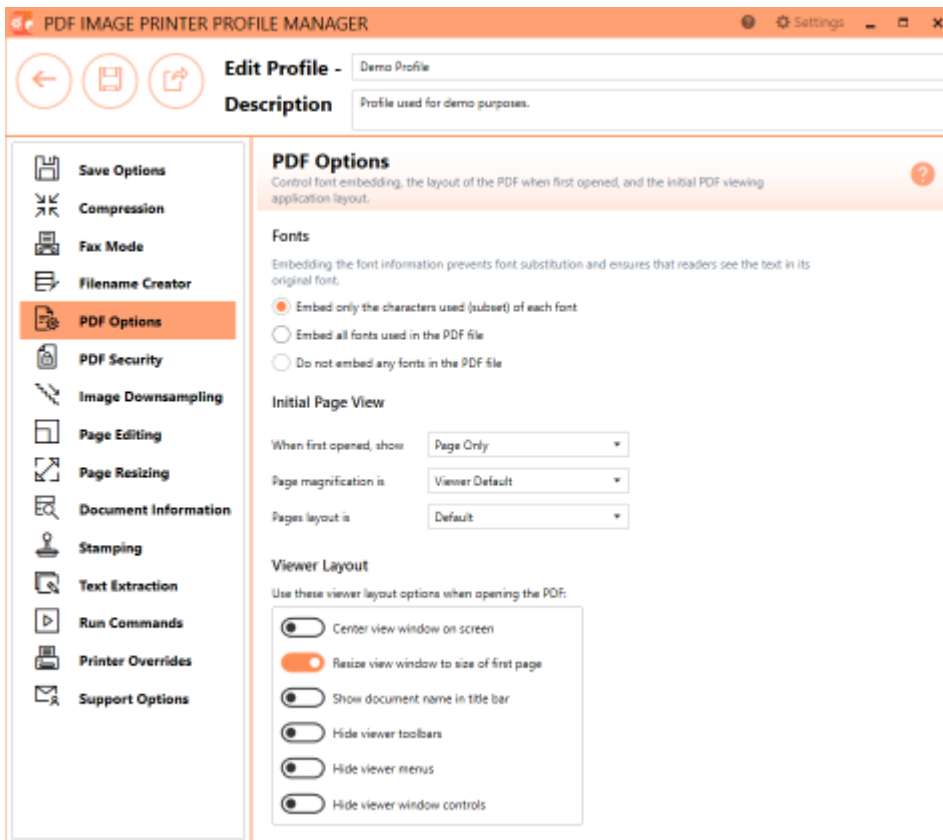
The [Filename Creator](#) tool was added to create a unified way of configuring filenames. There is now one place you can go to change the way you would like your files named. It also provides helpful previews of the filename you will generate under different conditions based on your current filename configurations.



INCLUDE	FILE NAME PART	SAMPLE
Always	Output Location	C:\DEMO\
Always	Output File Name	document
When Serialized	File Number	_001
When Protecting	Overwrite Revision Number	_copy1
When Multipaged	File Split Part Number	_part0001
Always	File Extension	.ext

PDF Options

[PDF Options](#) settings have been added to allow users to control the appearance of their output PDF file in a PDF Reader. These settings include: control of font embedding, configuration of the initial page view when a user opens the file in a PDF Reader, and configuration of the viewer layout when a user opens the file in a PDF Reader.



PDF Security

[PDF Security](#) settings now include support for 128-bit AES and 256-bit AES encryption. These are more secure encryption levels as compared to older alternatives. In addition, the document permission options have been changed to offer the standard four PDF permission types. As you enable and disable the standard four PDF permission types, there is a preview provided to indicate the Adobe Reader settings that will be impacted based on the document restrictions enabled.

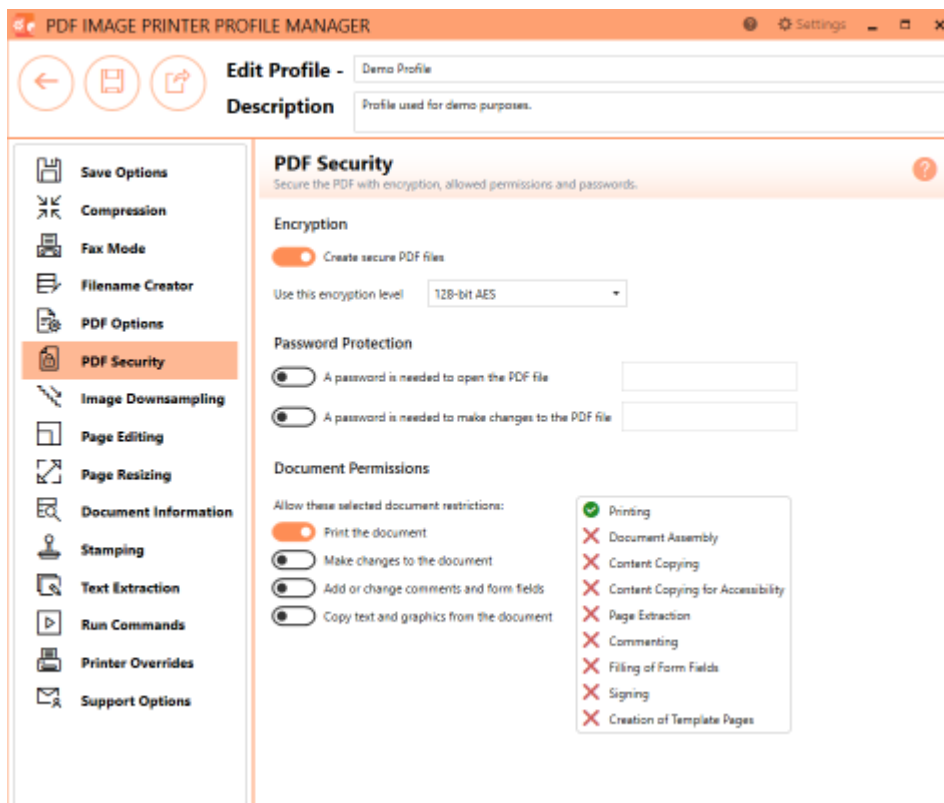
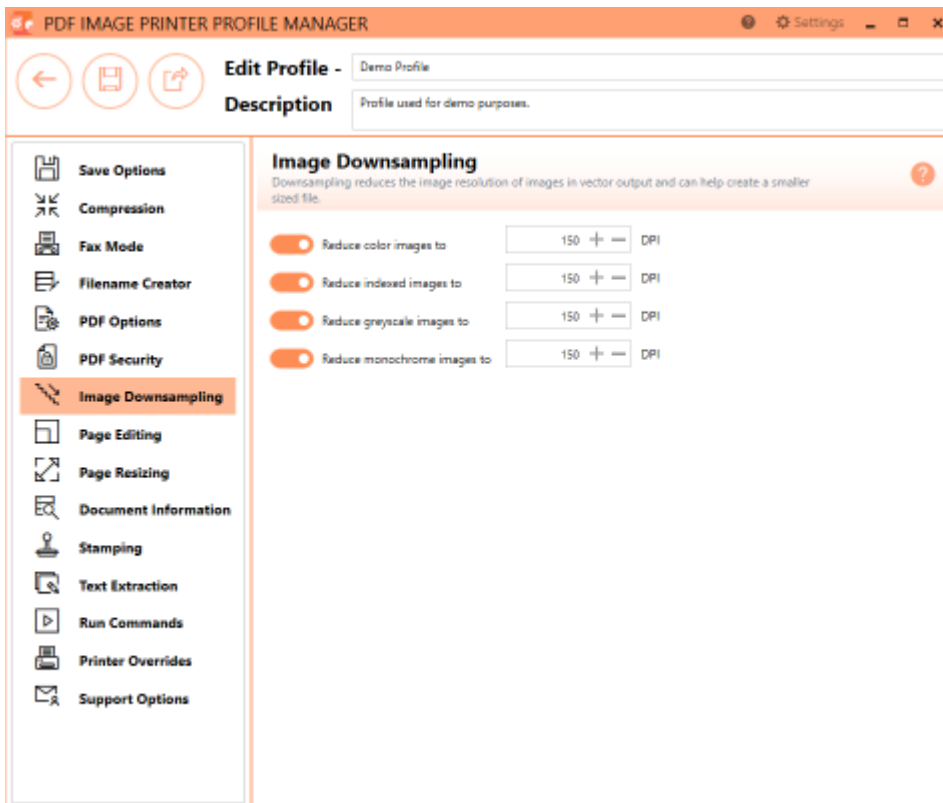


Image Downsampling

[Image Downsampling](#) settings have been added to accompany the addition of Adobe PDF as a possible output file format. These settings are used to reduce the overall file size of Adobe PDF files by reducing the quality of images embedded into the vector PDF.




Adjust Page Brightness


[Page Brightness](#) settings have been enhanced to allow the user to select the range of colors that want to be adjusted. You can now set the starting intensity and ending intensity that you want impacted by your darkening or lightening operation. This means that you can brighten the background of an image without brightening the black text, for example.

Adjust Page Brightness

Lighten or darken the images and text on your pages to improve readability. Select the range of color intensity that the brightness adjustment affects.

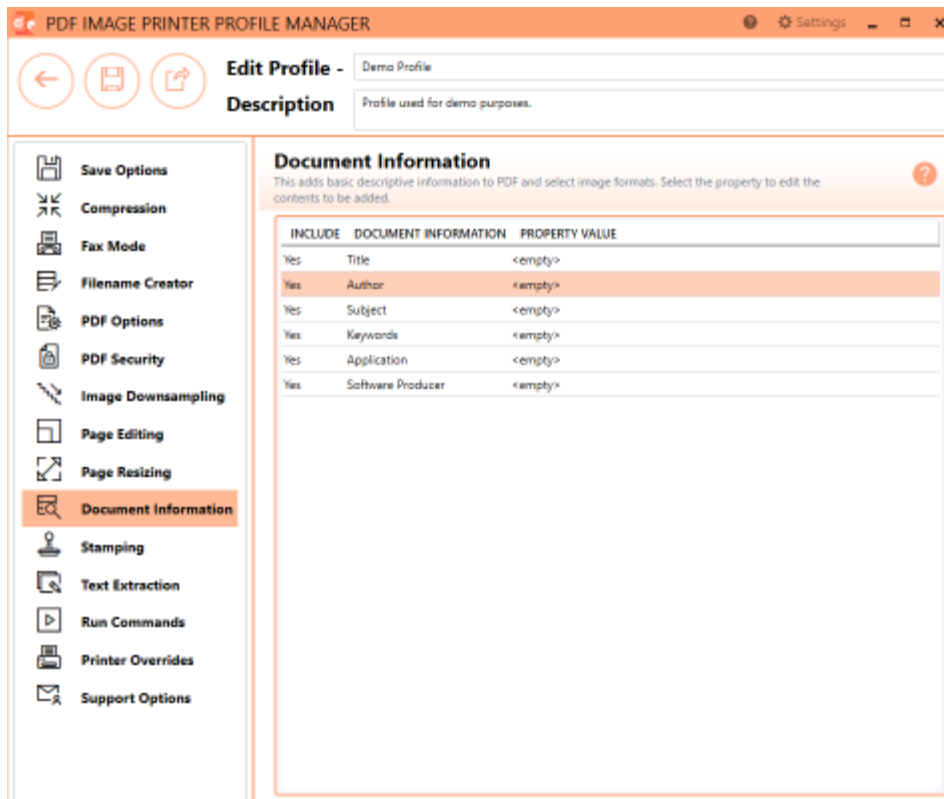
Lighten or darken each page with the following settings

Change page brightness Darken  Lighten

Applies to this intensity range Black  White

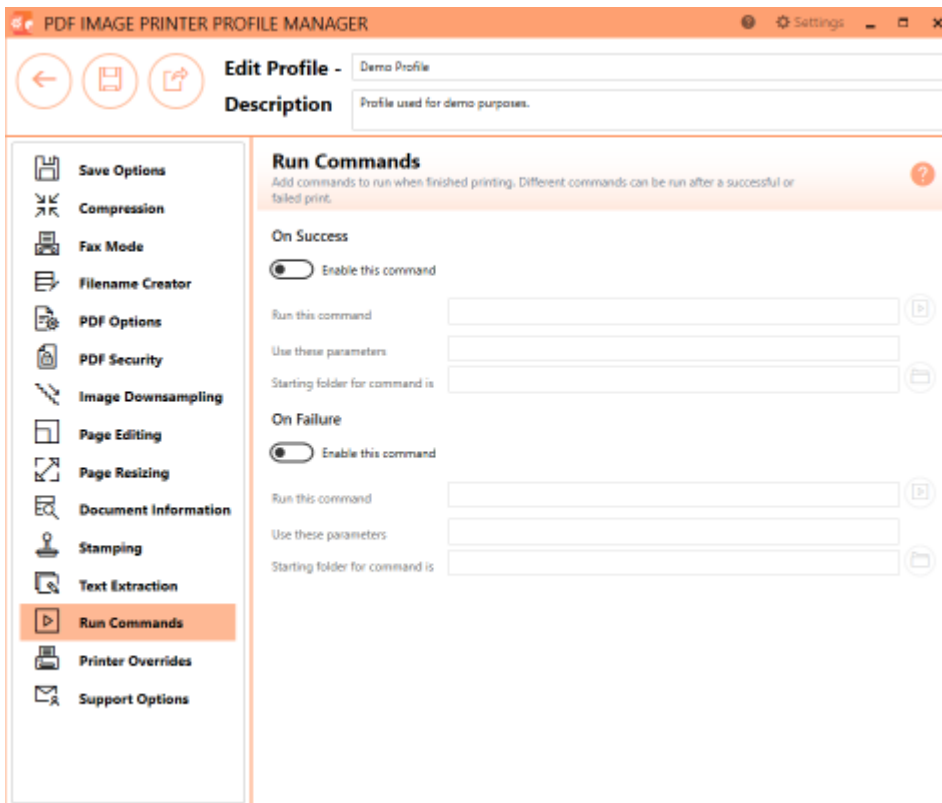
Document Information

[Document Information](#) settings are used to add basic descriptive information to your output file.



Run Commands

[Run Commands](#) settings can be used to run different actions after a successful print and/or a failed print. The ability to configure run commands did exist in previous versions, but with PDF Image Printer 12 we have streamlined the available options. Now the last parameter is always a path to a text file that contains a list of the file(s) created by the conversion process (one per row). This allows the user to easily operate on those files in any way they need.



Subscription License

PDF Image Printer 12 licenses are sold as either subscription licenses or one-time licenses. This chapter is for users with a subscription license and explains how to:

- [Activate PDF Image Printer](#)
- [View](#) and [Change](#) your Activation Status
- [Renew your Annual Subscription](#)
- [Edit Activation Details](#)

The ability to view and edit your activation details is only available with a subscription license, and is not an option for one-time licenses.

What is a subscription license?

A subscription license gives users complete access to all features of PDF Image Printer 12 for the term that the annual subscription is valid. Much like your music or television streaming service subscription, when your annual subscription is valid, you have complete access to PDF Image Printer up to the limit of licenses purchased.

With a subscription license, users can:

- activate and use PDF Image Printer up to the limit of number of licenses purchased
- move the software to a new computer or re-load the software after a computer crash or operating system upgrade, either through your PEERNET online account or by contacting PEERNET
- access all updates and upgrades released for PDF Image Printer free of charge
- rely on priority technical support from the PEERNET team

Benefits of a subscription license

All of the benefits of a subscription really come down to security and peace of mind.

A subscription license gives you the confidence to switch computers, upgrade your operating system or reformat your computer without worrying about your PDF Image Printer. Furthermore, a subscription license provides the security that should your computer crash unexpectedly you know that you have not lost access to your PDF Image Printer. In all of these situations, you can simply [edit your activation details](#) through your PEERNET online account or contact PEERNET to adjust your license so that you are able to re-load your license and continue using PDF Image Printer.

In addition, with a subscription license you can rely on the PEERNET team to release minor updates as required and major upgrades with new features, all of which you can access free of charge. With PDF Image Printer 12 you will even be notified when a new version is available for download by the PDF Image Printer Dashboard. Lastly, should you run into an issue, a subscription license ensures that you will receive priority technical support from the PEERNET team via email, phone or web meeting depending on what best meets your needs.

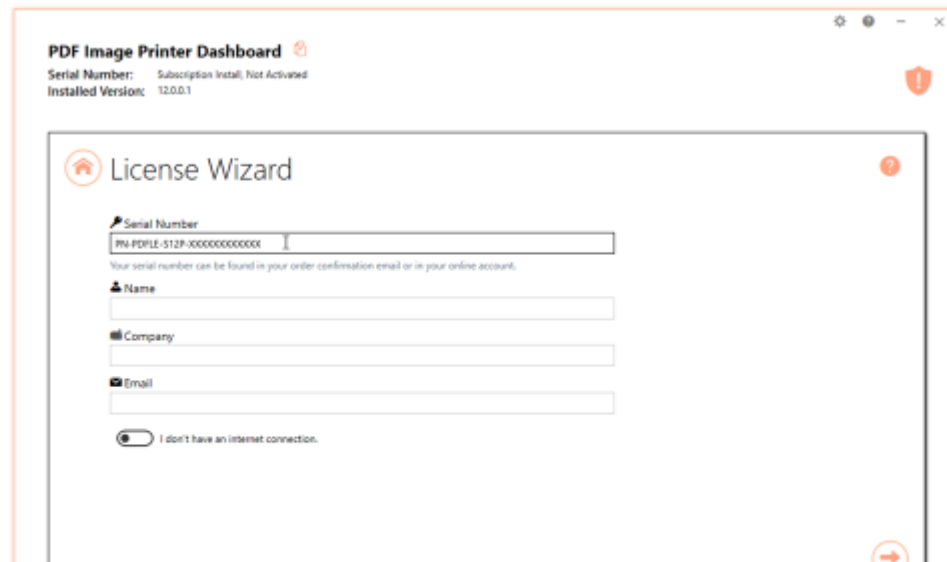
Renewing a subscription license

A subscription license is sold for a term of one year, and can subsequently be renewed annually. With a subscription license, the operation of PDF Image Printer does require an active subscription, therefore you will be required to renew the subscription in year 2 in order to continue using the PDF Image Printer software. Another benefit of a subscription license is that should you decide not to renew your annual subscription at some point, you can also come back to the subscription should the need arise again in the future and re-instate your subscription license.

Activating PDF Image Printer

The first step to activating PDF Image Printer is installing your purchased copy of the software which is available through your online account.

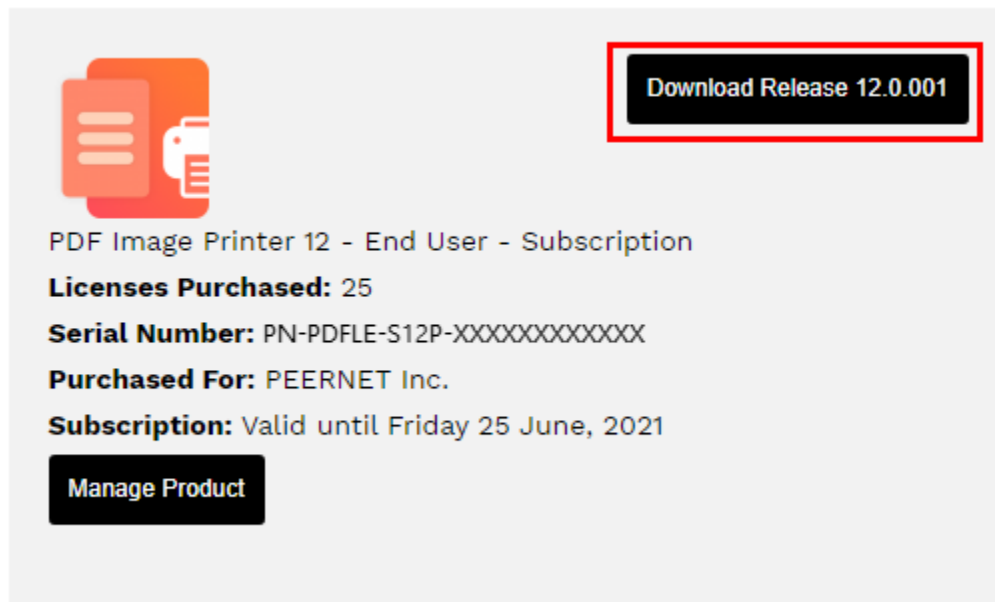
If you installed the trial version of PDF Image Printer before purchasing, you still need to install your purchased copy of the software.



Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Installing PDF Image Printer:

1. Log into your [PEERNET online account](#).
2. Find the desired software in your **My Products** list, and select the **Download Release** button to download the latest release of the software.



3. In most cases, the EXE file is located in the Downloads folder. Open File Explorer and browse to C:\Users\YOUR USERNAME\Downloads\.
4. Double-click the EXE file to run the PDF Image Printer install.

If you installed the trial version of PDF Image Printer before purchasing, when you run the install for the purchased copy, the previously installed trial version will prompt you to uninstall it. Select "next" to remove the trial version and replace it with your purchased copy.

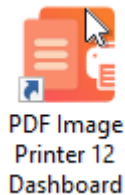
At the end of the installation process, you are given the option to launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**. Leave "Open the PDF Image Printer 12 Dashboard now" checked in order to open the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard** directly. This is the fastest way to proceed to activating your software.

Launching the License Wizard

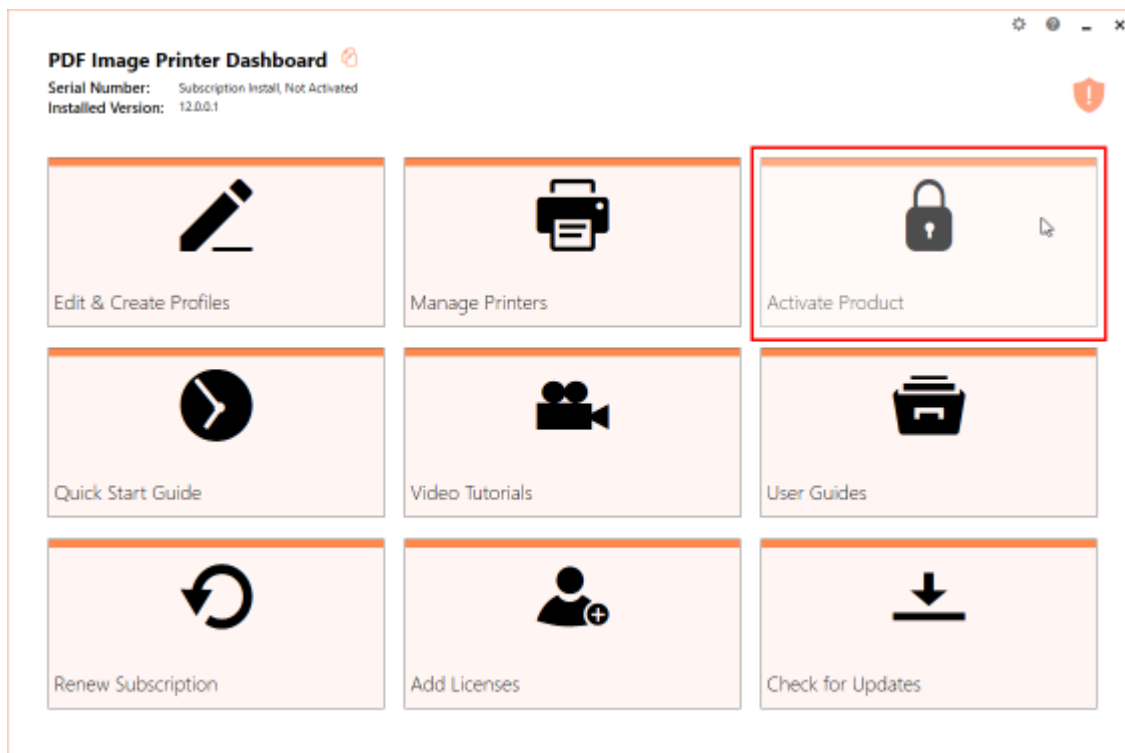
The **License Wizard** is accessible from the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.

To launch the **License Wizard**:

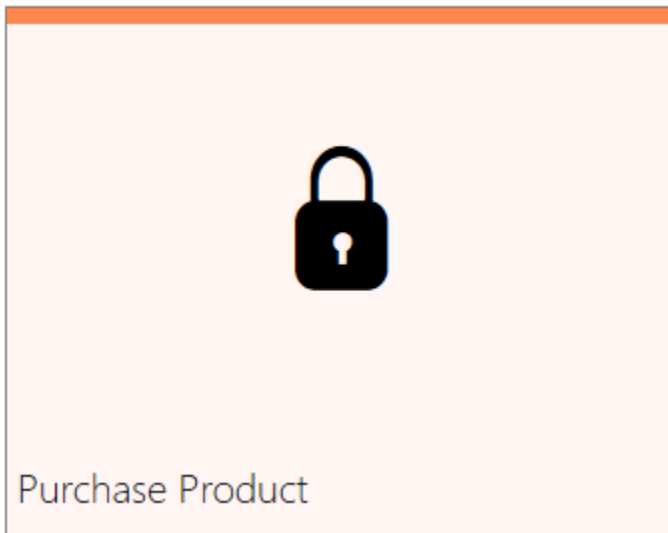
1. Begin by opening the **Dashboard** (double-click the PDF Image Printer icon on your desktop or select PDF Image Printer 12 from the Start menu).



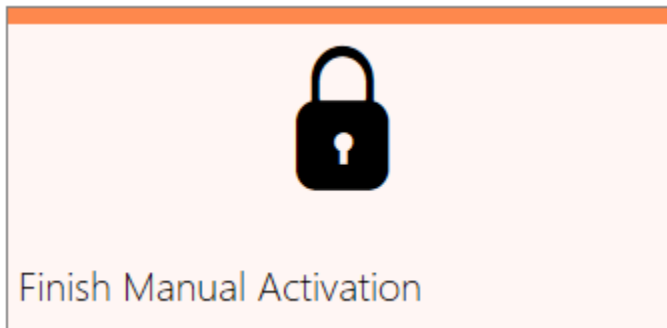
2. Select "Activate Product" to open the **License Wizard**.



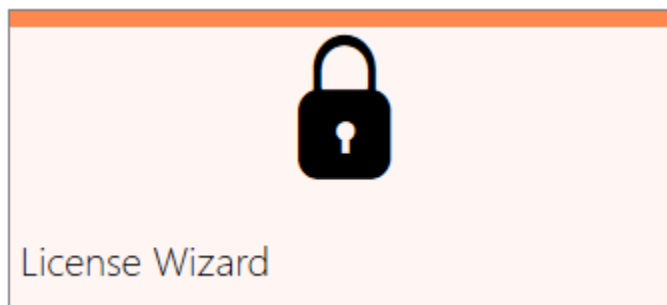
- If you have the trial version of PDF Image Printer installed instead of your purchased copy, this tile will say "Purchase Product". Please return to [Activating PDF Image Printer](#) for instruction on installing your purchased copy of the software.



- If you are in the middle of a manual activation process, the tile will say "Finish Manual Activation".



- If the software is already licensed, this title will say "License Wizard".



Entering Your Serial Number

To activate your product you need to enter in the serial number that was included with your order confirmation email and your user information. You can also find your serial number through your [PEERNET online account](#).

Entering your serial number

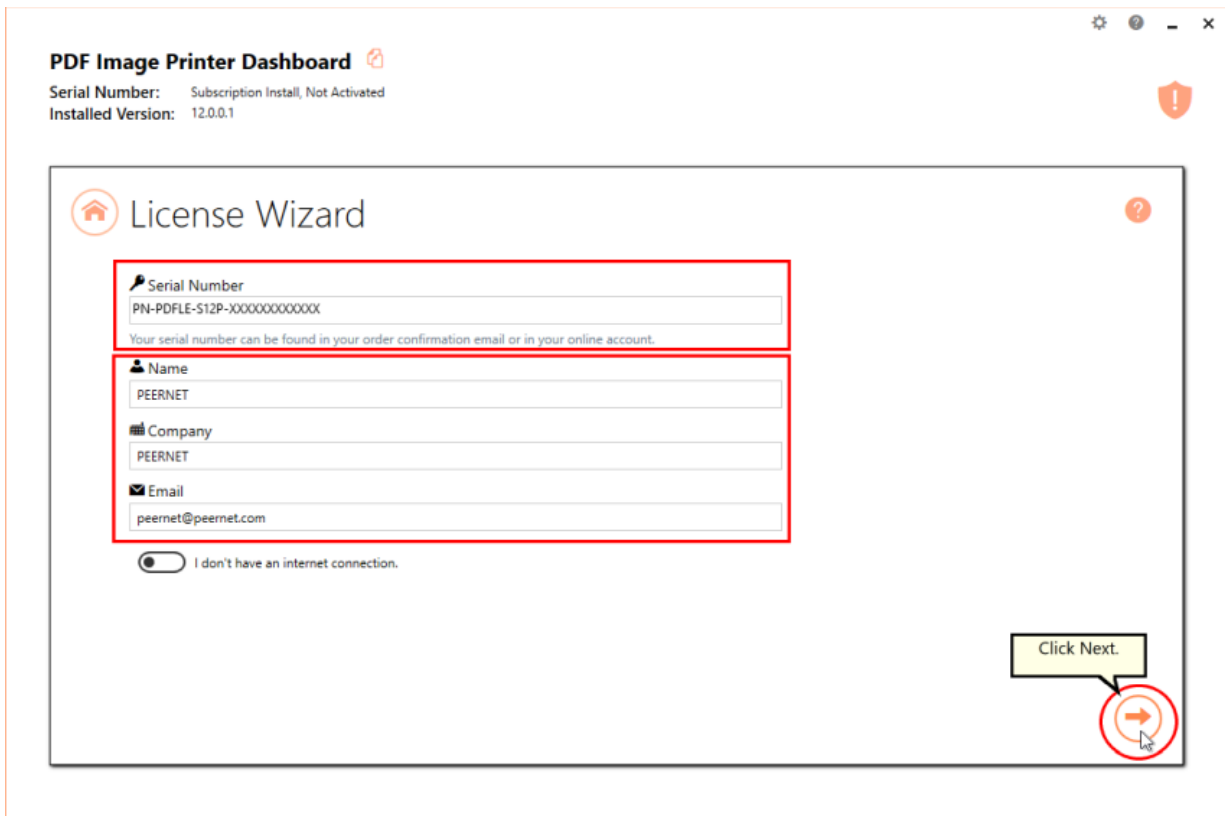
Enter the serial number into the box on the screen. If you copy your entire serial number from your email and then return to this dialog it will automatically be filled into the box.

The serial number is case sensitive and it is important to type the serial number exactly as it is received. Be sure not to leave any spaces before or after the serial number when typing or pasting, and note that the serial number ends with a series of hexadecimal characters (0-9,A-F).

Entering your user information

If possible, your Name and Company information is automatically picked up from your system settings. The information in these fields can be change if required.

You cannot continue if either the Name or the Email Address field is left blank. Email addresses entered here are only used by PEERNET to identify users during license adjustments. We will never rent or sell our customer's and client's information to third parties.



Activating without an internet connection

If you are having difficulty connecting to the internet, or do not want to activate over the internet, you can choose to manually activate the product by checking "**I don't have an internet connection**".

License Wizard

Serial Number
PN-PDFLE-S12P-XXXXXXXXXXXX
Your serial number can be found in your order confirmation email or in your online account.

Name
PEERNET

Company
PEERNET

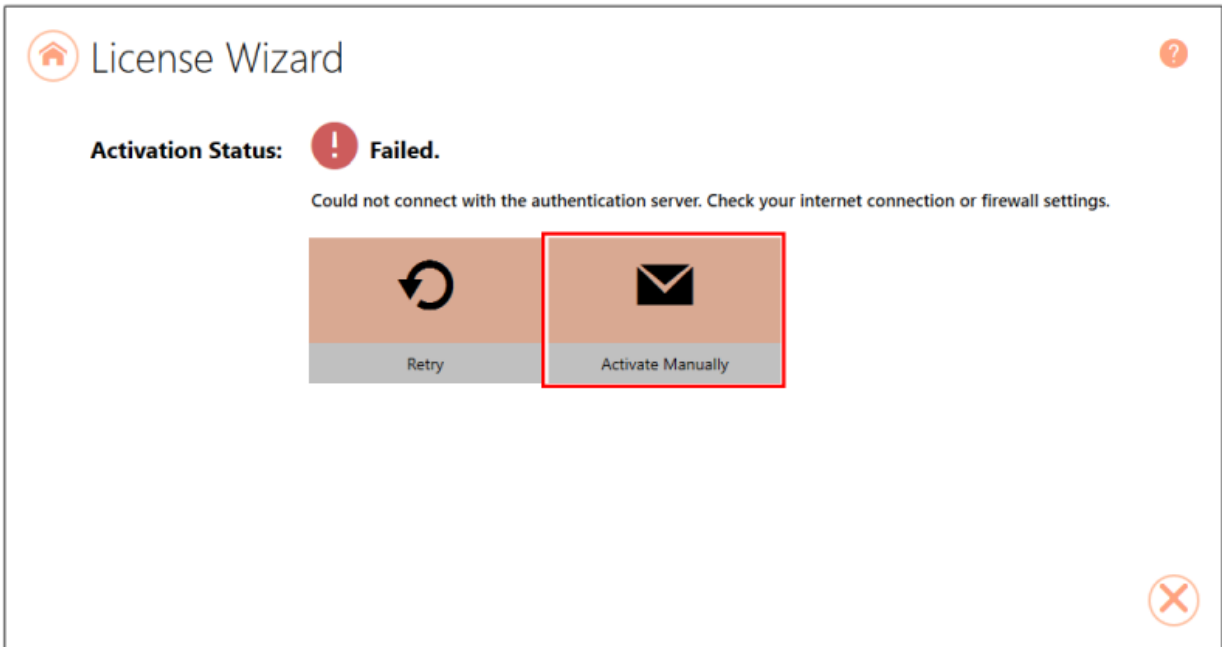
Email
peernet@peernet.com

I don't have an internet connection.

Click Next.

Manual activation does not require an internet connection on the computer the software is installed on, but it does require that you have the ability to email an encrypted file to PEERNET for authentication. We will return the authenticated file to you, which you then import using the License Wizard to complete the activation process. These files are processed by PEERNET's technical staff from 09h00 to 17h00, Monday to Friday, Eastern Standard Time.

When activating over the internet, the License Wizard will attempt to validate an internet connection, and will prompt with the choice to license manually if it cannot connect. Activating over the internet may also fail if you have a firewall or anti-virus software blocking the connection. Click **Activate Manually** to begin the manual activation process, or click **Retry** to try activating online again.



Manually Activating PDF Image Printer

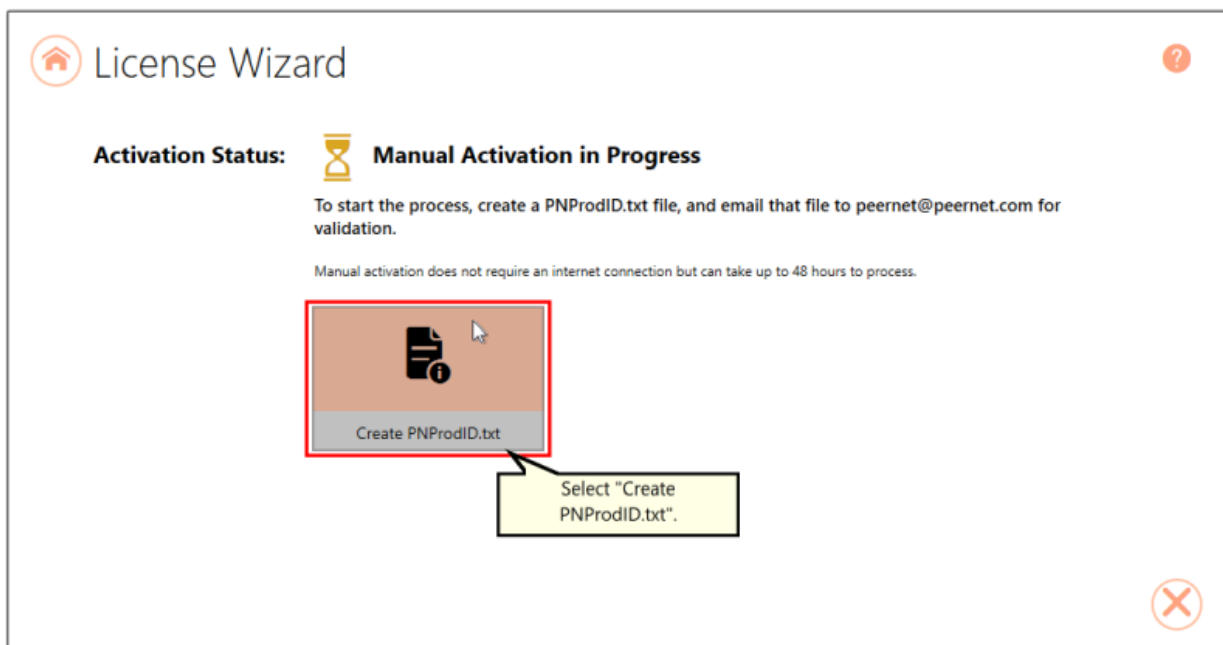
In most cases, you will not have to activate your product manually. This only happens when PDF Image Printer is installed on a computer that has no access to the internet, or the computer is configured such that the user cannot access the internet. This can also happen if a firewall program or anti-virus software blocks our attempt to connect with our license server.

If you do have to activate manually, you will need to follow the steps below. Please note that these files (PNProdID files) are only authorized during business hours, which are 09h00 to 17h00, Monday through Friday, Eastern Standard Time (excluding statutory holidays).

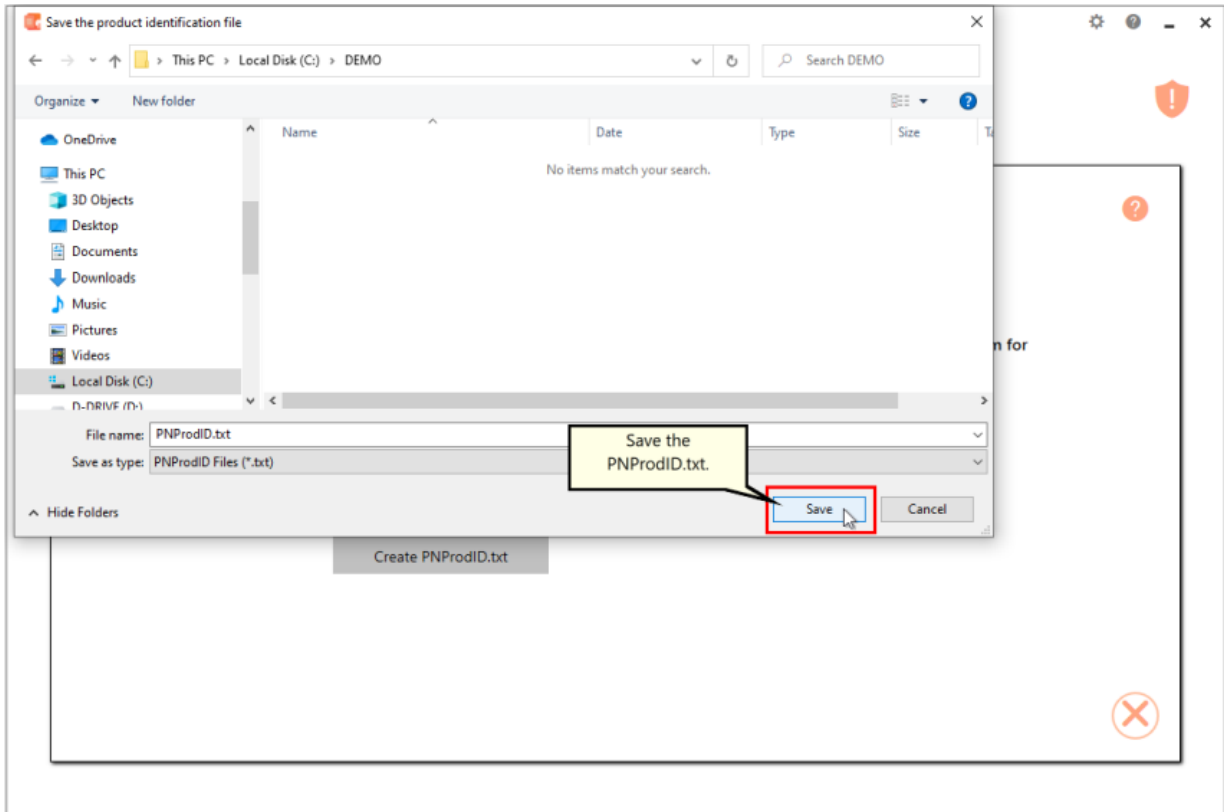
1. Use the **License Wizard** to create the encrypted file, **PNProdID.txt**.
2. Email the file to peernet@peernet.com for manual activation. For computers with no email capability, you can save the file to a shared network drive, or use an external storage device such as a USB flash drive (also known as thumb drives), or a MicroSD storage card to copy the file to a computer with email capabilities.
3. A file named **PNProdAU.txt** will be emailed back to you. Copy this file back to the computer where PDF Image Printer is installed and restart the **License Wizard** to complete the license activation.

Exporting the PNProdID.txt file

To create the file click **Create PNProdID.txt**.



A save dialog box will appear prompting you to choose where to save the **PNProdID.txt** product identification file. This dialog may look slightly different depending on which version of Windows you are running. Save this file in an easy to remember location, like your Desktop or your Documents folder.

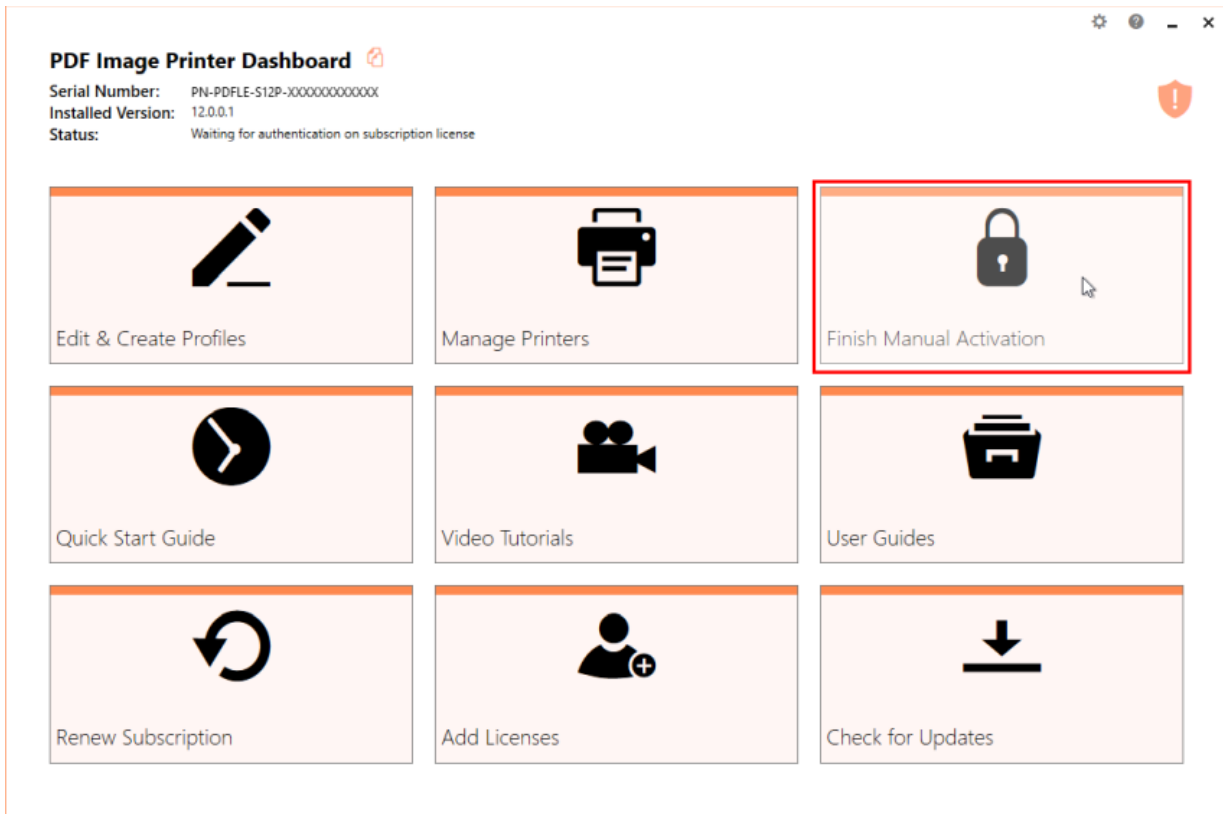


You need to email this file to peernet@peernet.com. For computers with no email capability, you can save the file to a shared network drive, or use an external storage device such as a USB flash drive or a MicroSD storage card to copy the file to another computer.

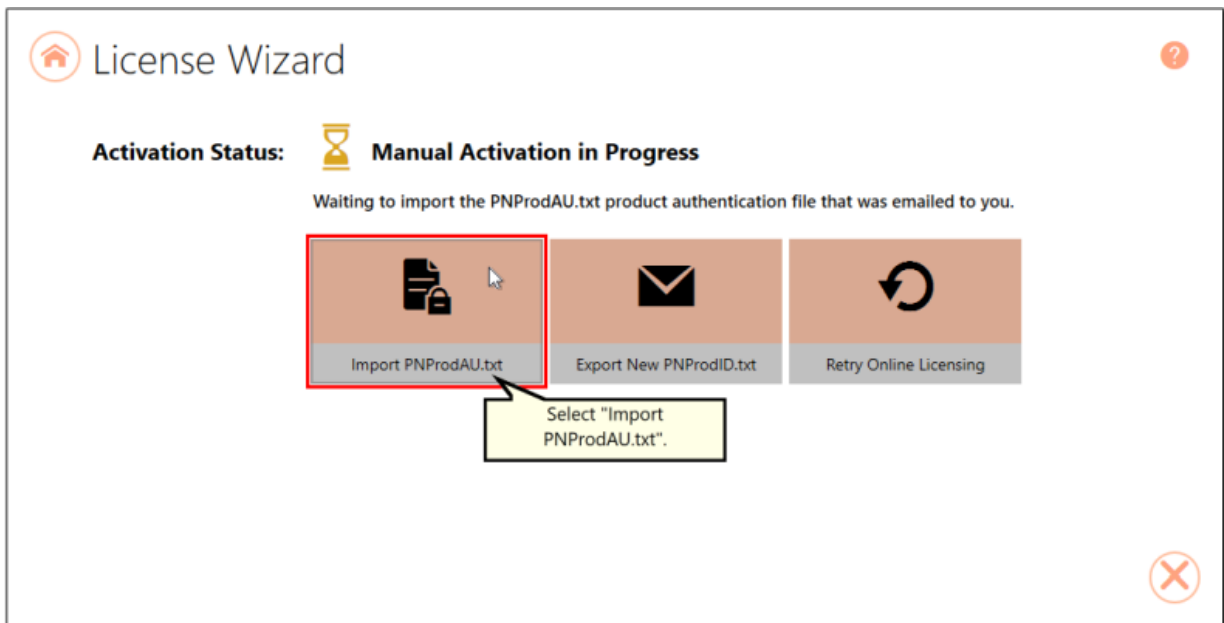
Importing the PNProdAU.txt file

When you have received the product authentication file **PNProdAU.txt** from PEERNET, you will need save the file in an easy to remember location, like your Desktop or your Documents folder. If you need to move the authentication file back to the computer where PDF Image Printer is installed, do so now.

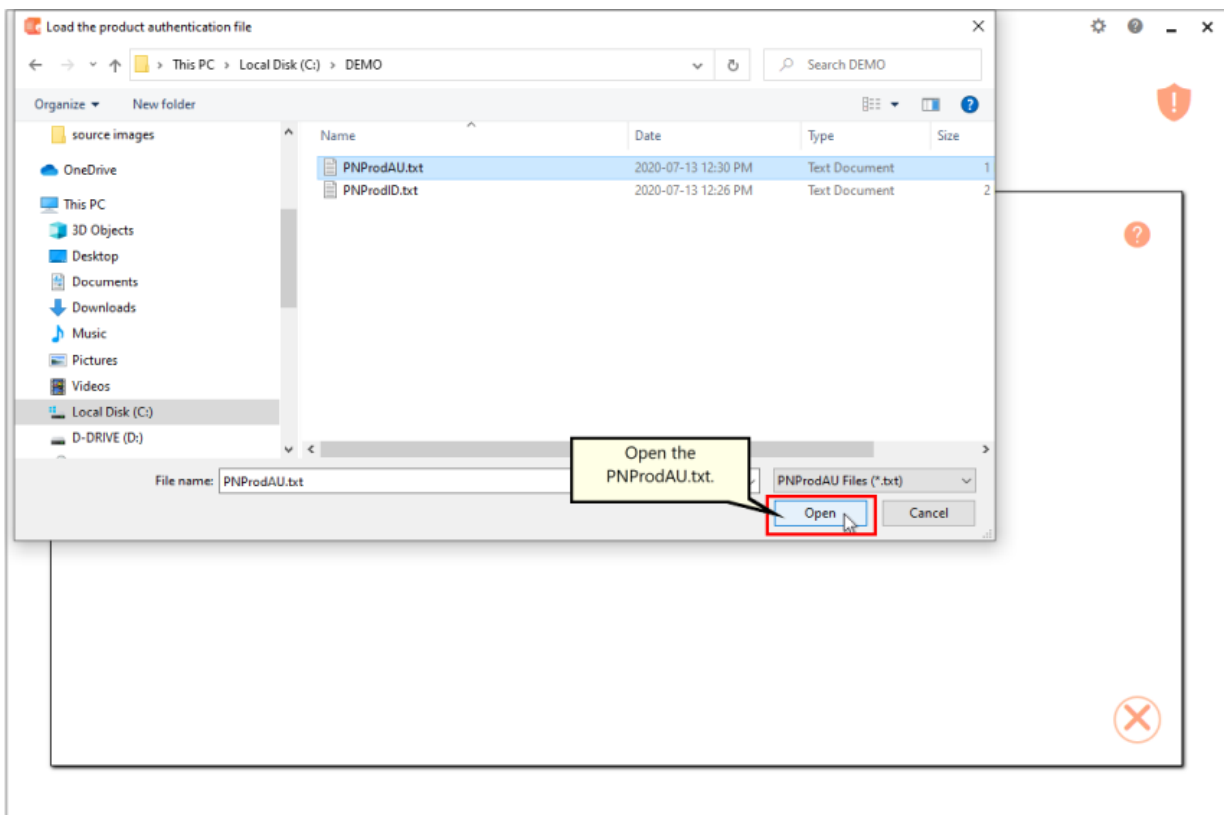
On the computer where PDF Image Printer is installed, restart the License Wizard by following the steps outlined in [Launching the License Wizard](#). The License Wizard will automatically start at the import screen.



Click **Import PNProdAU.txt**. If you did not receive a PNProdAu.txt file, you can restart the manual licensing process. You also have the option to retry online activation if you now have an internet connection or have resolved an issue with your firewall settings.



A browse dialog box will appear. This dialog may look slightly different depending on which version of Windows you are running. Locate where you saved the **PNProdAU.txt** file you received from PEERNET and click the Open button to import the file.

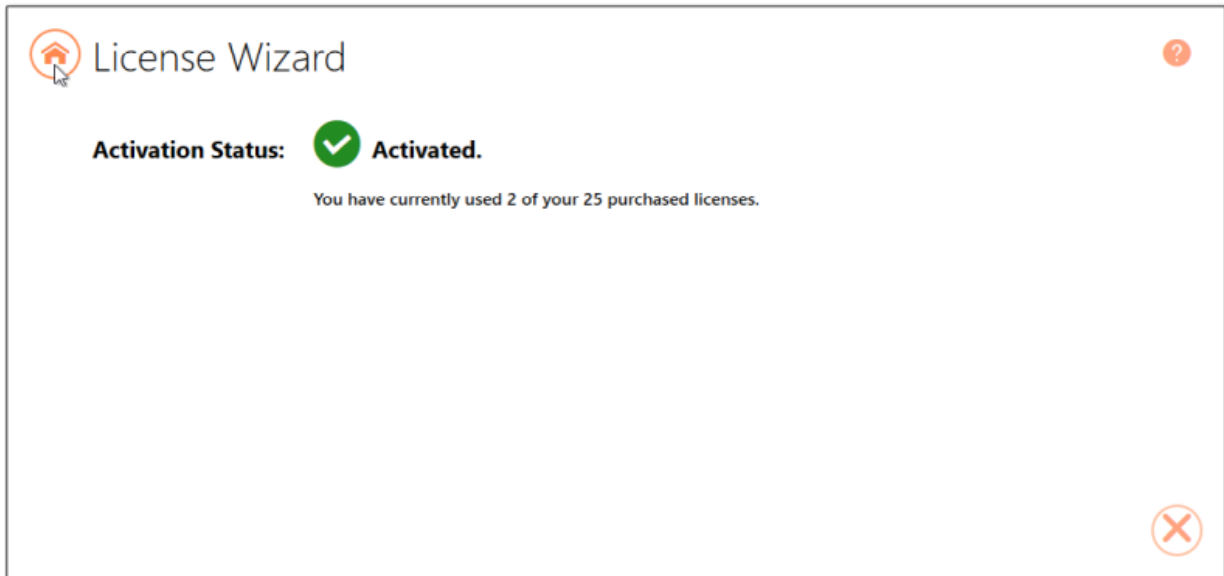


The authentication file is verified and you are automatically moved to the [Activation Status Results](#) screen.

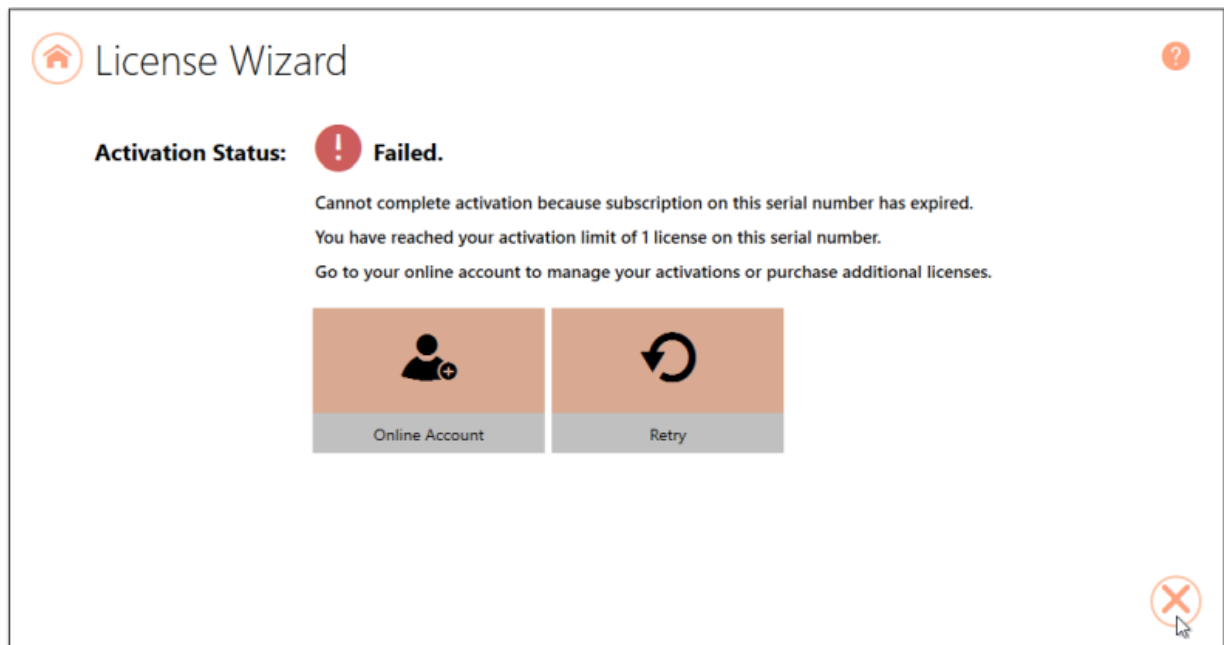
Activation Status Results

This screen displays your activation status.

If the product is successfully activated, the Activation Status will display your status as **Activated**.



If an error occurred during activation, the Activation Status will display your status as **Failed** with an explanation of the error that occurred. The most common error message that occurs is that you have consumed all of your licenses.



When you have used all your licenses, you will not be able to use the product on this computer until:

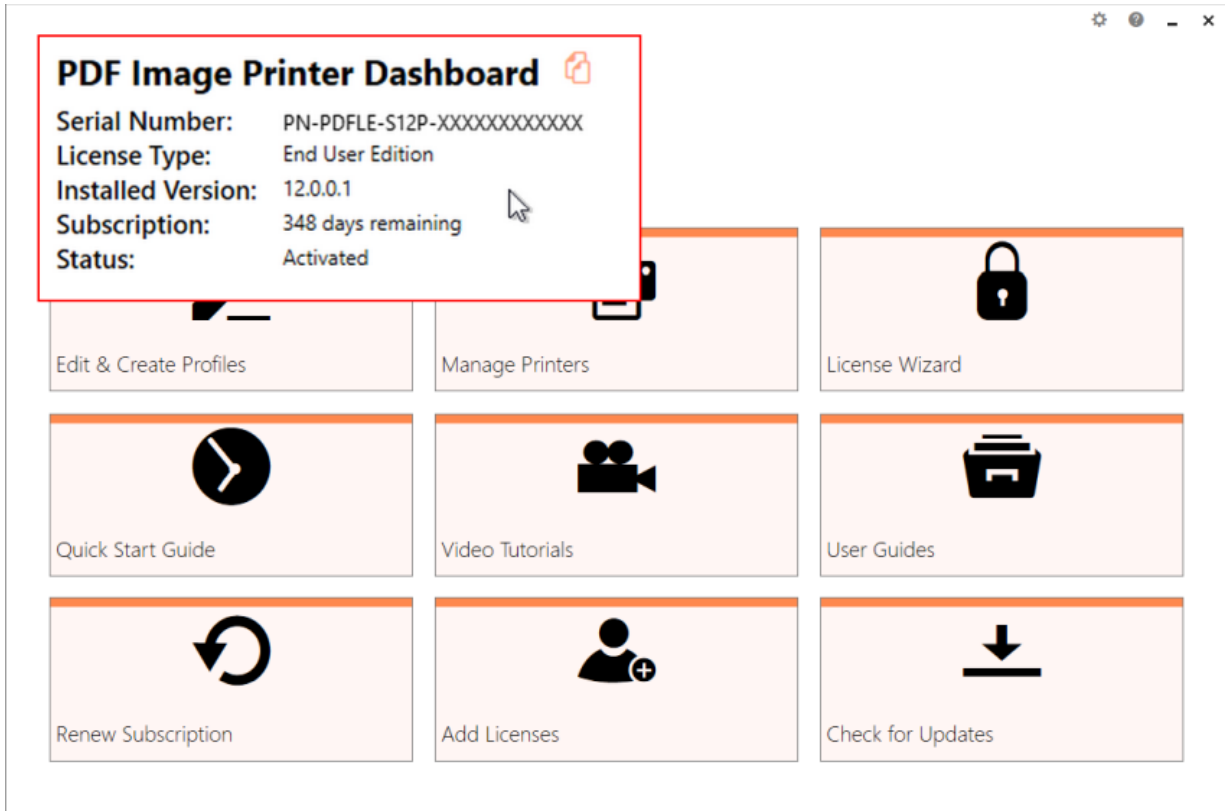
1. you purchase additional licenses, or
2. you adjust your serial number to deactivate a license on an old computer that is no longer in use.

In either case, abort the activation process by clicking the **Close icon** in the bottom right-hand corner. Once you have either purchased additional licenses or deactivated a license that is no longer in use, re-start the activation process by [Launching the License Wizard](#).

For instructions on how to manage your licenses through your [PEERNET online account](#), please see the topic [Edit Activation Details](#).

Viewing Your Activation Status

Your activation status is always readily available in the top left-hand corner of the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



The **Dashboard** always shows the following information:

1. **Serial Number** - The serial numbers used to activate PDF Image Printer on this computer.
2. **Installed Version** - The version number of PDF Image Printer currently installed on this computer.
3. **Subscription** - The number of days remaining in your current subscription period.
4. **Activation Status** - The status of the product activation on this computer.
 - *Not Activated* - PDF Image Printer has been installed but had not yet been activated using your serial number.
 - *Activated* - PDF Image Printer has been activated using your serial number.

- *Deactivated* - The activation for this computer has been deactivated either by the user by [editing their activation details](#) or by PEERNET at the request of the user.
- *Expired* - Your annual subscription has expired. Once the annual renewal is purchase through your [PEERNET online account](#), the status will automatically switch back to Activated.
- *Error* - An event has occurred that has impacted the validity of your activation status.

Select the **copy icon** to quickly save your license information to your clipboard.

PDF Image Printer Dashboard



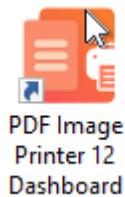
Serial Number:	PN-PDFLE-S12P-XXXXXXXXXXXX
License Type:	End User Edition
Installed Version:	12.0.0.1
Subscription:	339 days remaining
Status:	Activated

Changing Your Activation Status

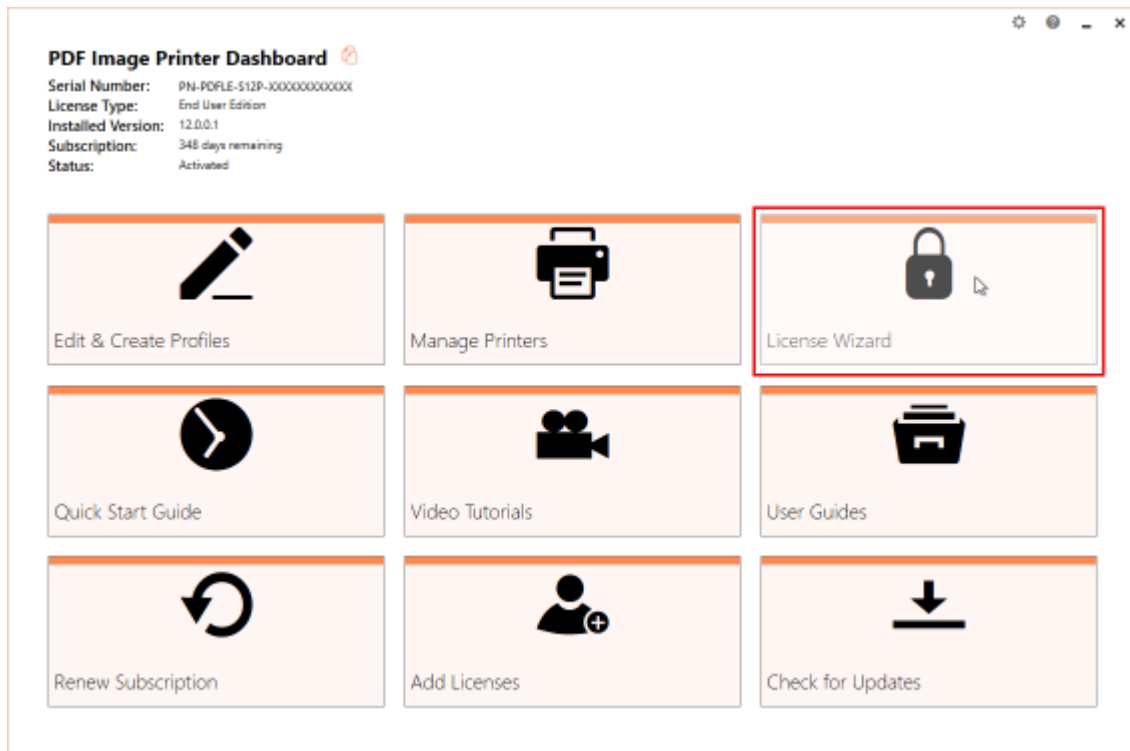
Any changes you need to make to your activation status are available through the **License Wizard**.

To launch the **License Wizard**:

1. Begin by opening the **Dashboard** (double-click the PDF Image Printer icon on your desktop or select PDF Image Printer 12 from the Start menu).



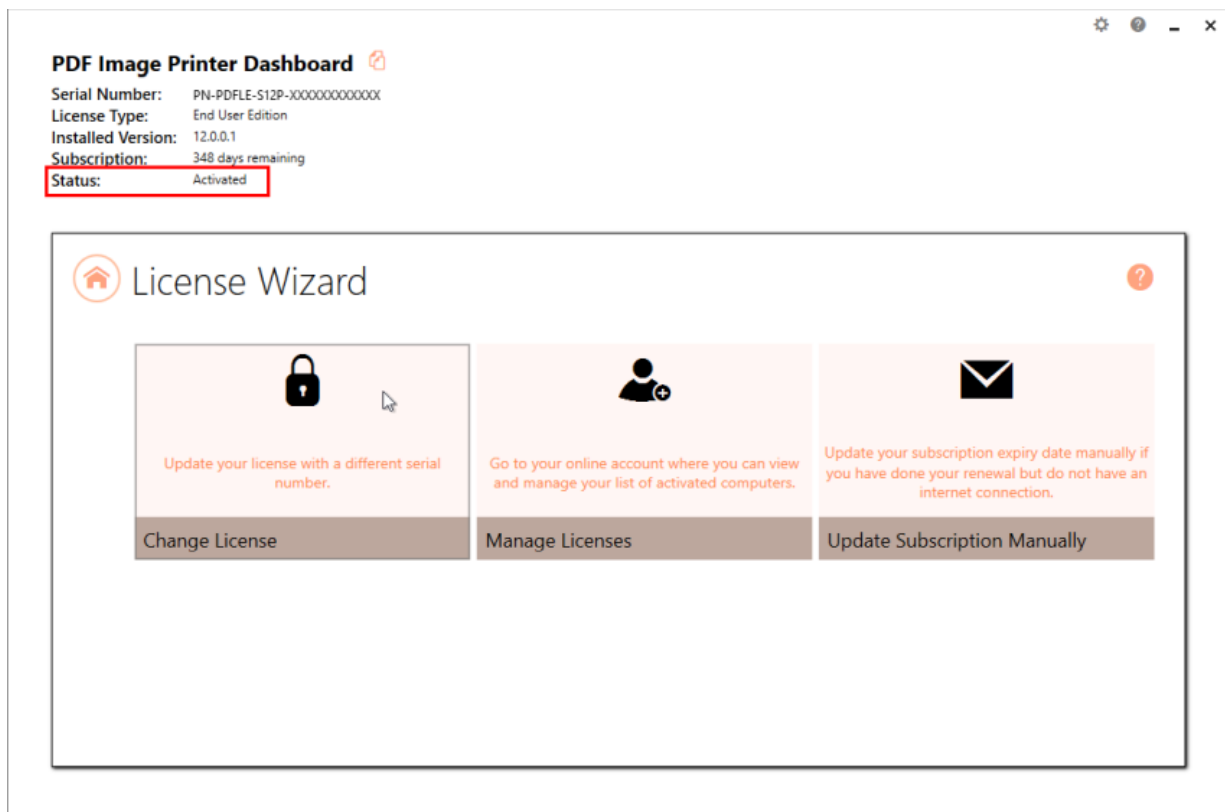
2. Select "License Wizard" to open the **License Wizard**.



Activated

If your current activation status is Activated, there are three options available for changing your activation status:

1. **Change License** - This will allow you to enter a new serial number. This would be applicable if you have merged multiple serial numbers to one serial number, or if you have upgraded to a higher license level and receive a new serial number.
2. **Manage Licenses** - This will take you to your [PEERNET online account](#) where you can [edit your activation details](#). This would be applicable if you are looking to deactivate a license on an old computer that is no longer in use.
3. **Update Subscription Manually** - **Only applicable to user that do not have an internet connect.* After purchasing your annual renewal, this will allow you to update the expiry date of your subscription manually if you do not have an internet connect. If you have an internet connect, the expiry date will be updated automatically.

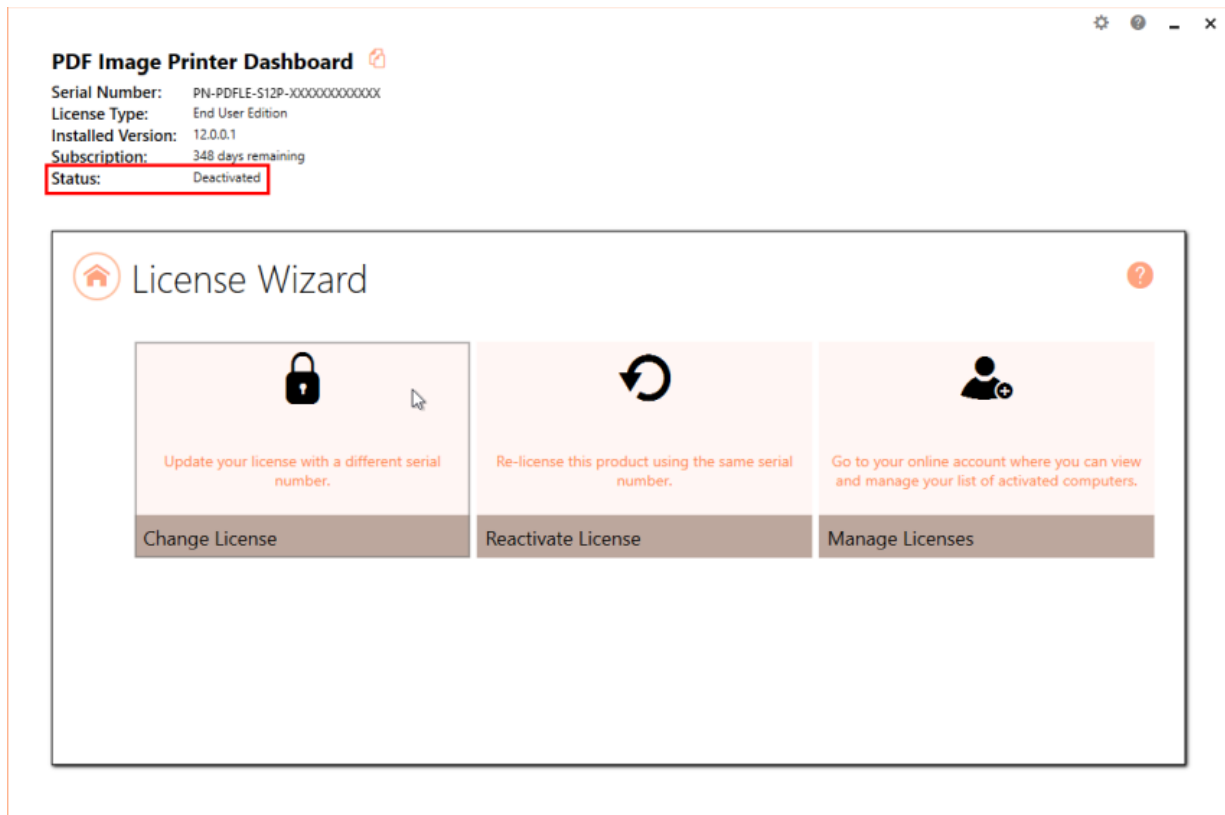


Note: If you are trying to deactivate PDF Image Printer on a computer so that the activation can be used on a new computer, you can also simply uninstall PDF Image Printer from the computer that is no longer in use. During the uninstall process, you will be prompted with whether or not you would like to deactivate PDF Image Printer as well.

Deactivated

Deactivated means that the license for this computer has been deactivated either by the user through the [License Manager](#) or by PEERNET at the request of the user. If your current activation status is Deactivated, there are three options available for changing your activation status:

1. **Change License** - This will allow you to enter a new serial number. This would be applicable if you have merged multiple serial numbers to one serial number, or if you have upgraded to a higher license level and receive a new serial number.
2. **Reactivate License** - This will try to activate PDF Image Printer again using the same serial number that was previously used to activate the product. This would be applicable if you have [edit your activation details](#) to deactivate a license on an old computer that is no longer in use, or have purchased more licenses.
3. **Manage Licenses** - This will take you to your [PEERNET online account](#) where you can [edit your activation details](#). This would be applicable if you are looking to deactivate a license on an old computer that is no longer in use, so that you can reactivate the deactivated computer.

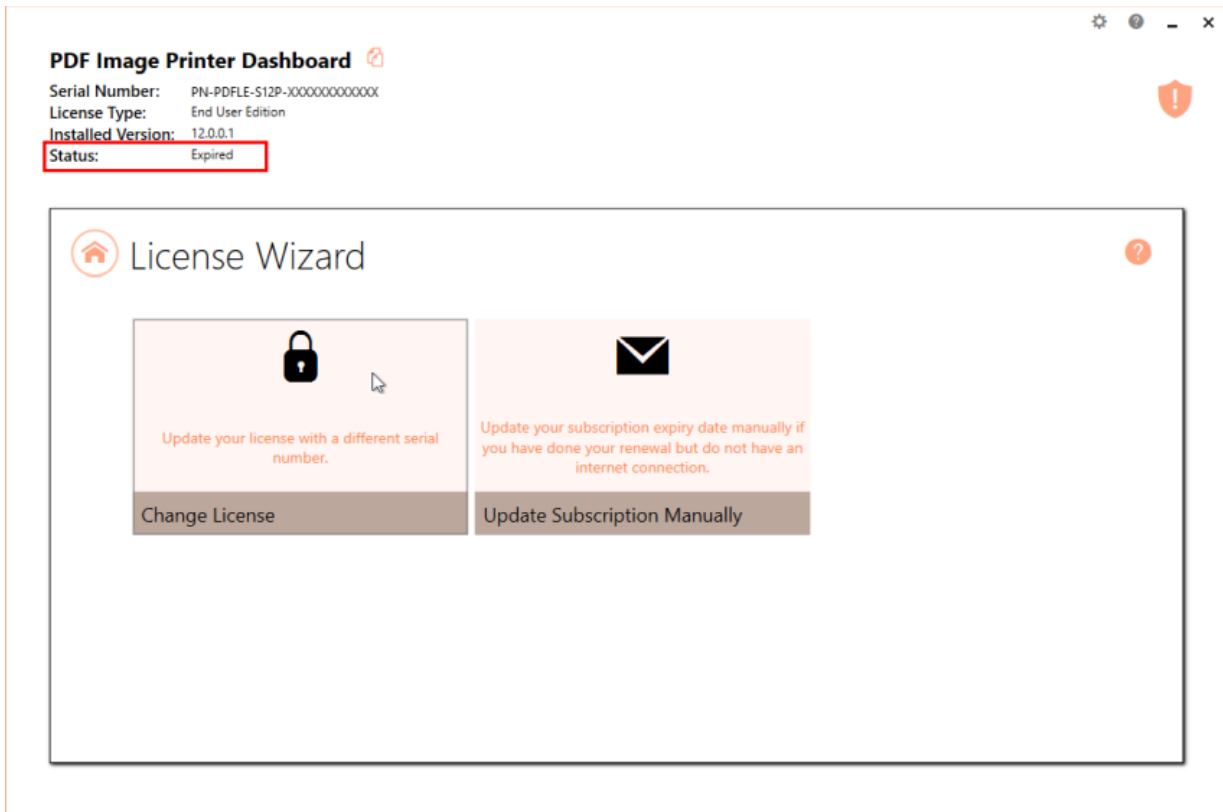


Expired

Expired means that your annual subscription has expired. If your annual subscription has expired, you need to renew your annual subscription through your [PEERNET online account](#). Once the annual renewal is purchased, the status will automatically switch back to Activated. If your current activation status is Expired, there are two options available for changing your activation status:

1. **Change License** - This will allow you to enter a new serial number. This would be applicable if you have merged multiple serial numbers to one serial number, or if you have upgraded to a higher license level and receive a new serial number.
2. **Update Subscription Manually** - **Only applicable to user that do not have an internet connection.* After purchasing your annual renewal, this will allow you to update the expiry date of your subscription

manually if you do not have an internet connect. If you have an internet connect, the expiry date will be updated automatically.



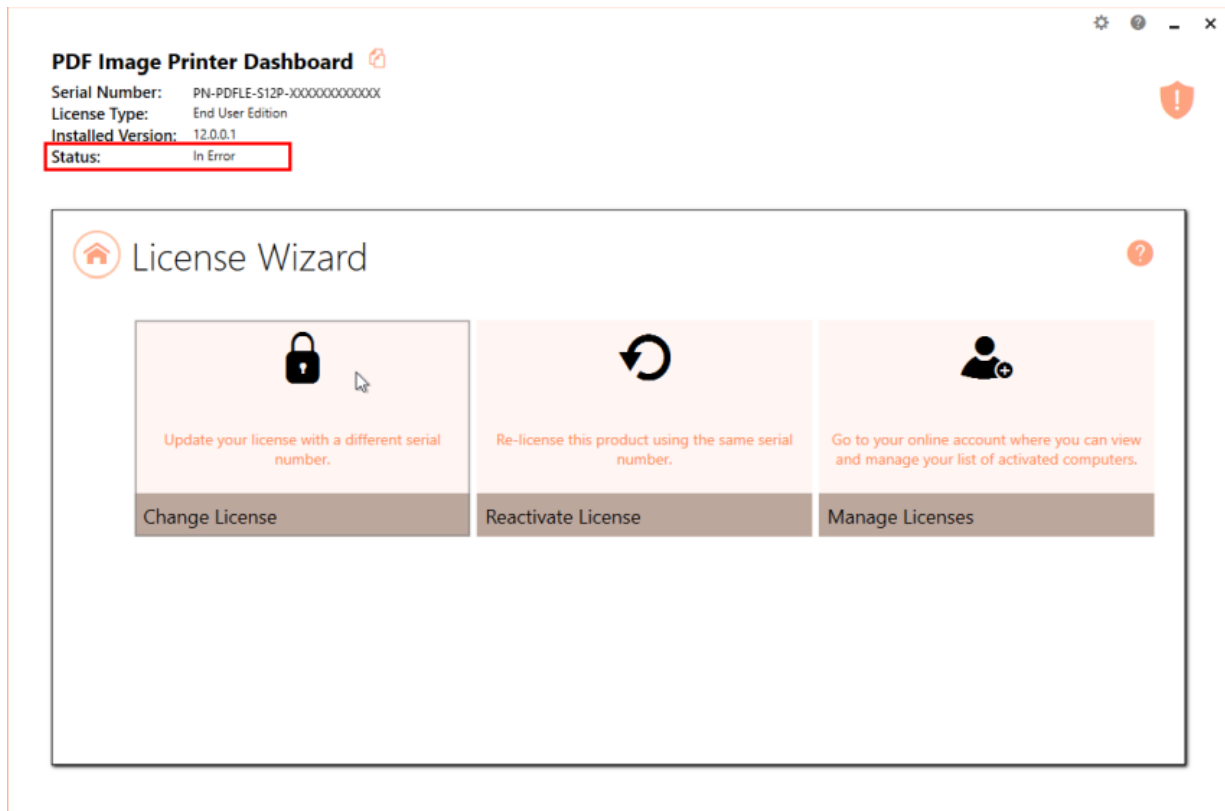
Error

Error means that something on the computer has changed so that PDF Image Printer believes it is no longer activated correctly. Examples of items that effect the license validity are: change of domain or workgroup, change in the network, change in the computer name, reformatting and reloading the computer, or system has virus. If your current activation status is Error, there are three options available for changing your activation status:

1. **Change License** - This will allow you to enter a new serial number. This would be applicable if you have merged multiple serial numbers to one serial number, or if you have upgraded to a higher license level and receive a new serial number.
2. **Reactivate License** - This will try to activate PDF Image Printer again using the same serial number that was previously used to activate the product. This would be applicable if you have made no changes to the

computer identity and the license file simply needs to be reset, or you have purchased more licenses.

- 3. Manage Licenses** - This will take you to your [PEERNET online account](#) where you can [edit your activation details](#). This would be applicable if you have made a change to the computer identity and need to remove the previous activation for the computer, so that you can reactivate the computer successfully.



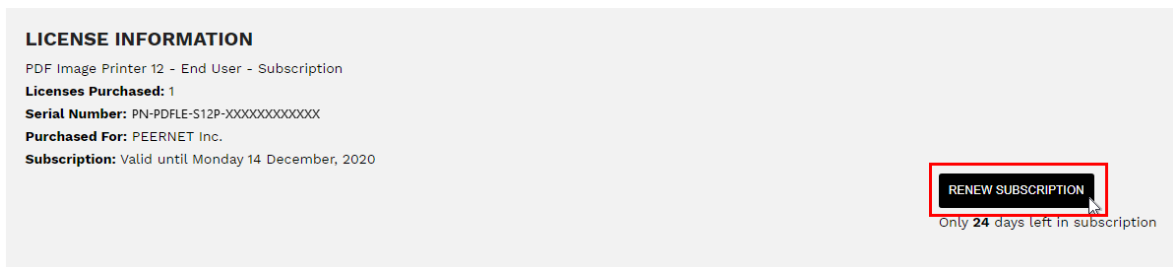
Renewing Your Annual Subscription

A subscription license of PDF Image Printer must be renewed annually in order to continue using the product. When your annual renewal is approaching, you will begin to receive notifications of the upcoming renewing both via email and via notification messages when you use PDF Image Printer.

You can always see how many days are remaining in your current subscription through the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard** and through your [PEERNET online account](#).

Renewing PDF Image Printer:

1. Log into your [PEERNET online account](#).
2. Find the listing for the relevant serial number in your **My Products** list.
3. Select "Renew Annual Subscription".



4. Select "Checkout".

As long as the computer(s) activated with the renewed serial number have an internet connection, the annual renewal will be automatically recognized. The PDF Image Printer **Dashboard** will automatically update to show the new expiry date.

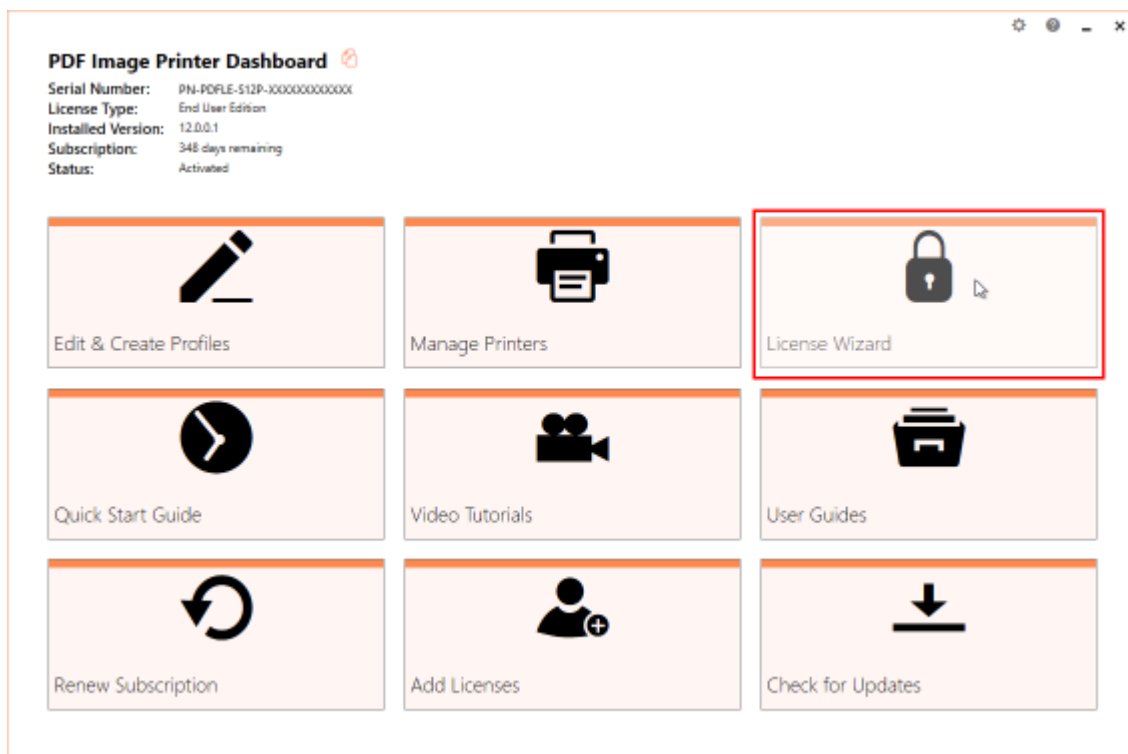
Renewing without an internet connection

If the computer(s) activated with renewed serial number do not have an internet connect, you will need to manually update the expiry date by following the instructions below. These steps must be taken after the annual renewal has been purchased through your [PEERNET online account](#).

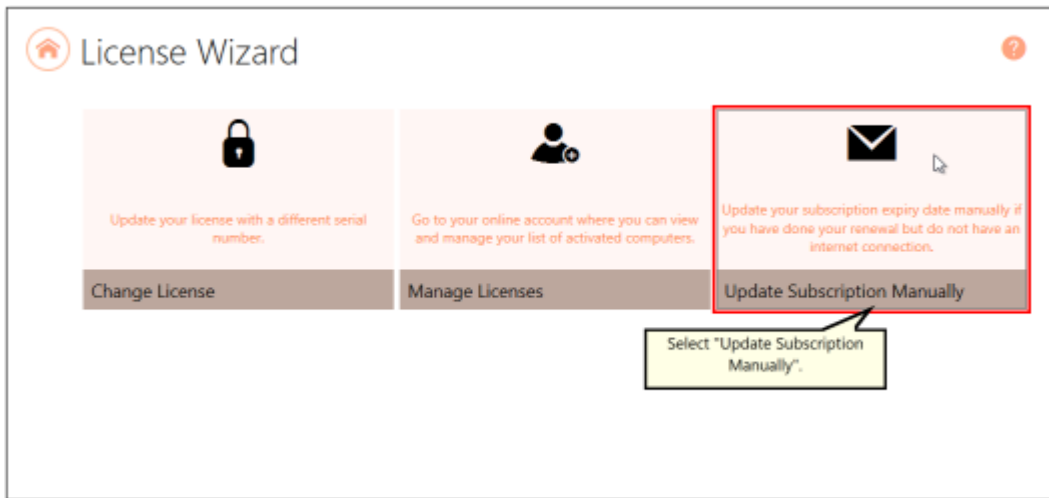
1. Begin by opening the **Dashboard** (double-click the PDF Image Printer icon on your desktop or select PDF Image Printer 12 from the Start menu).



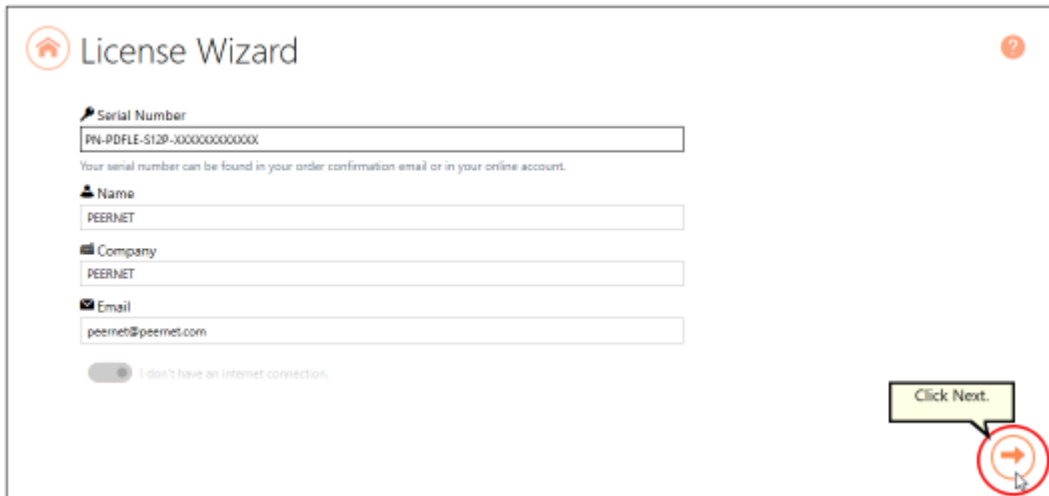
2. Select "License Wizard" to open the **License Wizard**.



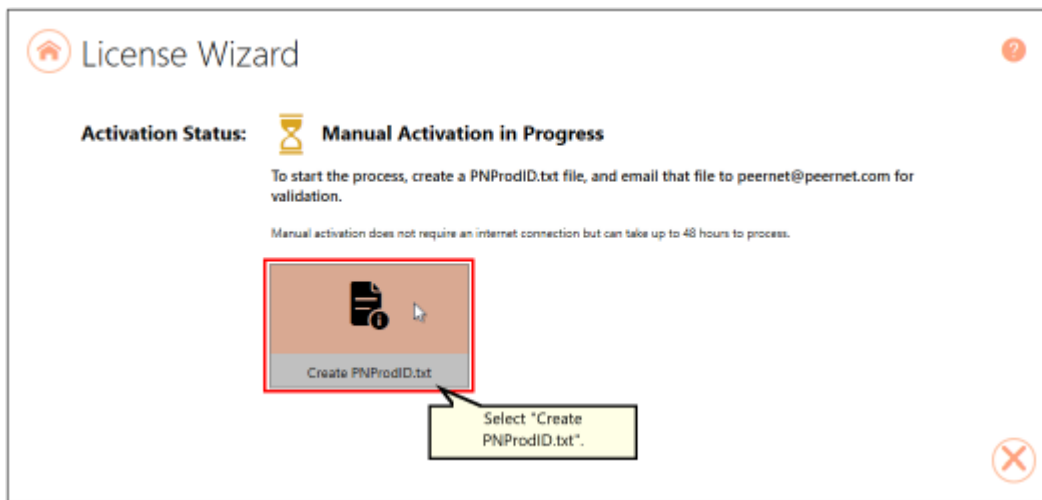
3. Select **Update Subscription Manually**.



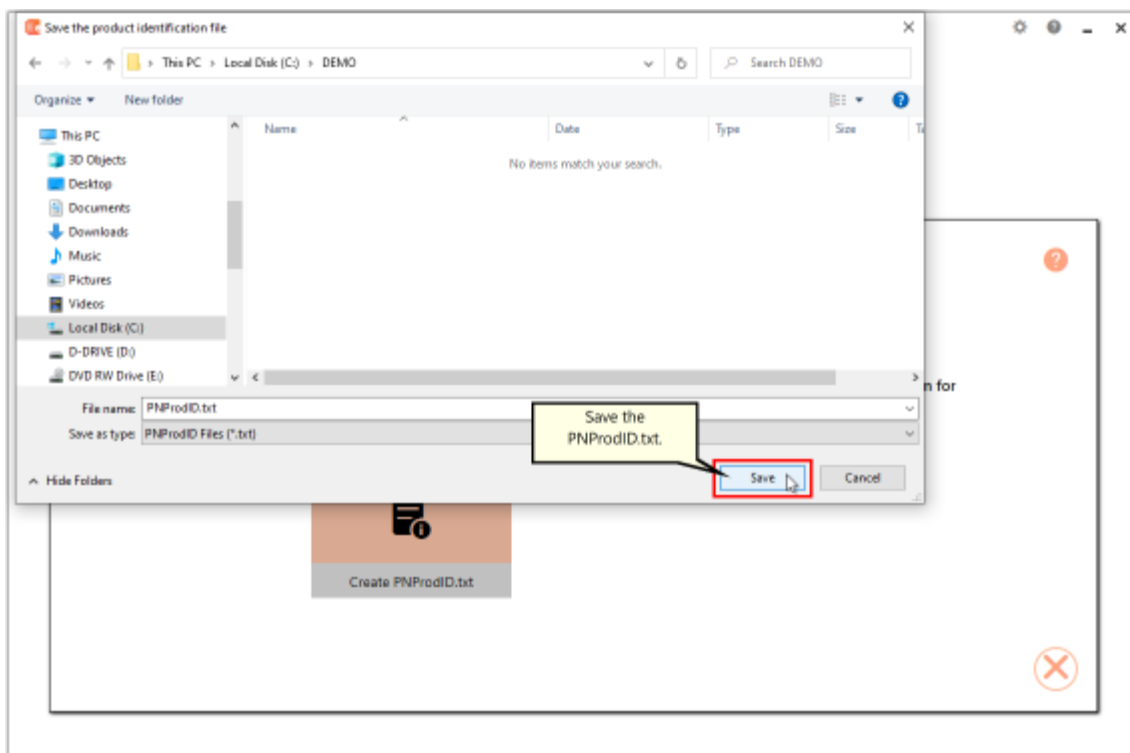
4. The serial number, name, company, and email address entered previously will be automatically populated. Click the next arrow to continue.



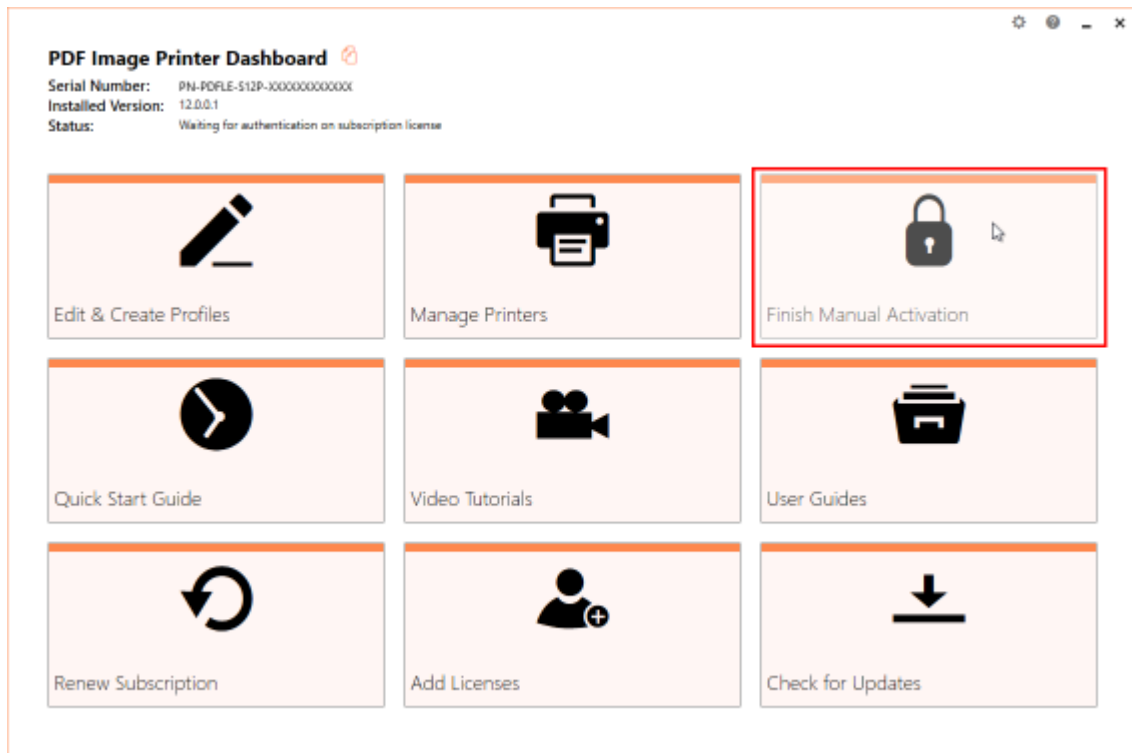
5. Click **Create PNProdID.txt**.



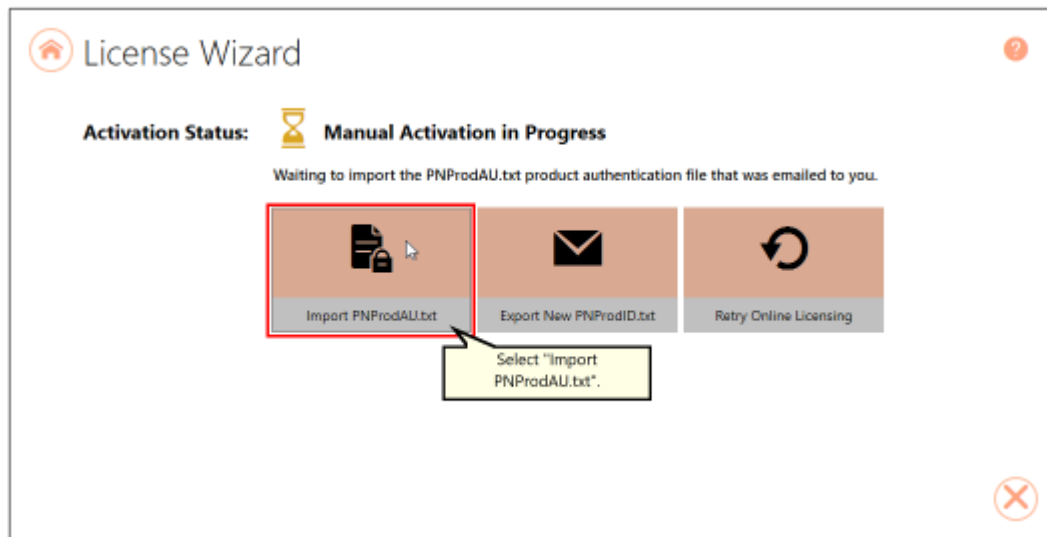
6. Save the **PNProdID.txt** product identification file and email the file to peernet@peernet.com for manual activation. Please note that these files (PNProdID files) are only authorized during business hours, which are 09h00 to 17h00, Monday through Friday, Eastern Standard Time (excluding statutory holidays).



7. When you have received the product authentication file **PNProdAU.txt** from PEERNET, restart the **License Wizard**.



8. Click **Import PNProdAU.txt** and complete the activation.



Edit Activation Details

With the release of PDF Image Printer 12 the associated PEERNET online account updates now allow users to view the activation details for their serial number(s) directly through their PEERNET online account. For users of PDF Image Printer 12 you are also able to edit your activation details directly through your PEERNET online account.

Edit Activation Details:

1. Log into your [PEERNET online account](#).
2. Find the listing for the relevant serial number in your **My Products** list.
3. Select **Manage Product** and scroll down to the **Activation Details** section. Here you will see a list of all computers currently activated with the serial number.
4. If you are no longer using PDF Image Printer on any of the listed computer, select the **Deactivate** button to deactivate PDF Image Printer on that computer. This will allow you to activate PDF Image Printer on a new computer.

The screenshot shows the Peernet website interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the Peernet logo and links for Blog, Company, Logout, My Account, and Shopping Cart (0). Below this is a secondary navigation bar with links for Products, Purchase, Learn & Support, and Contact. The main content area is titled 'My Account' and 'My Products'. The 'ACTIVATION DETAILS' section contains a table with the following data:

Activated On	Email	User Name	Computer Name	
Wednesday 18 November, 2020	peernet@peernet.com	Support	WIN10TESTING	Deactivate
Wednesday 18 November, 2020	peernet@peernet.com	Support	WIN10TESTING	Deactivate
Tuesday 17 November, 2020	peernet@peernet.com	Support	WIN10TESTING	Deactivate
Tuesday 10 November, 2020	peernet@peernet.com	Support	WIN10TESTING	Deactivate
Wednesday 21 October, 2020	peernet@peernet.com	Support	WIN10TESTING	Deactivate
Wednesday 22 July, 2020	support@peernet.com	Administrator	WIN10TESTING	

If you are running PDF Image Printer 12 on a server that is being decommissioned, and need to install and activate your license on a new server prior to the decommissioning date, please contact [PEERNET](#) with your serial number, old computer name(s), and decommissioning date.

One-Time License

PDF Image Printer 12 licenses are sold as either subscription licenses or one-time licenses. This chapter is for users with a one-time license and explains how to:

- [Activate PDF Image Printer](#)
- [View](#) and [Change](#) your Activation Status

The ability to re-use/transfer licenses and [edit your activation details](#) is only available with a subscription license, and is not an option for one-time licenses.

What is a one-time license?

A one-time license gives users access to a perpetual activation of PDF Image Printer 12 up to the limit of number of licenses purchased. This is a classic software license meaning that you can go on using any license(s) you purchase for as long as you like, but once a license is consumed it can never be moved/transferred to a new computer or re-used after an operating system upgrade, computer crash or reformatting (any action that would change the computer identity).

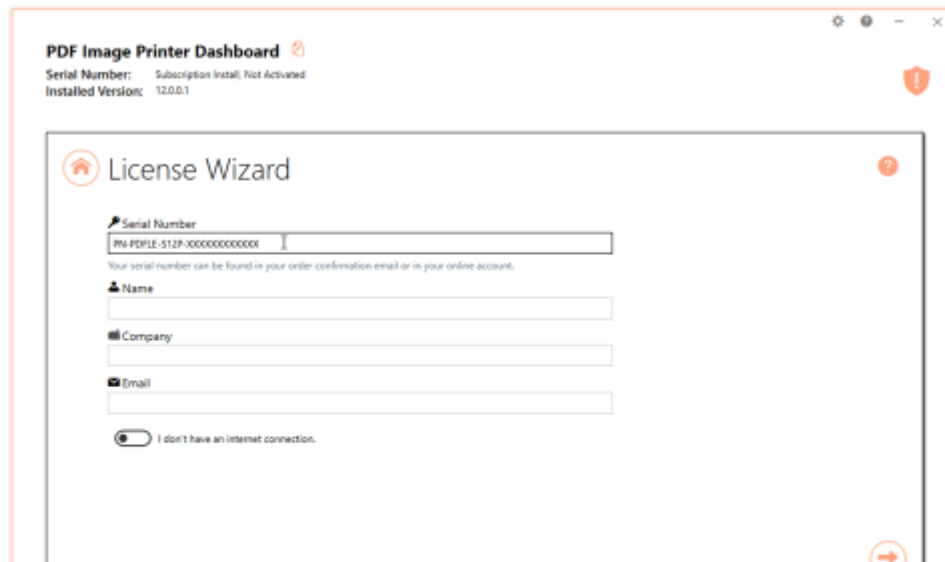
With a one-time license, you are not entitled to request license adjustments from PEERNET or [edit your activation details](#) through your PEERNET online account. In addition, you will not receive any update or upgrades that are released for PDF Image Printer. Lastly, you are only entitled to the most basic technical support.

For the ability to request license adjustments, edit your activation details, access updates and upgrades, and receive priority technical support, please see our [subscription license](#).

Activating PDF Image Printer

The first step to activating PDF Image Printer is installing your purchase copy of the software which is available through your online account.

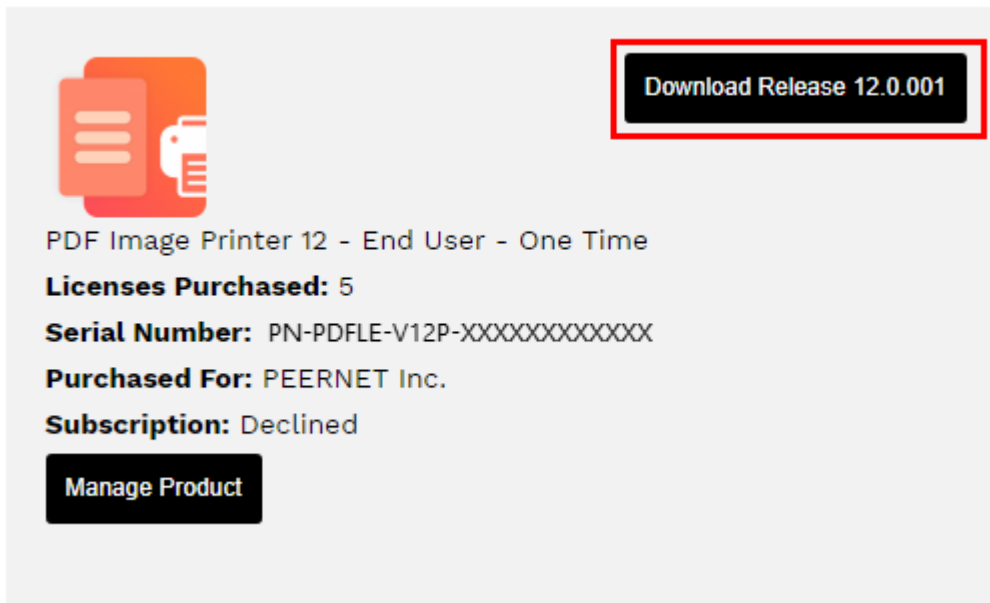
If you installed the trial version of PDF Image Printer before purchasing, you still need to install your purchased copy of the software.



Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Installing PDF Image Printer:

1. Log into your [PEERNET online account](#).
2. Find the desired software in your **My Products** list, and select the **Download Release** button to download the latest release of the software.



3. In most cases, the EXE file is located in the Downloads folder. Open File Explorer and browse to C:\Users\YOUR USERNAME\Downloads\
4. Double-click the EXE file to run the PDF Image Printer install.

If you installed the trial version of PDF Image Printer before purchasing, when you run the install for the purchased copy, the previously installed trial version will prompt you to uninstall it. Select "next" to remove the trial version and replace it with your purchased copy.

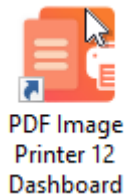
At the end of the installation process, you are given the option to launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**. Leave "Open the PDF Image Printer 12 Dashboard now" checked in order to open the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard** directly. This is the fastest way to proceed to activating your software.

Launching the License Wizard

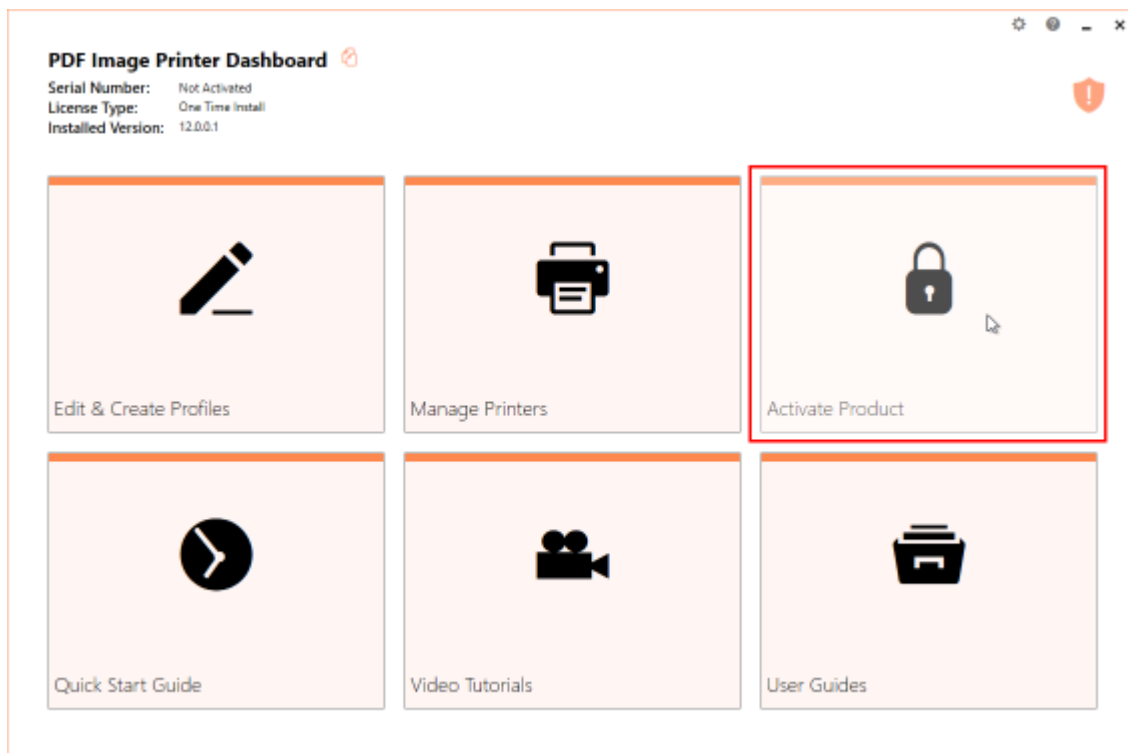
The **License Wizard** is accessible from the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.

To launch the **License Wizard**:

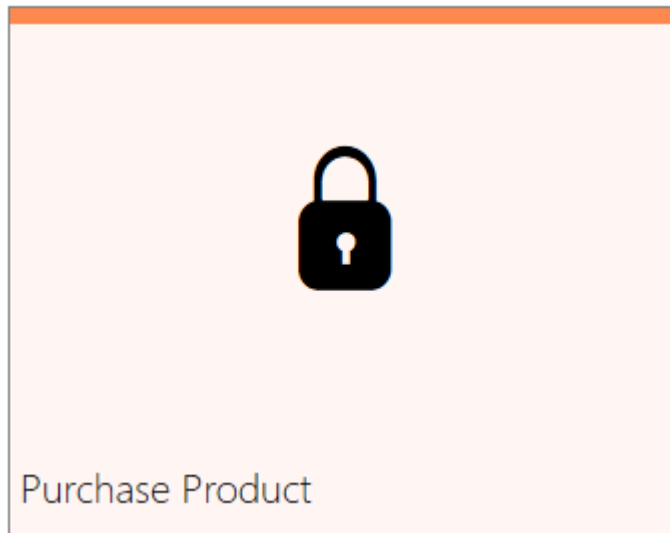
1. Begin by opening the **Dashboard** (double-click the PDF Image Printer icon on your desktop or select PDF Image Printer 12 from the Start menu).



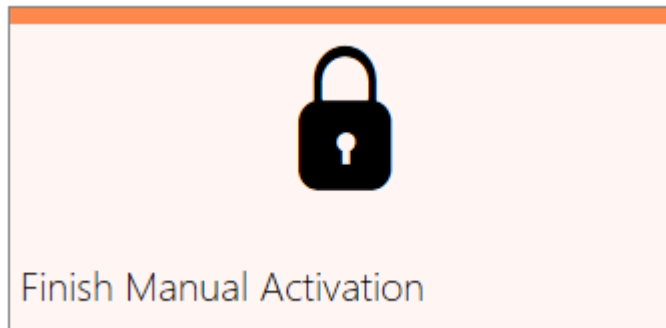
2. Select "Activate Product" to open the License Wizard.



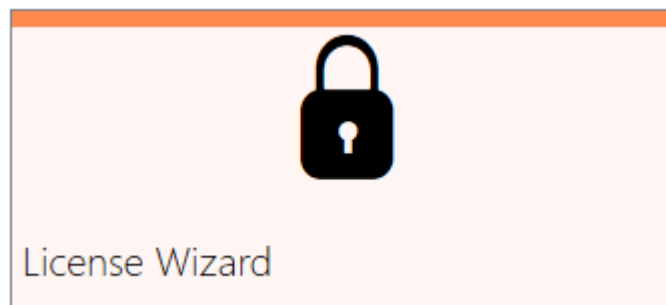
- If you have the trial version of PDF Image Printer installed instead of your purchased copy, this tile will say "Purchase Product". Please return to [Activating PDF Image Printer](#) for instruction on installing your purchase copy of the software.



- If you are in the middle of a manual activation process, the tile will say "Finish Manual Activation".



- If the software is already licensed, this title will say "License Wizard".



Entering Your Serial Number

To activate your product you need to enter in the serial number that was included with your order confirmation email and your user information. You can also find your serial number in through your [PEERNET online account](#).

Entering your serial number

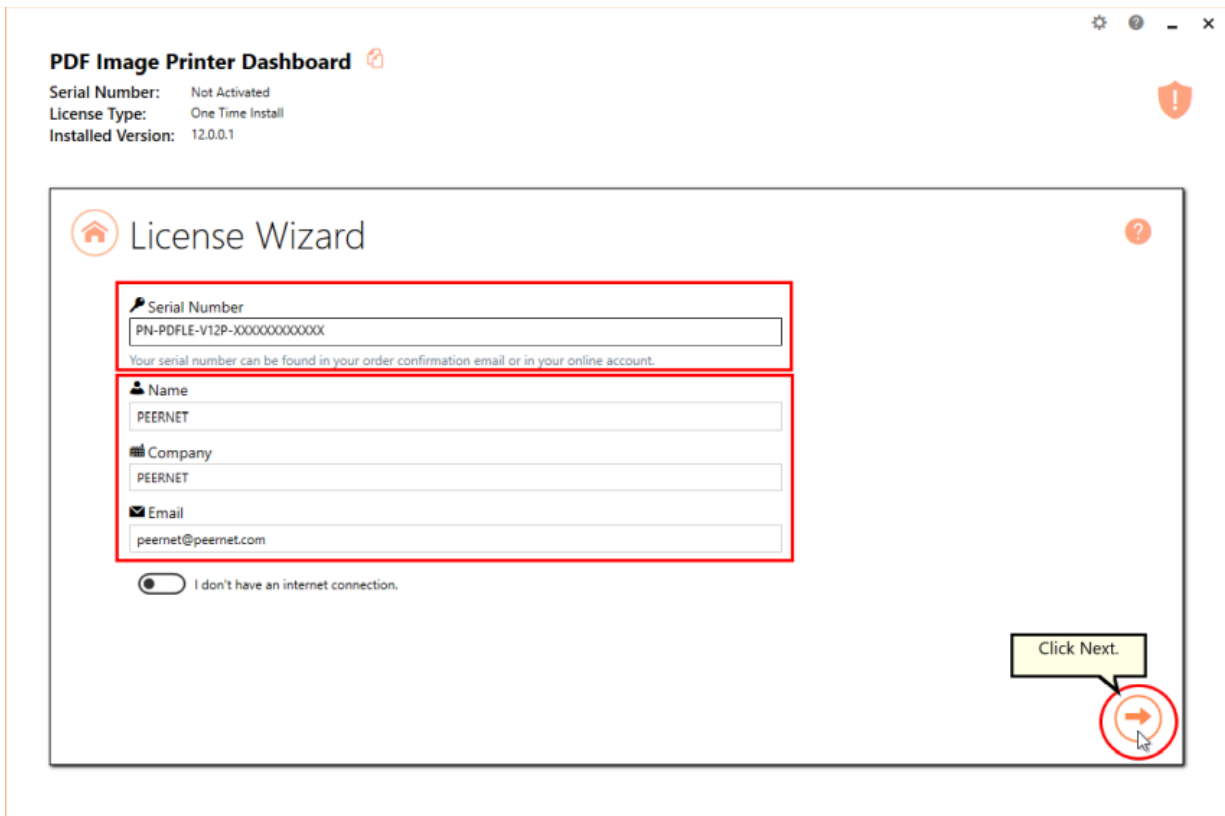
Enter the serial number into the box on the screen. If you copy your entire serial number from your email and then return to this dialog it will automatically be filled into the box.

The serial number is case sensitive and it is important to type the serial number exactly as it is received. Be sure not to leave any spaces before or after the serial number when typing or pasting, and note that the serial number ends with a series of hexadecimal characters (0-9,A-F).

Entering your user information

If possible, your Name and Company information is automatically picked up from your system settings. The information in these fields can be change if required.

You cannot continue if either the Name or the Email Address field is left blank. Email addresses entered here are only used by PEERNET to identify users. We will never rent or sell our customer's and client's information to third parties.



Activating without an internet connection

If you are having difficulty connecting to the internet, or do not want to activate over the internet, you can choose to manually activate the product by checking "I don't have an internet connection".

License Wizard

Serial Number
PN-PDFLE-V12P-XXXXXXXXXXXX

Your serial number can be found in your order confirmation email or in your online account.

Name
PEERNET

Company
PEERNET

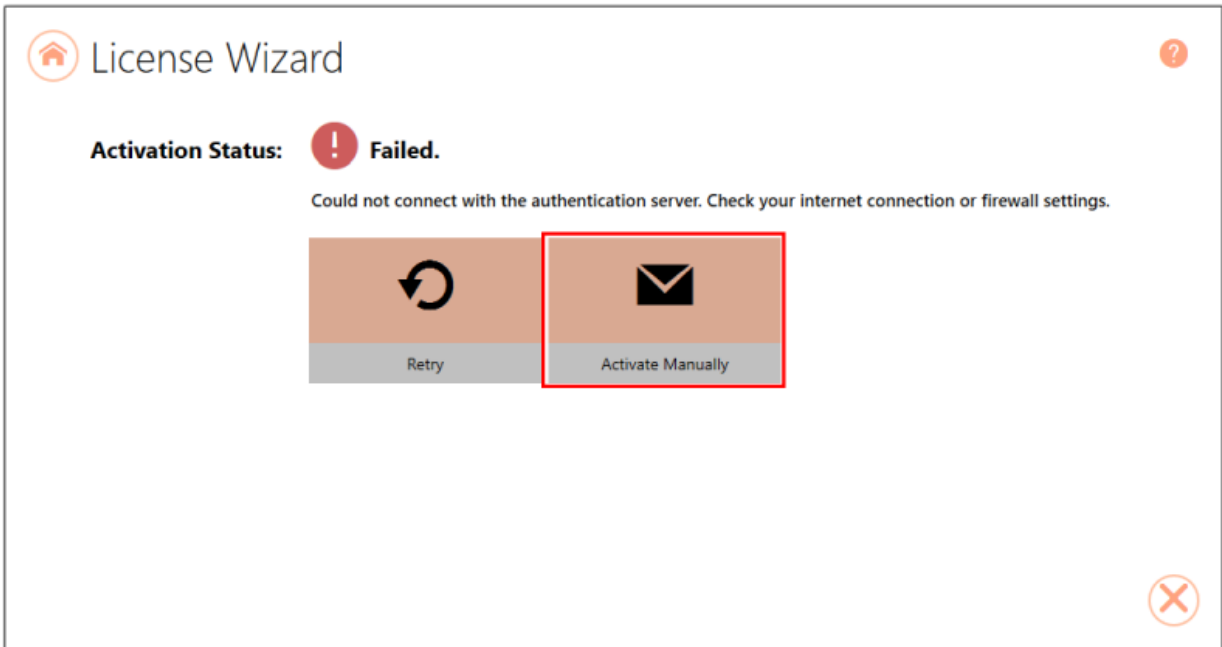
Email
peernet@peernet.com

I don't have an internet connection.

Click Next.

Manual activation does not require an internet connection on the computer the software is installed on, but it does require that you have the ability to email an encrypted file to PEERNET for authentication. We will return the authenticated file to you, which you then import using the License Wizard to complete the activation process. These files are processed by PEERNET's technical staff from 09h00 to 17h00, Monday to Friday, Eastern Standard Time.

When activating over the internet, the License Wizard will attempt to validate an internet connection, and will prompt with the choice to license manually if it cannot connect. Activating over the internet may also fail if you have a firewall or anti-virus software blocking the connection. Click **Activate Manually** to begin the manual activation process, or click **Retry** to try activating online again.



Manually Activating PDF Image Printer

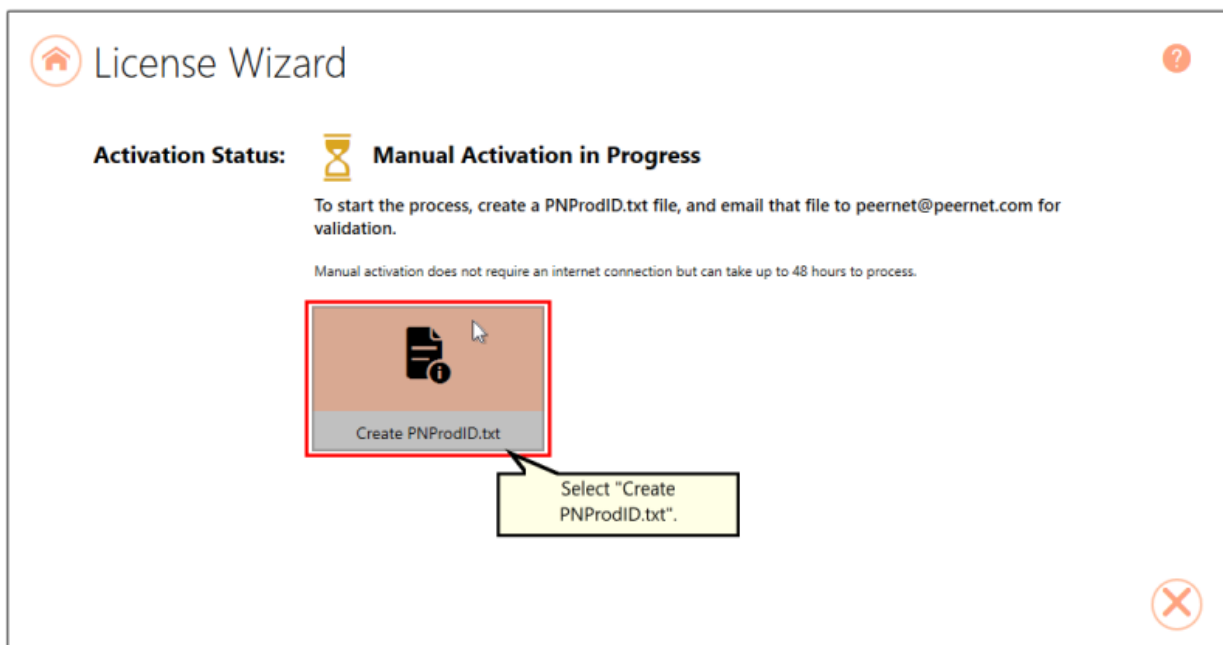
In most cases, you will not have to activate your product manually. This only happens when PDF Image Printer is installed on a computer that has no access to the internet, or the computer is configured such that the user cannot access the internet. This can also happen if a firewall program or anti-virus software blocks our attempt to connect with our license server.

If you do have to activate manually, you will need to follow the steps below. Please note that these files (PNProdID files) are only authorized during business hours, which are 09h00 to 17h00, Monday through Friday, Eastern Standard Time (excluding statutory holidays).

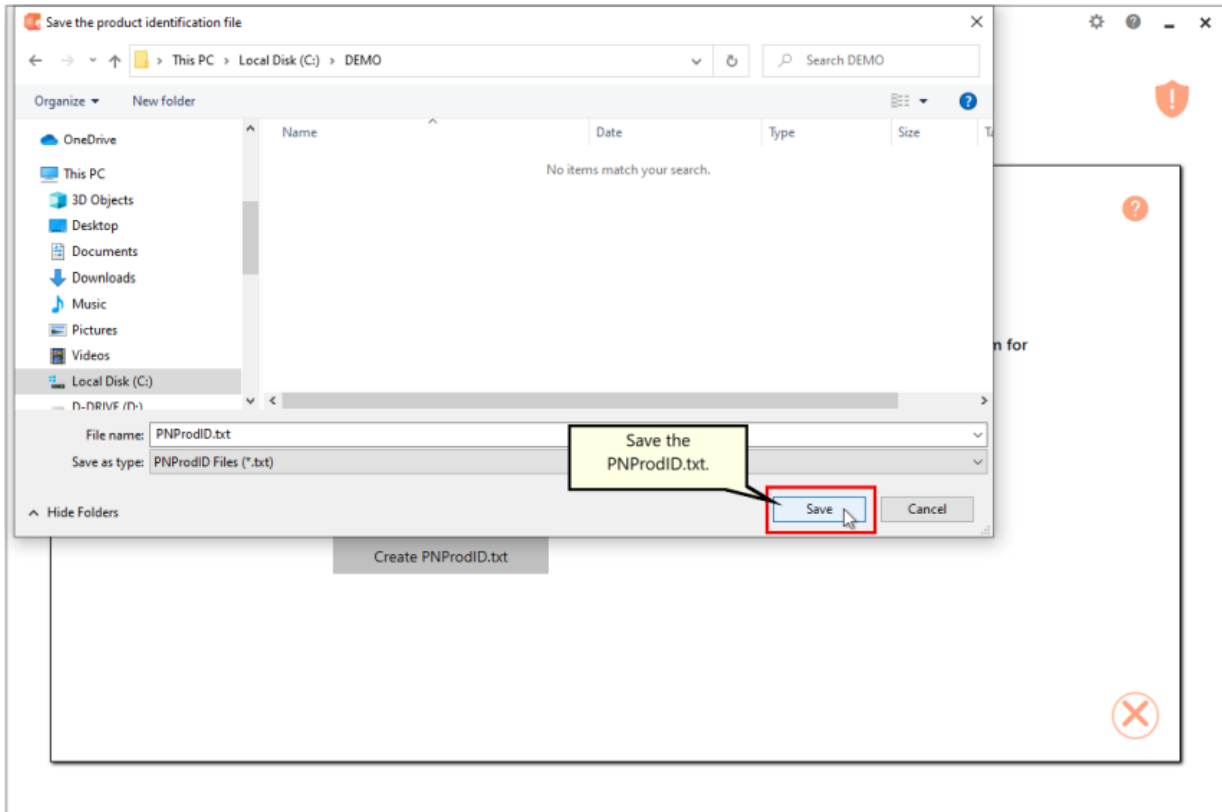
1. Use the **License Wizard** to create the encrypted file, **PNProdID.txt**.
2. Email the file to peernet@peernet.com for manual activation. For computers with no email capability, you can save the file to a shared network drive, or use an external storage device such as a USB flash drive (also known as thumb drives), or a MicroSD storage card to copy the file to a computer with email capabilities.
3. A file named **PNProdAU.txt** will be emailed back to you. Copy this file back to the computer where PDF Image Printer is installed and restart the **License Wizard** to complete the license activation.

Exporting the PNProdID.txt file

To create the file click **Create PNProdID.txt**.



A save dialog box will appear prompting you to choose where to save the **PNProdID.txt** product identification file. This dialog may look slightly different depending on which version of Windows you are running. Save this file in an easy to remember location, like your Desktop or your Documents folder.

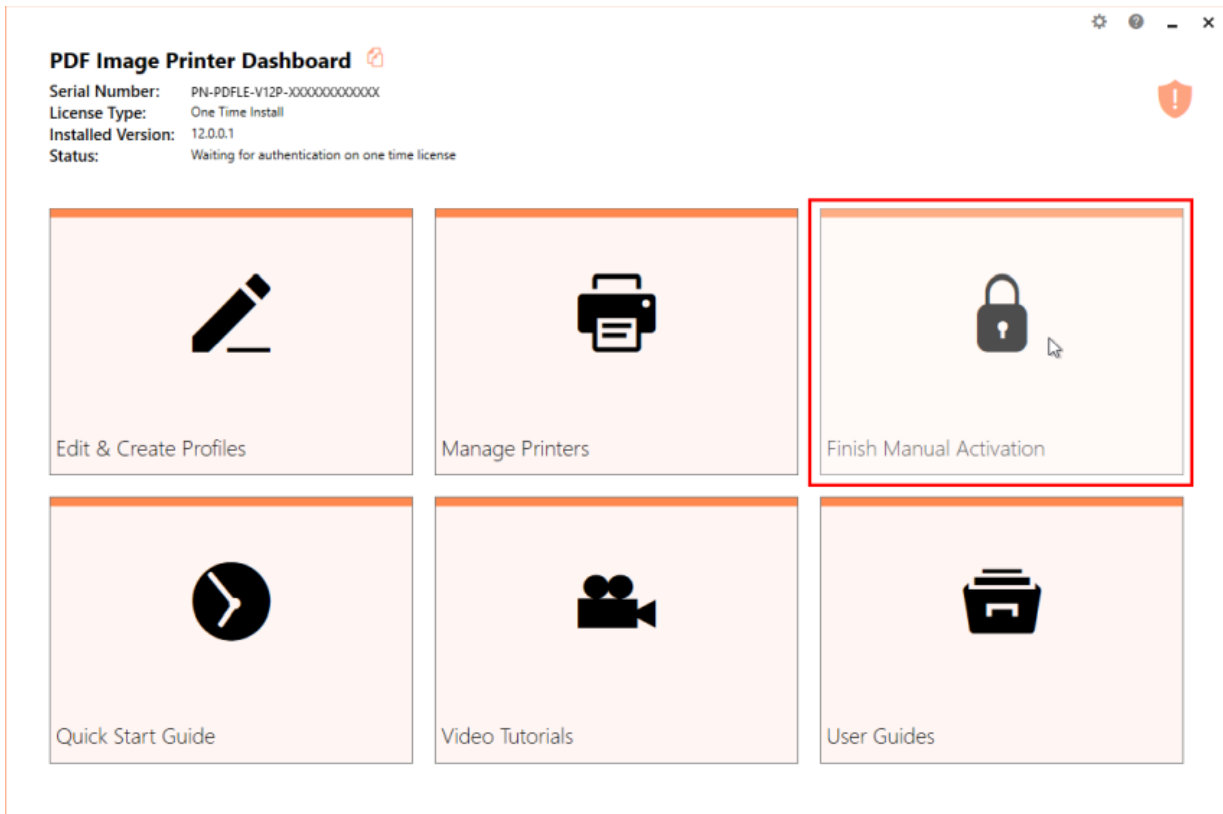


You need to email this file to peernet@peernet.com. For computers with no email capability, you can save the file to a shared network drive, or use an external storage device such as a USB flash drive or a MicroSD storage card to copy the file to another computer.

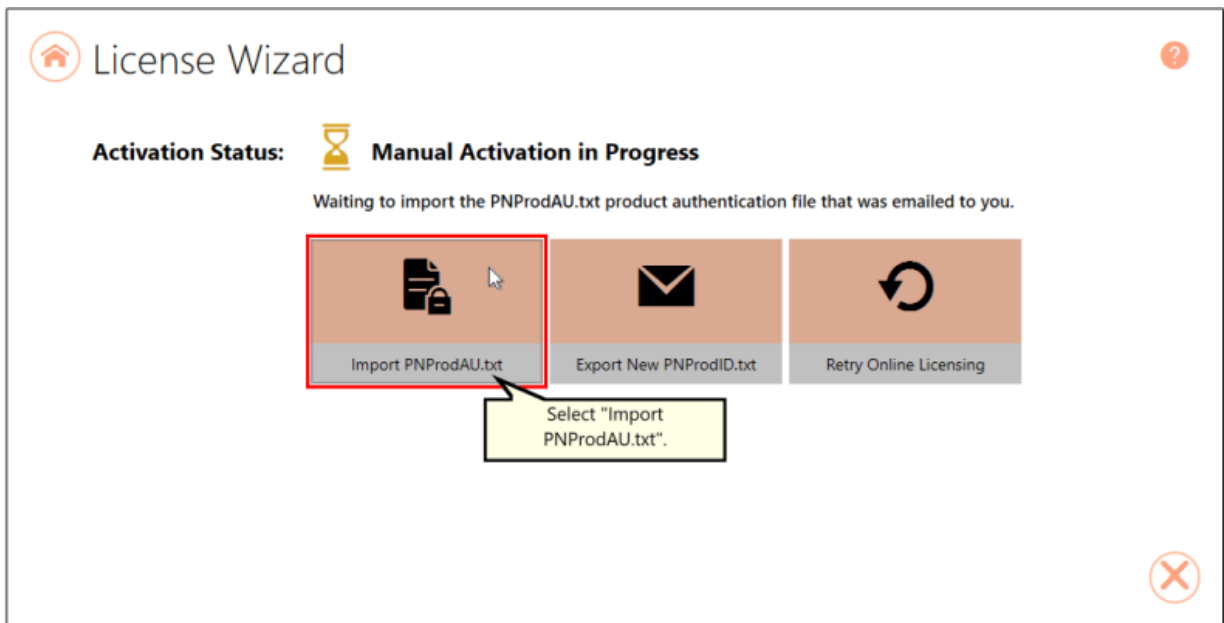
Importing the PNProdAU.txt file

When you have received the product authentication file **PNProdAU.txt** from PEERNET Inc., you will need save the file in an easy to remember location, like your Desktop or your Documents folder. If you need to move the authentication file back to the computer where PDF Image Printer is installed, do so now.

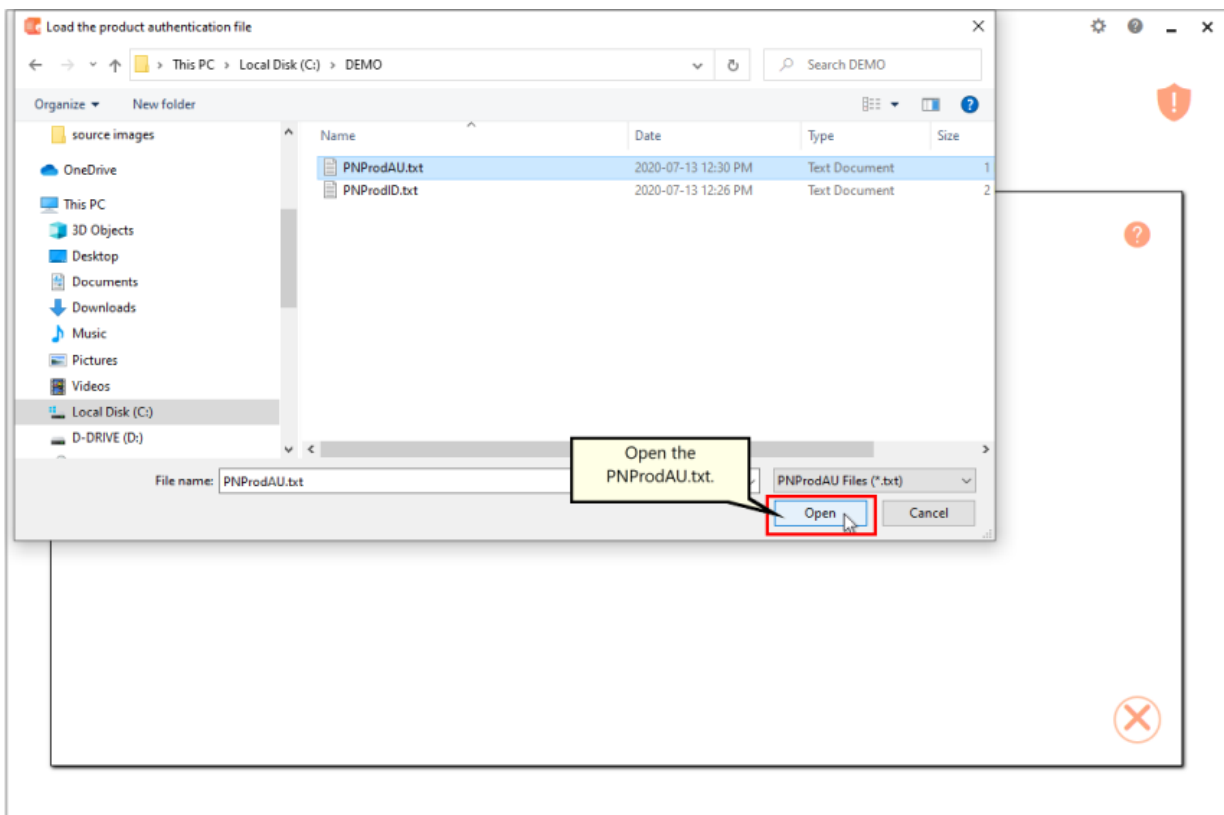
On the computer where PDF Image Printer is installed, restart the License Wizard by following the steps outlined in [Launching the License Wizard](#). The License Wizard will automatically start at the import screen.



Click **Import PNProdAU.txt**. If you did not receive a PNProdAu.txt file, you can restart the manual licensing process. You also have the option to retry online activation if you now have an internet connection or have resolved an issue with your firewall settings.



A browse dialog box will appear. This dialog may look slightly different depending on which version of Windows you are running. Locate where you saved the **PNPProdAU.txt** file you received from PEERNET and click the Open button to import the file.

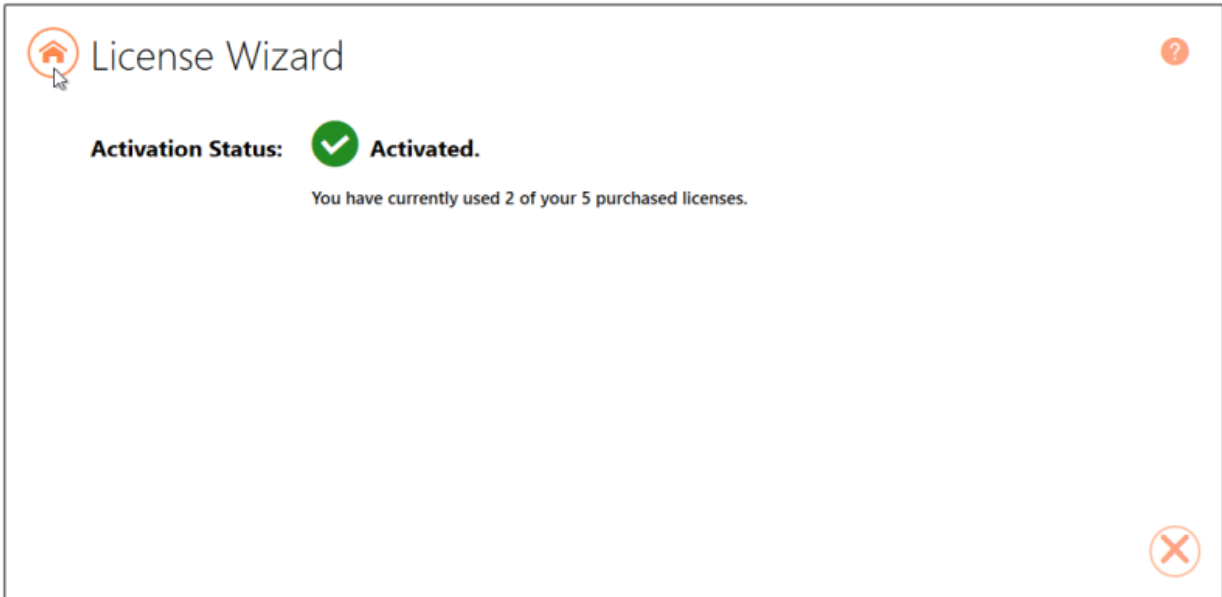


The authentication file is verified and you are automatically moved to the [Activation Status Results](#) screen.

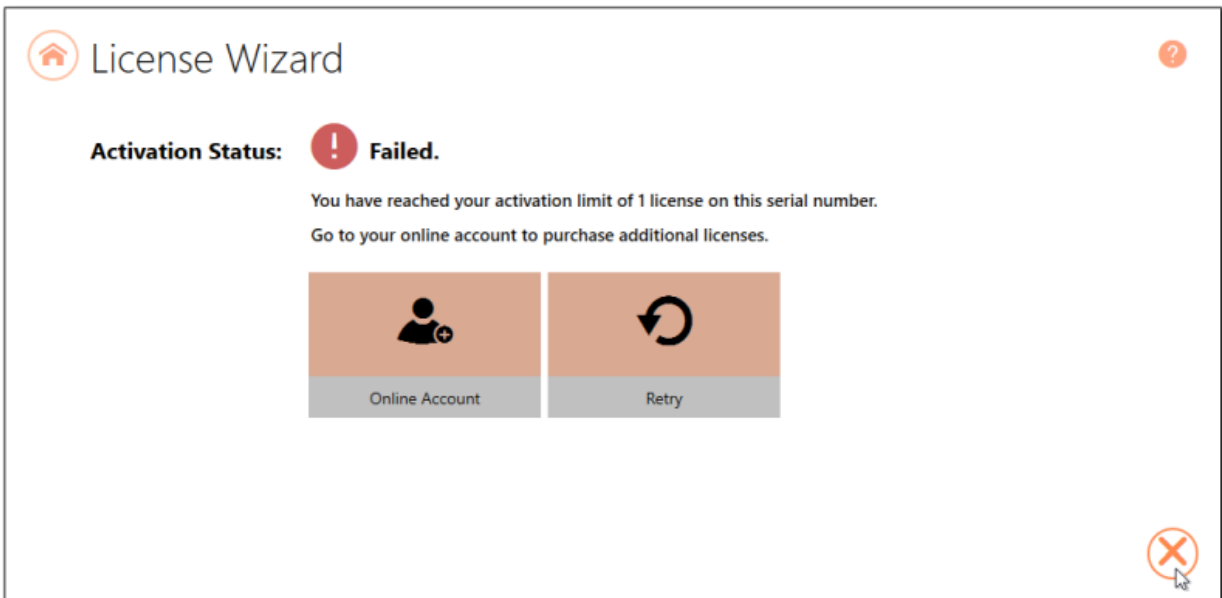
Activation Status Results

This screen displays your activation status.

If the product is successfully activated, the Activation Status will display your status as **Activated**.



If an error occurred during activation, the Activation Status will display your status as **Failed** with an explanation of the error that occurred. The most common error message that occurs is that you have consumed all of your licenses.



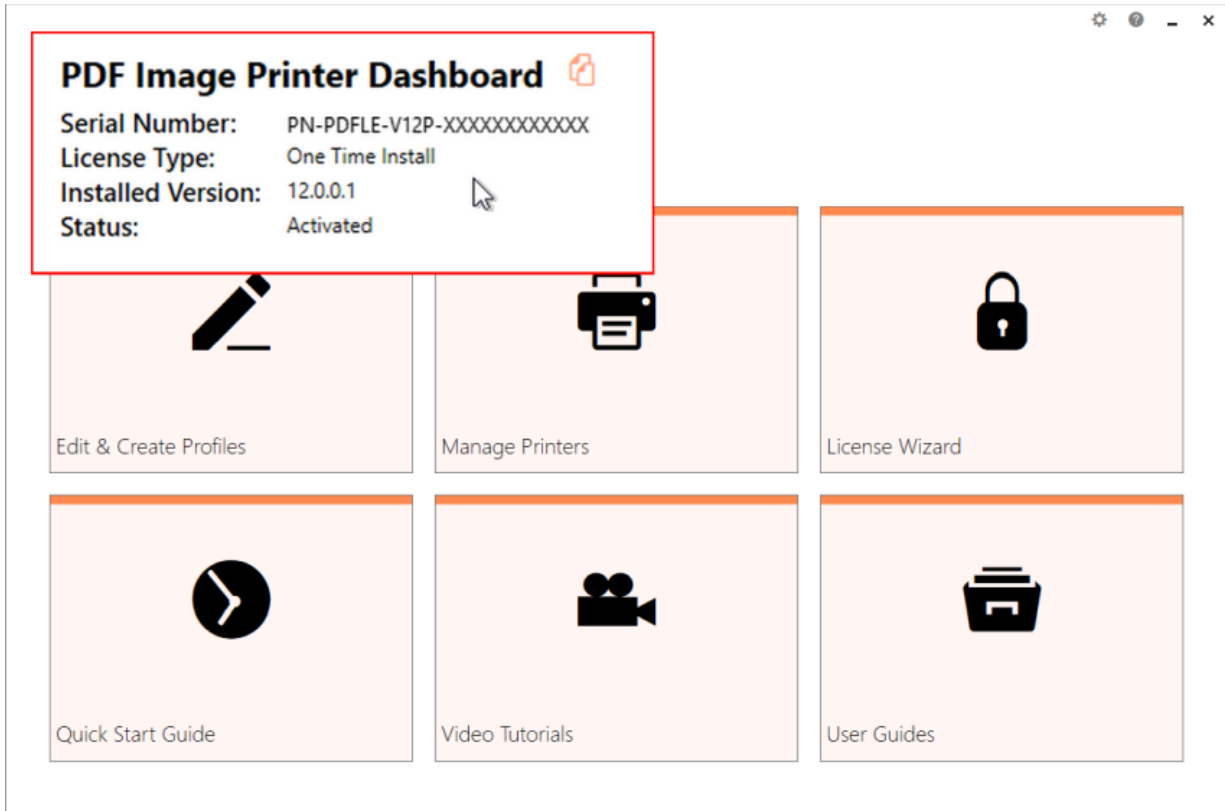
When you have used all your licenses, you will not be able to use the product on this computer until you purchase additional licenses. Since you purchased a one-time license of PDF Image Printer you do not have the option to re-use any licenses that are no longer use, or re-license a computer after a computer crash or operating system upgrade. Once they have been consumed to activate a computer, one-time licenses can never be reused. Therefore, if you need to license a new computer or re-license a reformatted computer, you will need to purchase a new license.

If you want the option to re-use licenses in the future, consider purchasing a new subscription license of PDF Image Printer instead of another one-time license. A subscription license entitles you to license adjustments, software updates/upgrades, and priority support.

Abort the activation process by clicking the **Close icon** in the bottom right-hand corner. Once you have purchased additional licenses, re-start the activation process by [Launching the License Wizard](#).

Viewing Your Activation Status

Your activation status is always readily available in the top left-hand corner of the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



The **Dashboard** always shows the following information:

1. **Serial Number** - The serial numbers used to activate PDF Image Printer on this computer.
2. **Installed Version** - The version number of PDF Image Printer currently installed on this computer.
3. **Activation Status** - The status of the product activation on this computer.
 - *Not Activated* - PDF Image Printer has been installed but had not yet been activated using your serial number.
 - *Activated* - PDF Image Printer has been activated using your serial number.
 - *Error* - An event has occurred that has impacted the validity of your activation status.

Select the **copy icon** to quickly save your license information to your clipboard.

PDF Image Printer Dashboard



Serial Number:	PN-PDFLE-V12P-XXXXXXXXXXXX
License Type:	One Time Install
Installed Version:	12.0.0.1
Status:	Activated

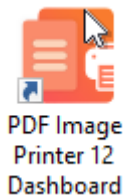
Changing Your Activations Status

Since you purchased a one-time license of PDF Image Printer you do not have the option to re-use any licenses that are no longer use, or reactivate a computer after a computer crash or operating system upgrade. Therefore, there are no changes that you can make to the activation status of your one-time license. Once a computer has been activated, that license has been consumed and cannot be re-used.

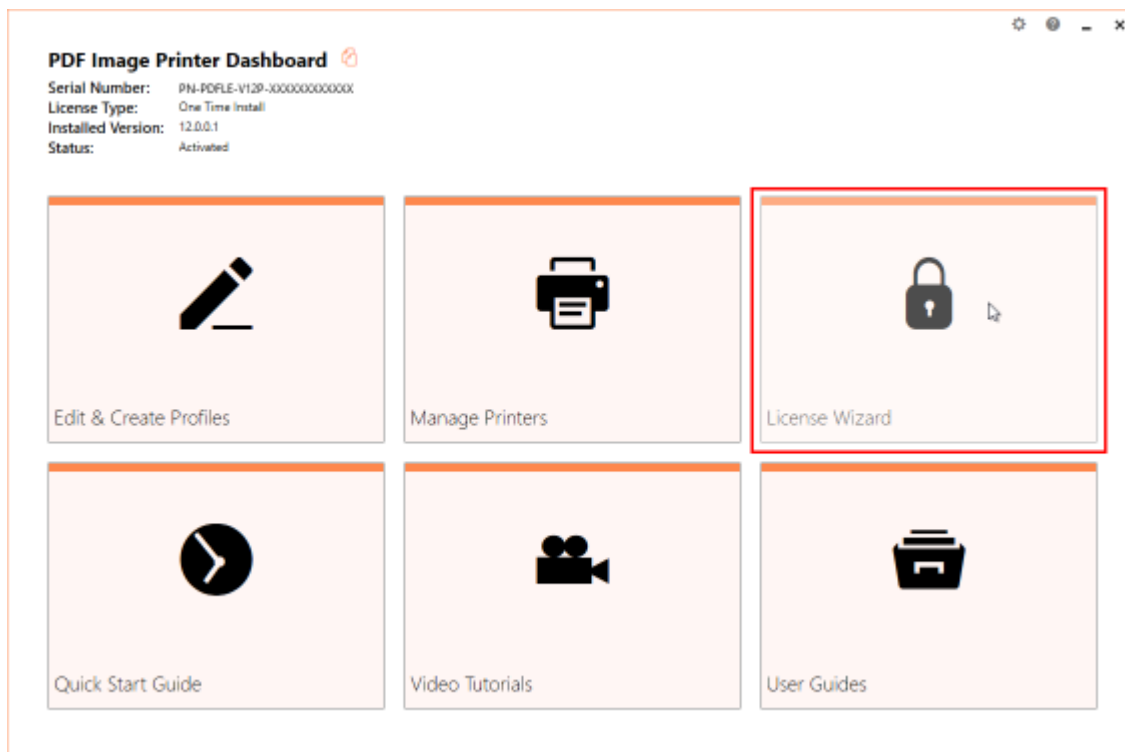
Once PDF Image Printer is **Activated**, if you launch the License Wizard again, you will see this notice about the one-time license as well as links to purchase a subscription license of PDF Image Printer or another one-time license of PDF Image Printer.

To launch the **License Wizard**:

1. Begin by opening the **Dashboard** (double-click the PDF Image Printer icon on your desktop or select PDF Image Printer 12 from the Start menu).



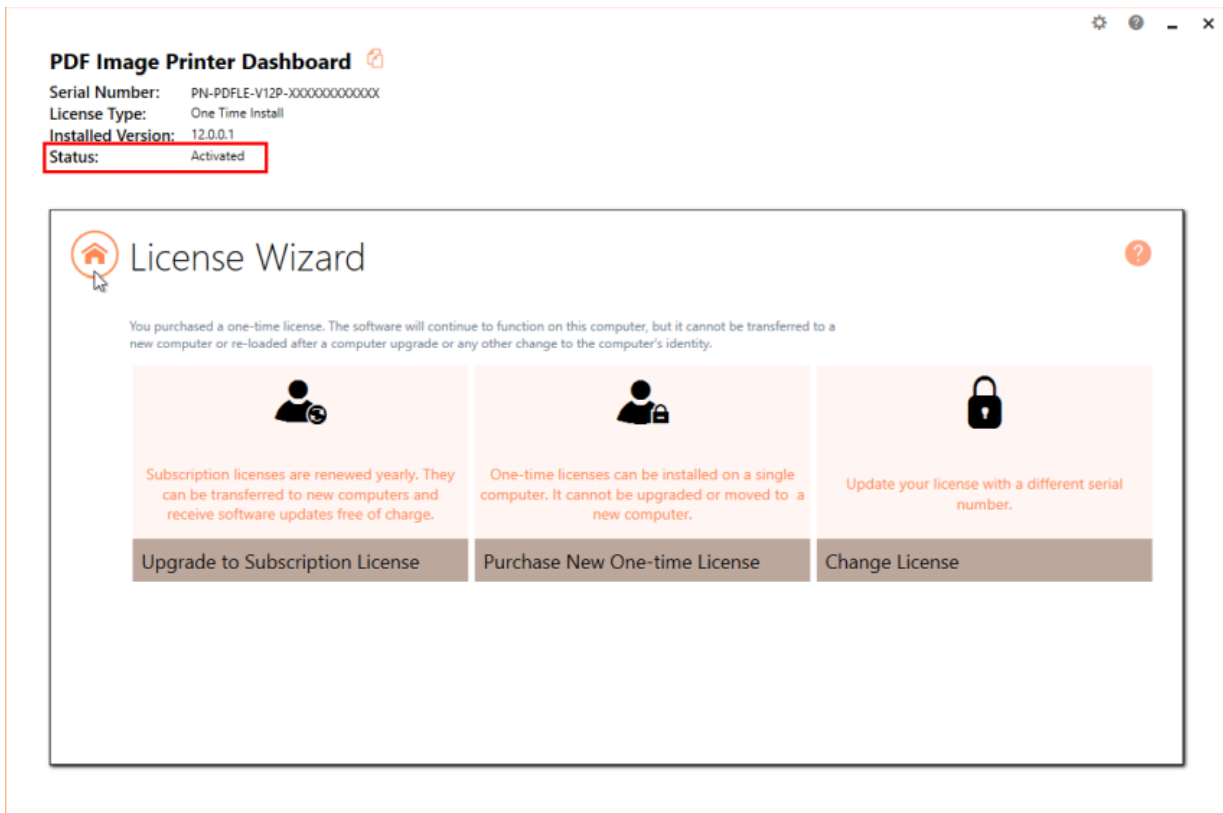
2. Select "License Wizard" to open the **License Wizard**.



Activated

If your current activation status is Activated, there are three options available through the License Wizard:

1. **Upgrade to Subscription** - This will take you to your [PEERNET online account](#) where you can purchase a new subscription license. You may be interested in switching to a subscription license if you need to move the software to a new computer or want to access the latest version of PDF Image Printer.
2. **Purchase New One-Time** - This will take you to your [PEERNET online account](#) where you can purchase a new subscription one-time. You will need to buy a new one-time license if you need to move the software to a new computer.
3. **Change License** - This will allow you to enter a new serial number. This would be applicable if you have merged multiple serial numbers to one serial number, or if you have receive a new serial number. Note: If you have switched to a subscription license, you will need to uninstall the one-time install and install the purchased subscription install. You cannot just do a change license.



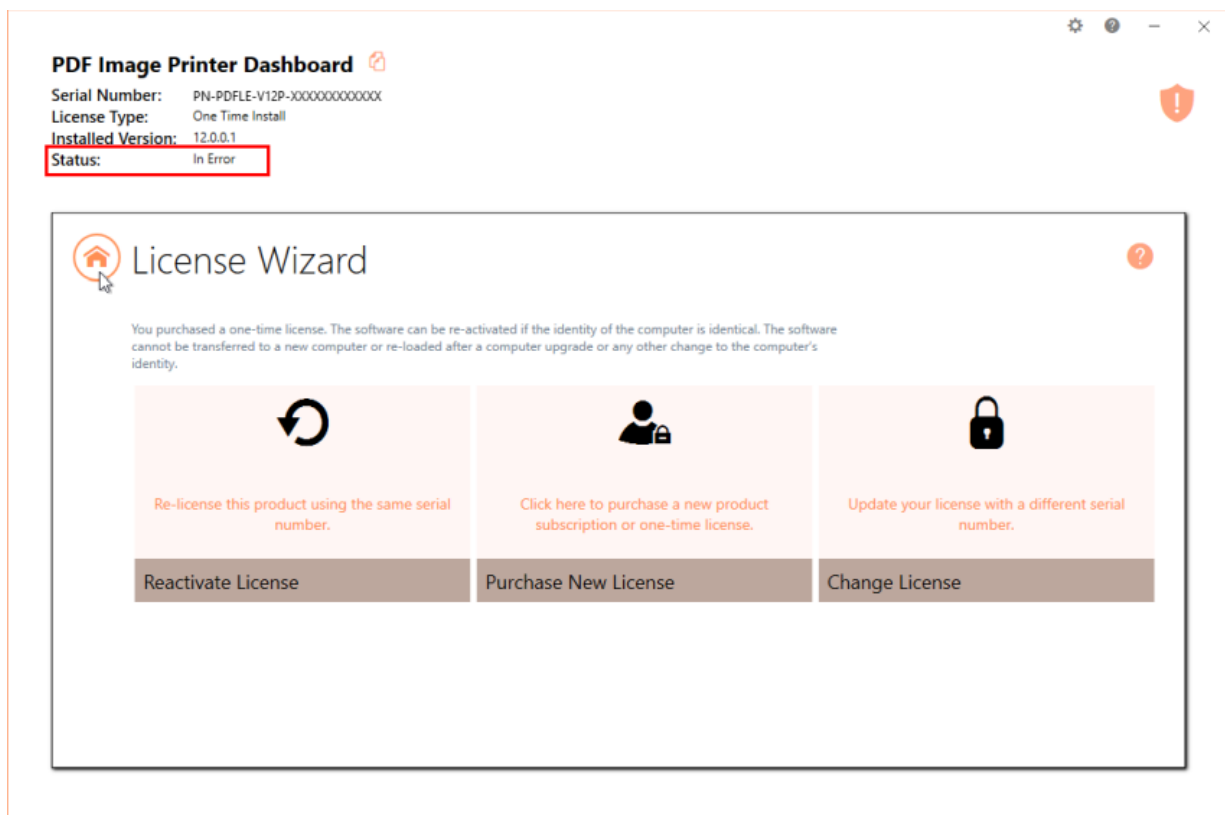
Error

Error means that something on the computer has changed so that PDF Image Printer believes it is no longer activated correctly. Examples of items that effect the license validity are: change of domain or workgroup, change in the network, change in the computer name, reformatting and reloading the computer, or system has virus. If your current activation status is Error, there are three options available through the **License Wizard**:

1. **Reactivate License** - This will try to activate PDF Image Printer again using the same serial number that was previously used to activate the product. This would be applicable if you have made no changes to the computer identity and the license file simply needs to be reset, or you have purchased more licenses.
2. **Purchase New License** - This will take you to your [PEERNET online account](#) where you can purchase either a new one-time license or a subscription license. This would be applicable if you have made a change to the computer identity. A one-time license cannot be reactivated if any change has been made to the identity of the

computer. Therefore, you will need to purchase a new license in order to continue using PDF Image Printer on the computer. You may be interested in switching to a subscription license to avoid this problem in the future.

- 3. Change License** - This will allow you to enter a new serial number. This would be applicable if you have merged multiple serial numbers to one serial number, or if you have receive a new serial number. Note: If you have switched to a subscription license, you will need to uninstall the one-time install and install the purchased subscription install. You cannot just do a change license.



Save and Restore Settings

PDF Image Printer offers the ability to save and restore your product settings perfect for if you are moving to a new computer or want to share your settings with a colleague. If you are moving your PDF Image Printer to a new computer, or you plan to upgrade your computer operating system or reformat your computer, you may wish to save your PDF Image Printer settings so you can restore them later. Alternatively, if you have configured your PDF Image Printer to best meet the needs of your company, you may wish to save your settings so they can be easily shared with the rest of your team.

There are two options to saving and restoring settings:

1. [Export and Import Personal Profile](#) - If you have created a personal profile with your custom settings, you can simply export your personal profile so that it can be imported on another computer.
2. [Backup and Restore All Settings](#) - If you have made significant customizations to your PDF Image Printer settings, such as creating several personal profiles and/or creating multiple copies of PDF Image Printer with custom names and default profiles, you may prefer to save all of your PDF Image Printer settings by running a back up and then restoring these settings.

Note: The ability to re-use / transfer PDF Image Printer licenses is only available for **active subscription licenses**. If your subscription license has expired, you are required to renew your annual subscription before you will be able to move / reactivate a license. If you own a one-time license of PDF Image Printer, you do not have the ability to move / reactivate your license. In this situation you will either need to purchase a new one-time license or a new subscription license to activate PDF Image Printer on a new / reformatted computer.

Export and Import Profiles

If you have created a personal profile with your custom settings, you can simply export your personal profile so that it can be imported on another computer.

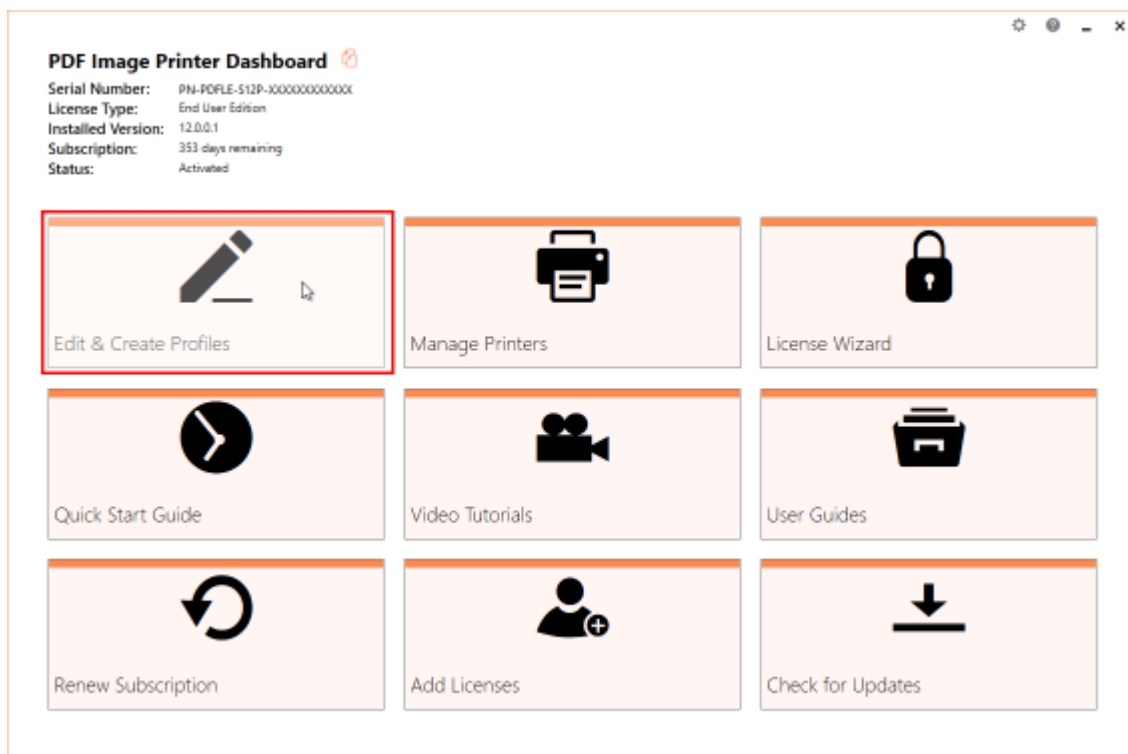
Step by Step Instructions

Export

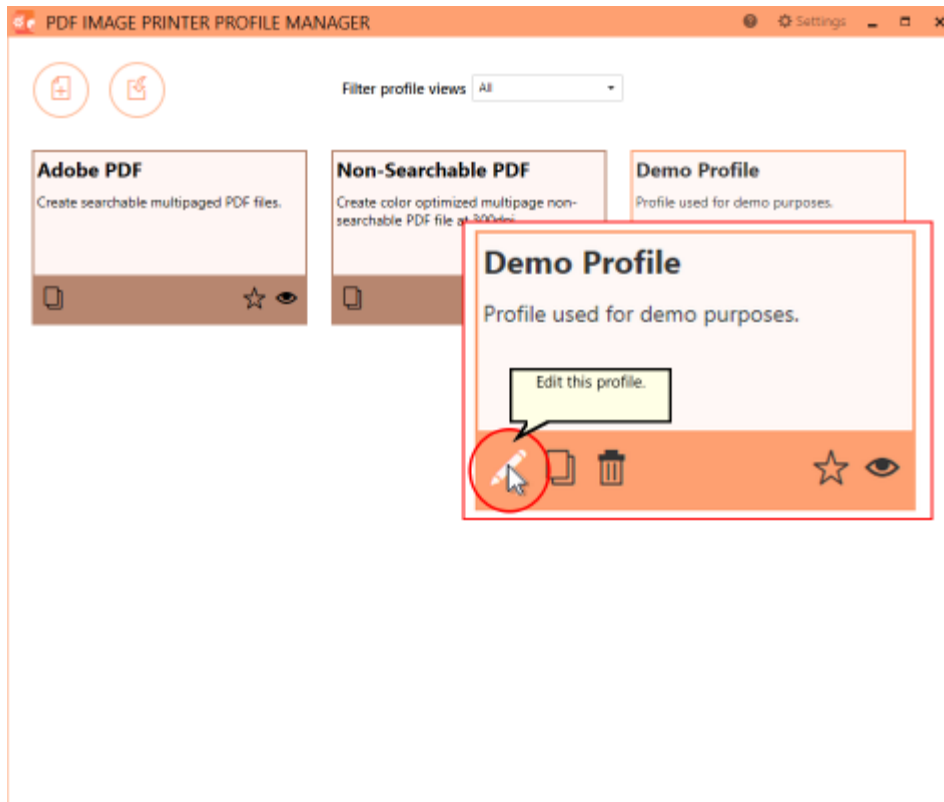
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



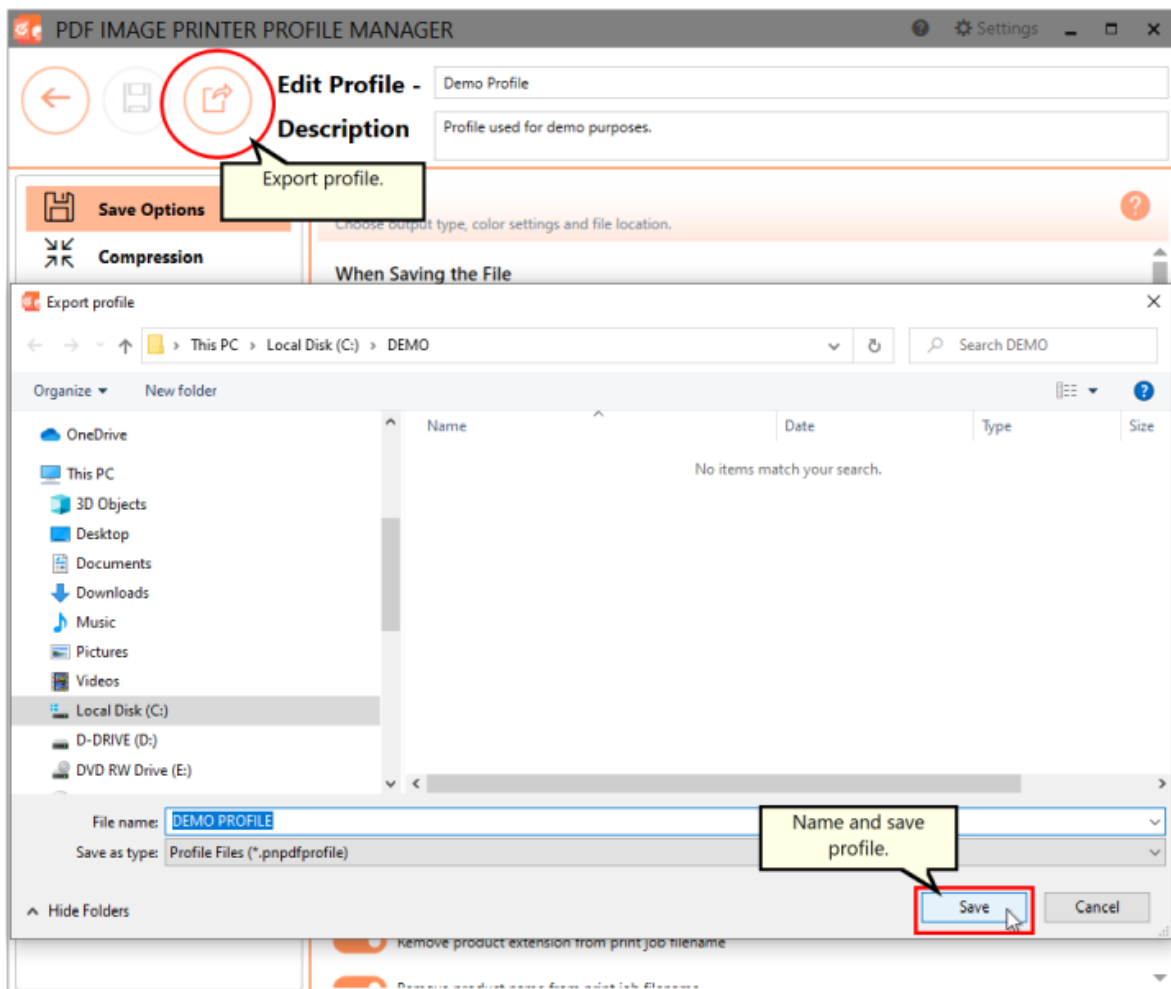
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.



3. Select "Edit this profile" to open the personal profile that you want to save.

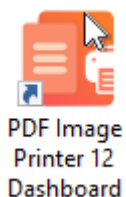


4. Select "Export profile", and name and save the file.

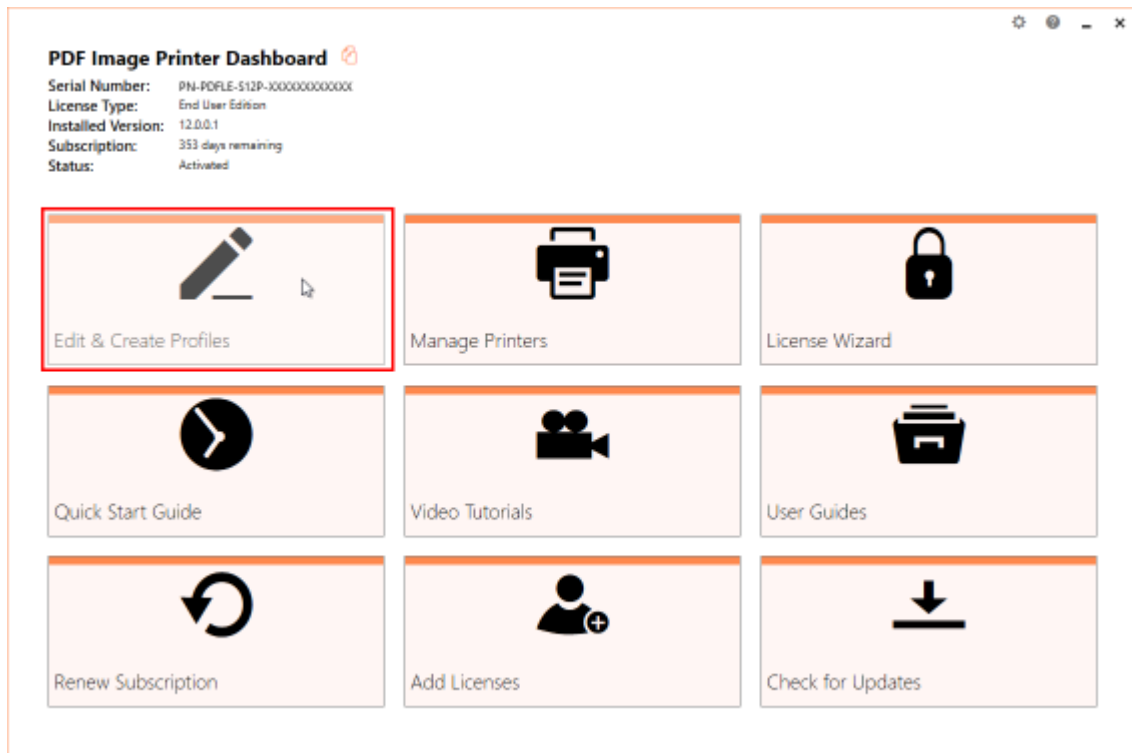


Import

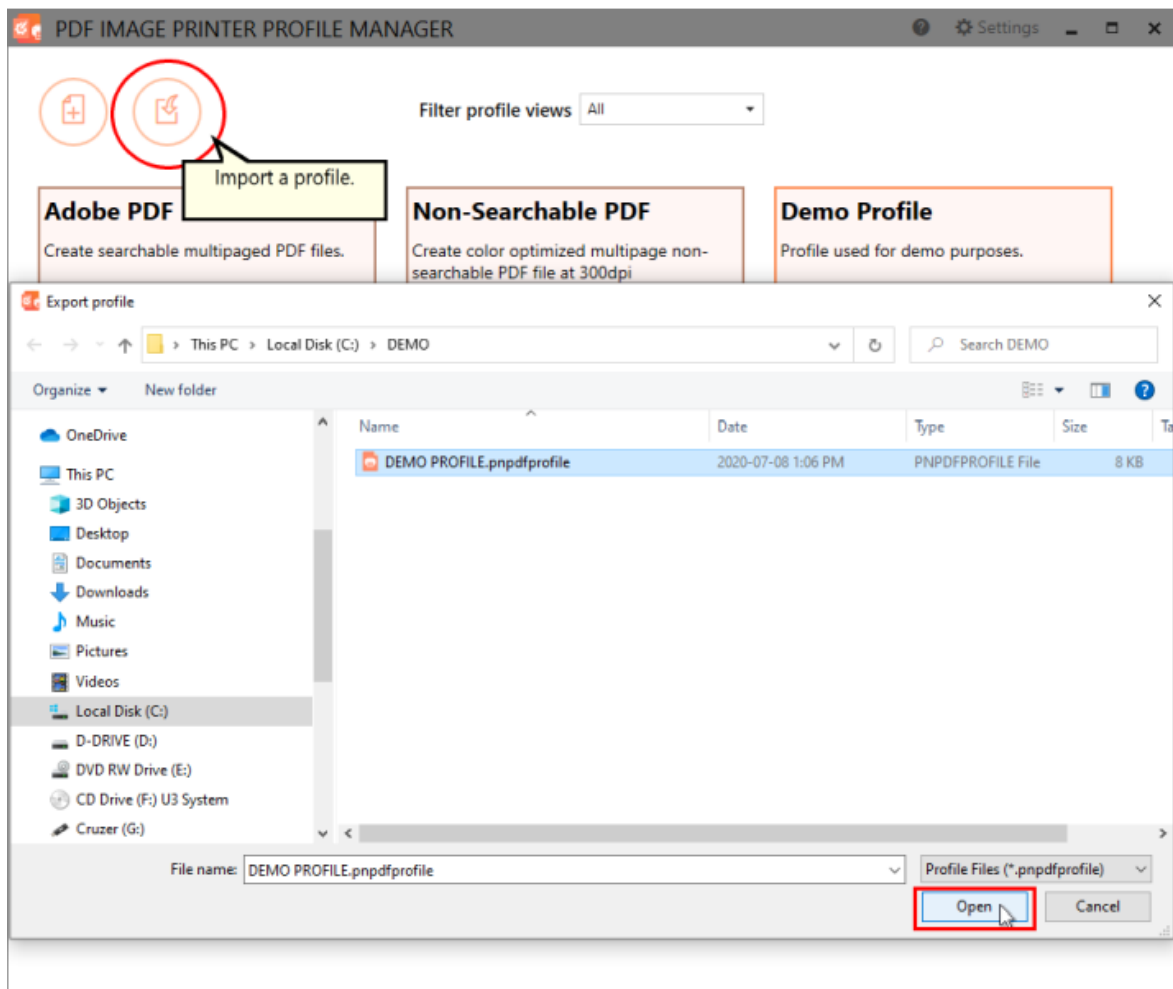
1. Install and activate PDF Image Printer on the new computer.
2. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



3. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.



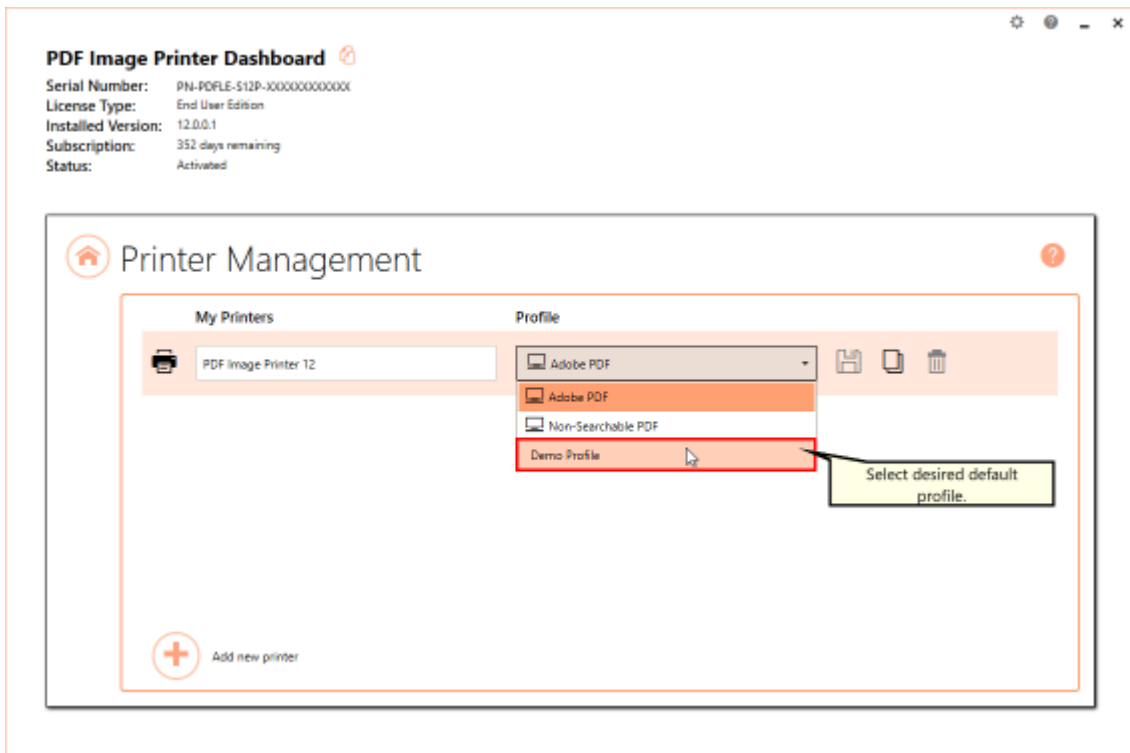
4. Select "Import a Profile" and browse to the file that you want to restore.



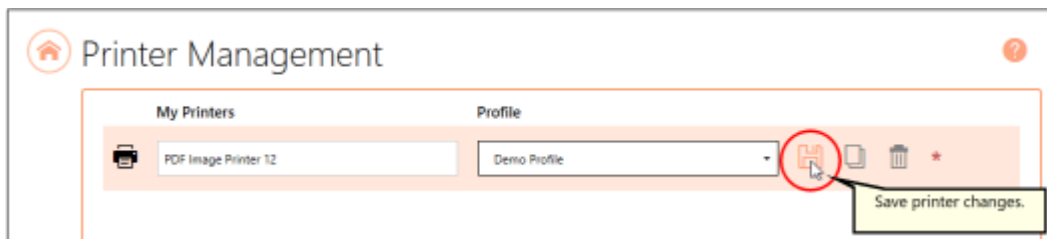
5. Close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this imported profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

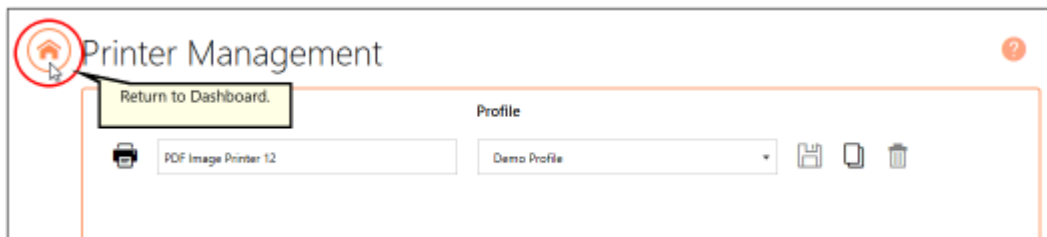
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



6. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print a document to PDF Image Printer, the custom settings in the restored personal profile will be applied to the created file.

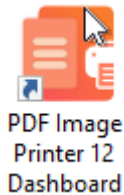
Backup and Restore All Settings

If you have made significant customizations to your PDF Image Printer settings, such as creating several personal profiles and/or creating multiple copies of PDF Image Printer with custom names and default profiles, you may prefer to save all of your PDF Image Printer settings by running a backup and then restoring these settings.

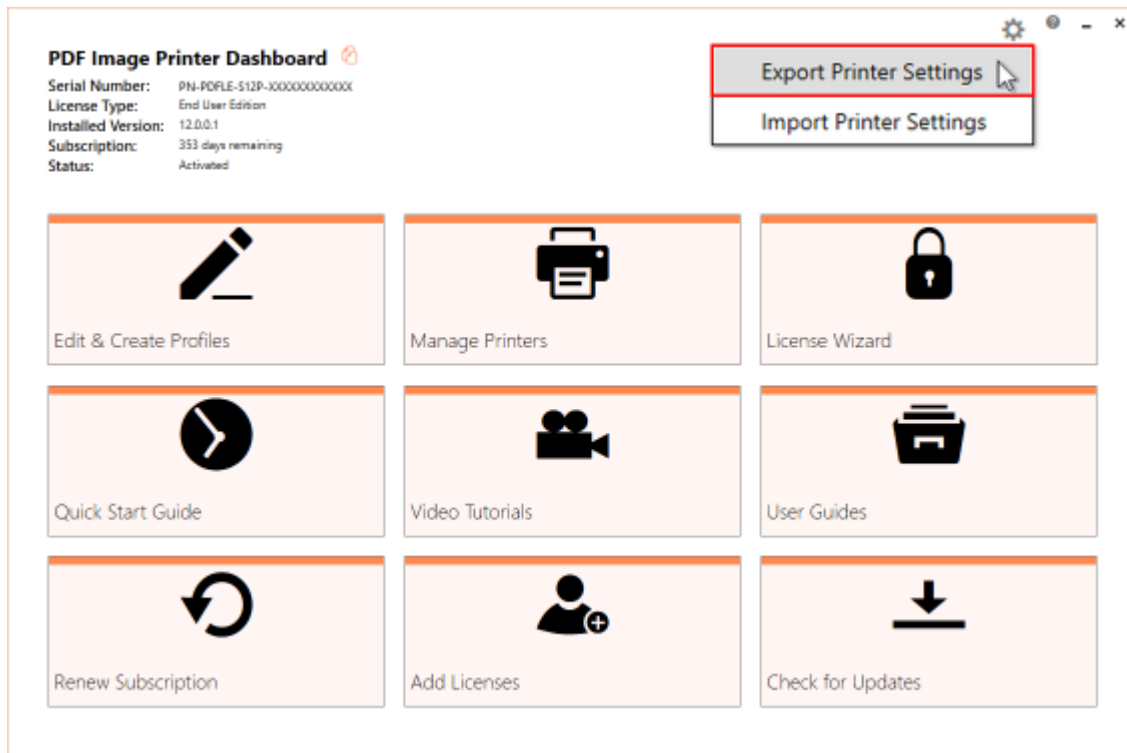
Step by Step Instructions

Export

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.

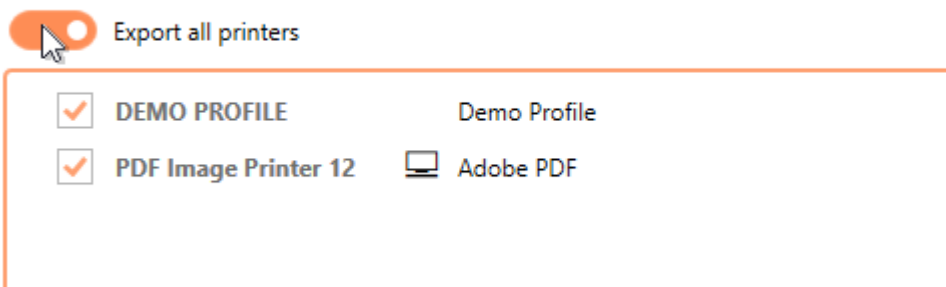


2. Click the gear icon from the top right hand corner of the **Dashboard** window, and select "Export Printer Settings".



3. Under **Choose Printers**, choose if you want to export all printers, or disable "Export all printers" and check the printers you want to export. Exporting printers is helpful if you have changed the default profile for PDF Image Printer 12, or if you have created a custom printer.

Choose Printers



4. Under **Choose Profiles**, choose if you want to export all personal profiles, or disable "Export all personal profiles" and check the personal profiles you want to export. Profiles in use by a printer being exported cannot be unselected.

Choose Profiles

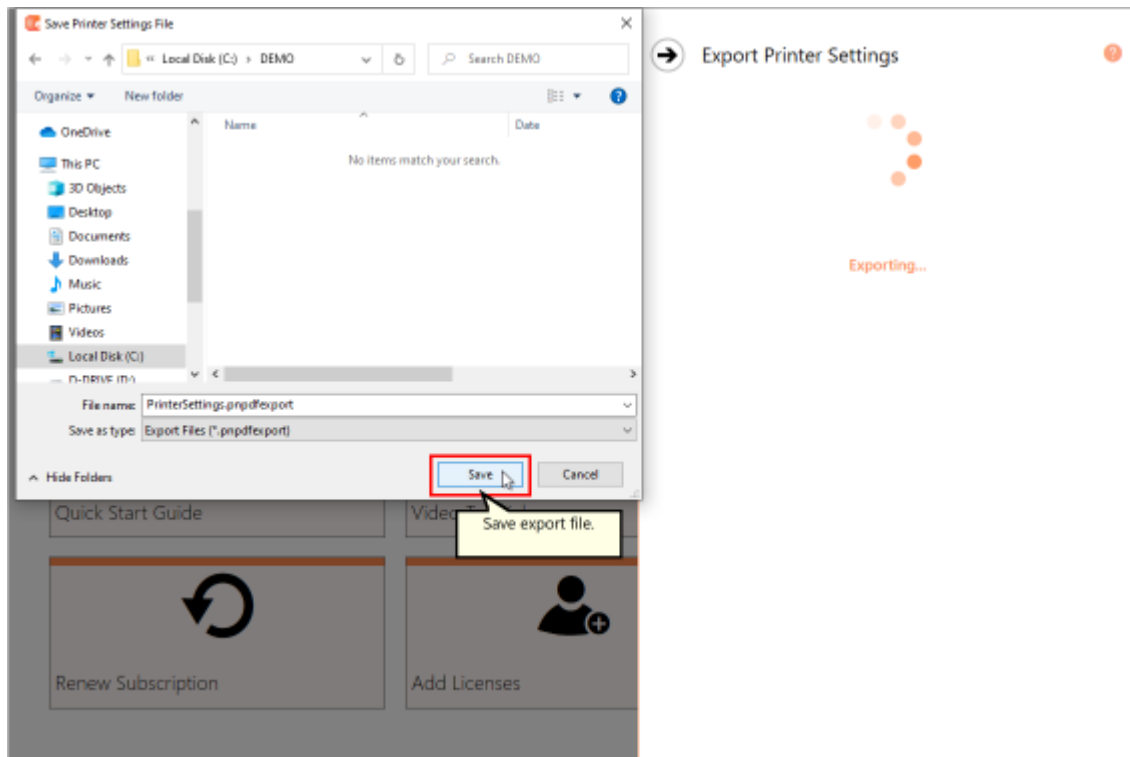
Export all personal profiles

Profiles in use by a printer being exported cannot be unselected.

Demo Profile

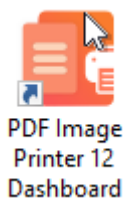
5. Select **Start Export**, and save the export file.

The screenshot shows the PDF Image Printer Dashboard on the left and the Export Printer Settings dialog on the right. The dashboard includes sections for 'PDF Image Printer Dashboard' with system information (Serial Number, License Type, Installed Version, Subscription, Status), and six main action buttons: 'Edit & Create Profiles', 'Manage Printers', 'Quick Start Guide', 'Video Tutorials', 'Renew Subscription', and 'Add Licenses'. The 'Export Printer Settings' dialog is open, showing 'Choose Printers' with 'PDF Image Printer 12' and 'Adobe PDF' selected, and 'Choose Profiles' with 'Export all personal profiles' checked and 'Demo Profile' selected. A red box highlights the 'START EXPORT' button at the bottom of the dialog.

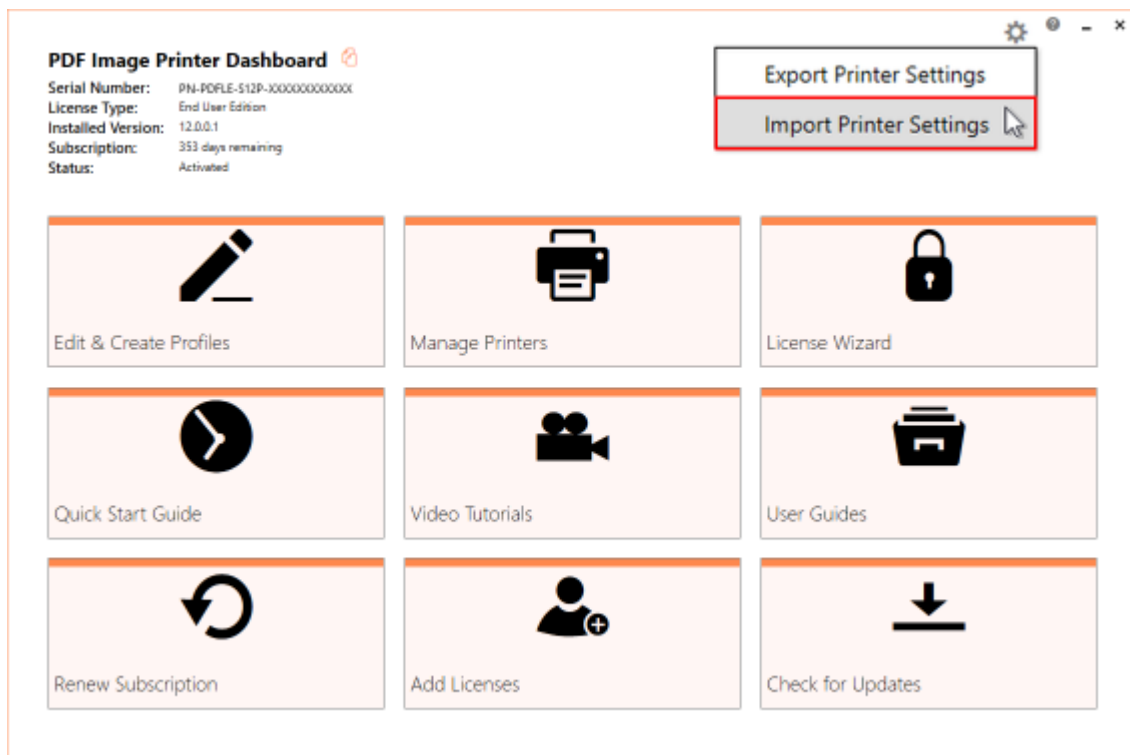


Import

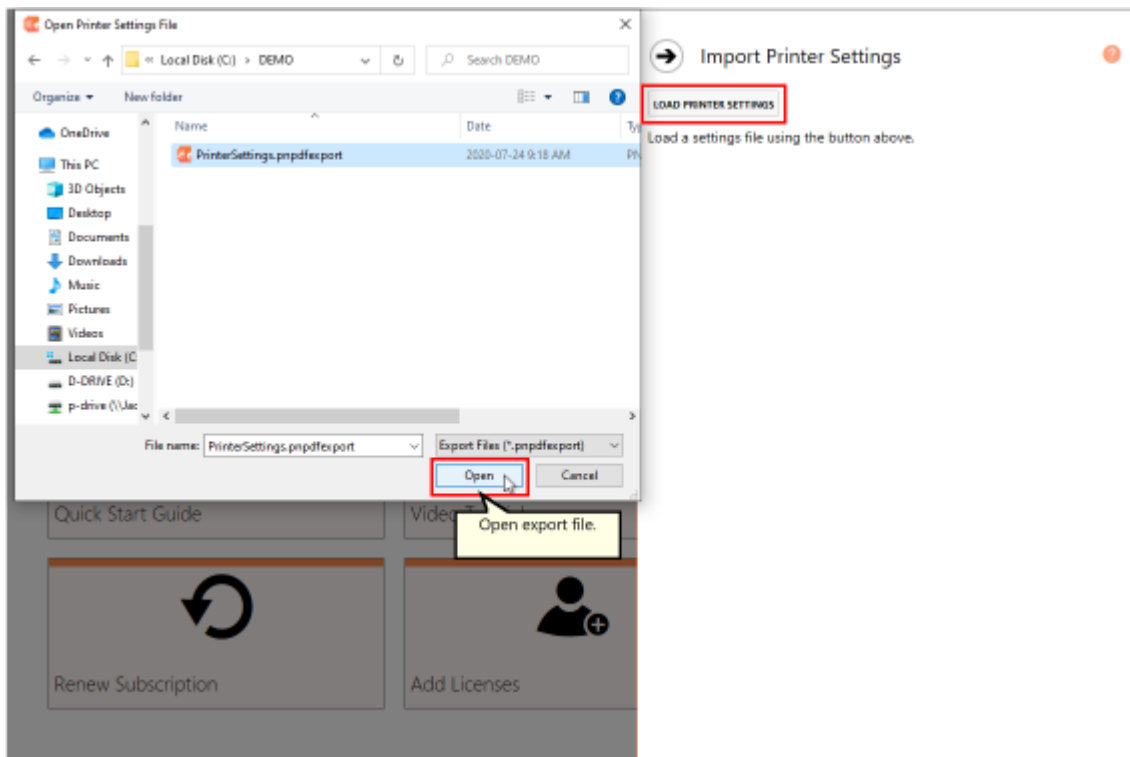
1. Install and activate PDF Image Printer on the new computer.
2. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



3. Click the gear icon from the top right hand corner of the **Dashboard** window, and select "Import Printer Settings".

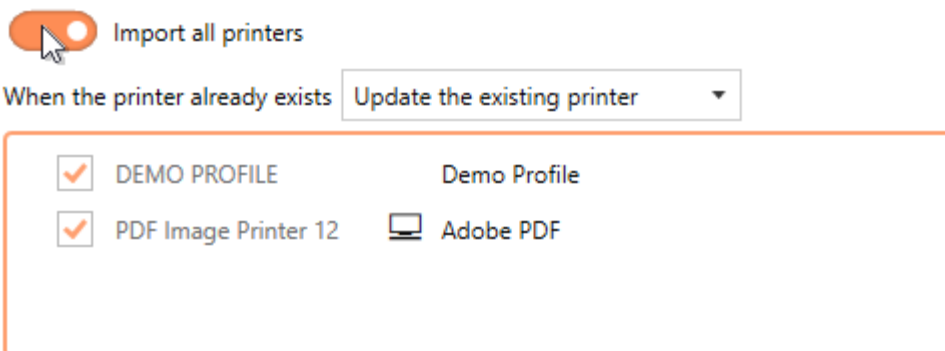


4. Select **Load Printer Settings** and browse to where you saved the settings file.



5. Under **Choose Printers**, choose if you want to import all printers, or disable "Import all printers" and check the printers you want to import. By default, when the printer already exists, the import function will "Update the existing printer". You can change this to "Create a copy of the imported printer" instead.

Choose Printers



6. Under **Choose Profiles**, choose if you want to import all personal profiles, or disable "Import saved personal profiles" and check the personal profiles you want to import. By default, when the profile

already exists, the import function will "Create a copy of the imported profile". You can change this to "Update the existing profile" instead. Profiles in use by a printer being imported cannot be unselected.

Choose Profiles

Import saved personal profiles

When the profile already exists

Profiles in use by a printer being imported cannot be unselected.

Demo Profile

7. Select **Start Import**.

The screenshot shows the PDF Image Printer Dashboard on the left and the Import Printer Settings dialog box on the right. The dashboard includes sections for user information (Serial Number, License Type, Installed Version, Subscription, Status) and navigation buttons for Edit & Create Profiles, Manage Printers, Quick Start Guide, Video Tutorials, Renew Subscription, and Add Licenses. The Import Printer Settings dialog box is titled "Import Printer Settings" and contains a "LOAD PRINTER SETTINGS" button, a file path "C:\DEMO\PrinterSettings.pnpdfexport", and sections for "Choose Printers" and "Choose Profiles". In the "Choose Profiles" section, the "Import saved personal profiles" toggle is checked, and the "When the profile already exists" dropdown is set to "Update the existing printer". A list of profiles shows "Demo Profile" selected. At the bottom of the dialog, the "START IMPORT" button is highlighted with a red box.

8. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print a document to PDF Image Printer, the custom settings you restored will be available.

Basic Conversions

This section contained basic tutorials on how to open and print a document to PDF Image Printer in order to create the most common file formats using the system profiles that come with PDF Image Printer.

PDF Image Printer comes with system profiles: Adobe PDF and Non-Searchable PDF. These system profiles contain the most frequently used settings when creating basic PDF files. The basic tutorials in this section will demonstrate how to select one of the system profiles during conversion.

For step-by-step instructions demonstrating how to use these properties tabs to enable and configure specific settings offered by PDF Image Printer, see the [Working with PDF Image Printer](#) section. For technical documentation for each of the property tabs found in the Profile Manager utility, see the [Profile Manager](#) section.

You can jump directly to a topic by selecting a link below, or you can refer to the table of contents.

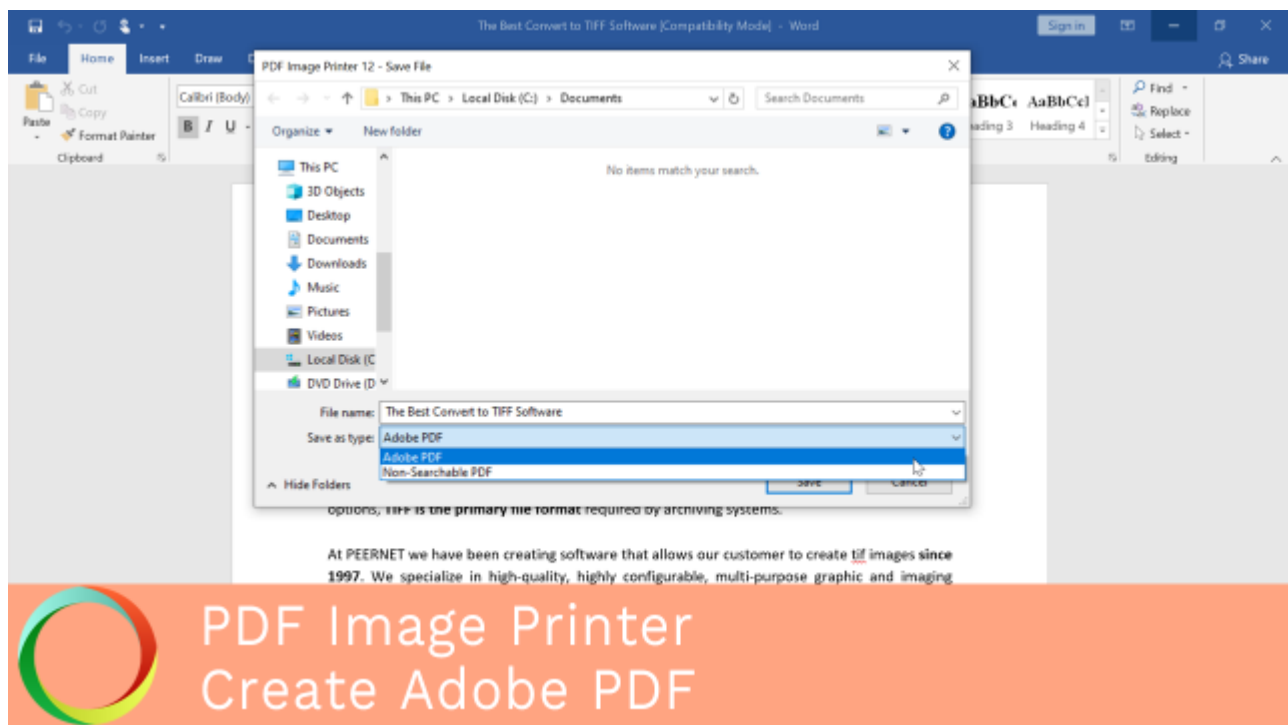
- [Create Adobe Searchable PDF Files](#)
- [Create Non-Searchable PDF Files](#)

Create Adobe Searchable PDF Files

Note: PDF Image Printer does not perform OCR. The software cannot create an Adobe searchable PDF from an image file.

You need to be able to open and print your original document in order to create a PDF file. For example, to create a PDF file from a Word document, you would need to have Microsoft Word, or another application that can open and print Word documents, installed on your computer.

PDF Image Printer 12 uses Profiles, which are a group of settings, to create the output file you want. PDF Image Printer comes with a few system profiles including: Adobe PDF and Non-Searchable PDF. To create Adobe searchable multipaged PDF files, simply set the profile "Adobe PDF" as PDF Image Printer's default profile.



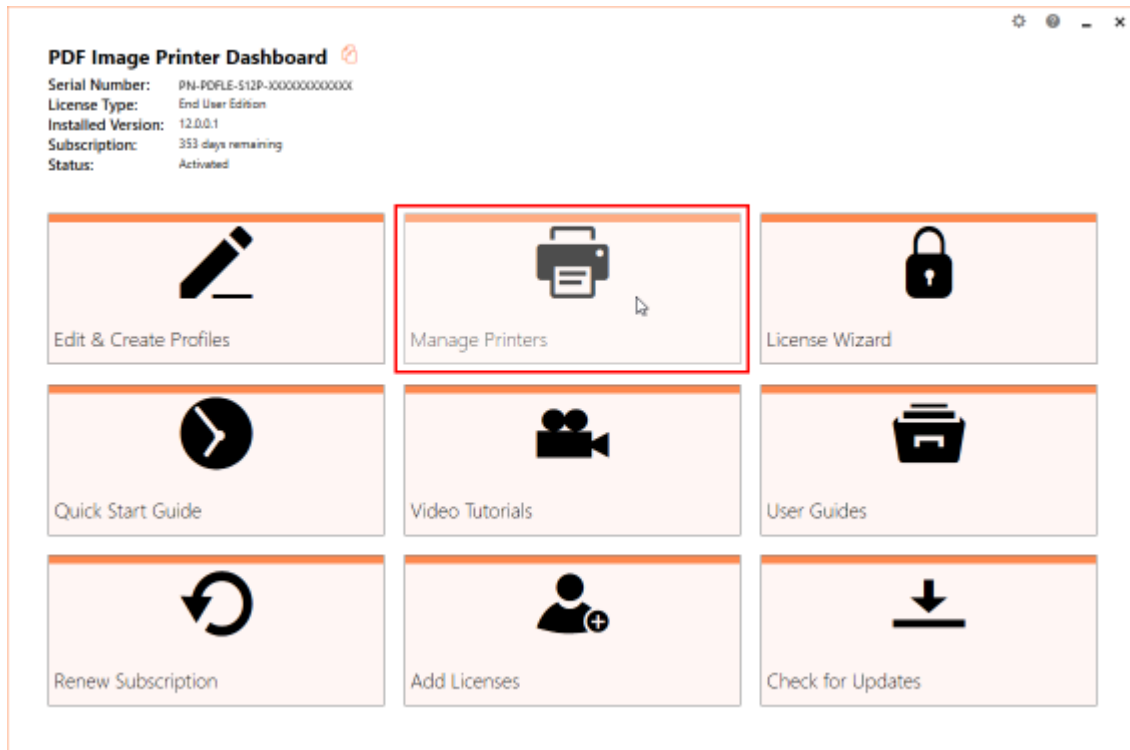
Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Step by Step Instructions

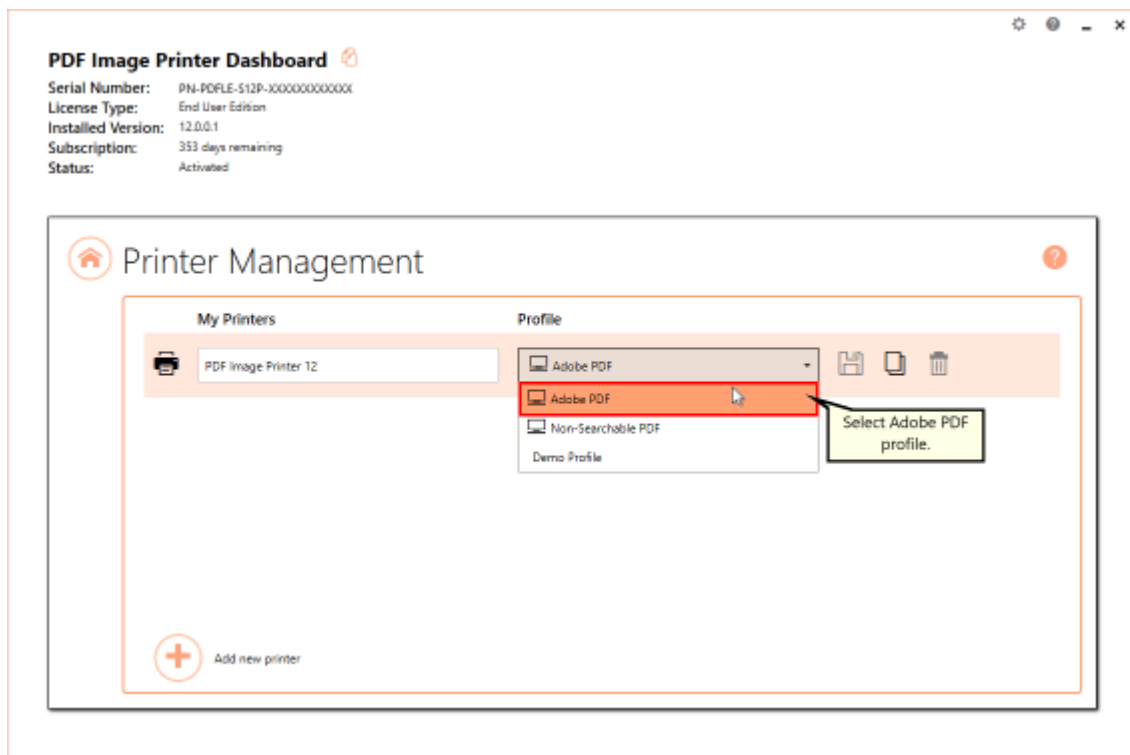
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



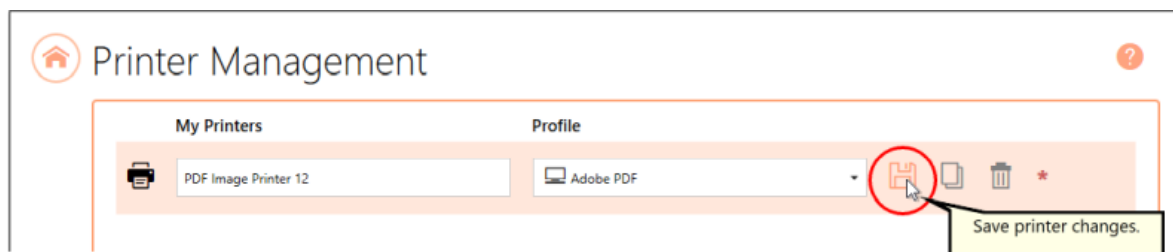
2. Select "Manage Printer" open **Printer Management**.



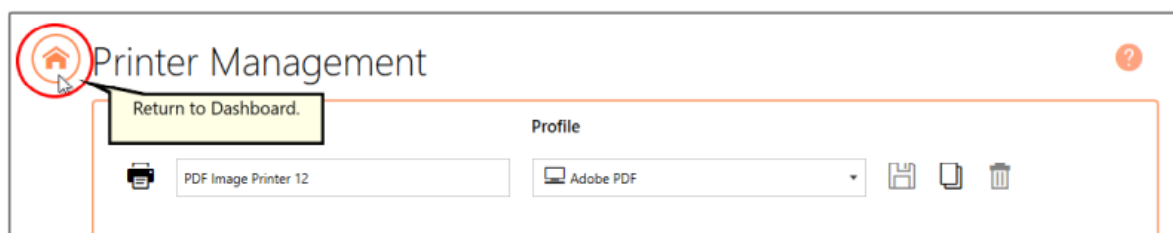
3. Beside PDF Image Printer, use the drop box to set the default profile as "Adobe PDF". This profile is configured to create searchable multipaged PDF files.



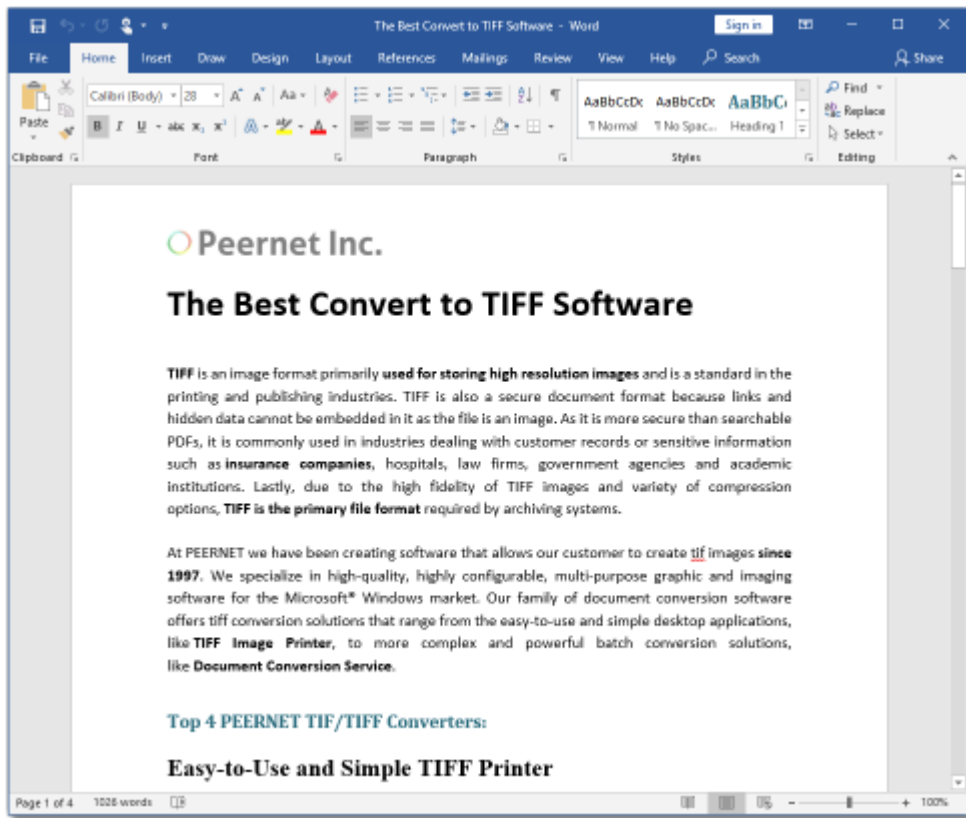
4. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



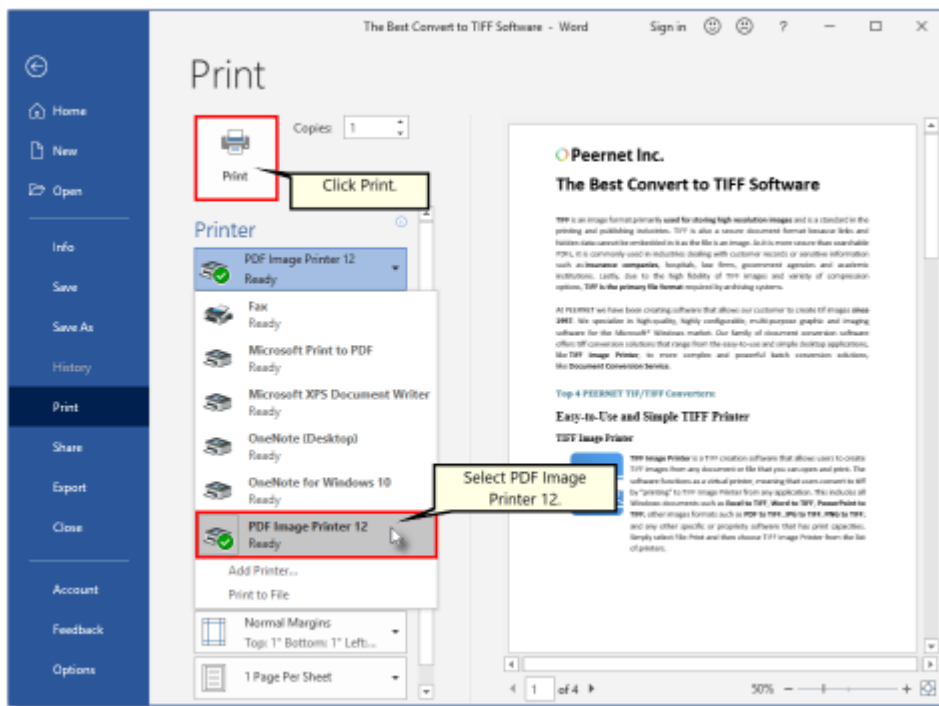
5. Close **Printer Management** and **Dashboard**.



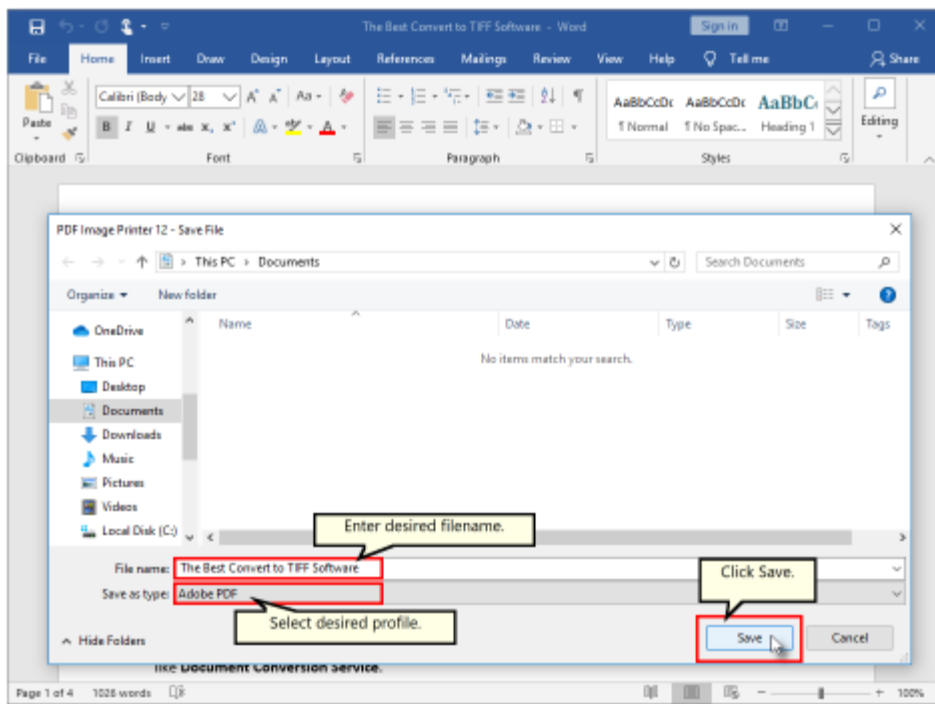
6. Open the document you want to convert into a PDF file.



7. Select **File - Print** from your application, and select PDF Image Printer 12 from the list of printers.



8. Print and then set the name and save location of your new Adobe searchable PDF file.

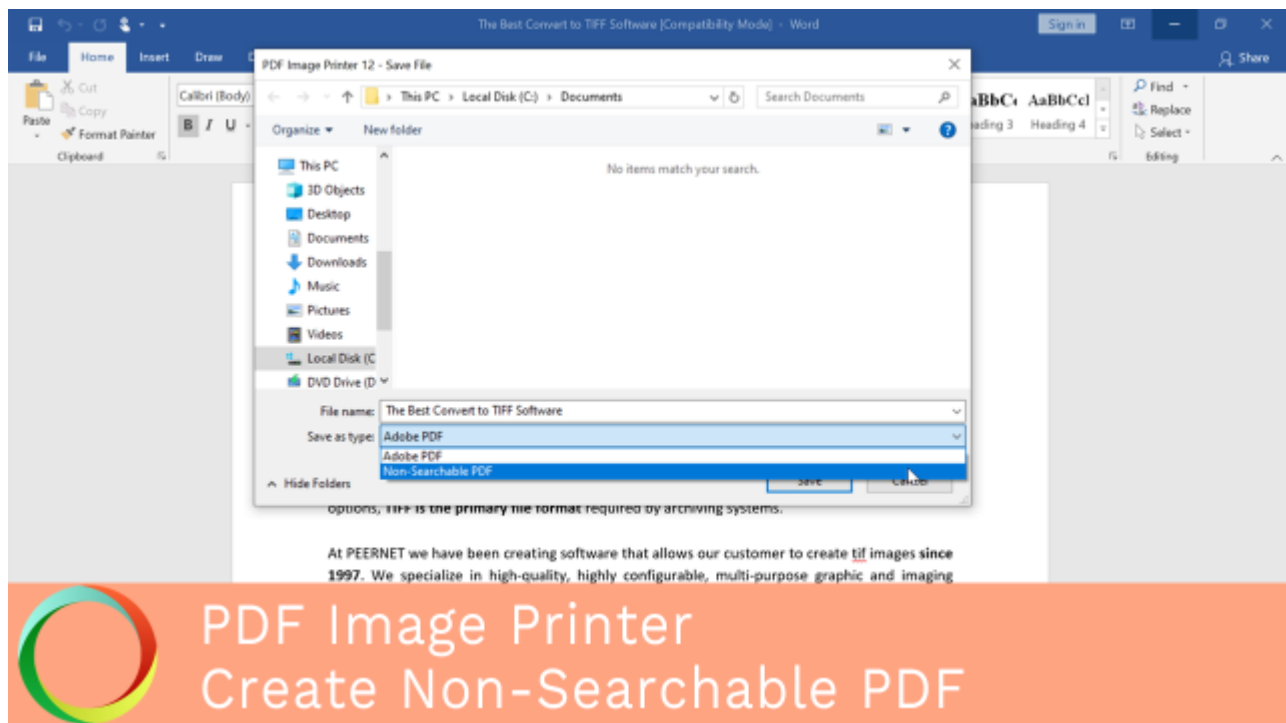


- Navigate to the folder where you wish to store your PDF file. Your **Documents** folder will be selected for you by default.
- In the *File name* field, enter a name for your PDF file. A default name for your file has been filled in based on the file name of the document you printed to PDF Image Printer.
- In the *Save as type* field, you can change the profile that will be applied to your PDF file on the fly.
- Click **Save** to create the PDF file. The file will be created in the chosen folder with the name specified.

Create Non-Searchable PDF Files

You need to be able to open and print your original document in order to create a PDF image. For example, to create a PDF image from a Word document, you would need to have Microsoft Word, or another application that can open and print Word documents, installed on your computer.

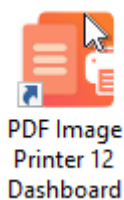
PDF Image Printer 12 uses Profiles, which are a group of settings, to create the output file you want. PDF Image Printer comes with a few system profiles including: Adobe PDF and Non-Searchable PDF. To create non-searchable multipaged PDF image, simply set the profile "Non-Searchable PDF" as PDF Image Printer's default profile.



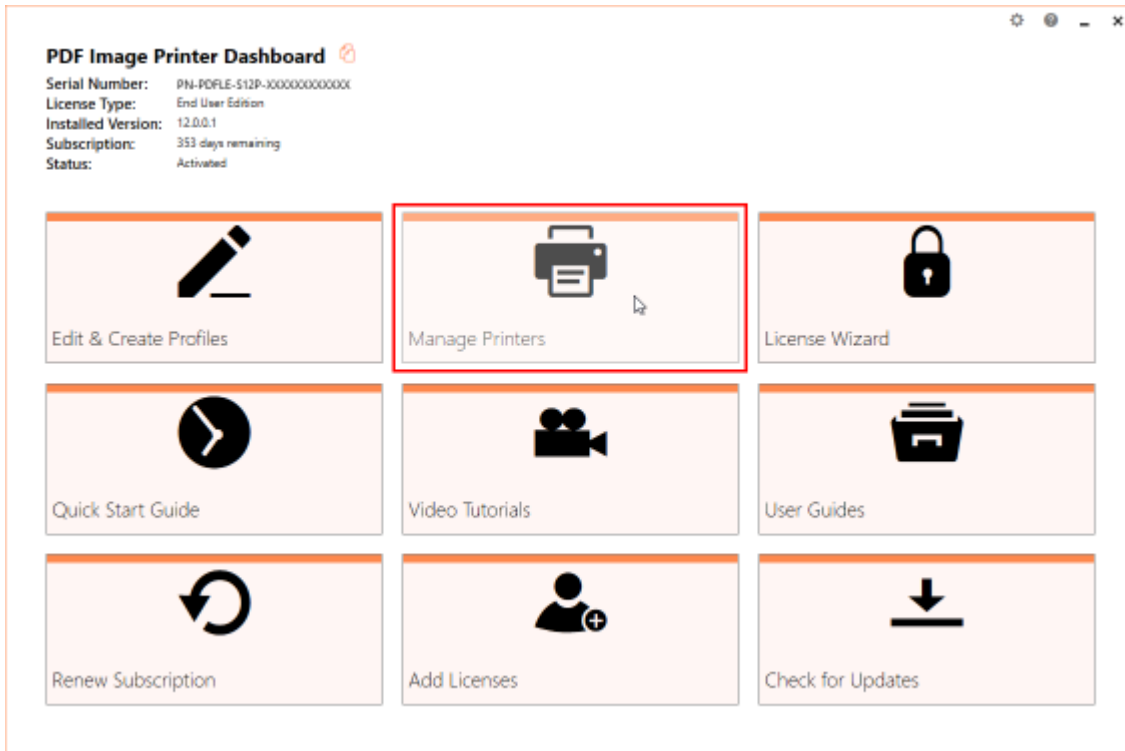
Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Step by Step Instructions

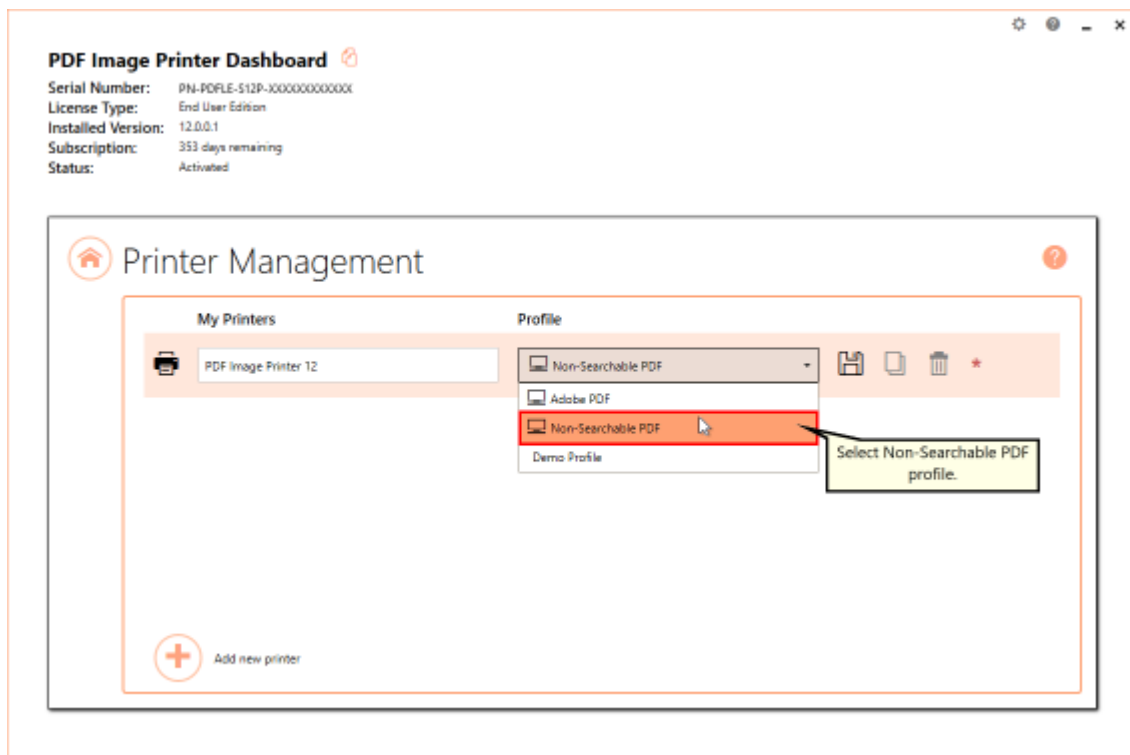
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



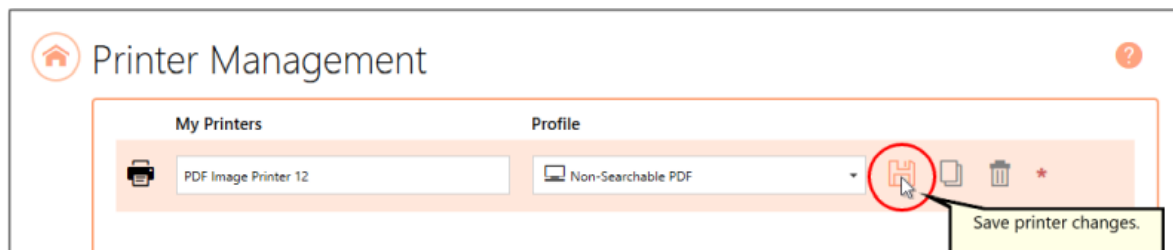
2. Select "Manage Printer" open **Printer Management**.



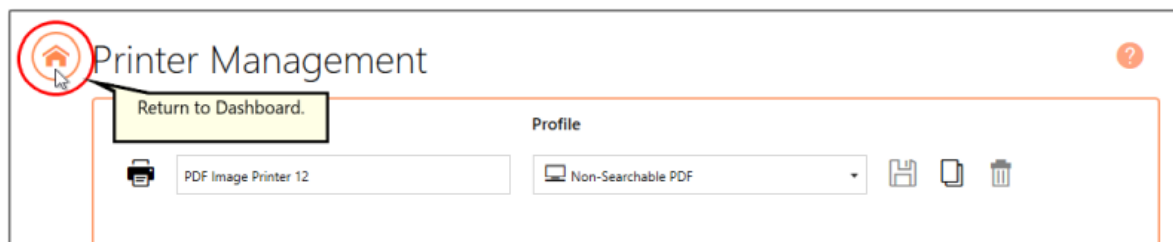
3. Beside PDF Image Printer, use the drop box to set the default profile as "Non-Searchable PDF". This profile is configured to create non-searchable multipaged PDF images.



4. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



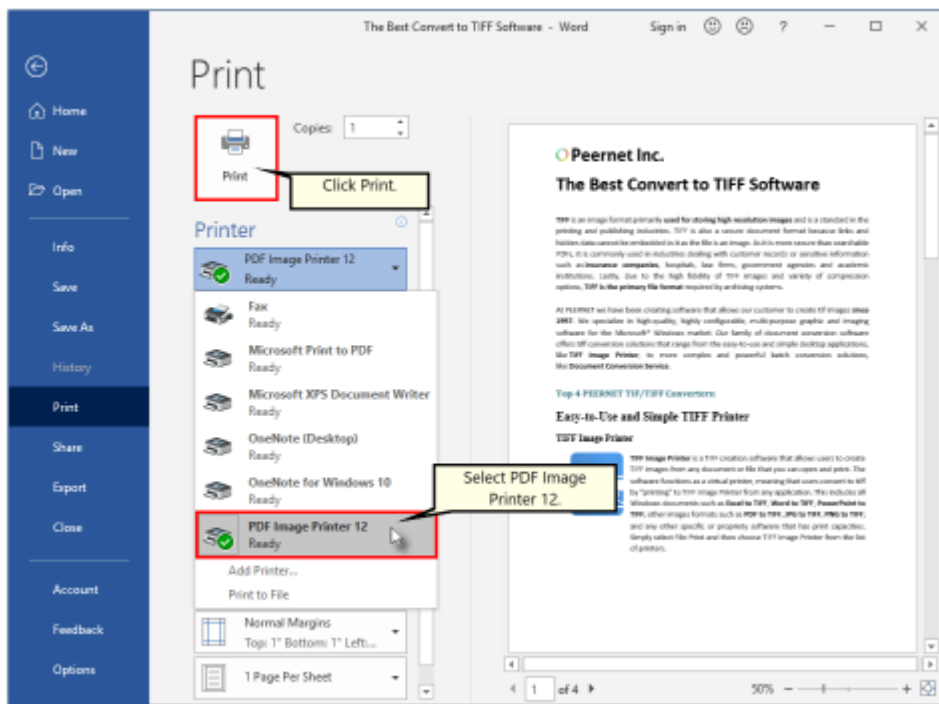
5. Close **Printer Management** and **Dashboard**.



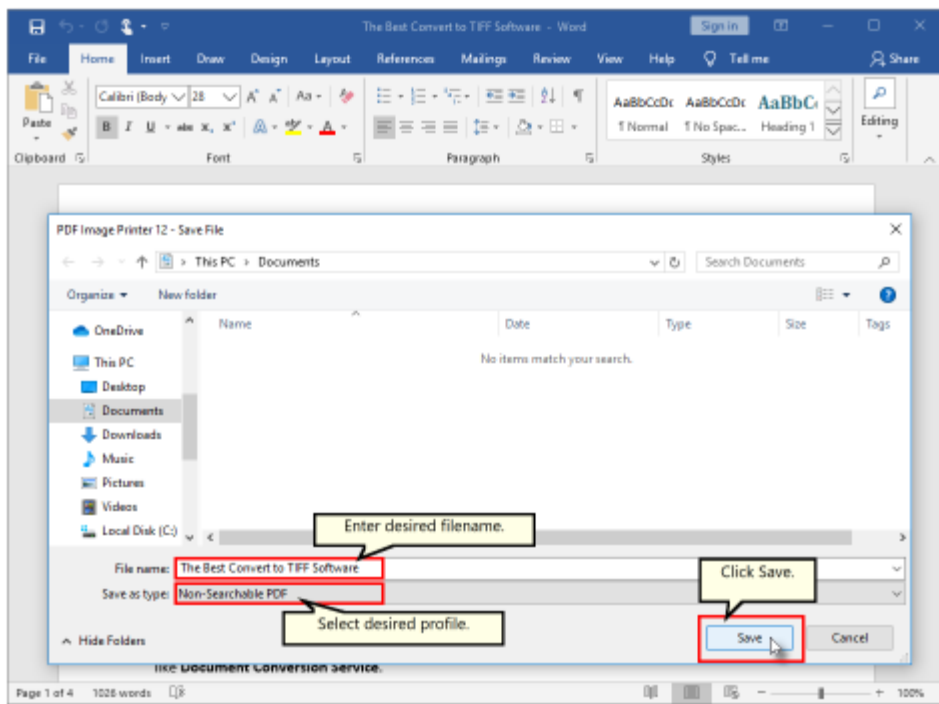
6. Open the document you want to convert into a PDF image.



7. Select **File - Print** from your application, and select PDF Image Printer 12 from the list of printers.



8. Print and then set the name and save location of your new non-searchable PDF image.



- Navigate to the folder where you wish to store your PDF image. Your **Documents** folder will be selected for you by default.
- In the *File name* field, enter a name for your PDF image. A default name for your image has been filled in based on the file name of the document you printed to PDF Image Printer.
- In the *Save as type* field, you can change the profile that will be applied to your PDF image on the fly.
- Click **Save** to create the PDF image. The image will be created in the chosen folder with the name specified.

Working with PDF Image Printer

This section contained step-by-step instructions demonstrating how to enable and configure the features available in PDF Image Printer and give a brief overview of how each feature works.

For basic tutorials on how to convert files using PDF Image Printer and create the most common file formats, see the [Basic Conversions](#) section. For technical documentation for each of the property tabs found in the Profile Manager utility, see the [Profile Manager](#) section.

You can jump directly to a tutorial by selecting a link below, or you can refer to the table of contents for a complete list of step-by-step instructions.

How to get started

- [Create a New Profile Settings File](#)
- [View Your PDF File](#)

Save Options

- [Save Files Without Prompting](#)
- [Change Output Type](#)
- [Create a Serializing Sequence of Files](#)
- [Change Where Files are Saved](#)
- [Automatically Split Files](#)
- [Reduce Searchable PDF File Size](#)
- [Reduce Non-Searchable PDF File Size](#)

Fax Mode

- [Create Fax Format Files](#)

Filename Creator

- [Create a Custom Filename with Text](#)
- [Create a Custom Filename with Unique File ID \(GUID\)](#)

- [Create a Custom Filename with Date and Time](#)
- [Create a Custom Filename with Dynamic Output Folders](#)

PDF Security

- [Set PDF Security Options](#)

Page Editing

- [Rotate Pages](#)
- [Crop Page Margins or Area](#)
- [Trim Existing Margins](#)
- [Adjust Page Brightness](#)

Page Resizing

- [Copy Page Margins or Areas](#)
- [Resize Images Using Resampling](#)
- [Add Borders to Page](#)

Document Information

- [Set Document Information](#)

Stamping

- [Add Text Watermark Stamp](#)
- [Add Image Watermark Stamp](#)
- [Add Page Numbering Watermark Stamp](#)
- [Add Date and Time Watermark Stamp](#)

Text Extraction

- [Extract Text From the Created File](#)

Run Commands

- [Automatically View the Created File](#)
- [Send Email when File Created](#)
- [Compress Created File into ZIP](#)

Working with Large Paper Size

- [Add a Custom Paper Form](#)
- [Configure PDF Image Printer to Use a Custom Paper Size](#)
- [Print Well Logs as One Continuous Image](#)

Create a New Profile Settings File

PDF Image Printer 12 uses Profiles, which are a group of settings, to create the output file you want. PDF Image Printer comes with a few system profiles including: Adobe PDF and Non-Searchable PDF.

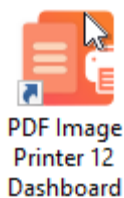
You can also create your own personal Profile(s) with the settings you require.



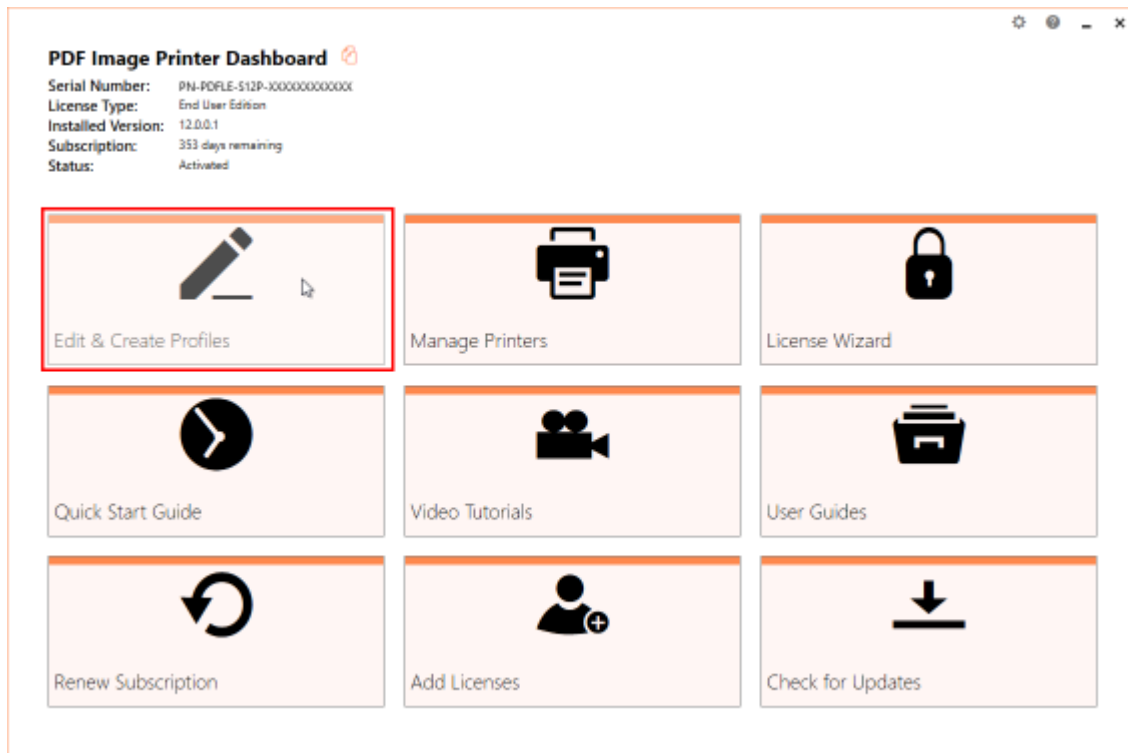
Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Step by Step Instructions

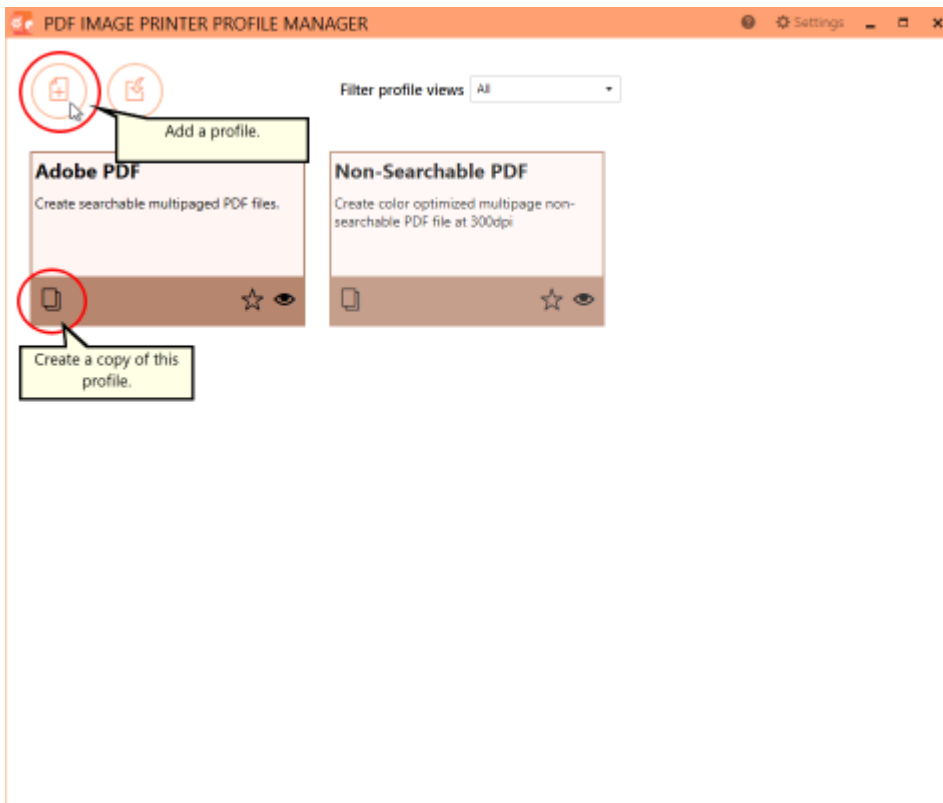
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



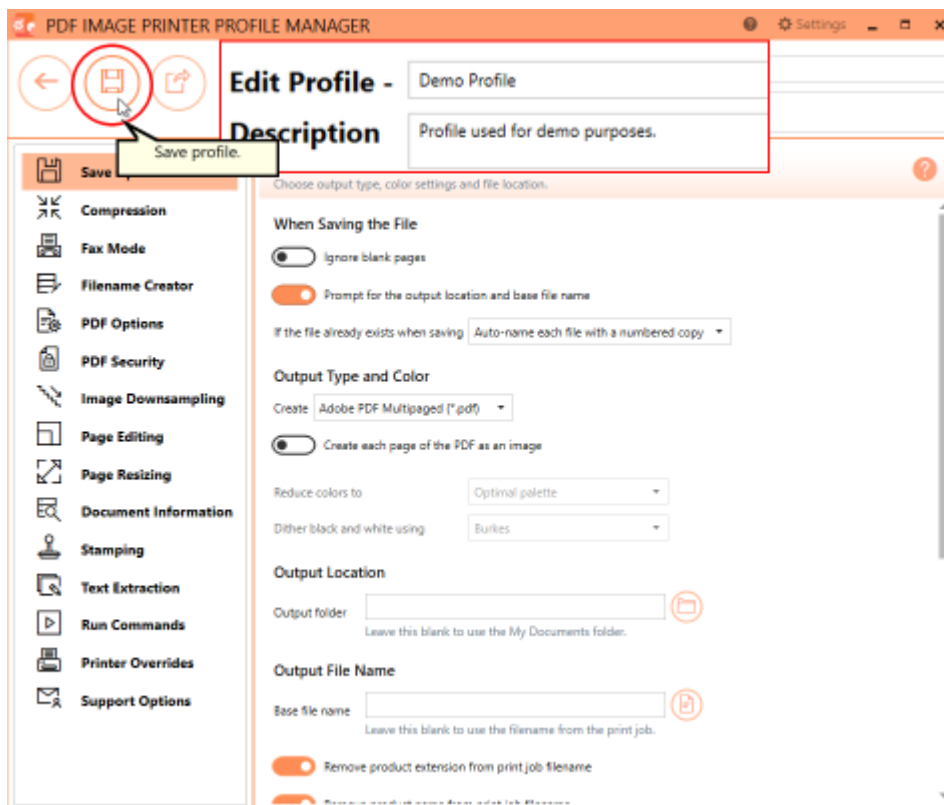
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.



3. You can either create a copy of a system profile, if it has similar settings to what you require, by selecting "Create a copy of this profile", or create a personal profile by selecting "Add a profile".



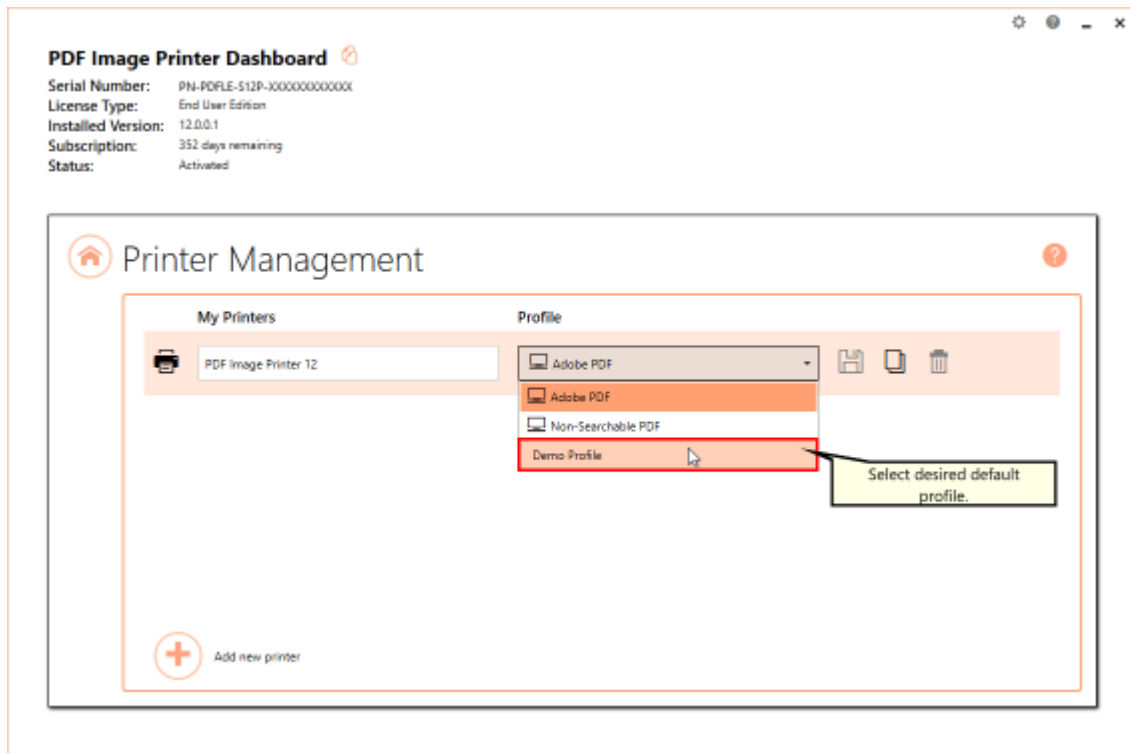
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click **Save**.



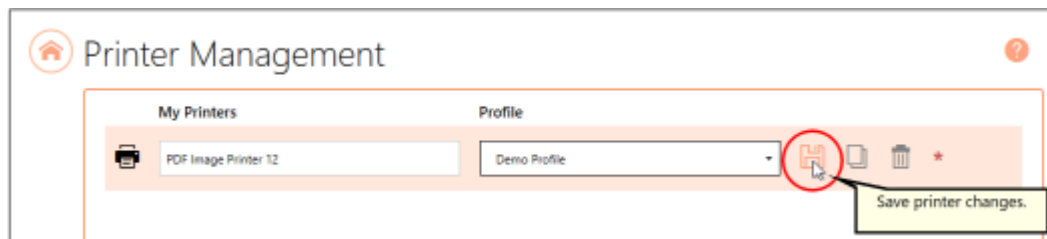
5. Go through the tabs and adjust the settings as desired. The subsequent topics in the [Working with PDF Image Printer](#) section provide detailed instructions on how to adjust the settings in your personal profile to create different types of images/files.
6. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

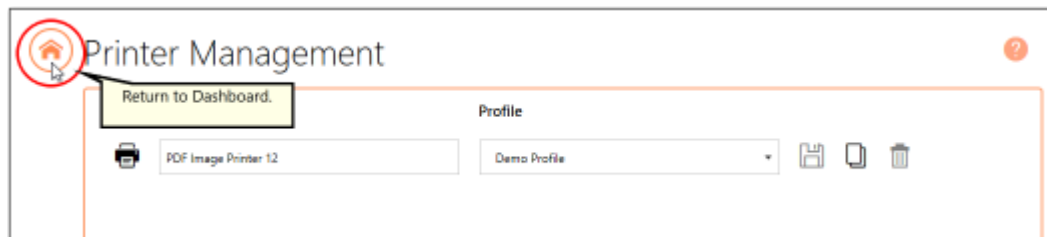
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



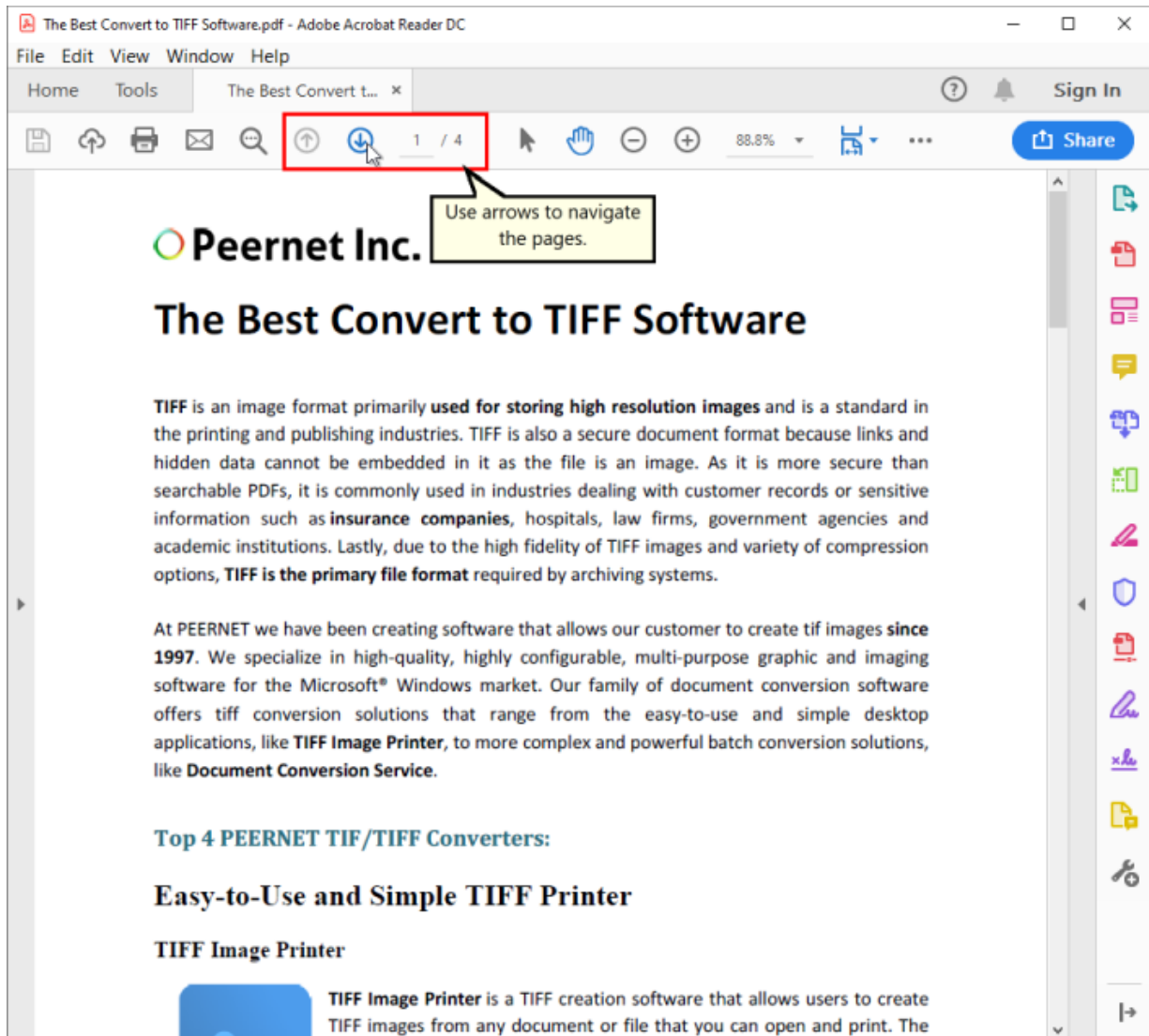
iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



7. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer the settings saved in this profile will be applied to the output file.

View Your PDF File

Viewing PDF files is as simple as double-clicking the file in File Explorer. In most cases there will already be a PDF file viewer, usually Adobe Reader, installed on your computer.

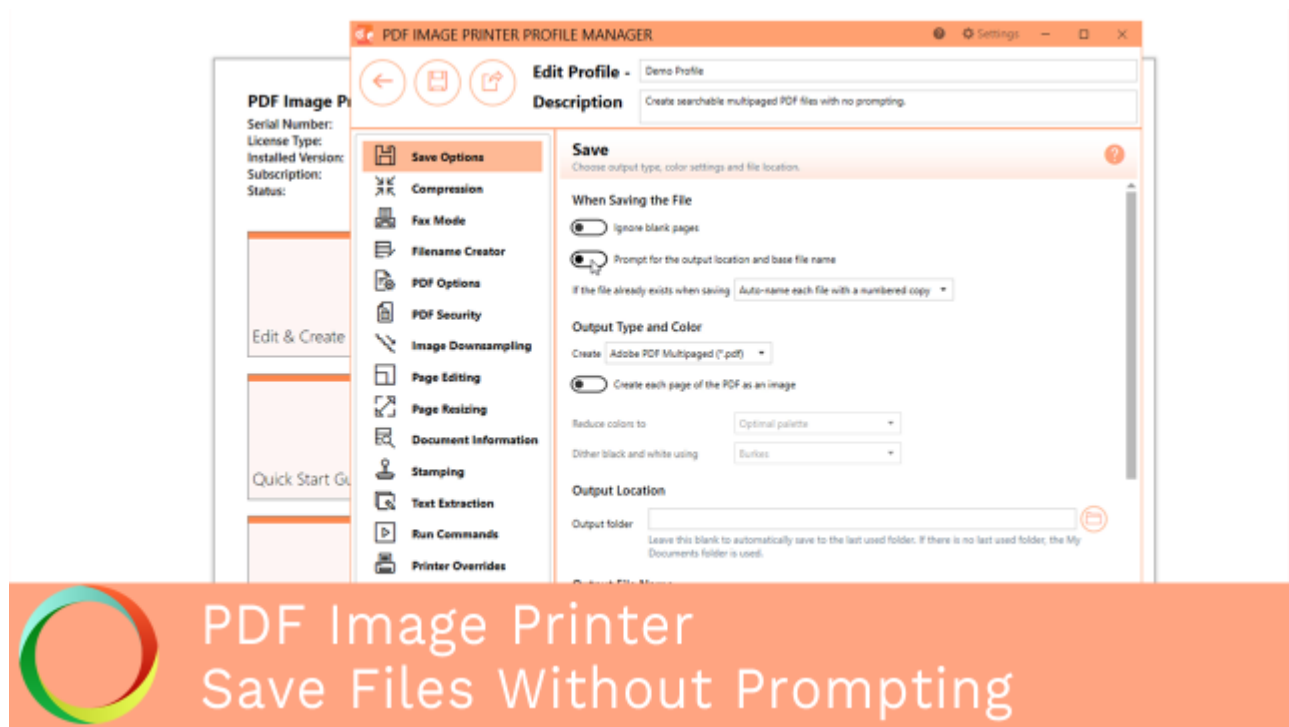


If Adobe Reader is not installed on your computer, it can be downloaded from [Adobe's website](#).

Save Files Without Prompting

Each time you print, PDF Image Printer will prompt you with a Save As dialog to choose where you want save the output file. You can change this so that the output file is always saved in the same location without showing the dialog.

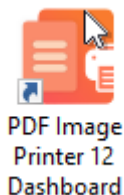
The [prompting options](#) are controlled through the profile.



Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Step by Step Instructions

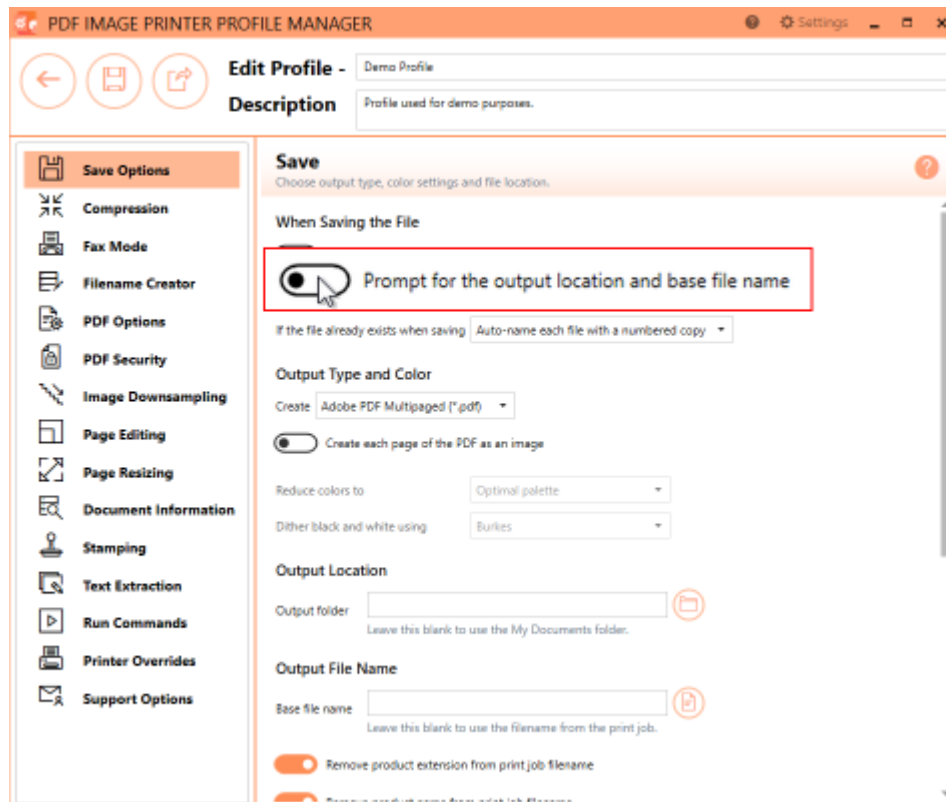
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



PDF Image
Printer 12
Dashboard

2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.

3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Save Options tab**, disable **Prompt for the output location and base file name**.

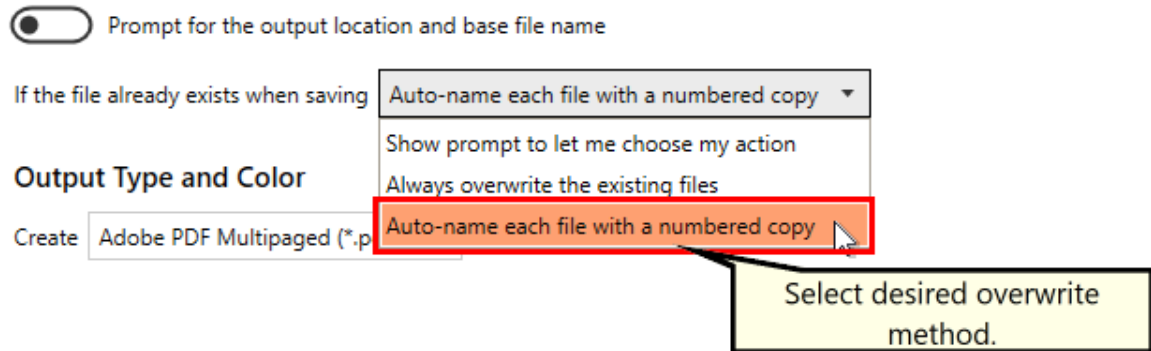


When you turn off prompting, it is important to consider how PDF Image Printer will handle overwrite situations. There are three options for how PDF Image Printer will handle overwrite situations:

- i. The default setting, **Auto-name each file with a numbered copy**, will add a copy number to the new file if the file name already exists in the output folder.
- ii. **Show prompt to let me choose my action**, will prompt if the file name already exists in the output folder allowing you to choose whether to overwrite, create a copy, append to existing file, or cancel print.

iii. **Always overwrite the existing file**, will replace the old file with the new file if the file name already exists in the output folder. No warning dialog will be shown.

6. Change the overwrite method if you wish or leave it as the default, **Auto-name each file with a numbered copy**.




7. On the **Filename Creator tab**, you can see the naming convention that will be used when auto-naming a numbered copy. By default, PDF Image Printer adds "_copy1" to the filename from the print job when creating a numbered copy. If desired, you can add or remove prefix/suffix text or increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.

By turning off the prompting each time you print, that means you will no longer be able to set the output location and output file name during each print. You can [set the desired Output Location and Output File Name](#) in the profile.


- i. To set the Output Location, select the file icon to browse to your desired location. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will default to the last used folder. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used.
- ii. To set the Output File Name, enter your desired base file name. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will use the filename from the print job.

Output Location

Output folder  Browse for folder.

Leave this blank to automatically save to the last used folder. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used.

Output File Name

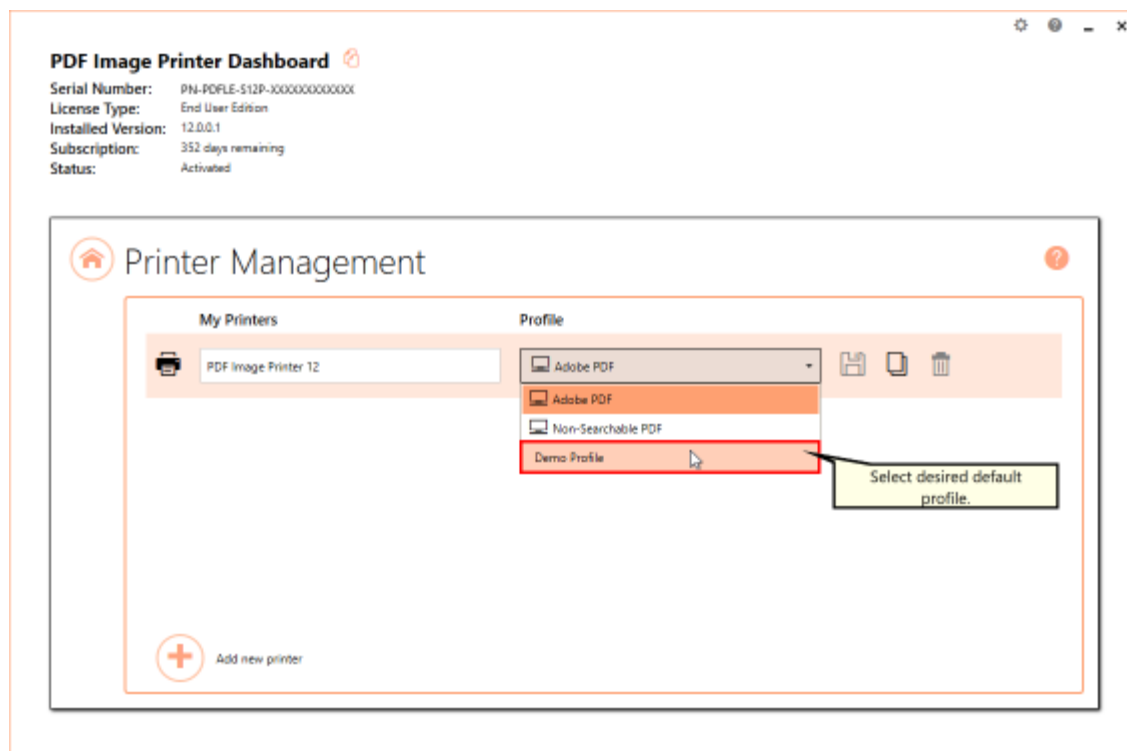
Base file name 

Leave this blank to use the filename from the print job.

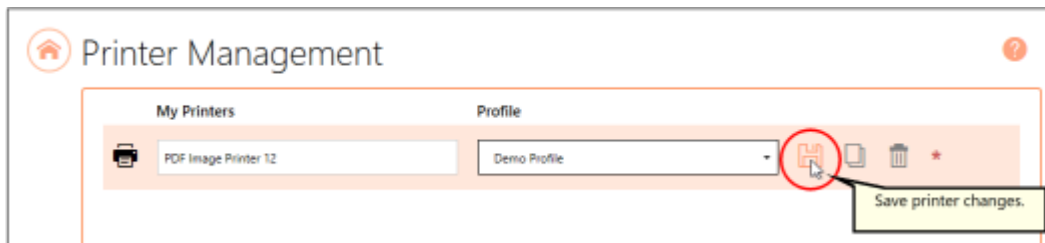
8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

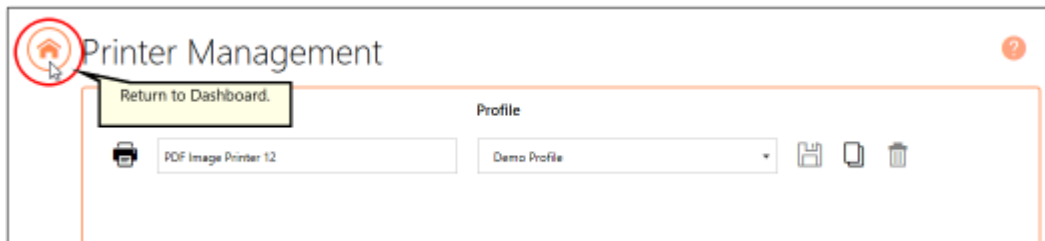
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



- iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, you will not be prompted by the Save As dialog.

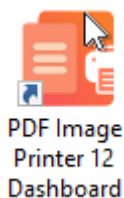
Change Output Type

PDF Image Printer can create two output types: Adobe PDF Multipaged (*.pdf) and Adobe PDF Serialized (*.pdf).

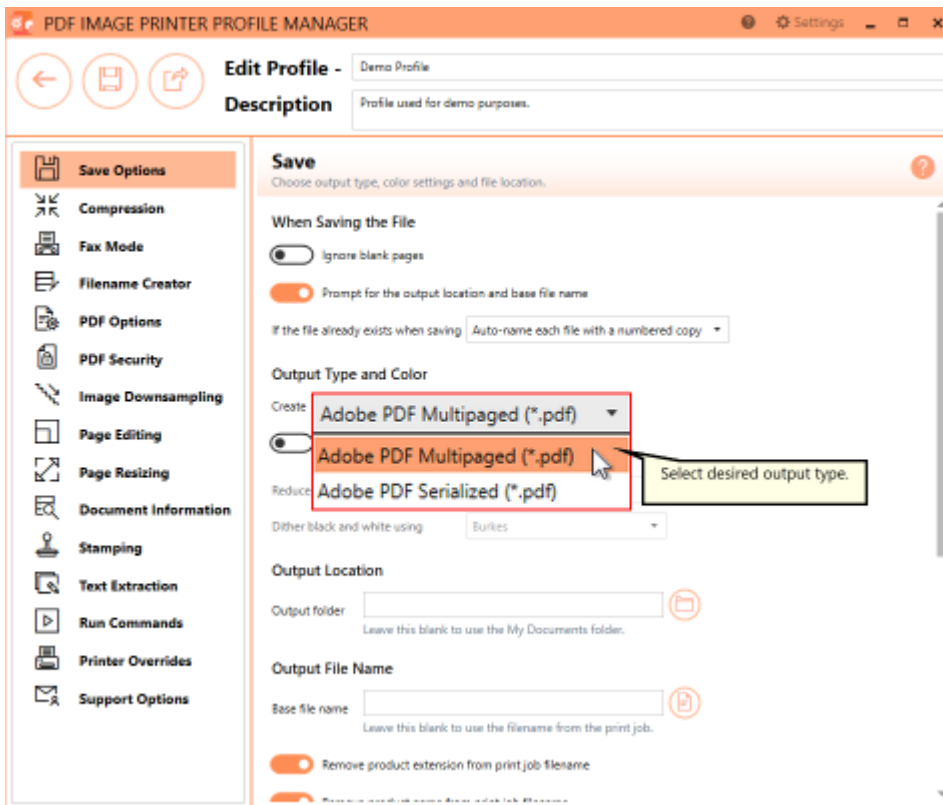
The [output type](#) is controlled through the profile.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



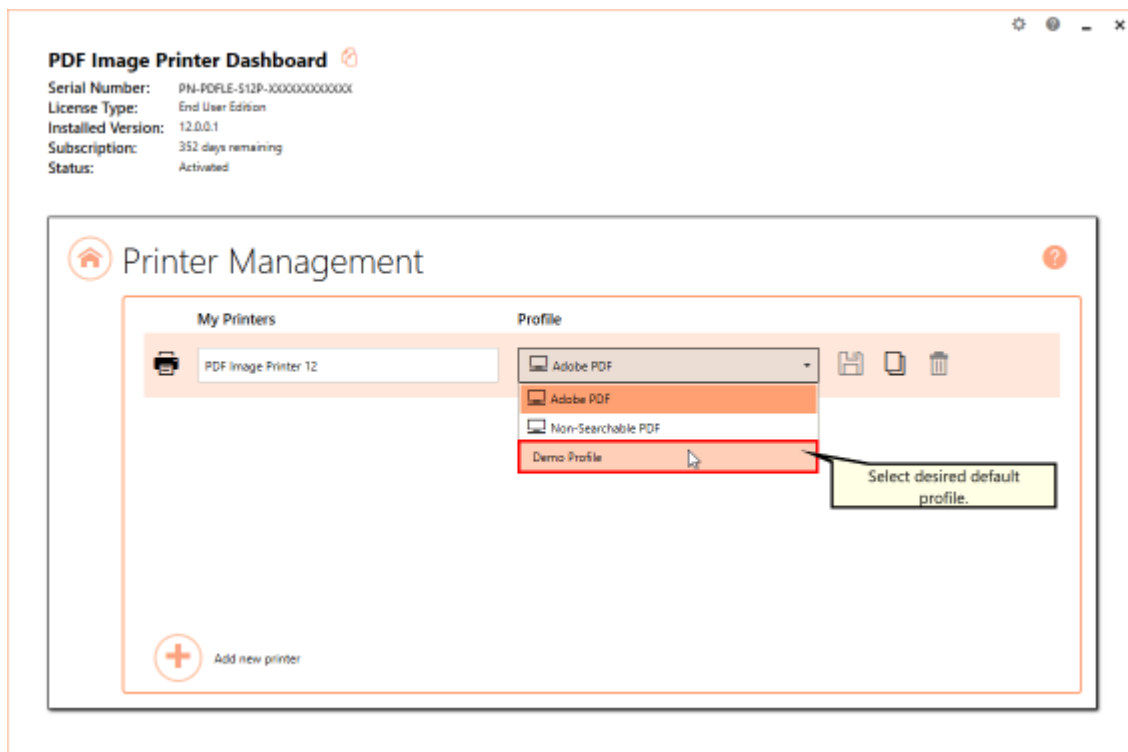
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Save Options tab**, under **Output Type and Color**, drop the box to select your desired output type.



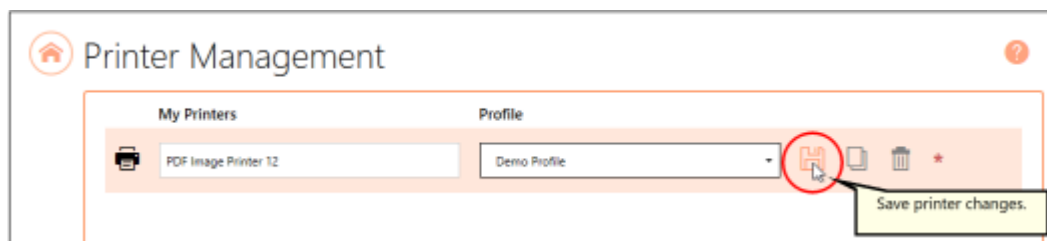
6. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

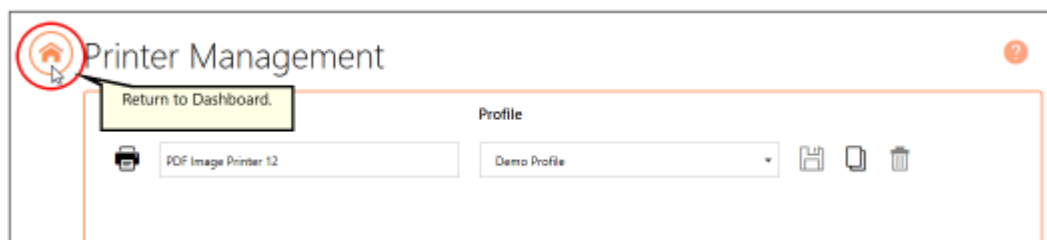
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



7. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, you will create your chosen output type.

Create a Serialized Sequence of Files

In certain instances, such as a database report of invoices where each invoice is on a separate page, you may want to create a single file for each page of your document. This is called a serialized sequence, and can be created from a single input document, or combined with the append feature, created from a series of documents. Each file is named uniquely based on its page number, or its place on the sequence if you are appending sequences together.

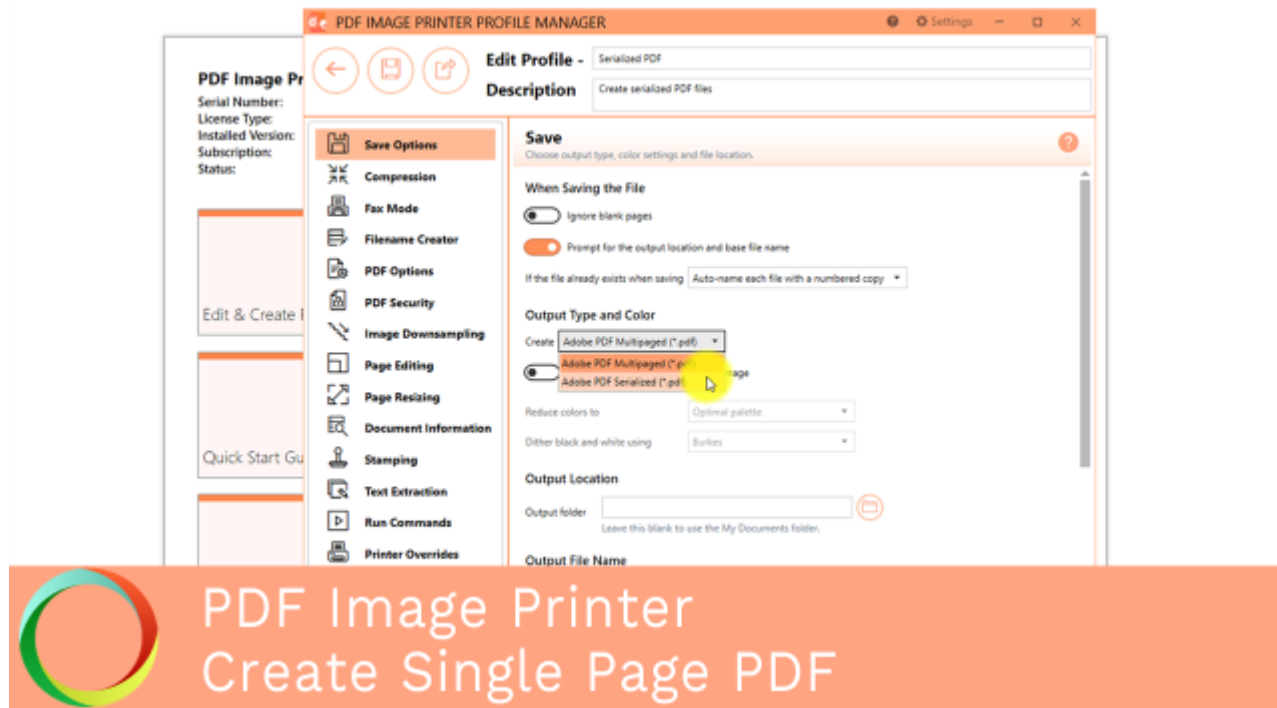
For example, a three page report from an invoice database, created as PDF files, would create the following three files:

- Invoice_001.pdf
- Invoice_002.pdf
- Invoice_003.pdf

Printing another database report of 4 pages and appending it to the same sequence would add the following four files:

- Invoice_004.pdf
- Invoice_005.pdf
- Invoice_006.pdf
- Invoice_007.pdf

The [serialized and append options](#) are controlled through the profile.



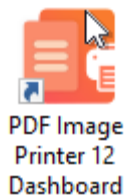
Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Creating Serialized Files From a Single File

The following steps show how to create a series of PDF files, one page per file, from a multipaged document.

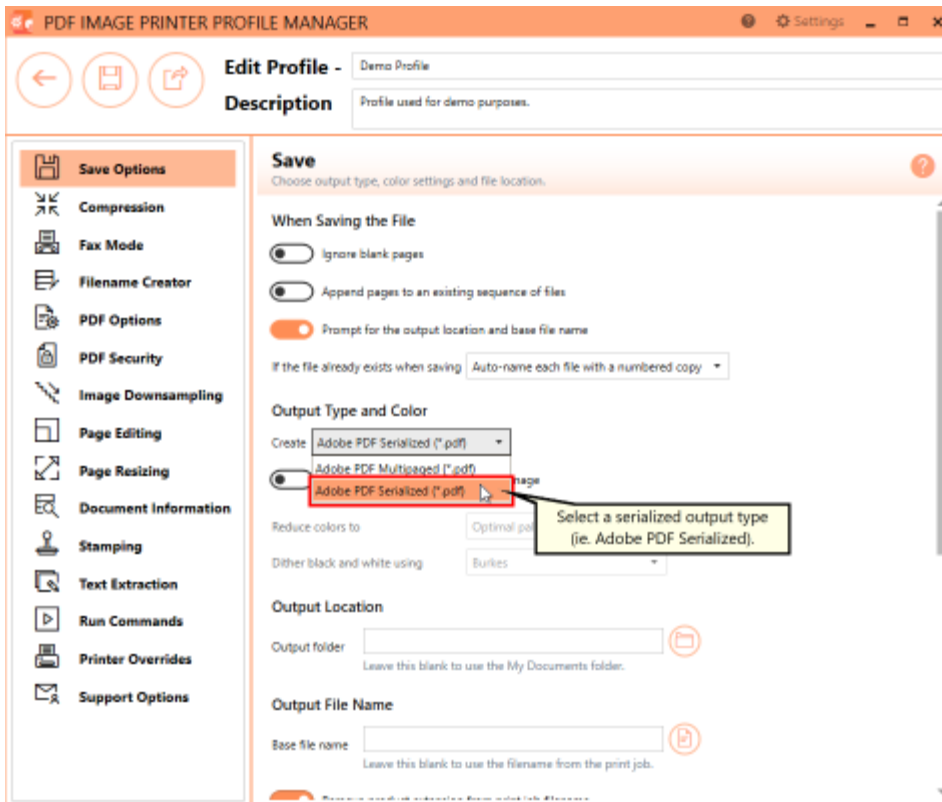
Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.


5. On the **Save Options** tab, under **Output Type and Color**, drop the box to select Adobe PDF Serialized



When creating a serialized sequence of files, you may be interested in setting the Output Location and Output File Name within the profile.


- To set the Output Location, select the file icon to browse to your desired location. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will default to the last used folder. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used.
- To set the Output File Name, enter your desired base file name. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will use the filename from the print job.

Output Location

Output folder  Browse for folder.

Leave this blank to automatically save to the last used folder. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used.

Output File Name

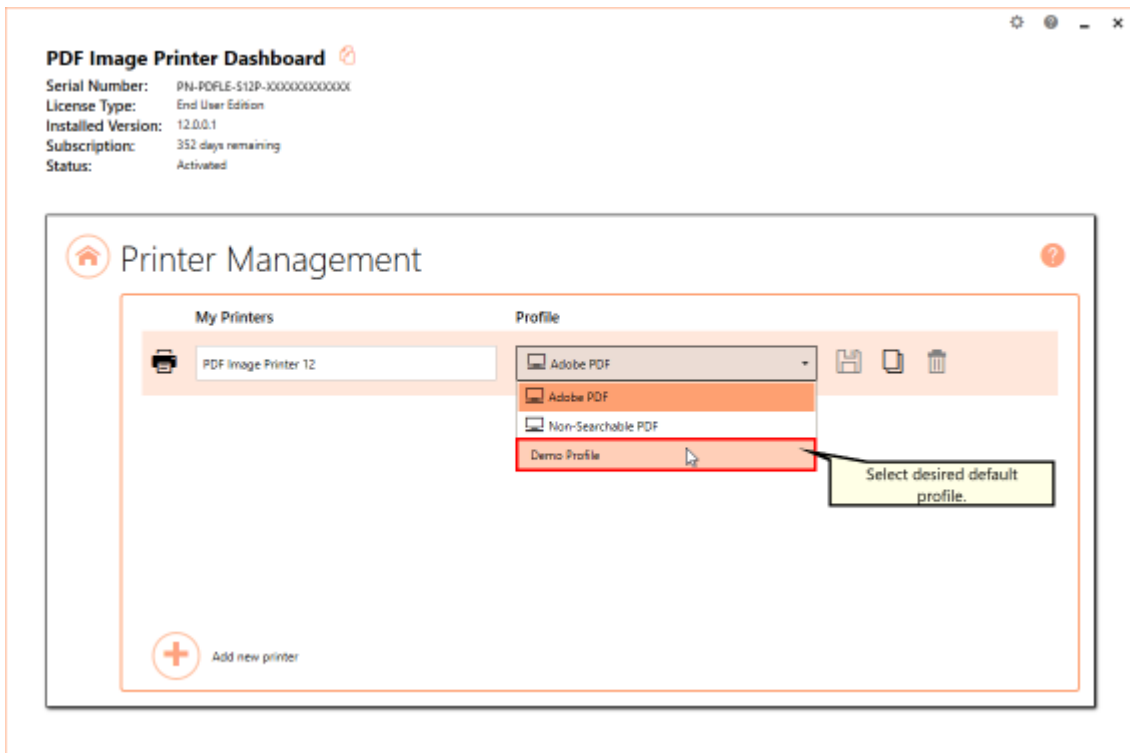
Base file name 

Leave this blank to use the filename from the print job.

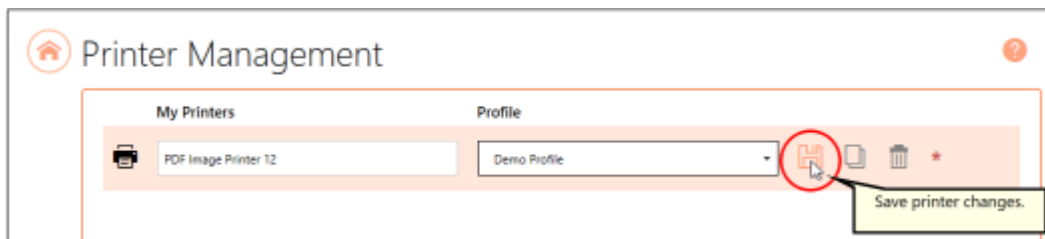
6. On the **Filename Creator tab**, you can see the naming convention that will be used when naming each file in your created sequence. By default, PDF Image Printer adds "_001" to the filename from the print job when creating serialized output. If desired, you can add or remove prefix/suffix text or increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.
7. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

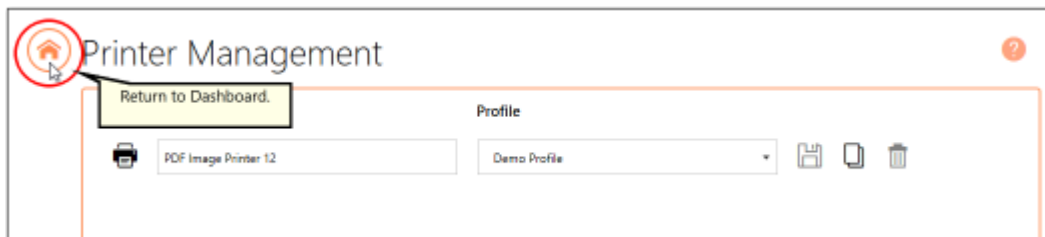
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



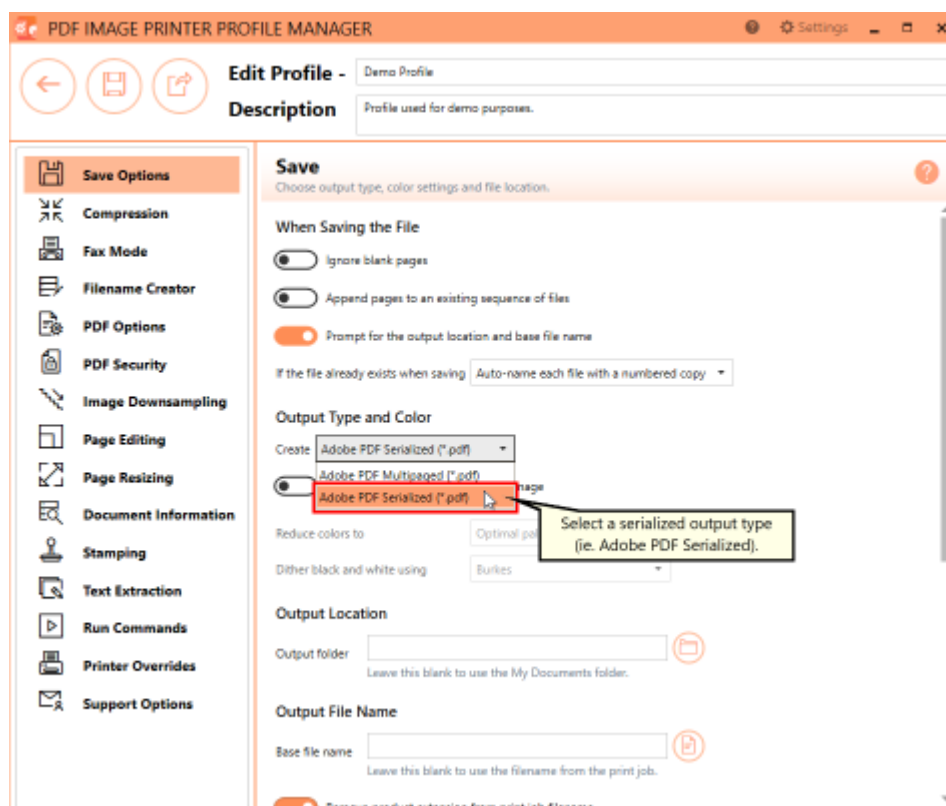
8. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, you will create a single file for each page of your document.

Adding to an Existing Sequence of Files

The following steps show you can add files to an existing sequence of files by simply carrying out the additional step of enabling appending in the profile.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Save Options tab**, under **Output Type and Color**, drop the box to select Adobe PDF Serialized




6. Enable **Append pages to an existing file**.

When adding to an existing sequence of files, you may be interested in setting the Output Location and Output File Name within the profile. The Output Location and Output File Name need to match that of the original sequence.


- i. To set the Output Location, select the file icon to browse to your desired location. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will default to the last used folder. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used.
- ii. To set the Output File Name, enter your desired base file name. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will use the filename from the print job.

Output Location

Output folder 

Leave this blank to automatically save to the last used folder. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used.

Output File Name

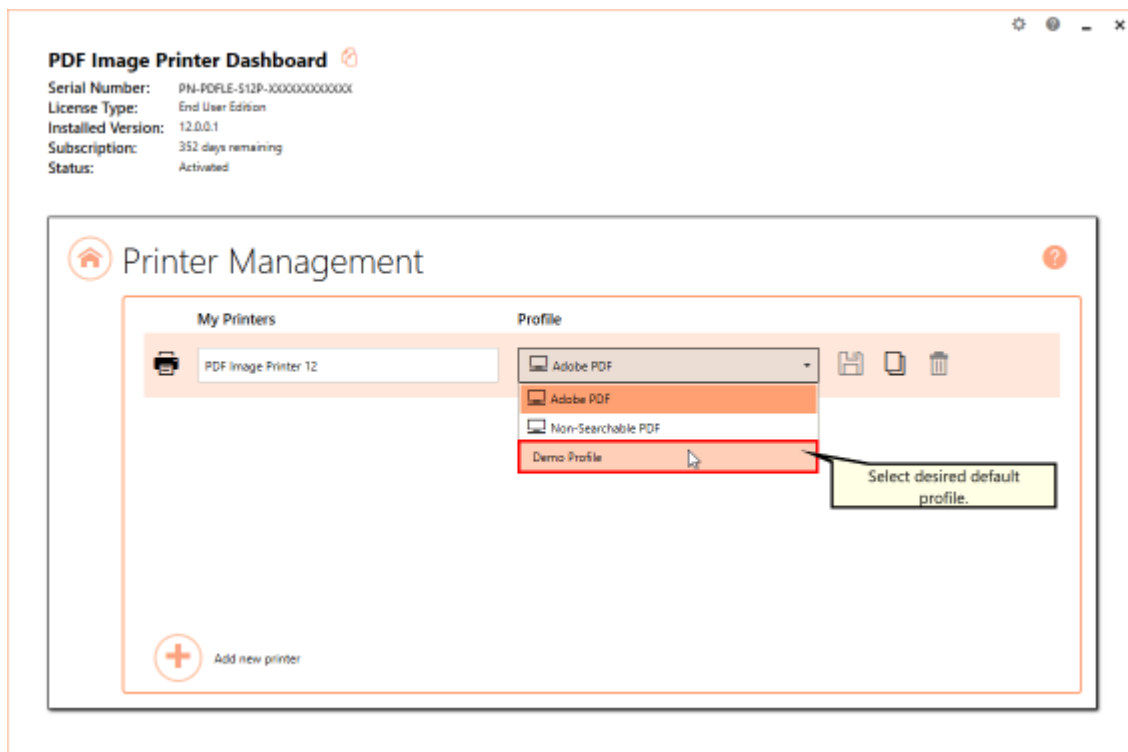
Base file name 

Leave this blank to use the filename from the print job.

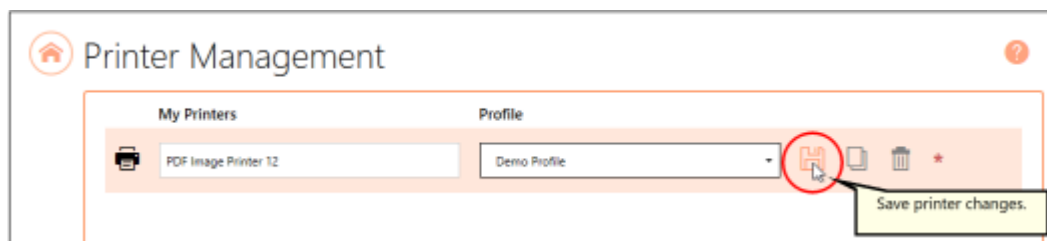
7. On the **Filename Creator tab**, you can see the naming convention that will be used when naming each file in your sequence. By default, PDF Image Printer adds "_001" to the filename from the print job when creating serialized output or when adding to an existing sequence. If desired, you can add or remove prefix/suffix text or increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.
8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

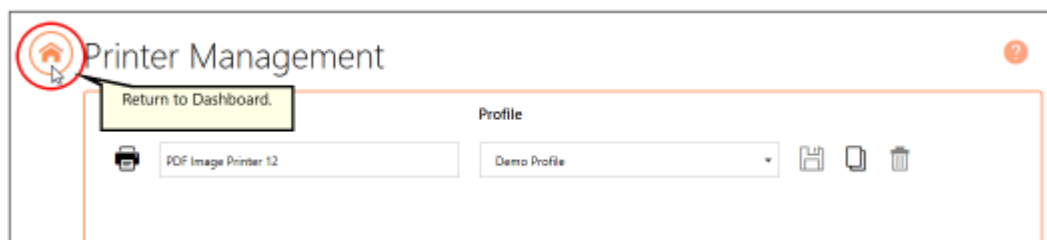
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.

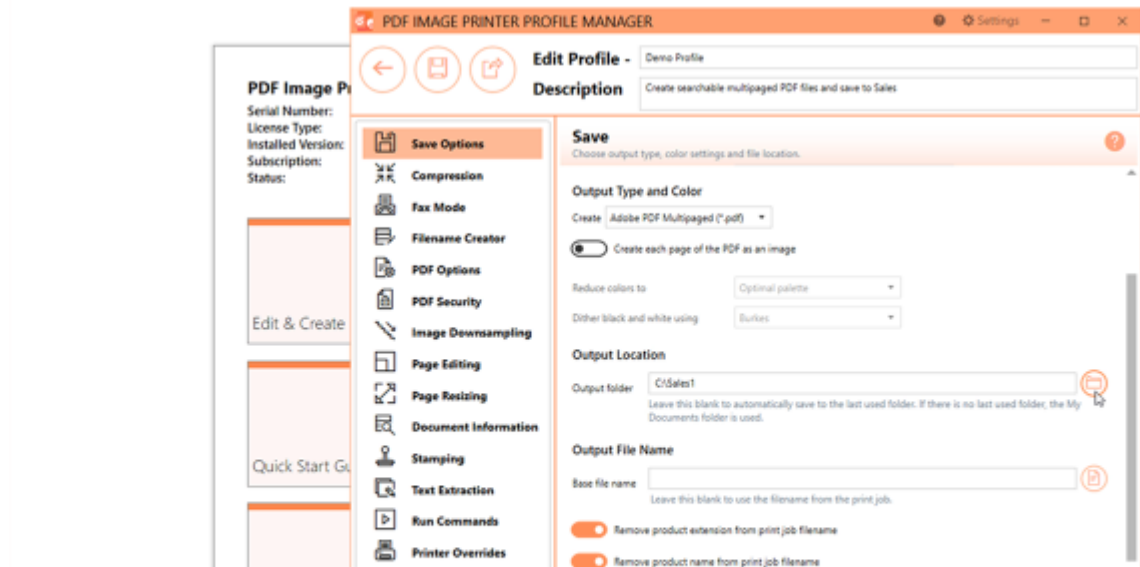


9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, you will create a single file for each page of your document, which will be added to an existing sequence.

Change Where Files are Saved

PDF Image Printer will save all output files to the My Documents folder by default. You can either change this to any desired folder on your desktop.

All [file output options](#) are controlled through the profile.

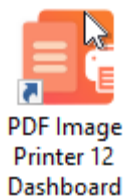


PDF Image Printer Change Where Files Are Saved

Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

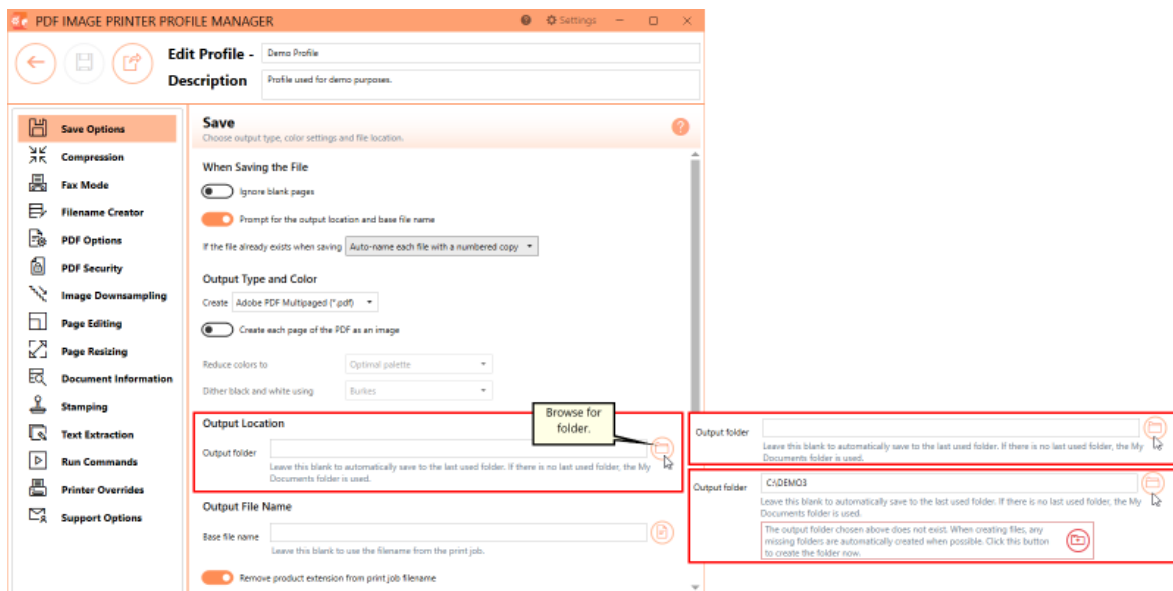
Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.

4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Save Options tab**, under **Output Location**, select the file icon to browse to your desired location. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will default to the last used folder. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used. You can also type directly into the Output folder field. If the folder location you enter does not exist, you will see a warning message explaining that this folder location does not exist and that when a new file is created PDF Image Printer will automatically try to create the missing folder if possible. Alternatively, you can click the red folder icon to create the new folder now.



6. If you are setting the output location, you may be interested in setting the output file name. To set the output file name, enter your desired base file name. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will use the filename from the print job.

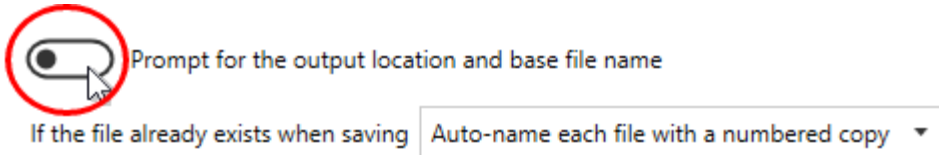
Output File Name

Base file name 

Leave this blank to use the filename from the print job.

If you choose to set the Output Location and/or Output File Name, you may also want to [disable prompting by the Save As dialog](#) each time you print.

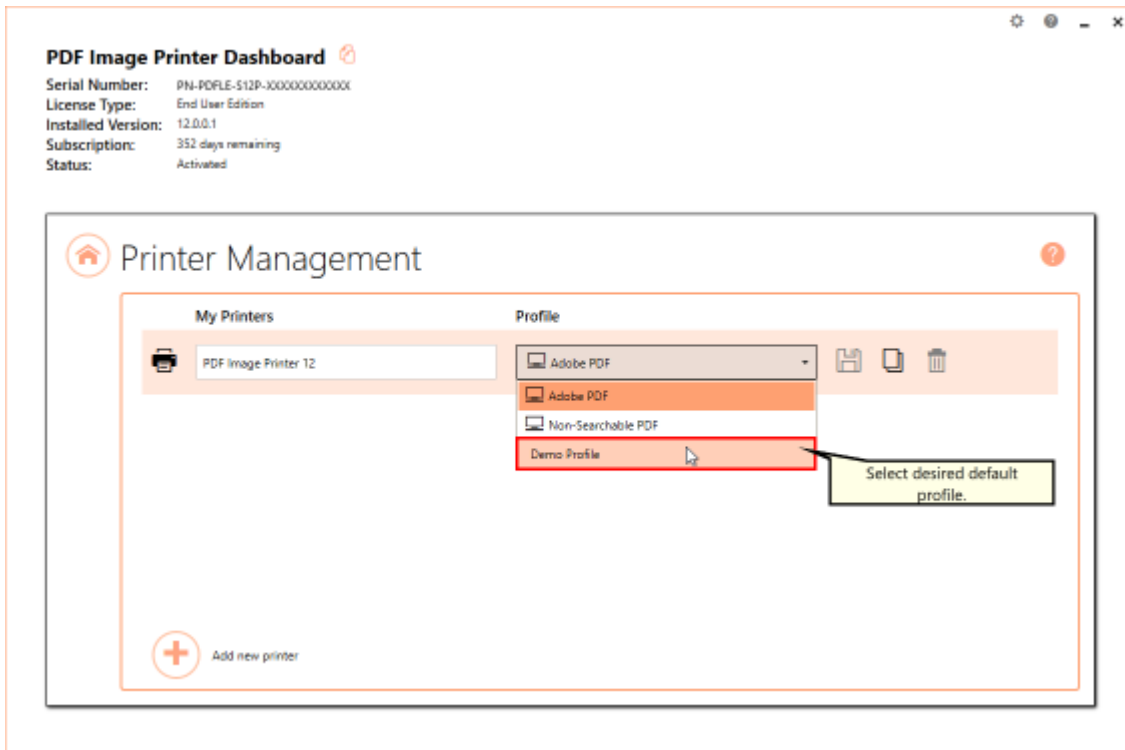
- i. To turn off prompting by the Save As dialog, disable **Prompt for the output location and base file name.**



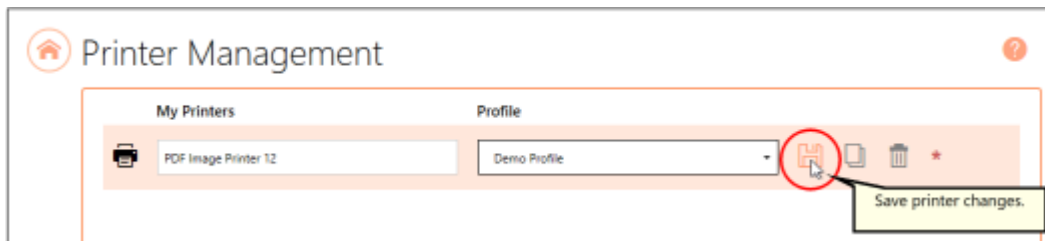
- 7. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

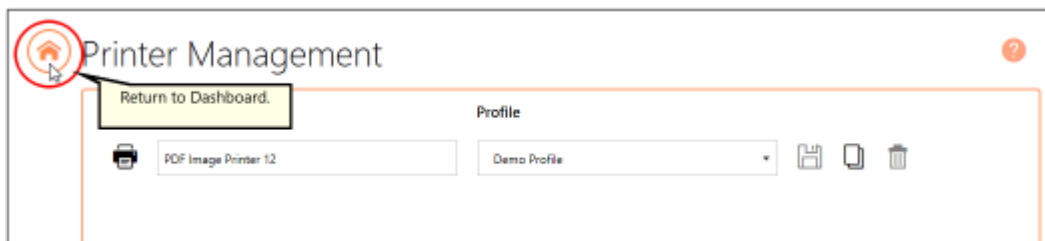
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



- iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



8. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the output file will be saved to your desired output location.

Automatically Split Files

When creating multipaged output the files created can be automatically split into a sequence of smaller files using one or both of the following criteria:

- split the file as soon as it exceeds a size threshold
- split the file based on a page count

If both file splitting options are enabled, the file will be split at the first condition that is met. File splitting only applies to the following multipaged file formats:

- Adobe PDF Multipaged (*.pdf)

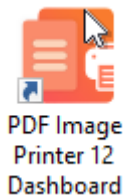
When file splitting is enabled the serialized naming profile is always used to name each file in the sequence. For example, printing a 15 page report from an invoice database to a multipaged PDF file and setting the file splitting page count to 5 pages will result in 3 output files, each with 5 pages, named as follows:

- Invoice_part001.pdf
- Invoice_part002.pdf
- Invoice_part003.pdf

[Automatic file splitting](#) is controlled through the profile.

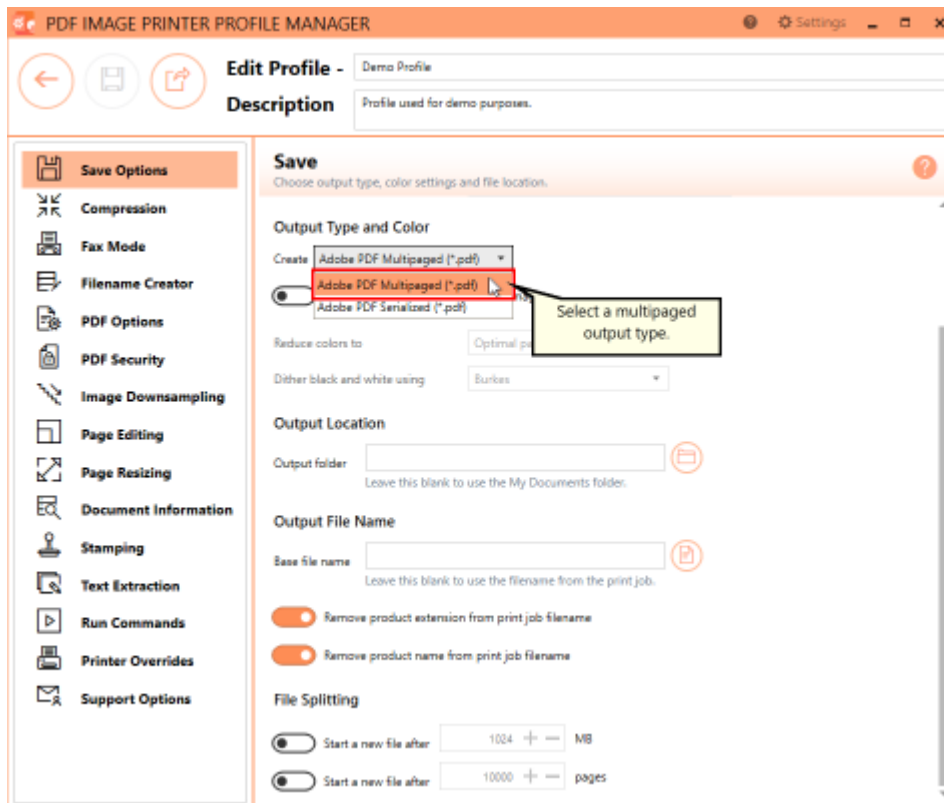
Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



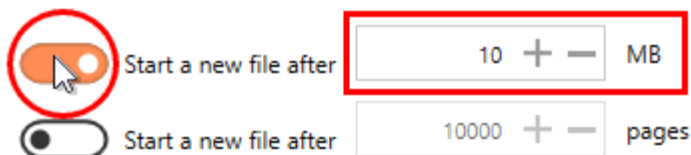
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.

4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Save Options tab**, under **Output Type and Color**, drop the box to select Adobe PDF Multipaged



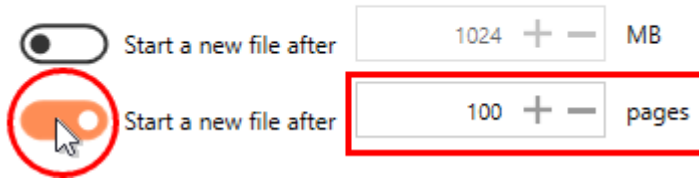
6. Under **File Splitting**,
 - a. to split the file based on a size threshold, enable the first criteria and set "Start a new file after" to your desired size value (ex. 10MB).

File Splitting



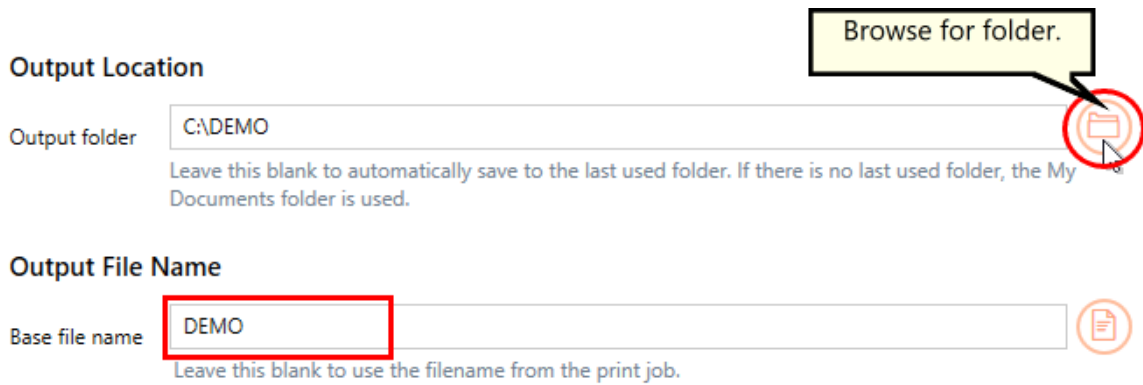
- b. to split the file based on a page count, enable the second criteria and set "Start a new file after" to your desired page count (ex. 100 pages).

File Splitting



When splitting files into a sequence of smaller files, you may be interested in setting the Output Location and Output File Name within the profile.

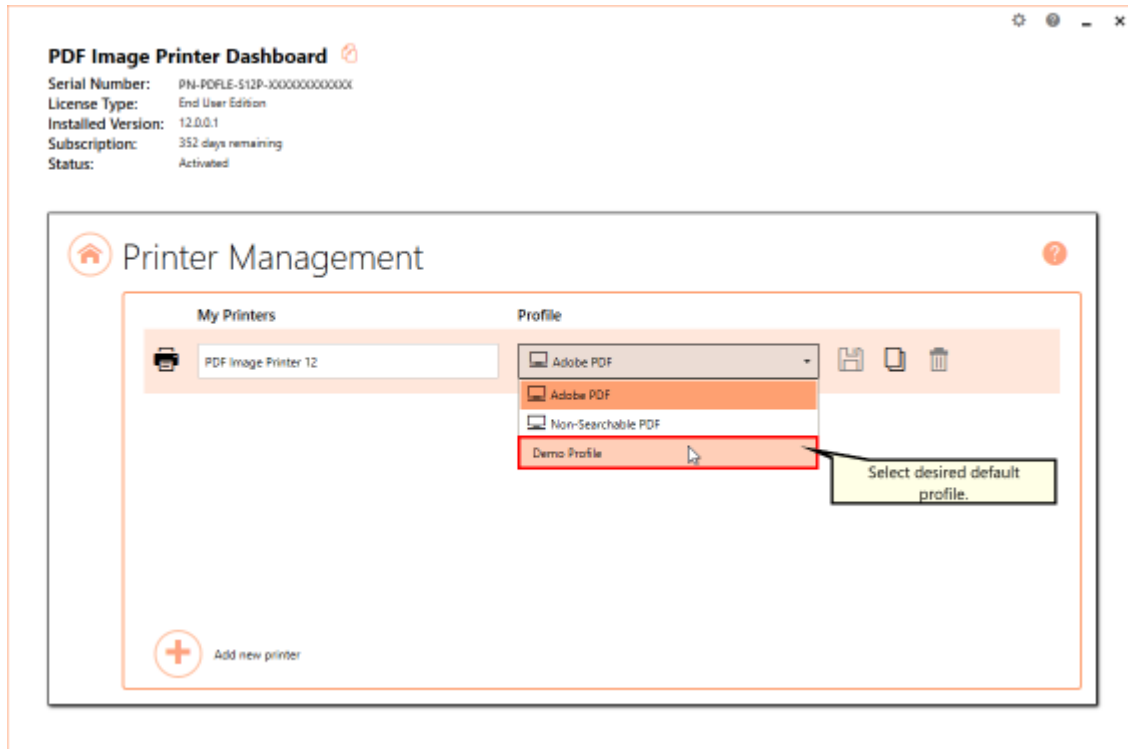
- i. To set the Output Location, select the file icon to browse to your desired location. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will default to the last used folder. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used.
- ii. To set the Output File Name, enter your desired base file name. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will use the filename from the print job.



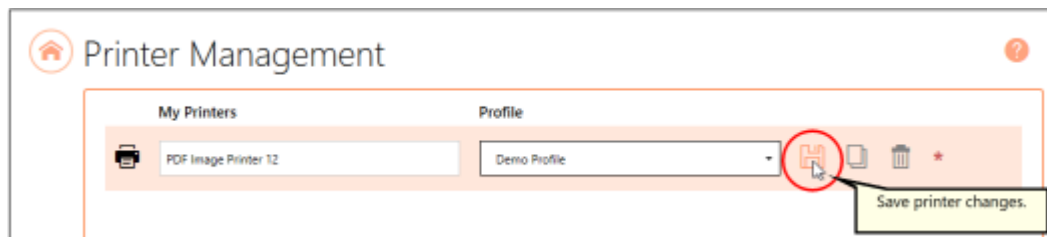
7. On the **Filename Creator tab**, you can see the naming convention that will be used when naming each file in your created sequence of smaller files. By default, PDF Image Printer adds "_part0001" to the filename from the print job when creating a sequence. If desired, you can add or remove prefix/suffix text or increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.
8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

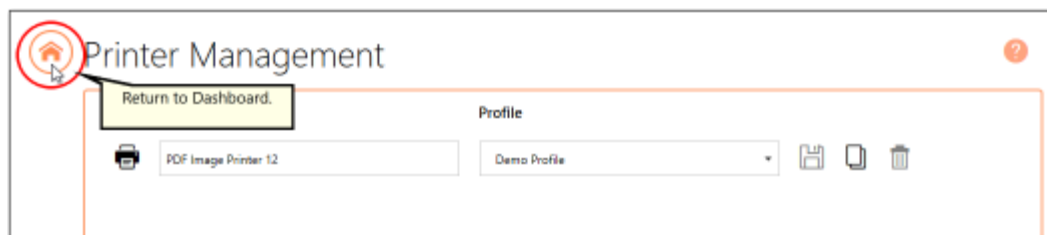
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



- iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



- iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



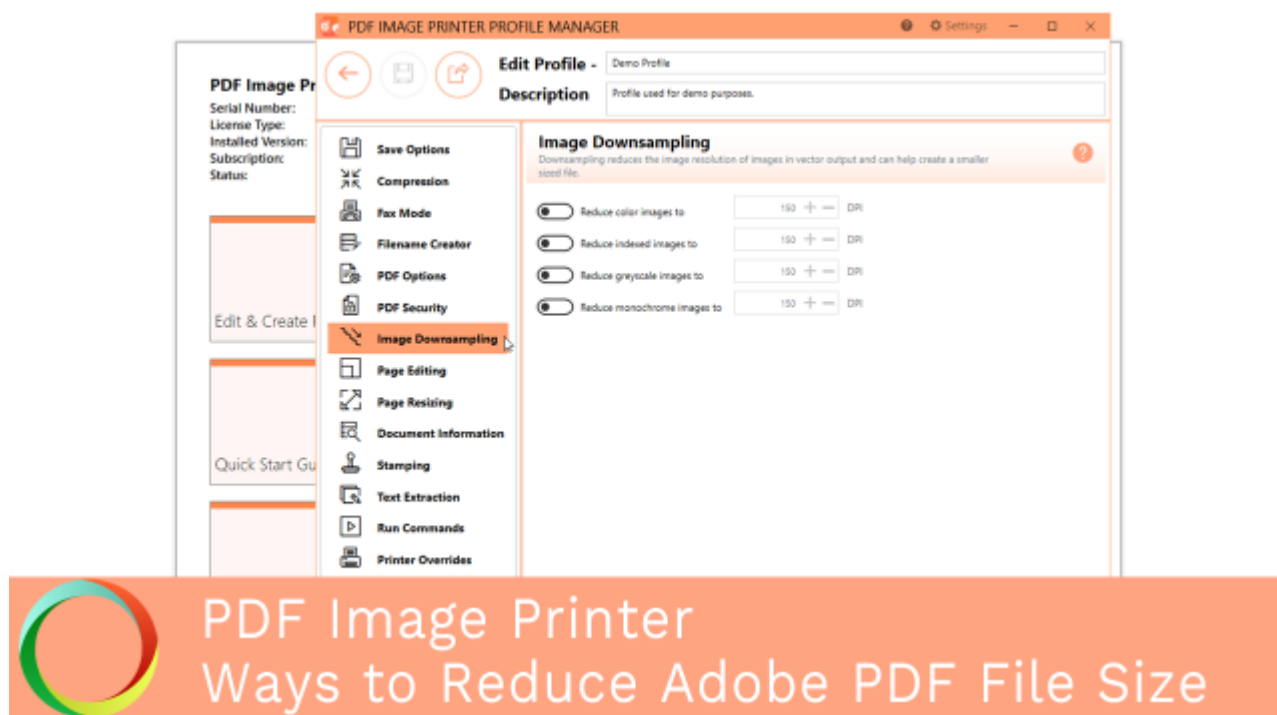
9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the output will be automatically split into a sequence of smaller files using your desired criteria.

Reduce Searchable PDF File Size

Note: The methods for reducing file size discussed in this topic only apply to searchable Adobe PDFs with embedded images. The resolution of images embedded in vector output can be reduced thereby creating an overall smaller file size.

The file size of your output Adobe PDF file can be reduced by adjusting the **compression** and **image downsampling** applied to any embedded images. [Compression](#) and [Image Downsampling](#) are controlled through the profile. The default compression and image downsampling options selected for the system profiles provided with PDF Image Printer will often give a good balance between file size and image quality.

Reducing the file size of your Adobe PDF file is largely dependent upon the input documents you are converting. If you require assistance reducing your file size, please contact PEERNET support.

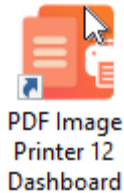


Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

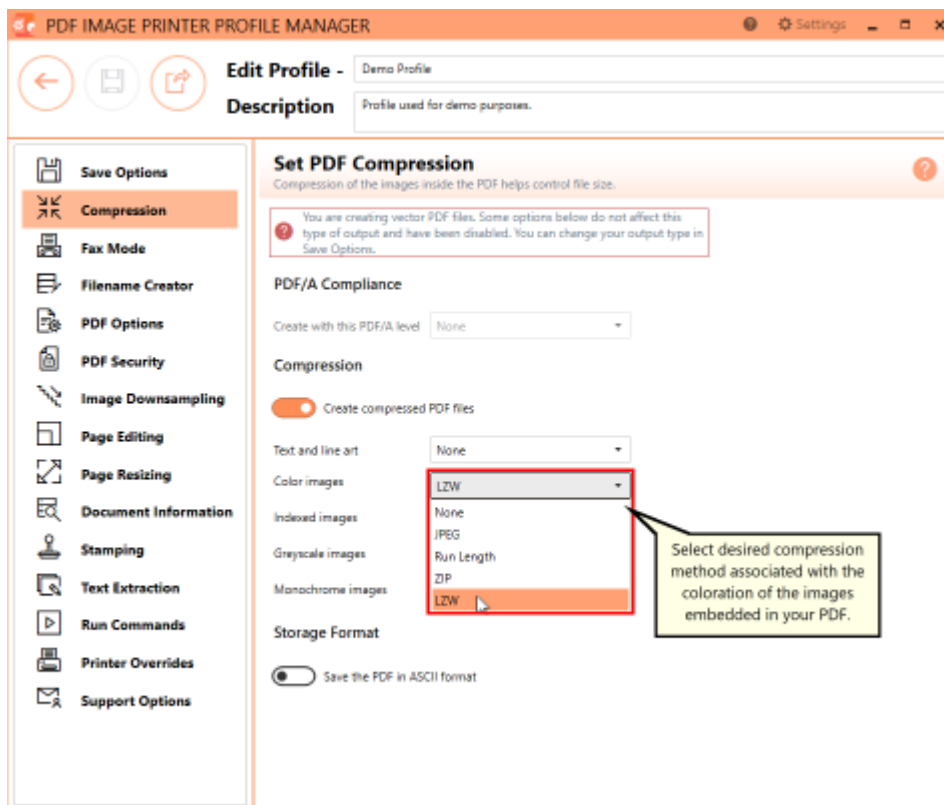
Compression

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



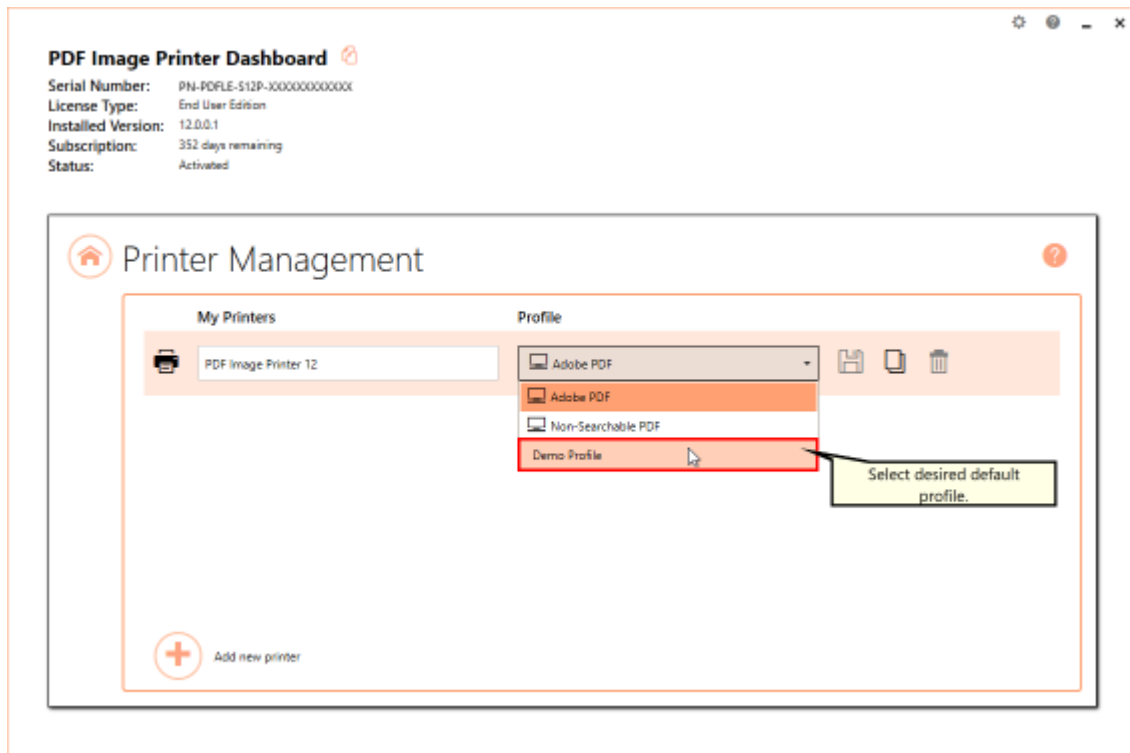
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Compression tab**, you can change the compression method applied to different images embedded in your Adobe PDF based on the coloration of the image. Typically you will only need to change the compression method if you have been instructed to do so by a publisher or archiving software. By default, PDF compression is enabled. Disabling PDF compression would increase your file size.



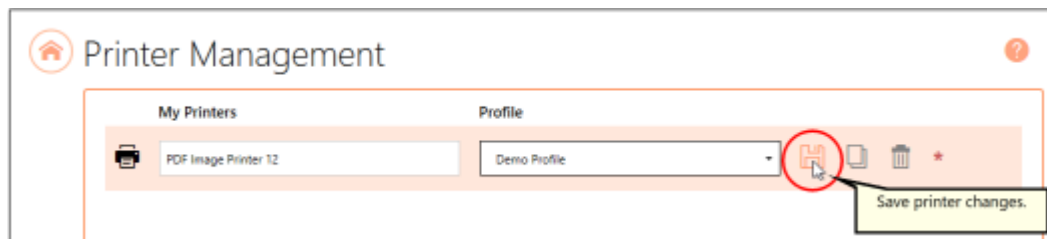
6. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

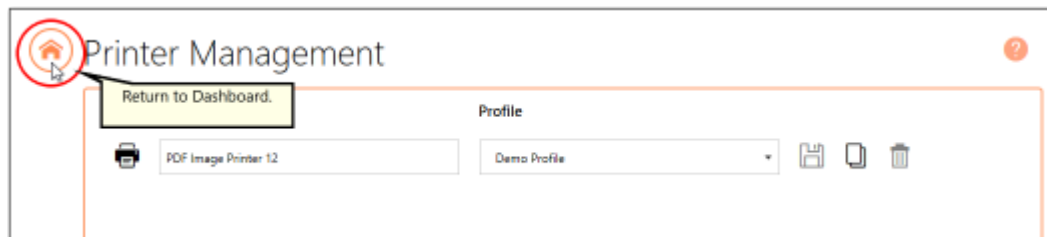
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



7. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the compression option you selected will be applied to the output Adobe PDF file.

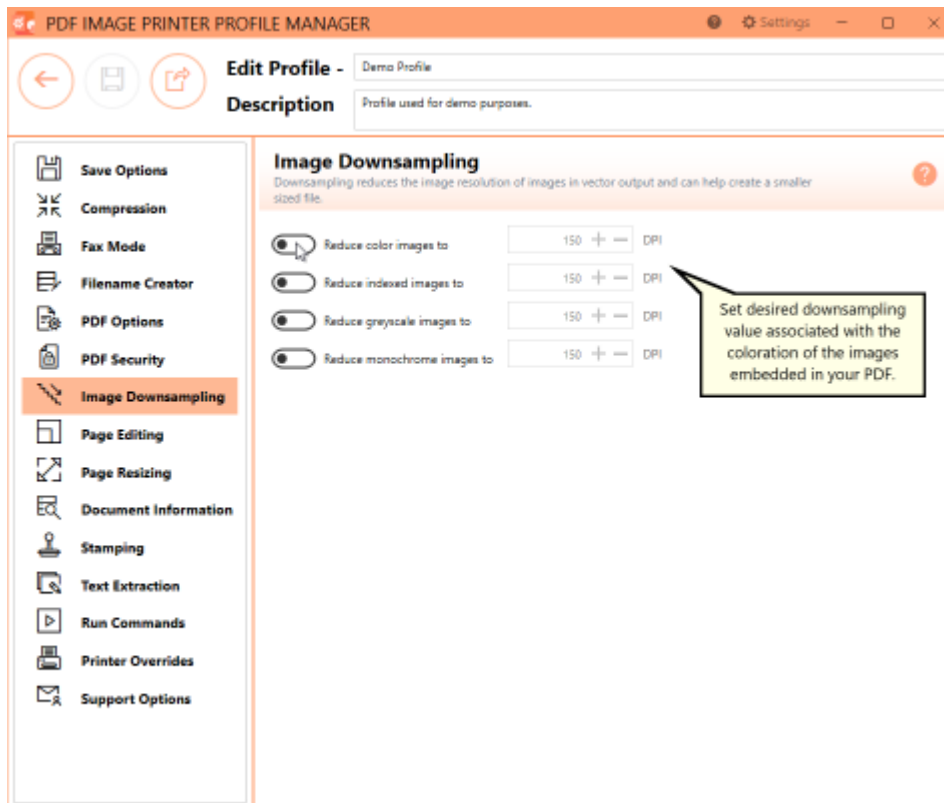
Image Downsampling

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



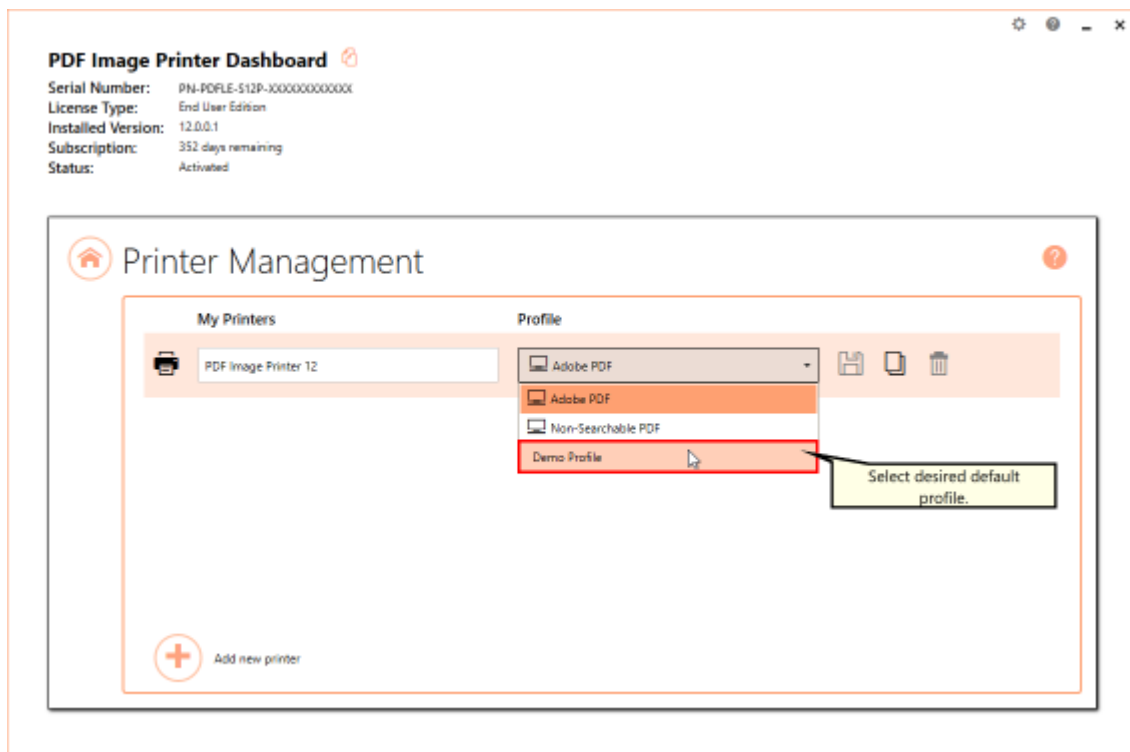
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Image Downsampling tab**, you can change the downsampling values applied to different images embedded in your Adobe PDF based on the coloration of the image. Downsampling can greatly reduce the amount of space it takes to store any images contained in your Adobe PDF file by reducing the resolution of the images. The side effect of reducing the resolution of the images is a reduction in the quality of the images.



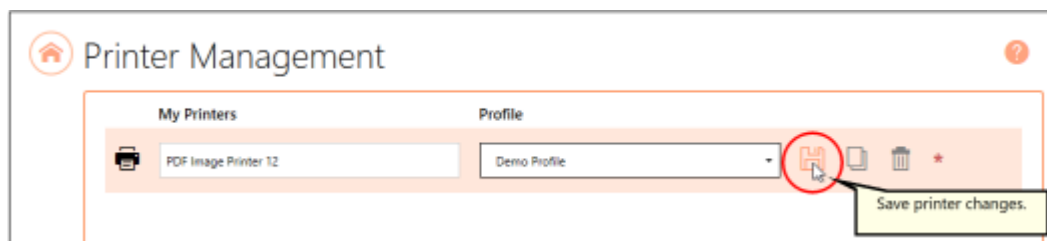
6. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

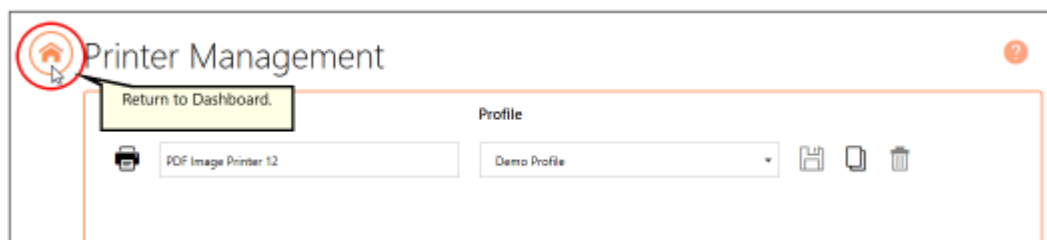
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



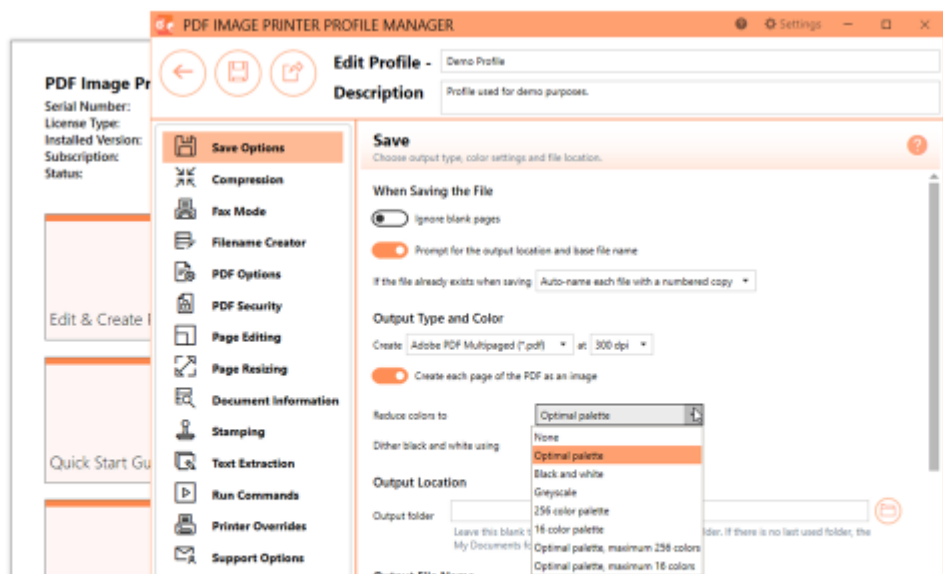
7. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the image downsampling option you selected will be applied to the output Adobe PDF file.

Reduce Non-Searchable PDF File Size

Note: This topic only applies to non-searchable PDF files, where each page of the PDF is being created as an image. For information on reducing file size with searchable Adobe PDF, please see this topic: [Reduce Searchable PDF File Size](#)

The file size of your output PDF files can be reduced by adjusting the **color reduction** and **compression options**. [Color reduction](#) and [Compression](#) are controlled through the profile. The default color reduction and compression options selected for the system profiles provided with PDF Image Printer will often give a good balance between file size and quality.

Reducing the file size of your PDF files is largely dependent upon the input documents you are converting. An issue you may encounter is balancing file size with image quality. If you require assistance reducing your file size, please contact PEERNET support.

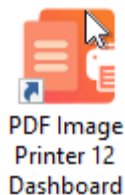


Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Color Reduction

Step by Step Instructions

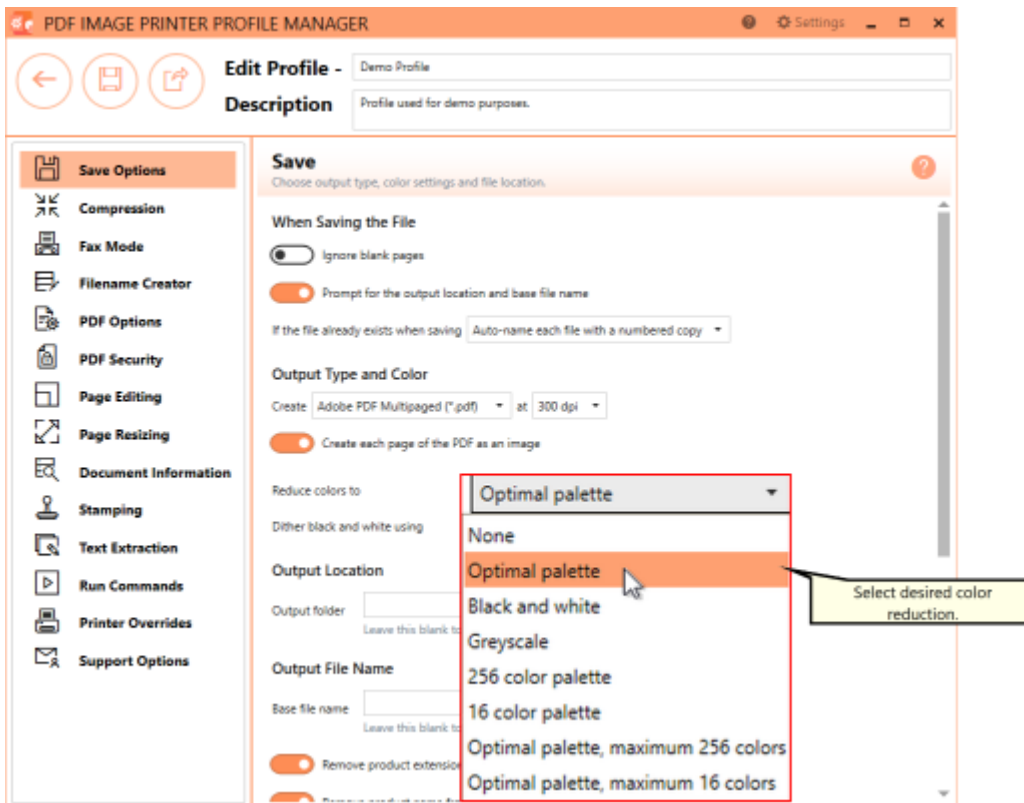
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Save Options tab**, under **Output Type and Color**, enable **Create each page of the PDF as an image**.



6. Then drop the box next to "Reduce colors to" and select your desired color reduction.



Color Reduction refers to the number of colors that are saved in the output PDF file. The default setting is **reduce colors to optimal palette** which means that PDF Image Printer will reduce each page down to the smallest number of colors required to represent that page. Therefore all colors present in the original file will be maintained in the output PDF file.

Other color reduction options include:

- *Reduce to black and white*
- *Reduce to greyscale*
- *Reduce colors to 256 color palette*
- *Reduce colors to 16 color palette*
- *Reduce colors to Optimal color, maximum 256 colors*
- *Reduce colors to Optimal color, maximum 16 colors*
- *None*

All of these other options will limit the number of colors saved in the output PDF file to different degrees.

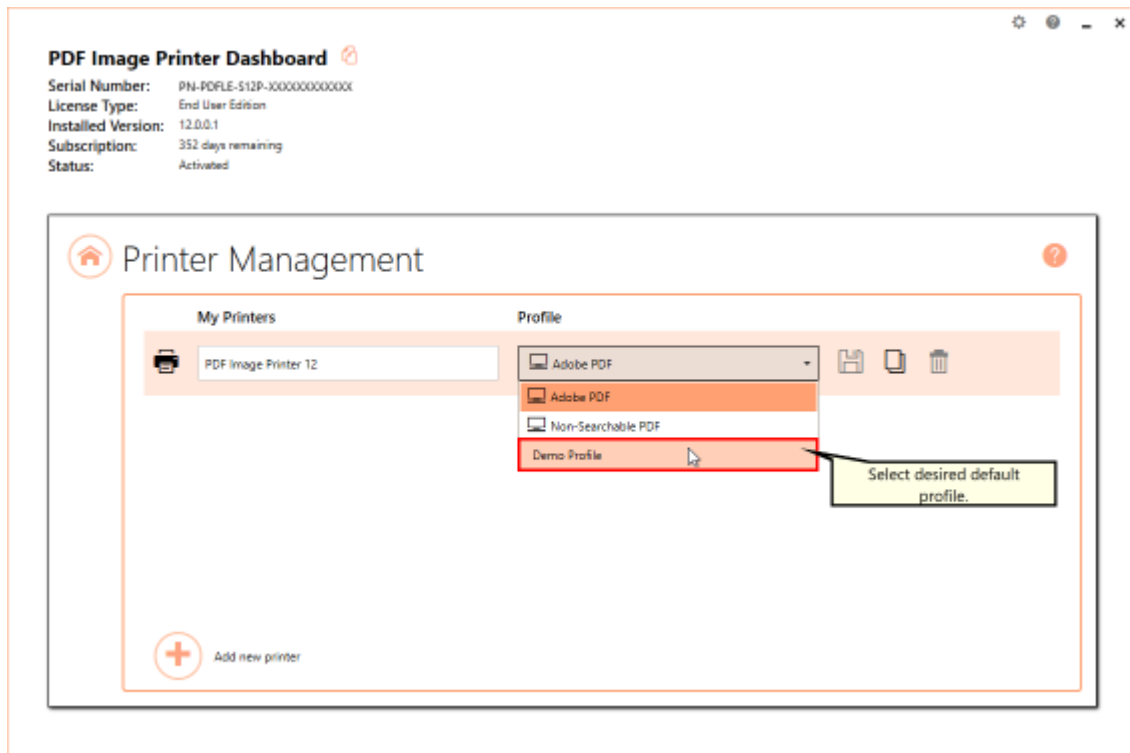
Reduce to black and white may work to reduce the file size of a text only document, but keep in mind that this color reduction option will only keep two colors - black and white - in the output PDF file, which may interrupt anti-aliasing technique used to smooth the appearance of letters.

Reduce to greyscale will effectively reduce the file size of a document with colored images by converting the colored images to greyscale images. We would not recommend using *reduce to black and white* when converting documents with images. If you must use *reduce to black and white*, we do offer a few dithering methods that you can experiment with.

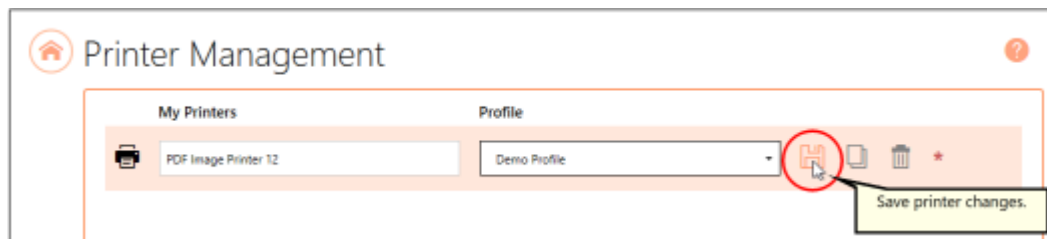
7. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

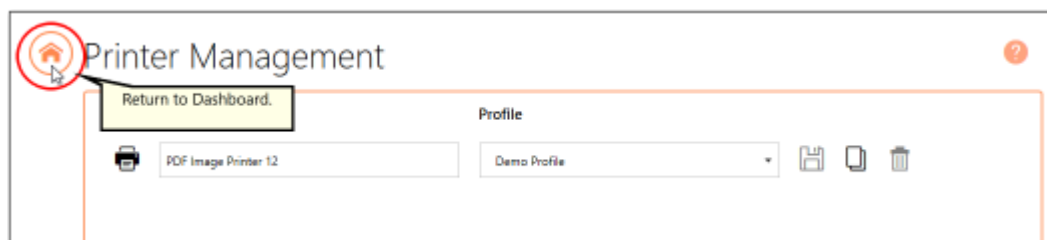
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.

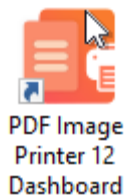


8. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the color reduction option you selected will be applied to the output PDF file.

Compression

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Save Options tab**, under **Output Type and Color**, enable **Create each page of the PDF as an image**.

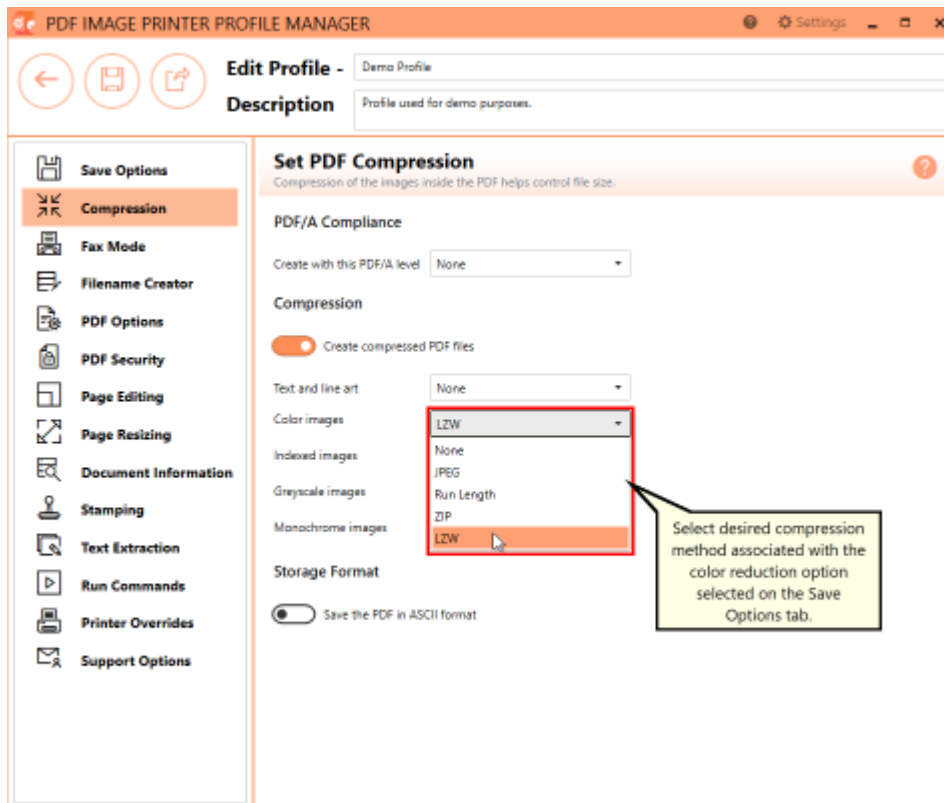
Output Type and Color

Create at



Create each page of the PDF as an image

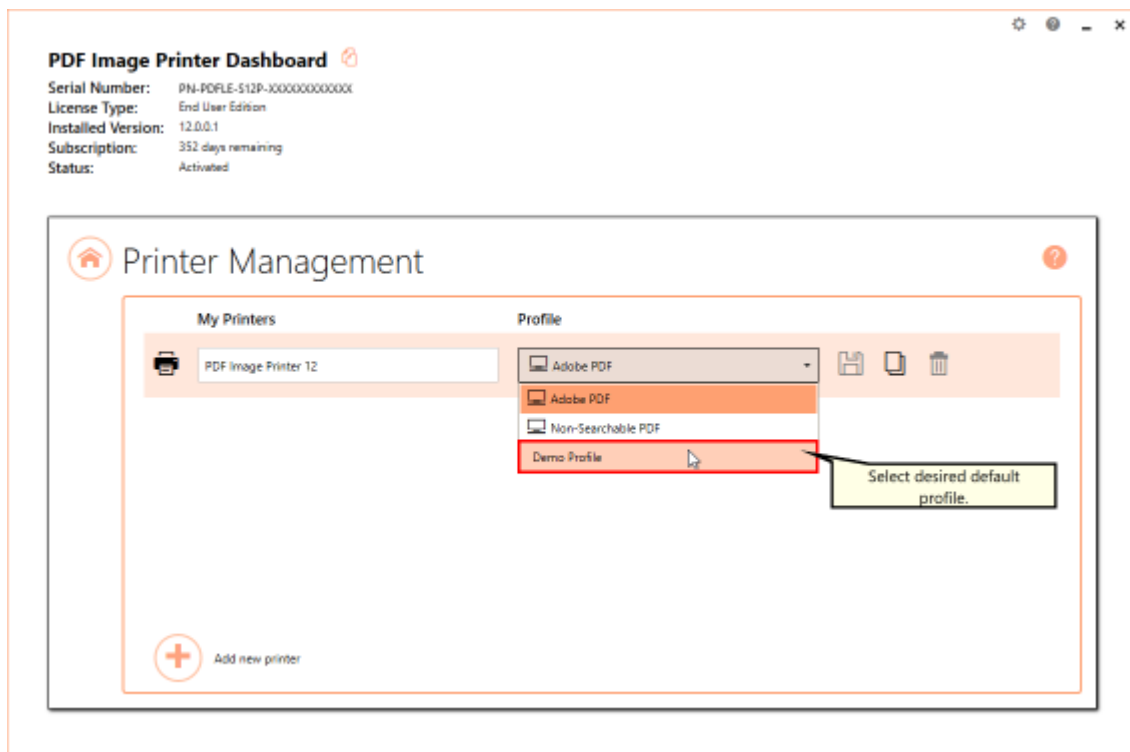
6. On the **Compression tab**, you can change the compression method used based on the color reduction option selected on the Save Options tab. Be sure that you are changing the correct compression field in relation to the color reduction option selected. If you are using the default color reduction option, *reduce colors to optimal palette*, then you should be working with the *Color images* compression field. Typically you will only need to change the compression method if you have been instructed to do so by a publisher or archiving software. By default, PDF compression is enabled. Disabling PDF compression would increase your file size.



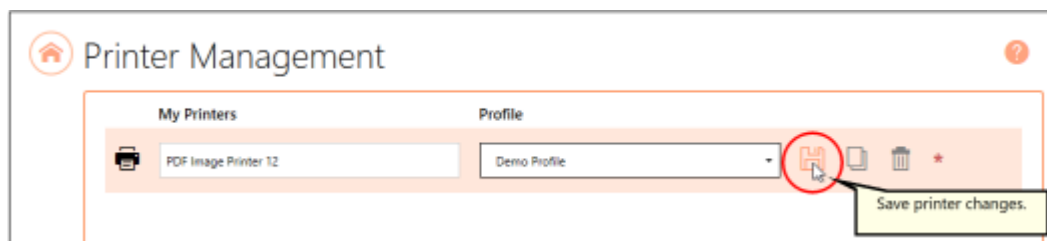
7. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

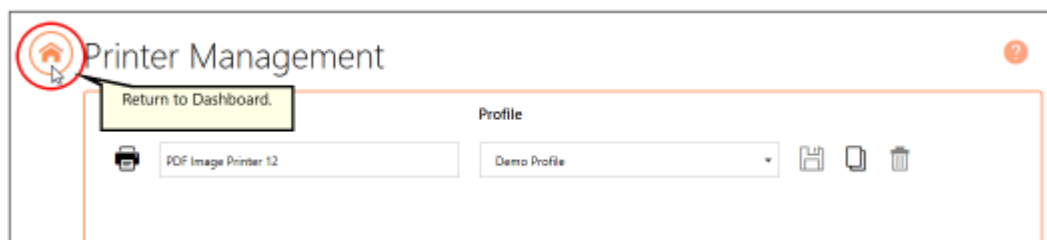
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



8. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your documents to PDF Image Printer, the compression option you selected will be applied to the output PDF file.

Create Fax Format Files

PDF Image Printer can create files that can be used by fax software or a hardware fax board on your computer. For searchable PDFs (ie. Adobe PDF), PDF Image Printer can only create files that are restricted to fax paper size. For non-searchable PDFs (note: **Create each page of the PDF as an image** is enabled on the Save Options tab) PDF Image Printer can create files that are restricted to both fax resolutions and fax paper size.

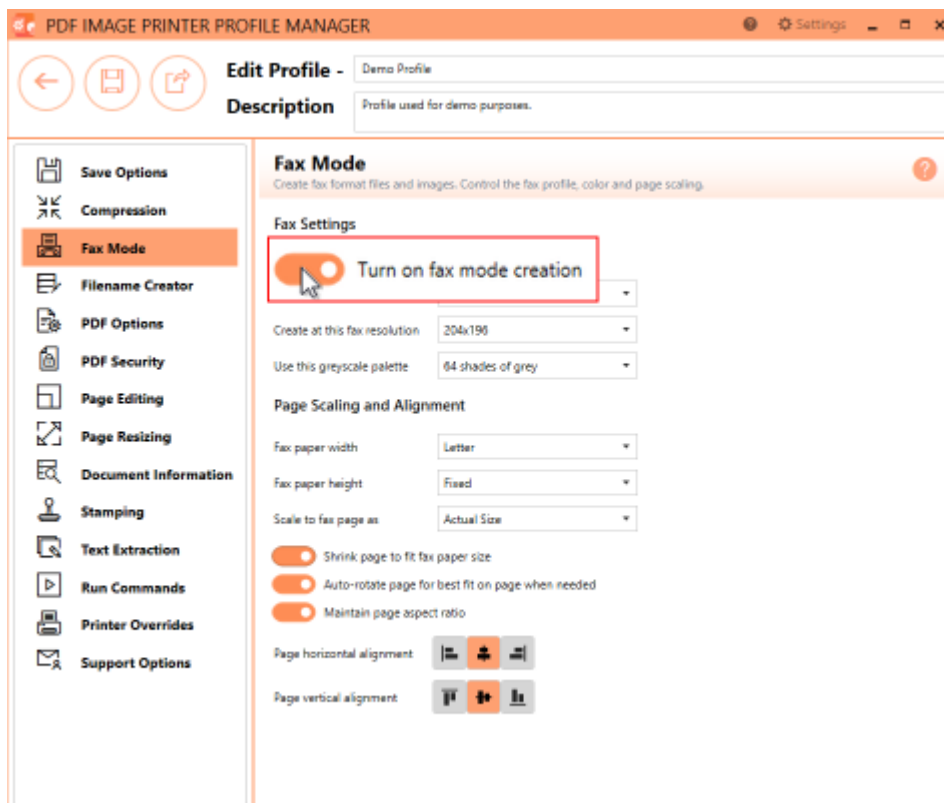
All [fax related settings](#) including fax profile, fax resolutions, and fax paper size are controlled through the profile.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Fax Mode**, enable **Turn on fax mode creation**.



6. Beside **Use this fax profile**, use the drop boxes to set your desired fax profile.

- Profile F will create standard monochrome faxes.
- Profile S will create simplified monochrome faxes.
- Profile C will create color faxes.

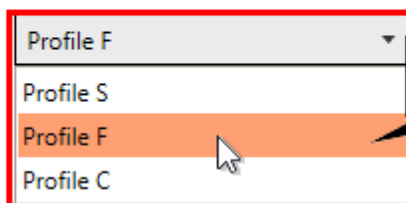
Fax Settings

Turn on fax mode creation

Use this fax profile

Create at this fax resolution

Use this greyscale palette



Select desired fax profile.

7. Beside **Create at this fax resolution**, use the drop boxes to set your desired fax resolution.

- If you are creating a monochrome fax, common fax resolutions are 200x200, 204x196 and 204x98.
- If you are creating a color fax, a common fax resolution is 200x200.

Fax Settings

Turn on fax mode creation

Use this fax profile: Profile F

Create at this fax resolution: 204x196

Use this greyscale palette:

Page Scaling and Alignment:

Fax paper width: 204x196

Fax paper height:

Scale to fax page as:

Shrink page to fit fax

Auto-rotate page for

Maintain page aspect

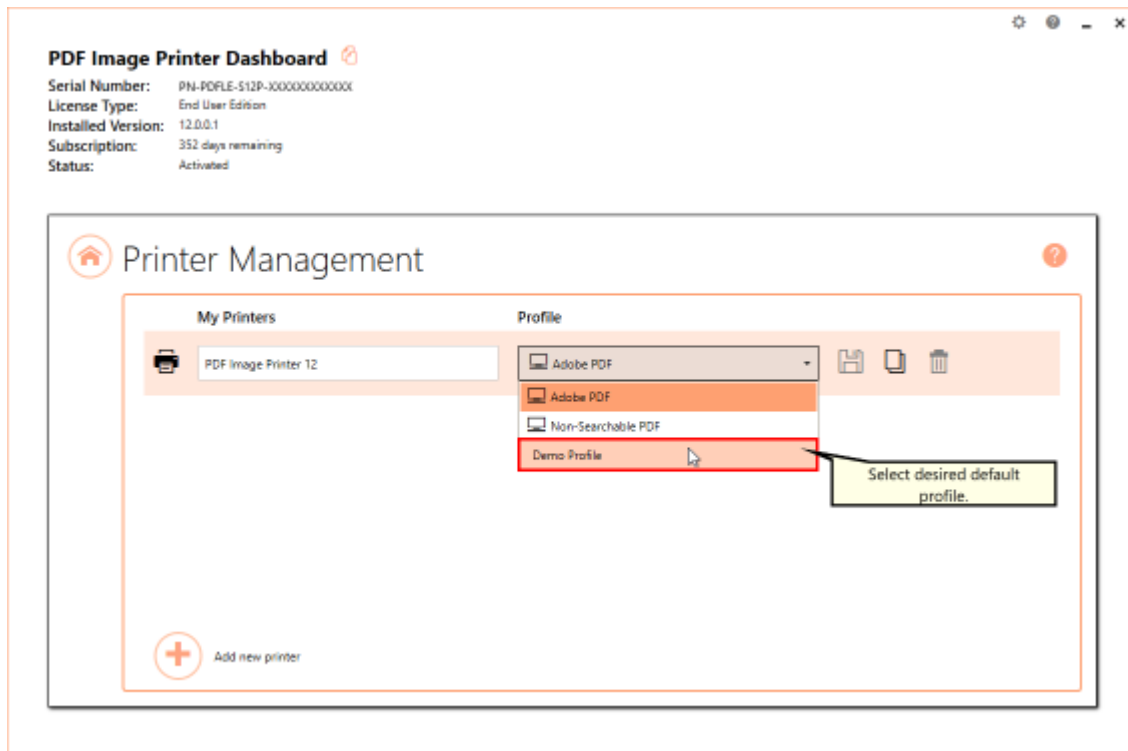
Page horizontal alignment:

Page vertical alignment:

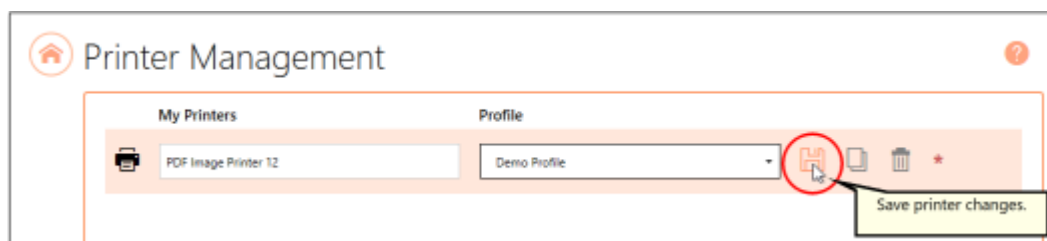
8. Adjust any other fax related settings. See the [Fax Mode tab](#) in the Profile Manager section for more details.
9. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

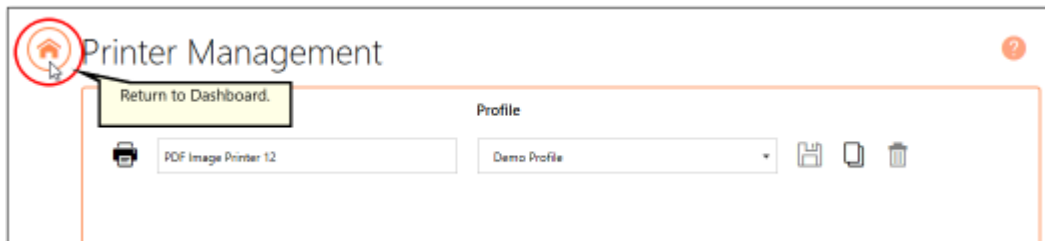
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



- iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



- iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



10. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, you will create an output file that is restricted to fax paper size and fax resolutions.

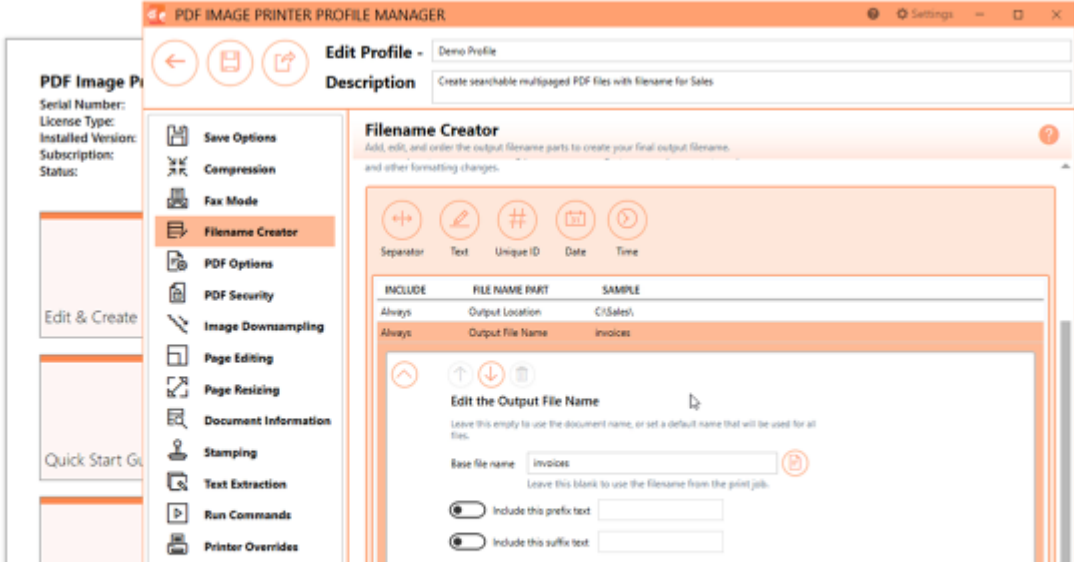
Create a Custom Filename

By default, PDF Image Printer will save all output files to the My Documents folders and name them using the filename from the print job. You can change both the [default output location and output file name](#) through the profile manager on the **Save Options tab**, but for more customized filenaming options we recommend exploring the **Filename Creator tab**. The custom filenaming settings allow you to add, edit, and reorder output filename parts to automatically create unique filenames for your PDF Image Printer output files.

The [custom filenaming options](#) are controlled through the profile.

The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Filename Creator tab** to customize the default output location and output name of created file. Please see the follow sections for step-by-step instructions for:

- [Creating a Custom Filename with Custom Text](#)
- [Creating a Custom Filename with a Unique File ID \(GUID\)](#)
- [Creating a Custom Filename with a Date and Time](#)
- [Creating a Custom Filename with Dynamic Output Folders](#)



The screenshot shows the 'PDF IMAGE PRINTER PROFILE MANAGER' window. The 'Edit Profile' tab is selected for the 'Demo Profile'. The 'Filename Creator' section is active, displaying a table of filename parts:

INCLUDE	FILE NAME PART	SAMPLE
Always	Output Location	C:\Sales\
Always	Output File Name	Invoices

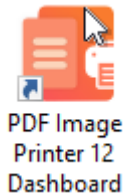
Below the table, the 'Edit the Output File Name' dialog is open, showing a 'Base file name' field with 'Invoices' entered. There are also checkboxes for 'Include this prefix text' and 'Include this suffix text'.

PDF Image Printer
Create Files with Custom Filenames

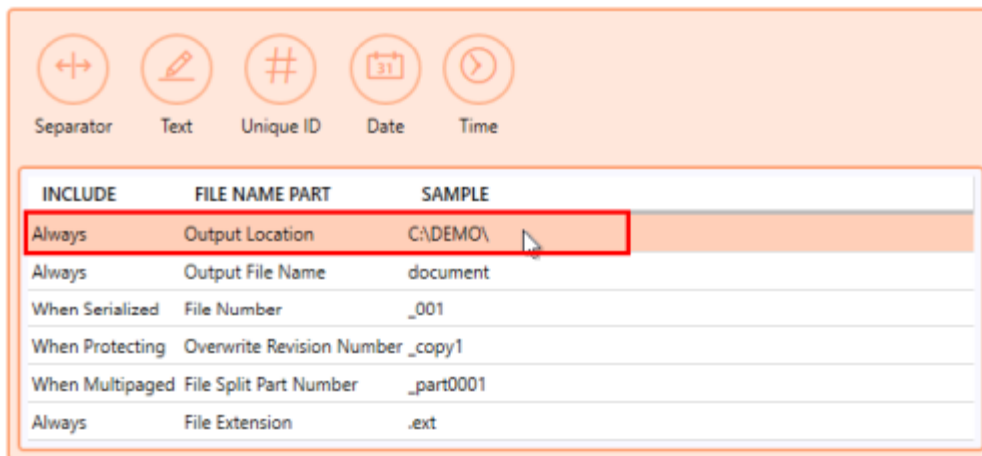
Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Step by Step Instructions

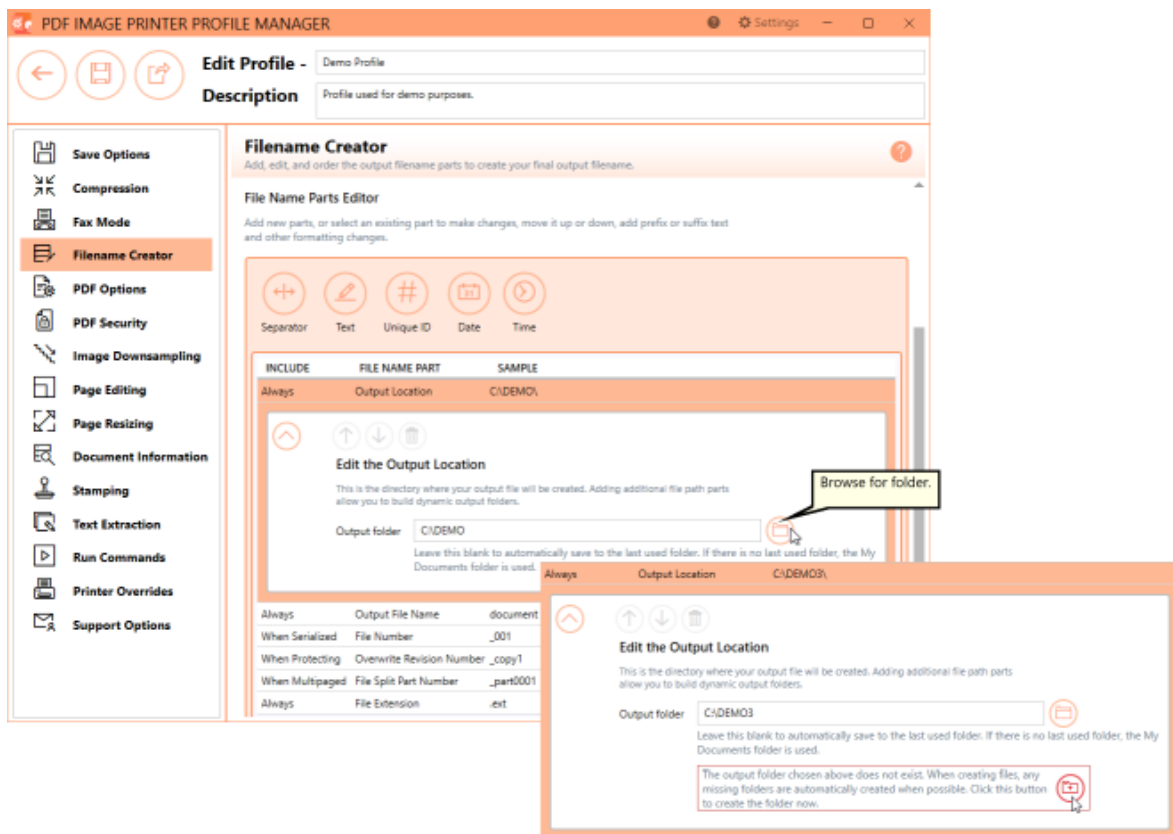
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Filename Creator tab**, select the file name part for **Output Location**.

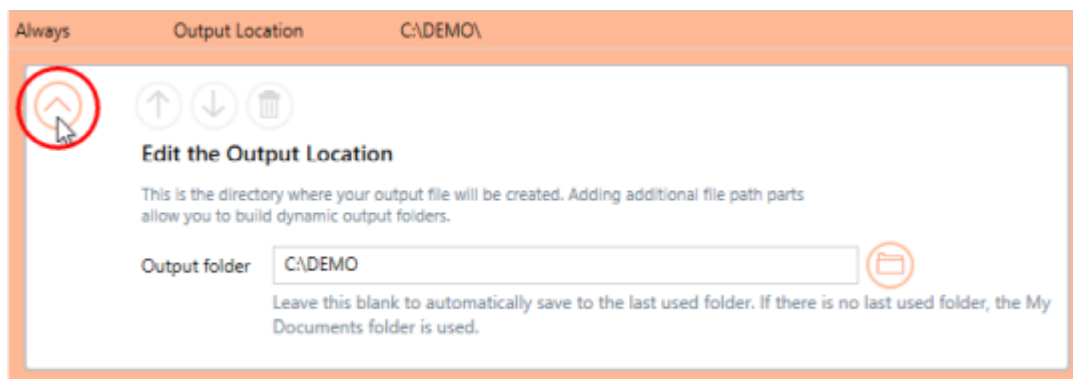


6. Select the file icon to browse to your desired location. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will default to the last used folder. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used. You can also type directly into the Output folder field. If the folder location you enter does not exist, you will see a warning message explaining that this folder location does not exist and that when a new file is created PDF Image Printer will automatically try to create the missing folder if possible. Alternatively, you can click the red folder icon to create the new folder now.



7. Any changes made to this file name part will be reflected on the **Save Options tab**.

8. Click the arrow icon to hide the file part details for Output Location.



9. Select the file name part for **Output File Name**.

INCLUDE	FILE NAME PART	SAMPLE
Always	Output Location	C:\DEMO\
Always	Output File Name	document
When Serialized	File Number	_001
When Protecting	Overwrite Revision Number	_copy1
When Multipaged	File Split Part Number	_part0001
Always	File Extension	.ext

10. Enter your desired base file name. If you leave this field blank, PDF Image Printer will use the filename from the print job. You also have the option to include prefix and/or suffix text to the filename.

PDF IMAGE PRINTER PROFILE MANAGER

Edit Profile - Demo Profile

Description: Profile used for demo purposes.

Filename Creator

Add, edit, and order the output filename parts to create your final output filename.

INCLUDE	FILE NAME PART	SAMPLE
Always	Output Location	C:\DEMO\
Always	Output File Name	DEMO

Edit the Output File Name

Leave this empty to use the document name, or set a default name that will be used for all files.

Base file name:

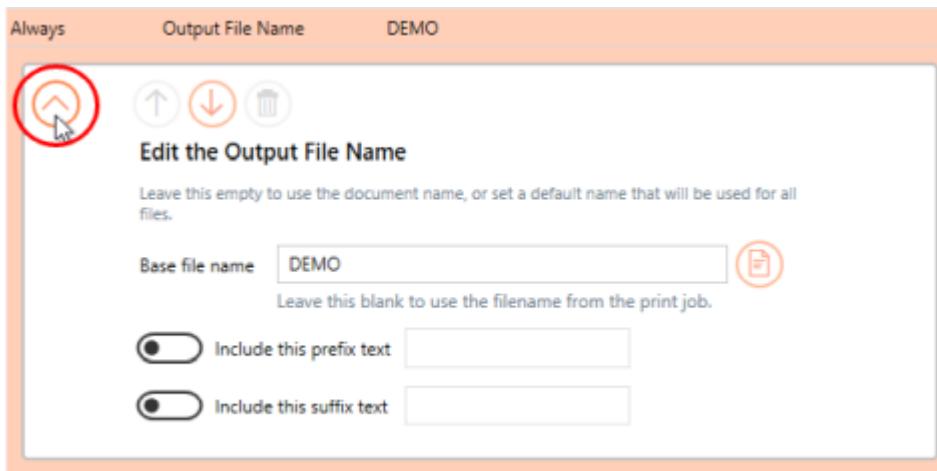
Include this prefix text:

Include this suffix text:

When Serialized	File Number	_001
When Protecting	Overwrite Revision Number	_copy1
When Multipaged	File Split Part Number	_part0001
Always	File Extension	.ext

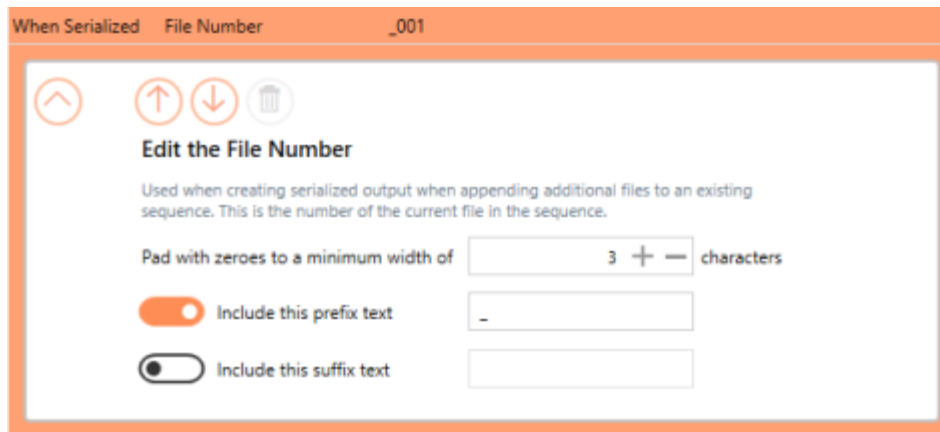
11. Again, any changes made to this file name part will be reflected on the **Save Options tab**.

12. Click the arrow icon to hide the file part details for Output File Name.

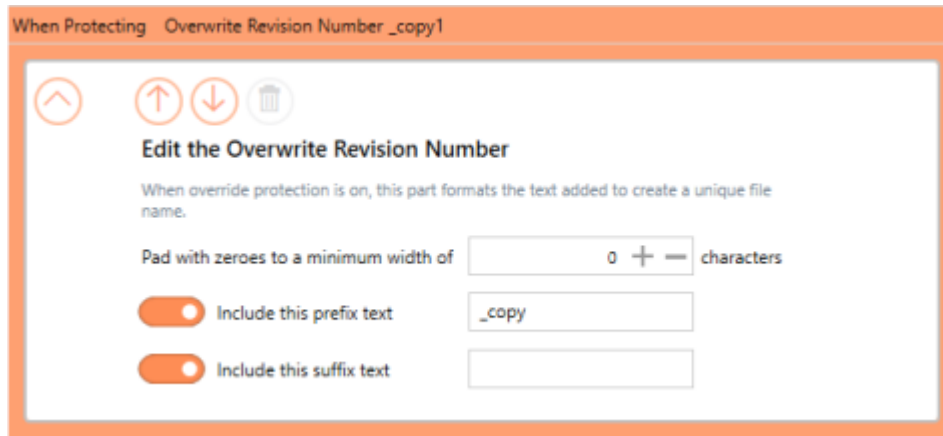


13. There are four additional required file name parts which you can customize if you wish:

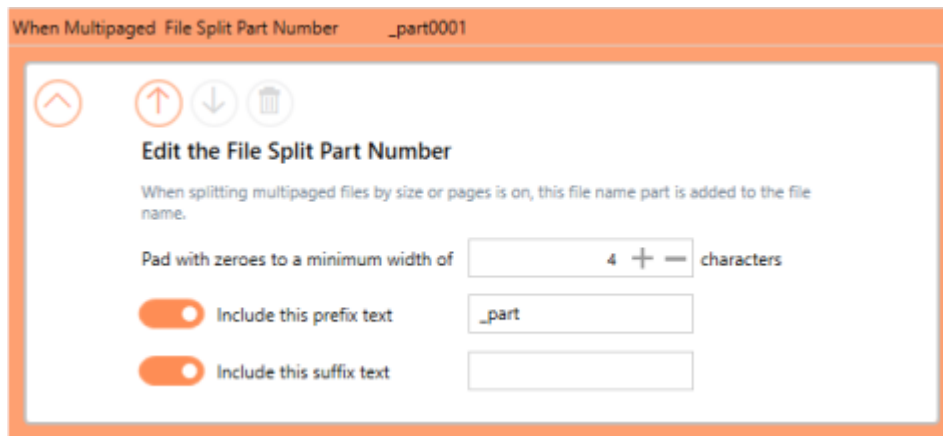
- *File Number* - This is only applicable when creating [serialized output](#). If desired, you can add or remove prefix/suffix text or increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.



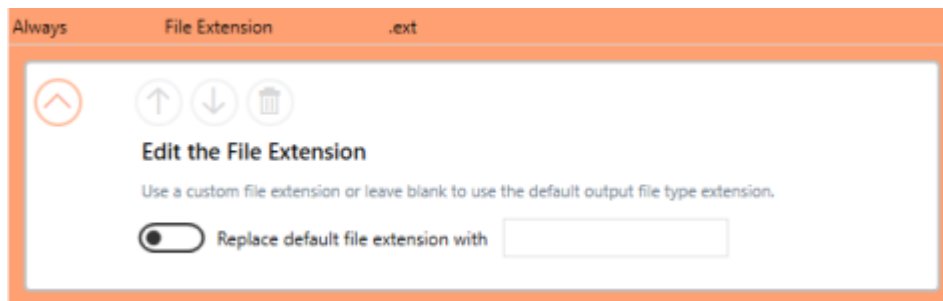
- *Overwrite Revision Number* - This is only applicable when [prompting is disabled and override protection is enabled](#). If desired, you can add or remove prefix/suffix text or increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.



- *File Split Part Number* - This is only applicable when [automatically splitting](#) multipaged files. If desired, you can add or remove prefix/suffix text or increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.

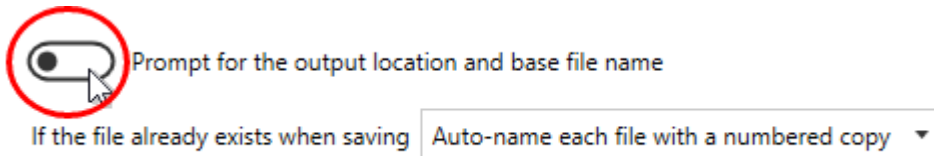


- *File Extension* - By default, the file extension of the output file will match the [output type selected](#), but you also have the option to customize the file extension of the output file.



If you choose to set the **Output Location** and/or **Output File Name**, you may also want to [disable prompting by the Save As dialog](#) each time you print.

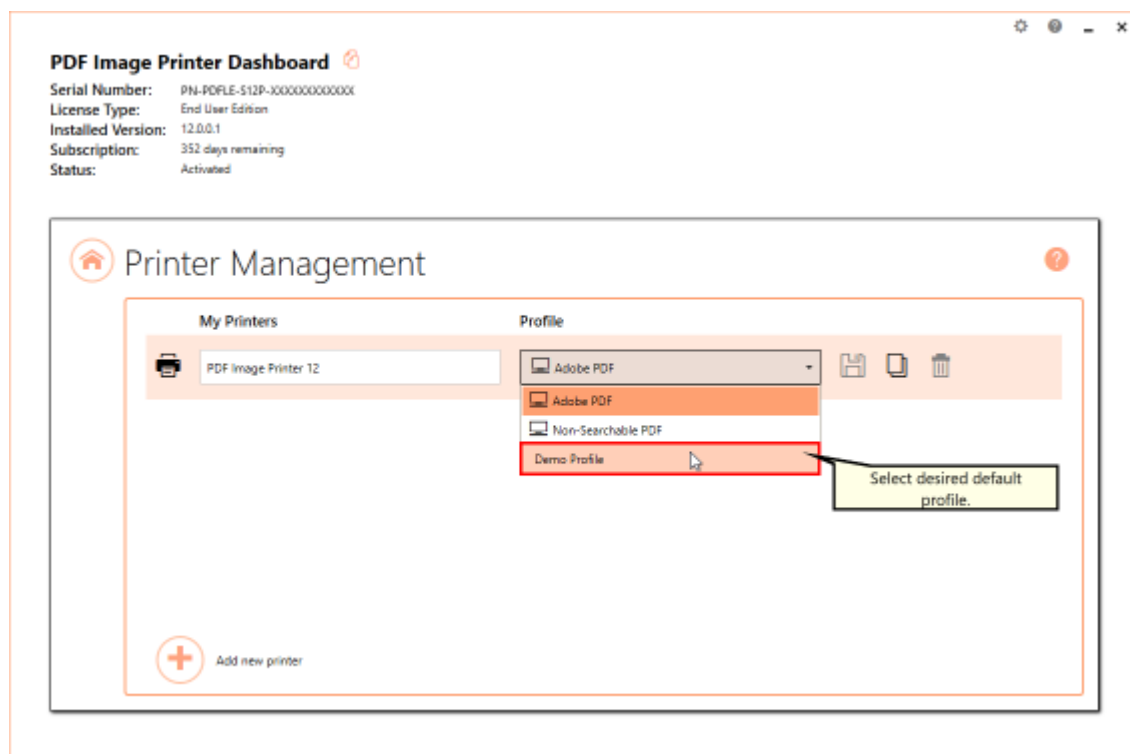
- i. To turn off prompting by the Save As dialog, disable **Prompt for the output location and base file name**.



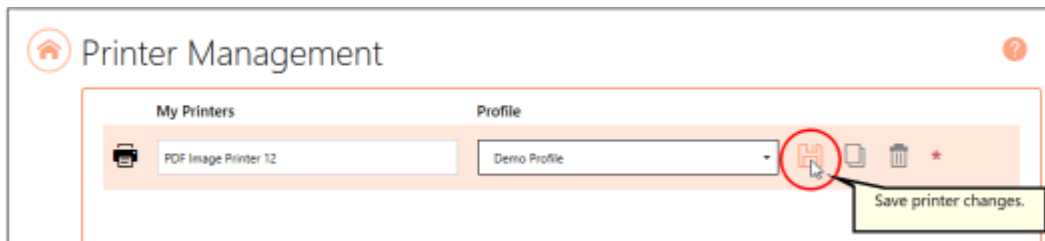
14. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

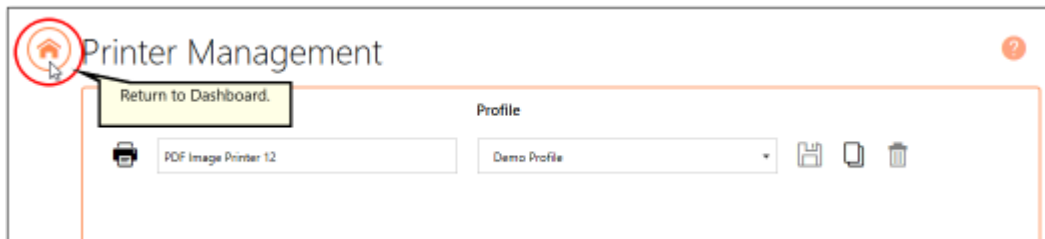
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



- iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



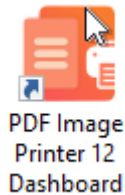
15. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the output file will be saved to your desired output location with your custom filename.

With Custom Text

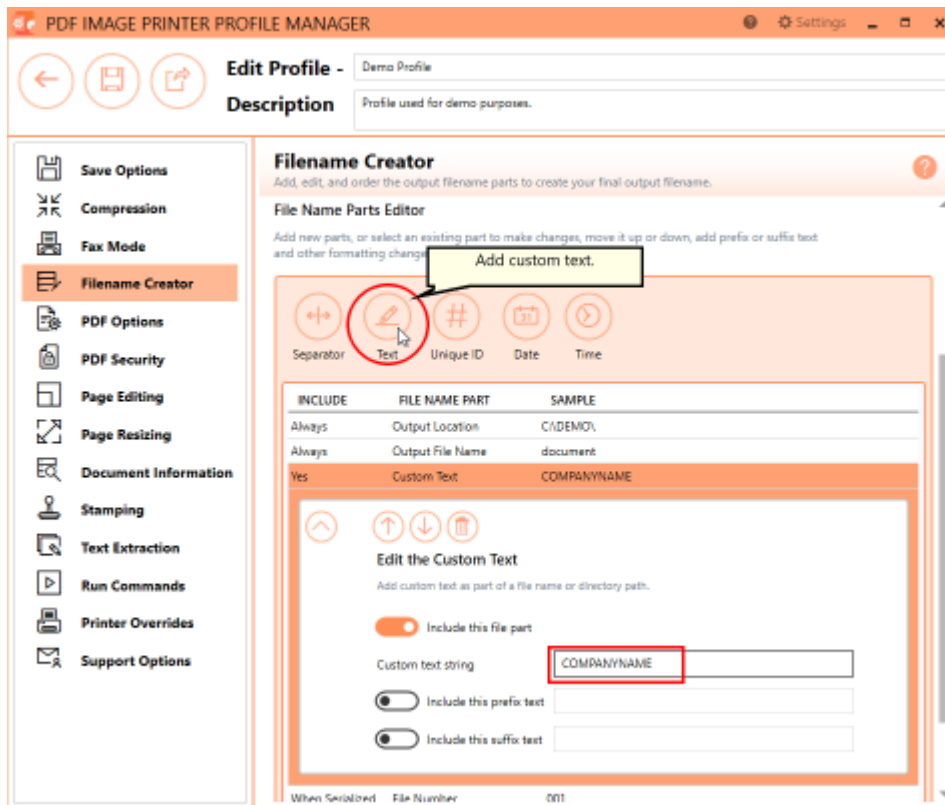
The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Filename Creator tab** to customize the output filename by adding custom text.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



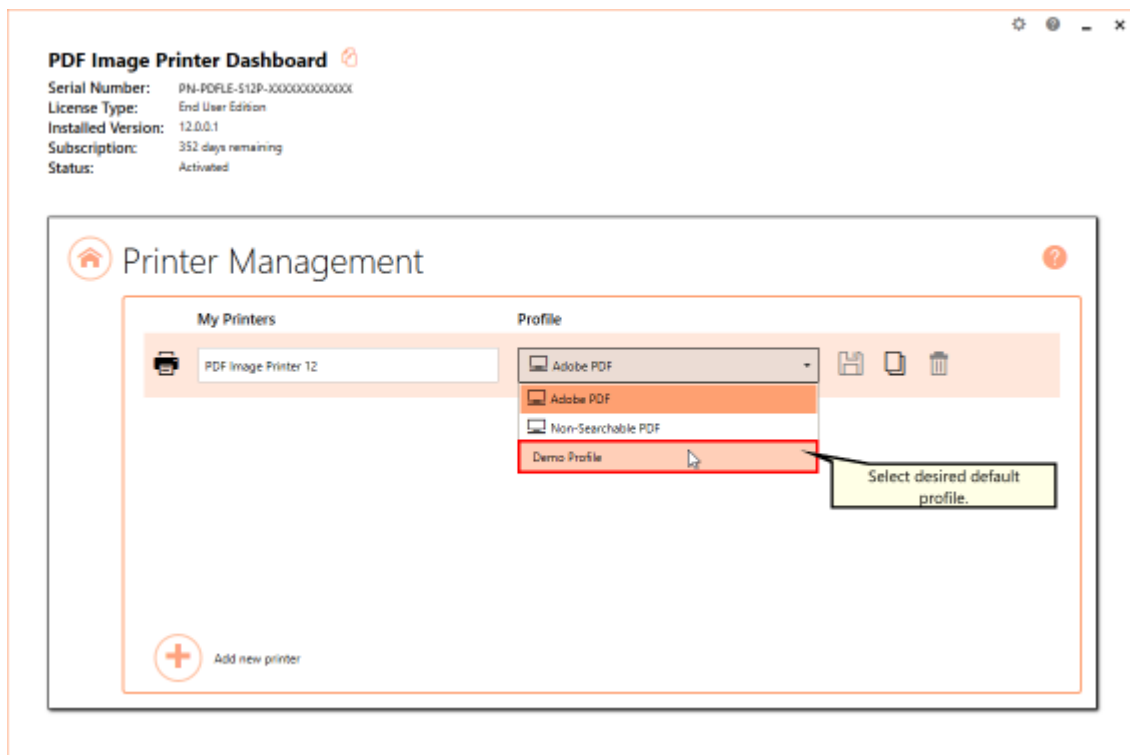
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Filename Creator tab**, add the file name part for **Custom Text**. Enter your desired custom text (ex. company name, group name, department name). This text can be added before or after the Output File Name.



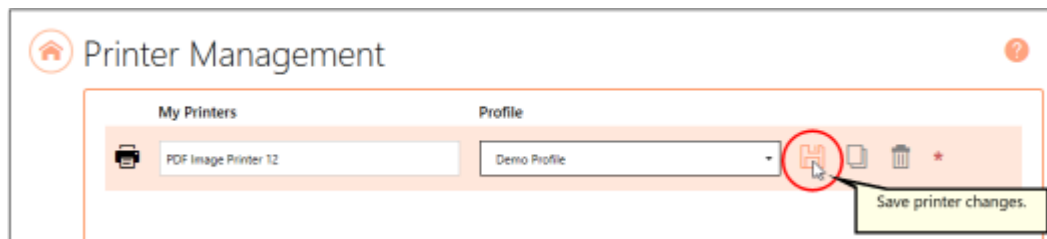
6. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

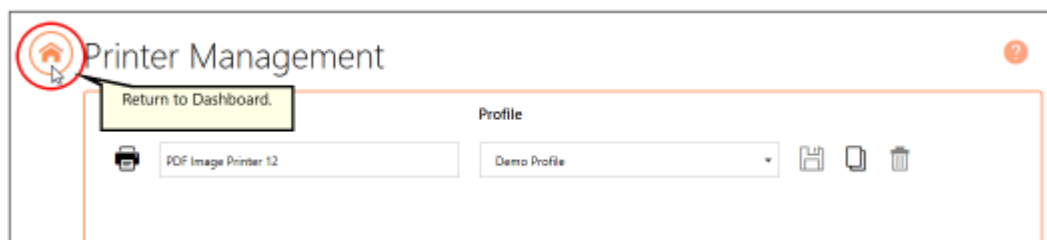
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



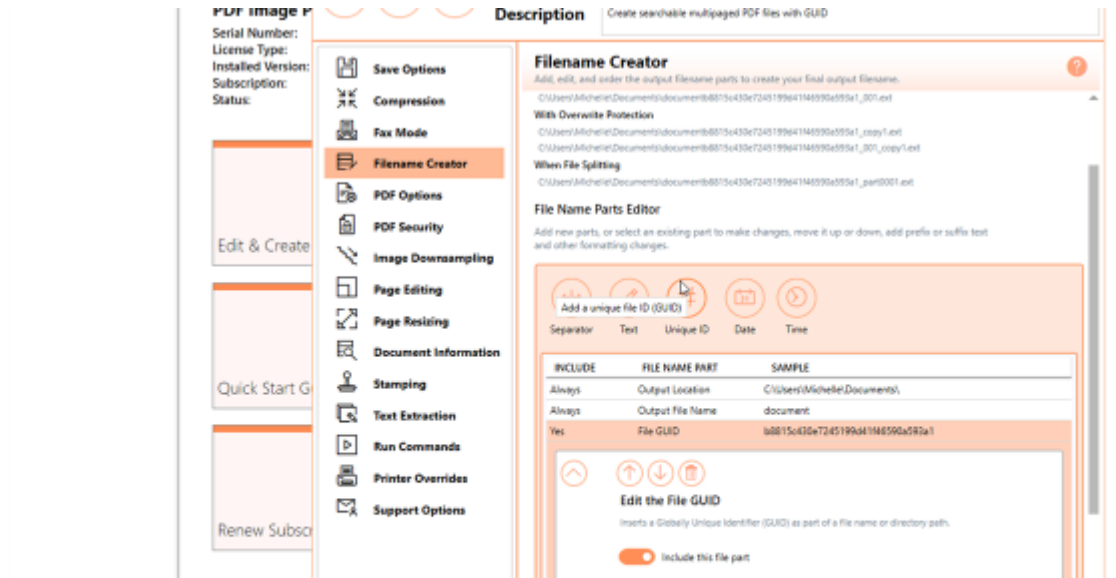
iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



7. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the output filename will have *CompanyName* added to the filename from the print job.

With Unique File ID (GUID)

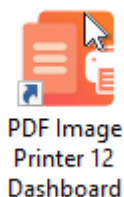
The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Filename Creator tab** to customize the output filename by adding a Globally Unique Identifier (GUID).



Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

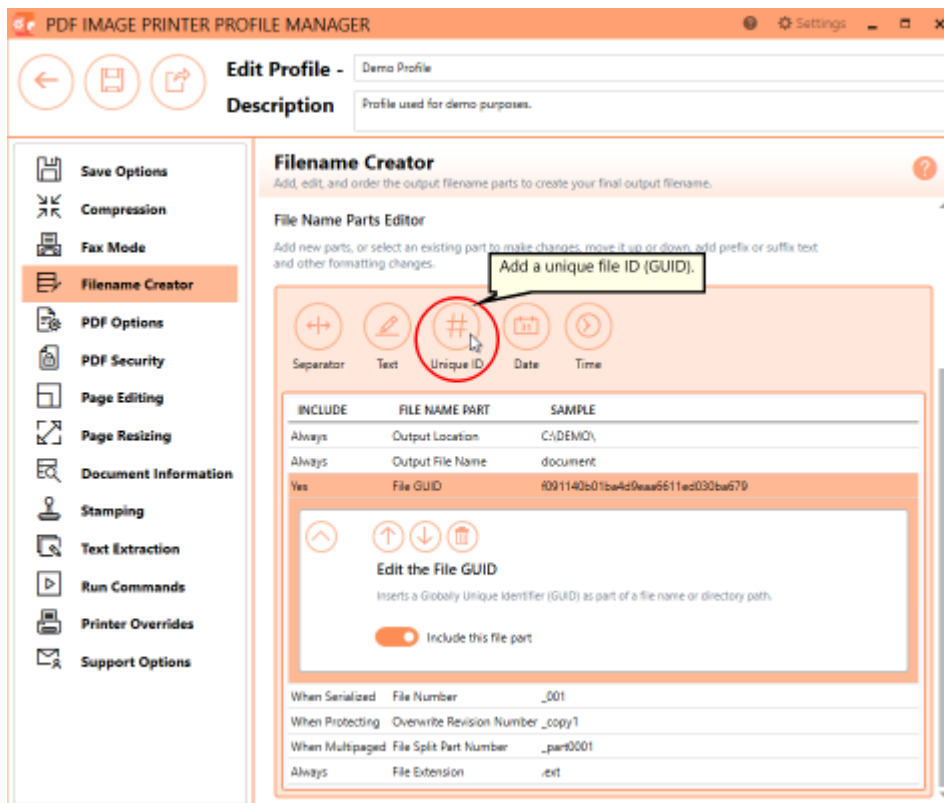
Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.

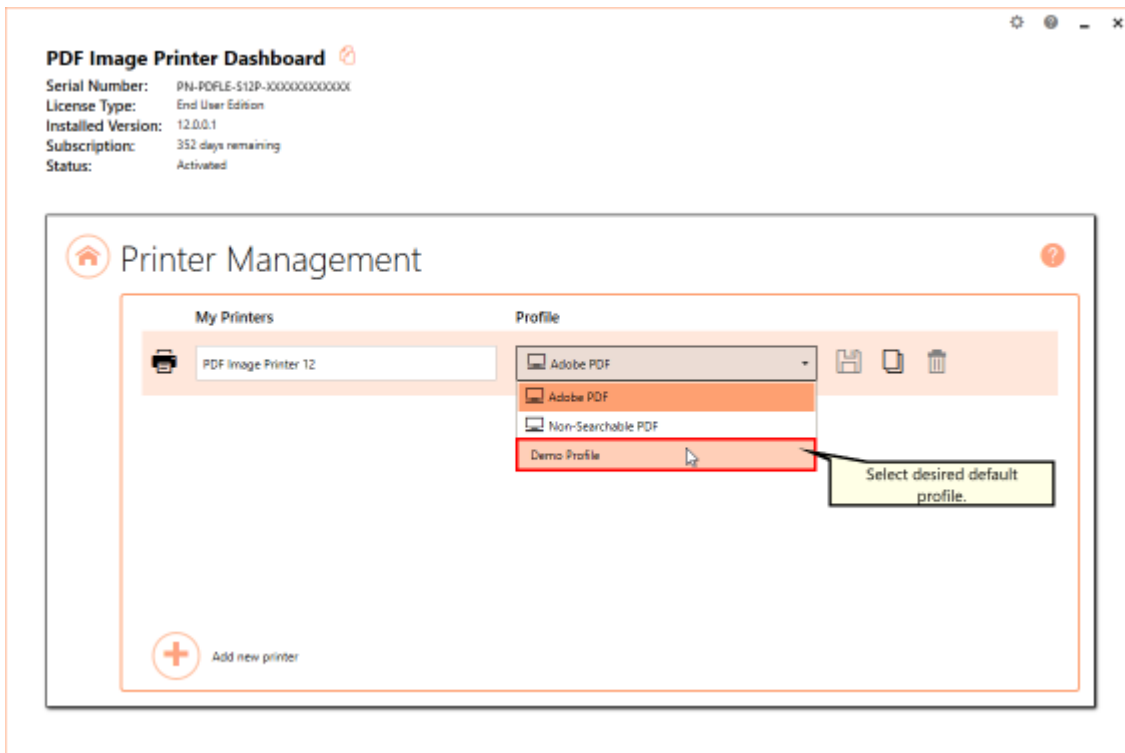
5. On the **Filename Creator** tab, add the file name part for **Unique ID (GUID)**. If this file name part is ordered after the Output File Name, a GUID will be added to the filename.



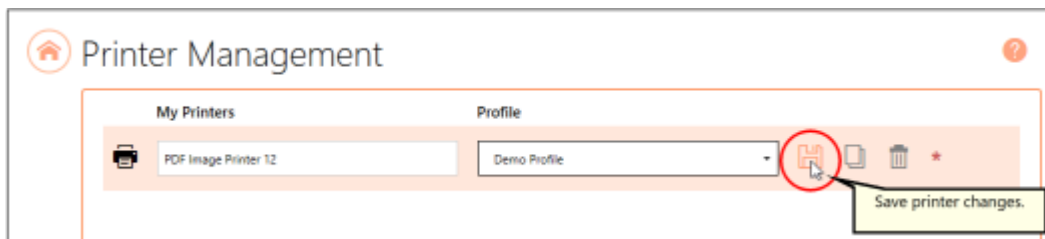
6. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

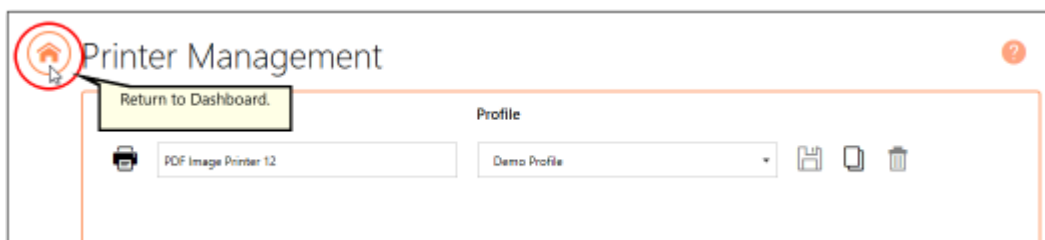
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



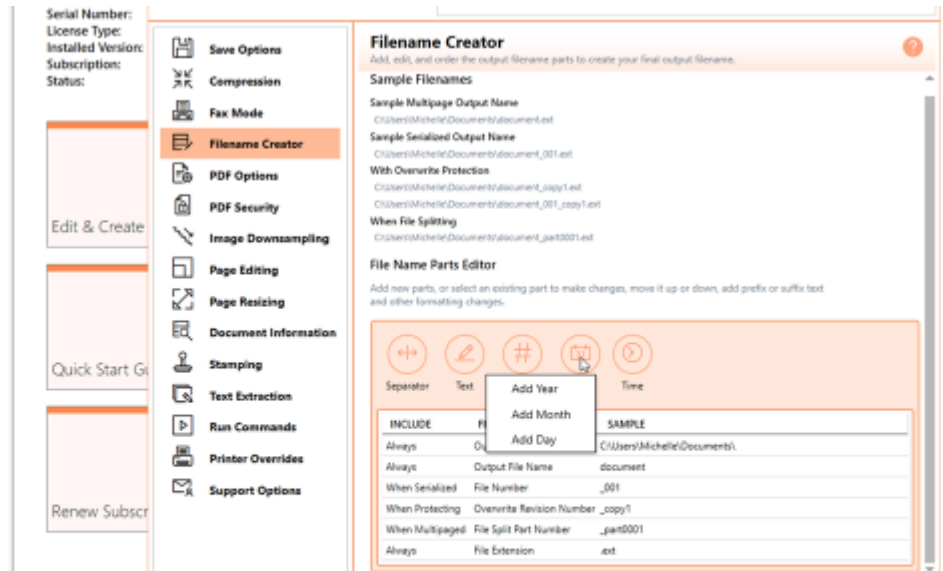
iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



7. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the output filename will have a GUID added to the filename from the print job.

With Date and Time

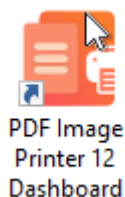
The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Filename Creator tab** to customize the output filename by adding the date and time of conversion.



Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

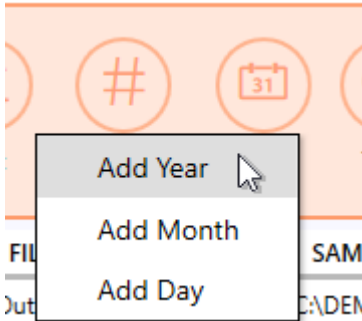
Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.

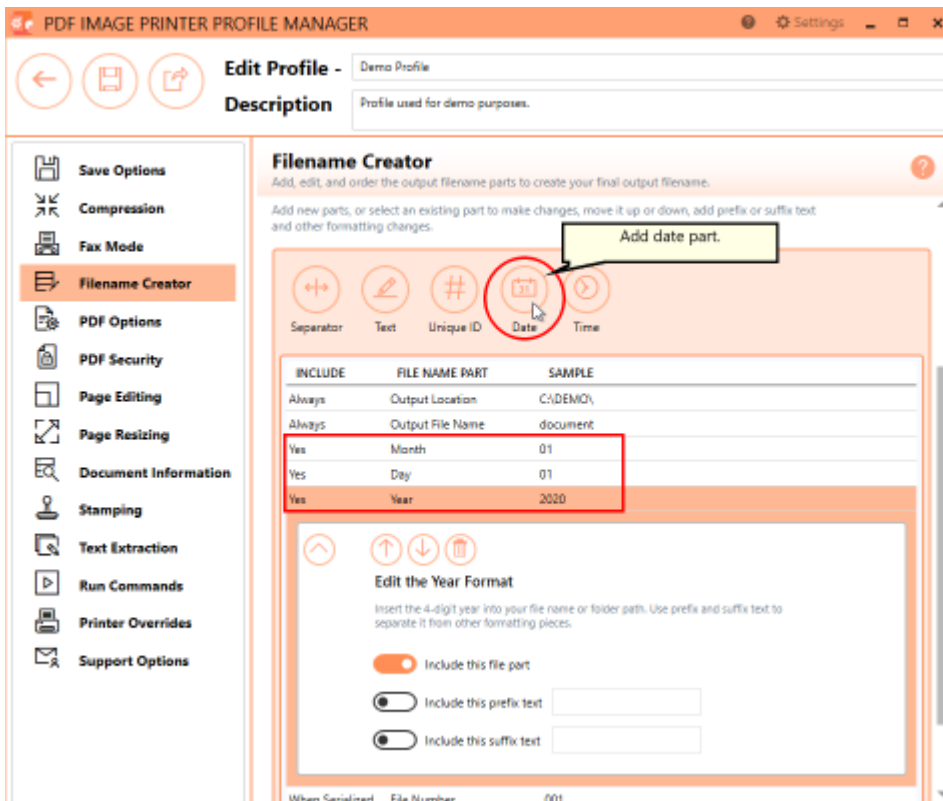


2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.

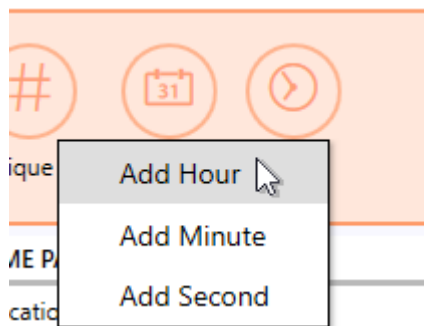
- On the **Filename Creator** tab, add the file name part for **Date**. You can choose to add *Year*, *Month*, or *Day*, or any combination of all three.



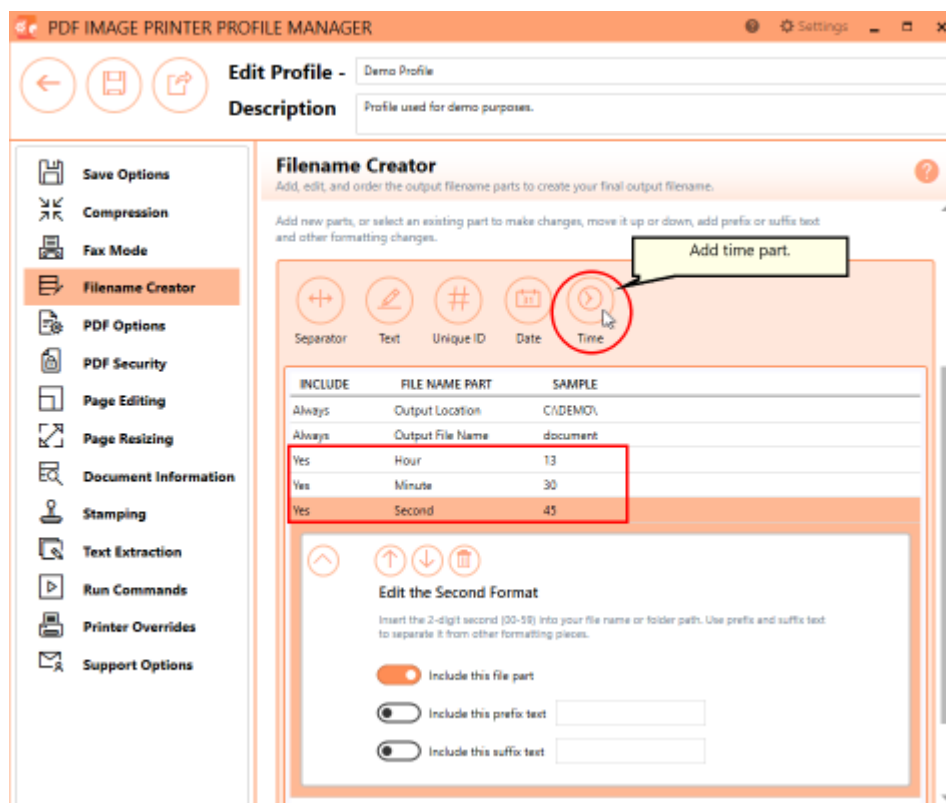
- *Year* - add the 4-digit year into your filename
- *Month* - add the 2-digit month into your filename
- *Day* - add the 2-digit day into your filename



- Add the file name part for **Time**. You can choose to add *Hour*, *Minute*, or *Second*, or any combination of all three.



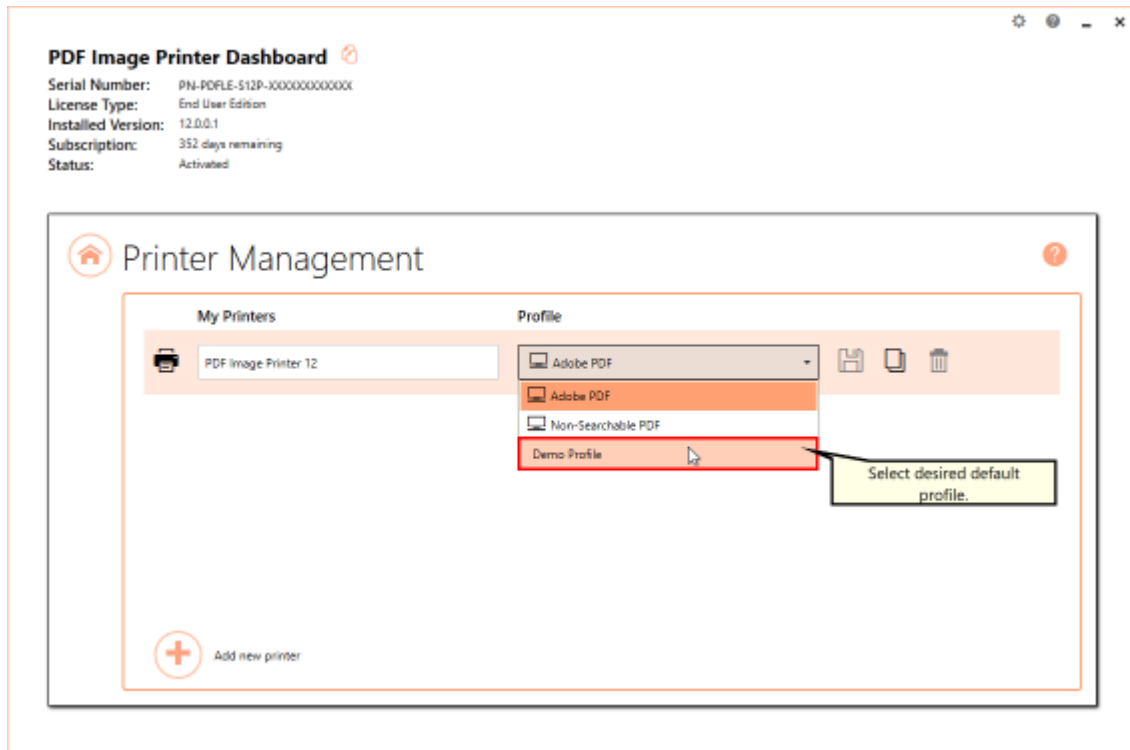
- *Hour* - add the 2-digit hour into your filename
- *Minute* - add the 2-digit month into your filename
- *Second* - add the 2-digit day into your filename



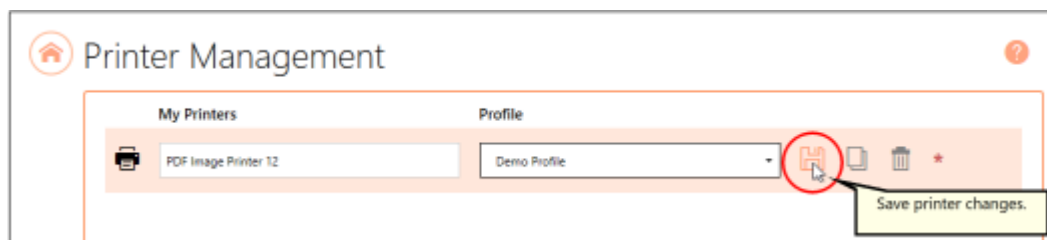
7. You can customize the order that the date and time parts will appear in the filename. You also have the option to include prefix and/or suffix text with each date and time part.
8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

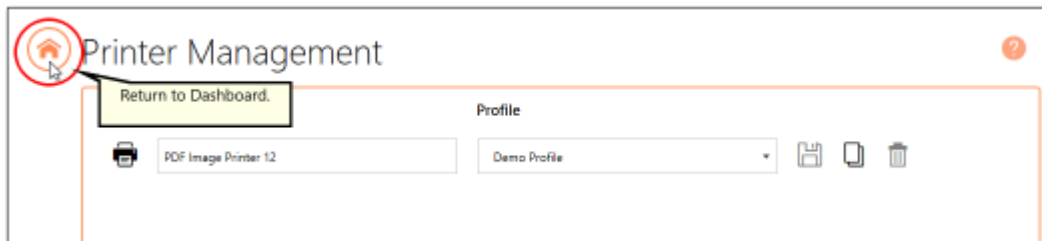
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



- iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



- iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the output filename will have the time and time of conversion added to the filename from the print job.

With Dynamic Output Folders

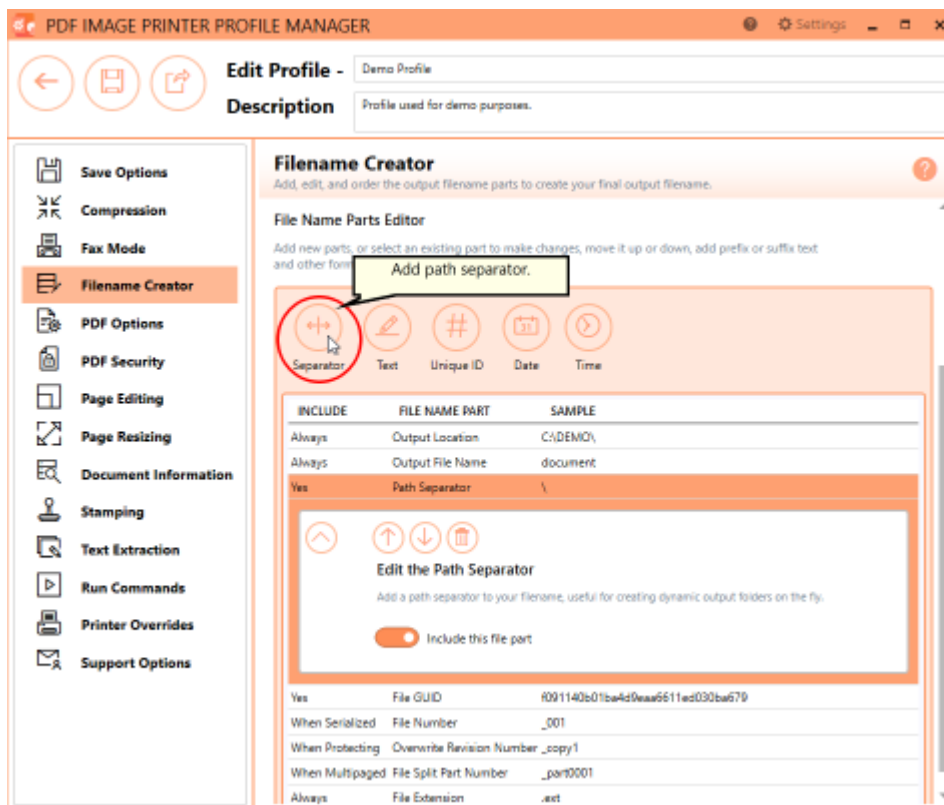
The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Filename Creator tab** to create dynamic folders on the fly. This is accomplished by using the Separator file name part in conjunction with a Globally Unique Identifier (GUID) or the date/time of conversion.

Step by Step Instructions

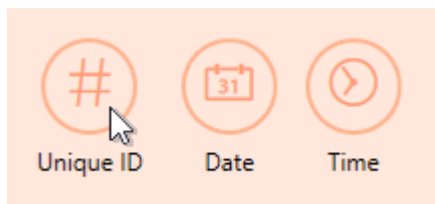
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Filename Creator tab**, add the file name part for **Separator**.



6. Then add either a **Unique ID**, **Date**, or **Time**.

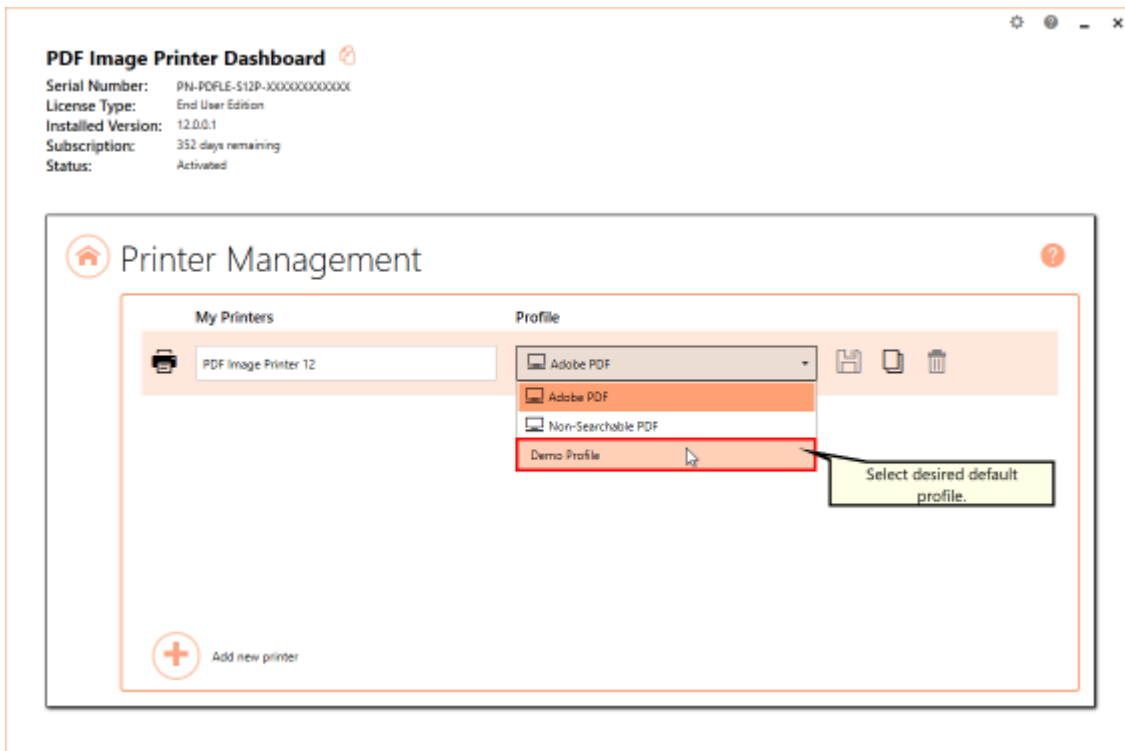


- *Unique ID* - This will create a new output folder named using a Globally Unique Identifier (GUID) for each new output file.
- *Date* - This will create a new output folder named using the date of conversion to contain output file(s). All output files created on the same day will be saved to the same output folder.
- *Time* - This will create a new output folder named using the time of conversion to contain output file(s). All output files created within the same time period will be saved to the same output folder.

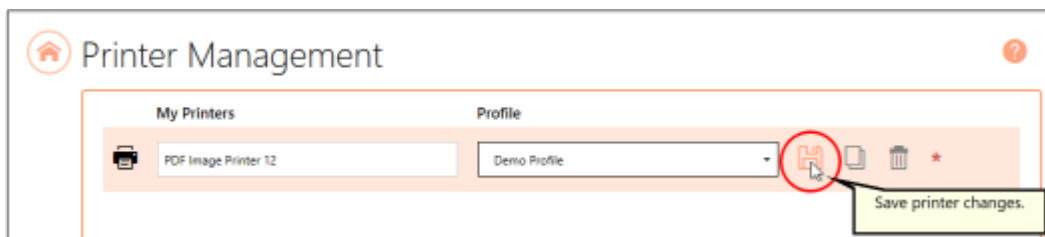
7. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

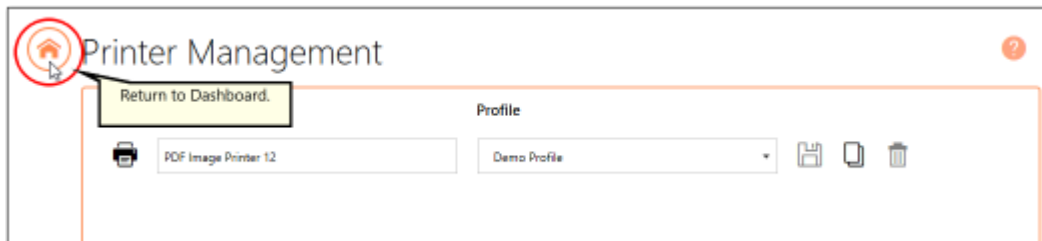
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



8. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, a dynamic output folder will be created on the fly named either using a GUID or with the date/time of conversion. The output file will be found in this new output folder.

Set PDF Security Options

PDF files can be created with or without security. Creating a secure PDF file allows you to restrict what can be done with the contents of the file. For instance, you can allow people to read and print the file but not be able to copy any of the text or images out of the file. Common security options include file encryption, file permissions and password protection.

All [PDF security options](#) are controlled through the profile.

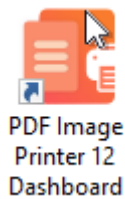


Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

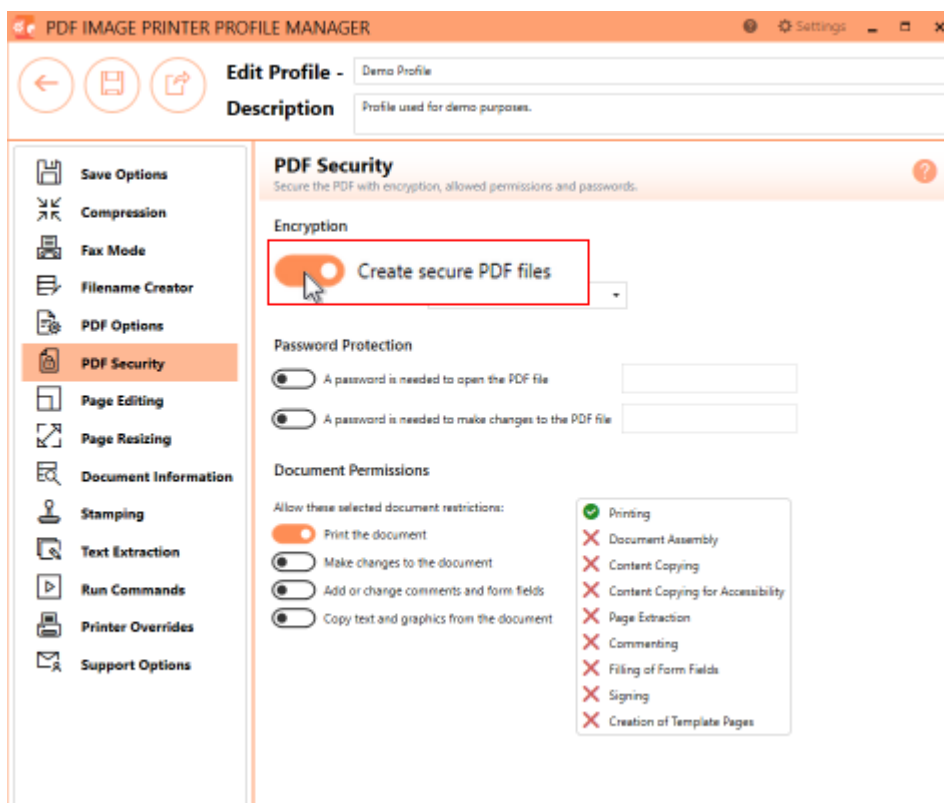
Step by Step Instructions

The steps below will set the security options for creating a 256 bit AES encrypted PDF that requires a password to be entered to open the document and allows only printing and copying of file contents.

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **PDF Security tab**, enable **Create secure PDF files**.



6. Change the Encryption Level to use *256-bit AES encryption*. AES is an improved encryption as compared to RC4. *256-bit AES encryption* is supported by Adobe Reader 9 or higher. If you need to support older versions of Adobe Reader you may to select a different [encryption level](#).

Encryption

Create secure PDF files

Use this encryption level

128-bit AES
40-bit RC4
128-bit RC4
128-bit AES
256-bit AES

Select desired encryption level.

Password Protection

A password is needed to open the PDF file

A password is needed to make changes to the PDF file

7. Under **Password Protection**, enable **A password is needed to open the PDF file**, and enter your desired password.

Password Protection

A password is needed to open the PDF file

A password is needed to make changes to the PDF file

.....

Set desired password.

8. Under the **Document Permissions**, enable *Print the document and Copy text and graphic from the document*. This means that users will only be allowed to print the file and copy file contents.

Document Permissions

Allow these selected document restrictions:

- Print the document
- Make changes to the document
- Add or change comments and form fields
- Copy text and graphics from the document

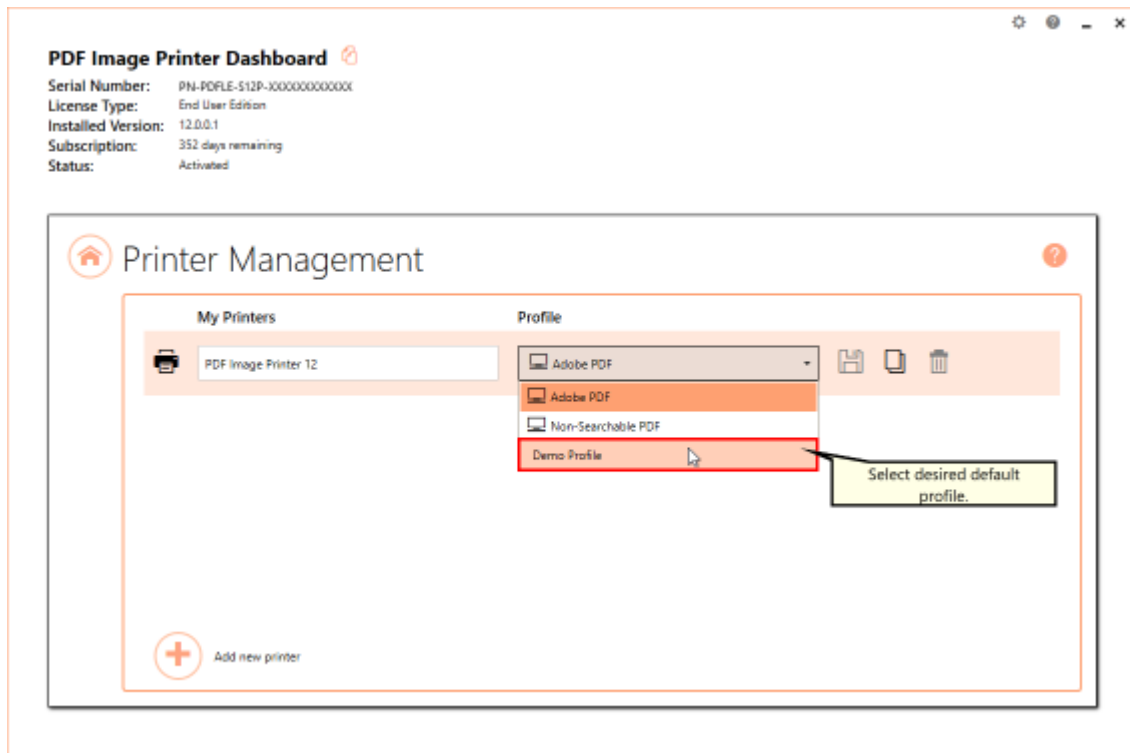
Enabled desired document permissions.

- Printing
- Document Assembly
- Content Copying
- Content Copying for Accessibility
- Page Extraction
- Commenting
- Filling of Form Fields
- Signing
- Creation of Template Pages

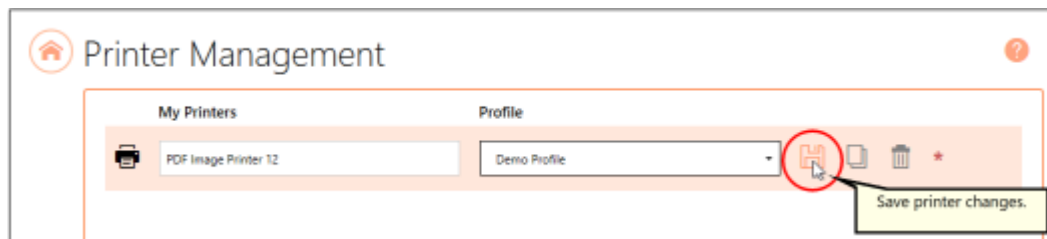
9. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

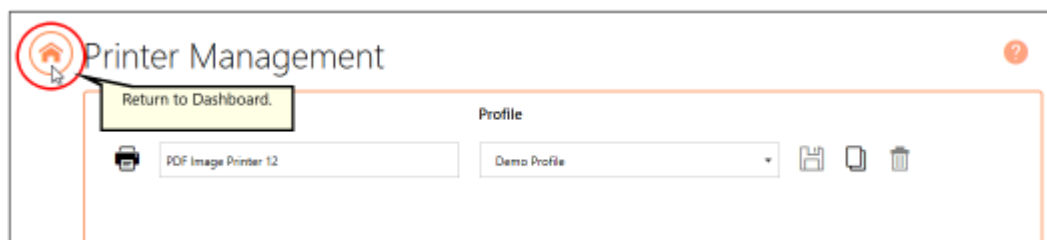
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



10. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, you will create a PDF file with 256-bit AES encryption that requires a password on opening and only allows printing and copying of file contents.

Set Document Information

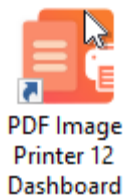
The Document Information feature allows basic descriptive information to be added to your output file. These descriptions are used by Adobe's search engine and also by many search engines to describe the document in their results list.

By default, all descriptive information fields are left empty. These descriptions will not auto-populate. Conversely, if a value is entered in these descriptive information fields, all files created will have the same entered description.

All [document information settings](#) are controlled through the profile.

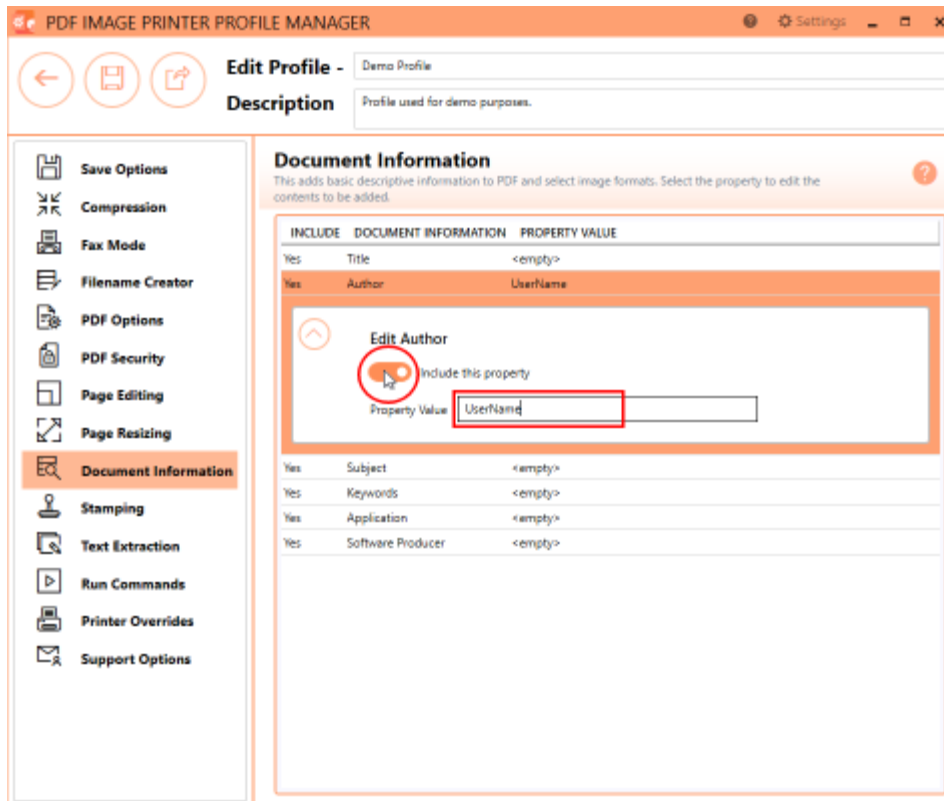
Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Document Information tab**, select each document information type and enter your desired descriptive information in the **Property Value** field.
 - *Title* - ex. enter the filename
 - *Author* - ex. enter the user's name
 - *Subject* - ex. enter the topic or group creating the file
 - *Keywords* - ex. enter the main topics discussed in the file
 - *Application* - ex. enter the application name of the original document (If left empty, all files created will have PDF Image Printer 12 as the application.)
 - *Software Producer* (also called *PDF Producer* for PDF files) - ex. enter your company name (If left empty, all files created will

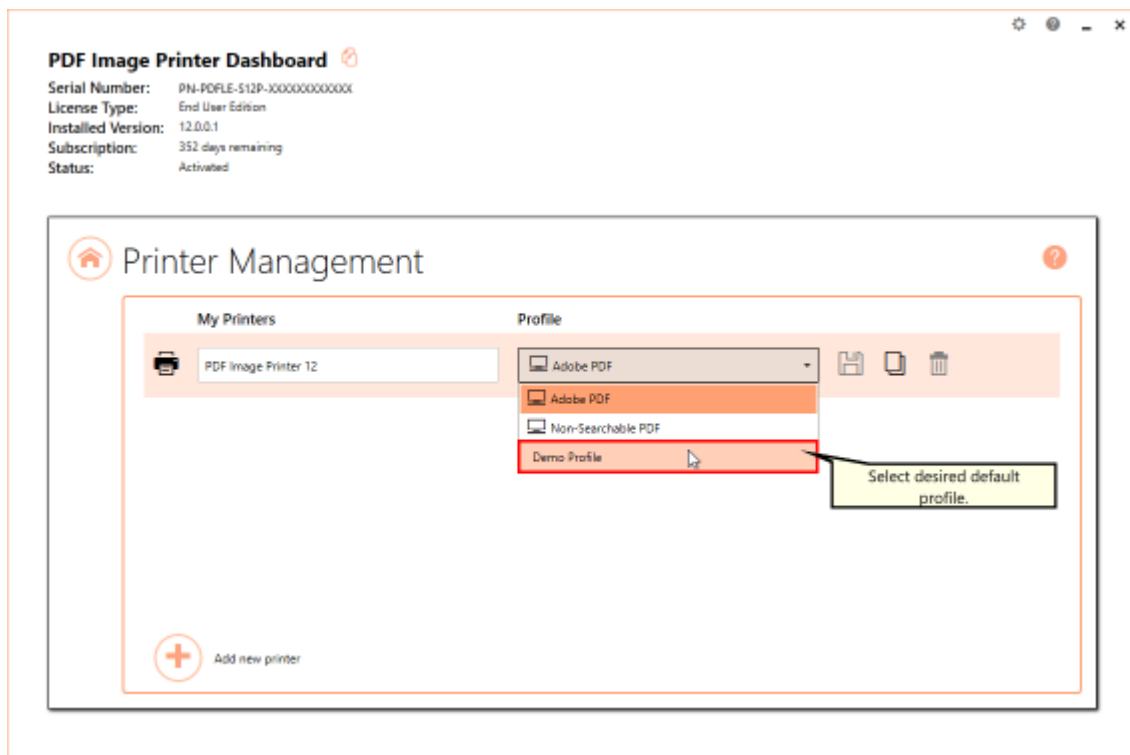
have PDF Image Printer 12 as the software producer/pdf producer.)



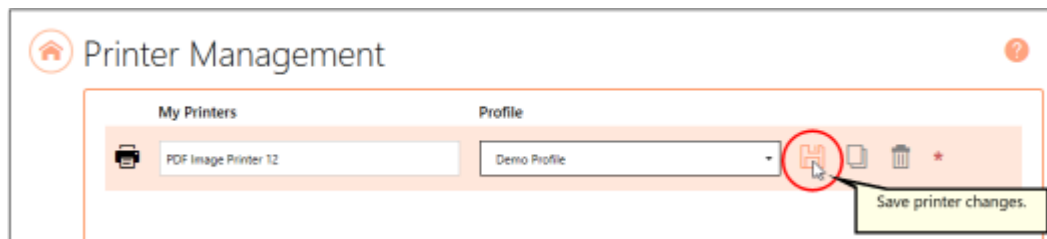
6. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

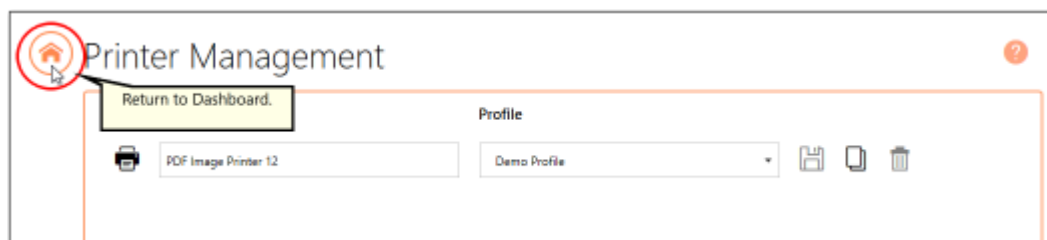
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.

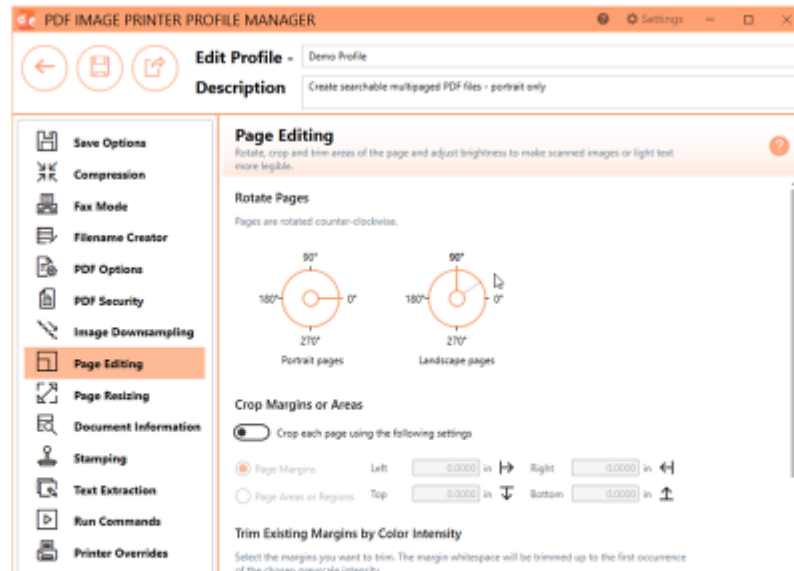


7. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, your desired document information will be stored within the output PDF file. If viewing your PDF file in Adobe Reader, the information be viewed by selecting File - Properties.

Rotate Pages

There are two methods available that you can use to adjust page orientation or rotate pages with PDF Image Printer. You can either carry out a basic page rotation using the **Page Editing tab**, or you can copy page contents to a new page size on the **Page Resizing tab**.

Both methods of rotating pages are controlled through the profile.



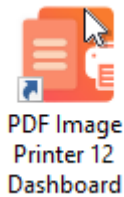
Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Page Editing

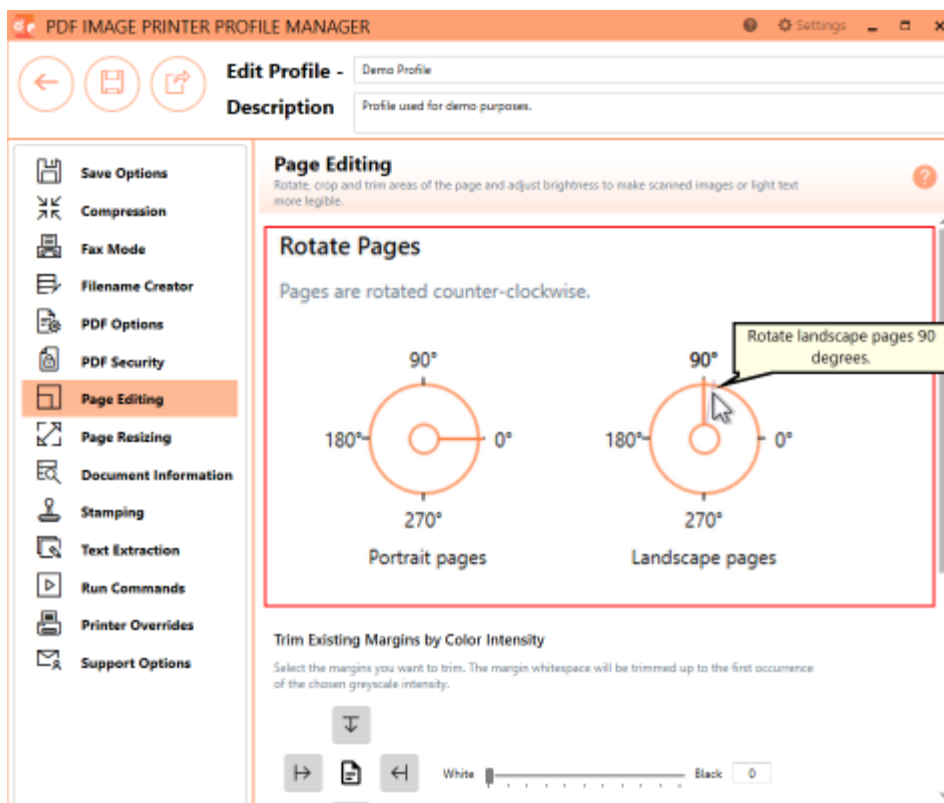
The steps below demonstrate how to take a multipaged document with a mixture of portrait and landscape pages, and produce an output file with only portrait pages, using basic [page rotation settings](#) available on the **Page Editing tab**.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



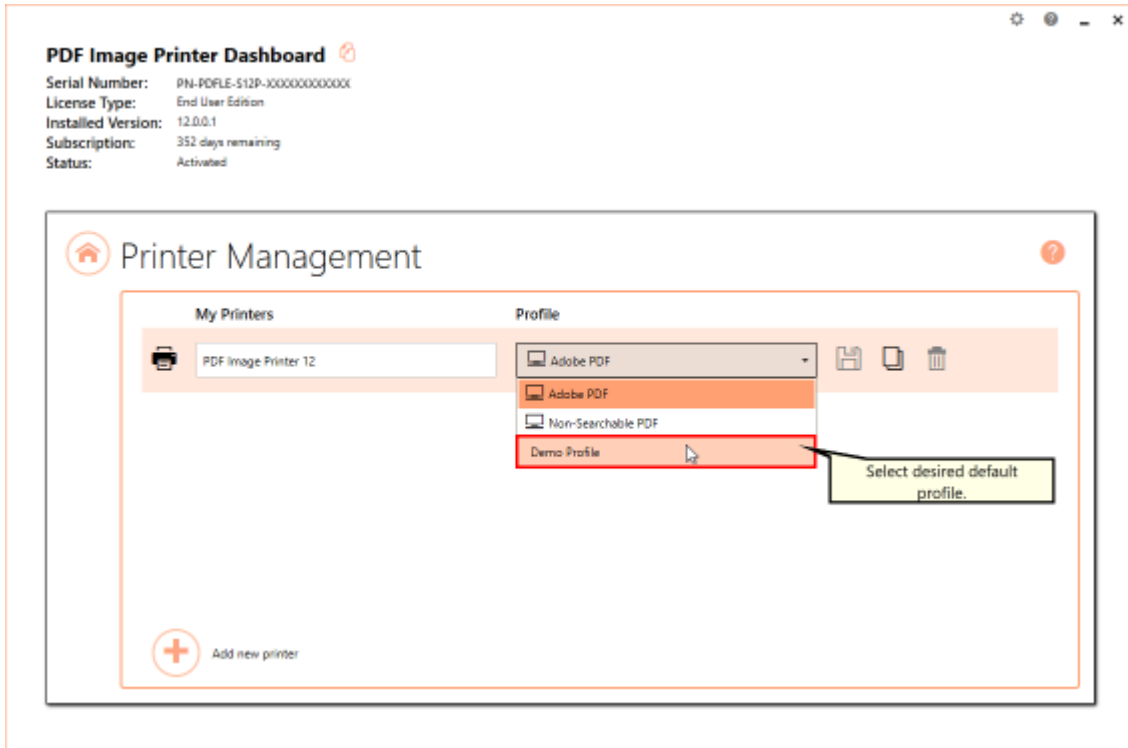
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open Profile Manager.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Page Editing tab**, under **Rotate Pages**, set the *landscape dial* to rotate landscape pages *90 degrees*. This means that all landscape pages in our mixed orientation document will be rotated to portrait orientation during conversion.



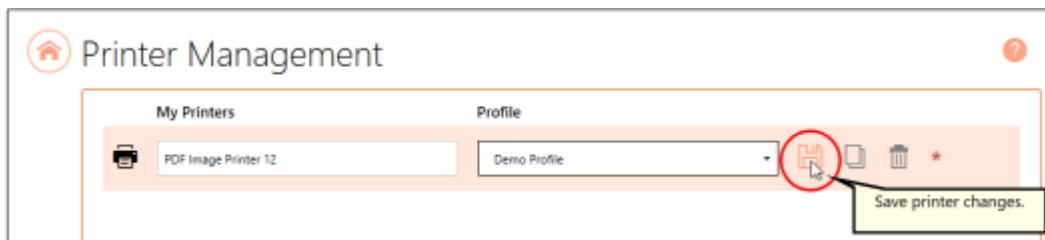
6. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

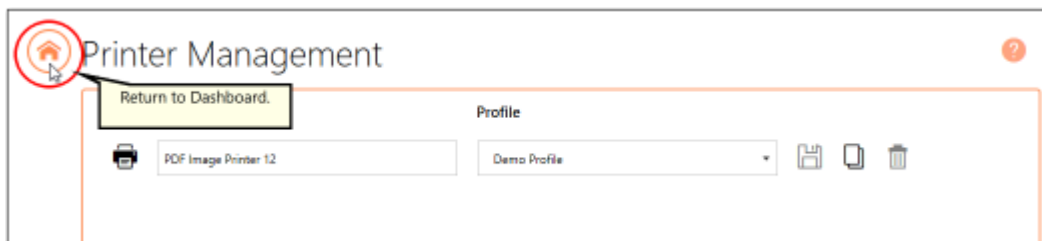
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



- iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



- iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



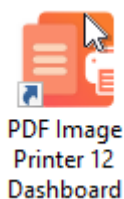
7. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, any landscape pages will be rotated 90 degrees, changing their orientation to portrait in the output file.

Page Resizing

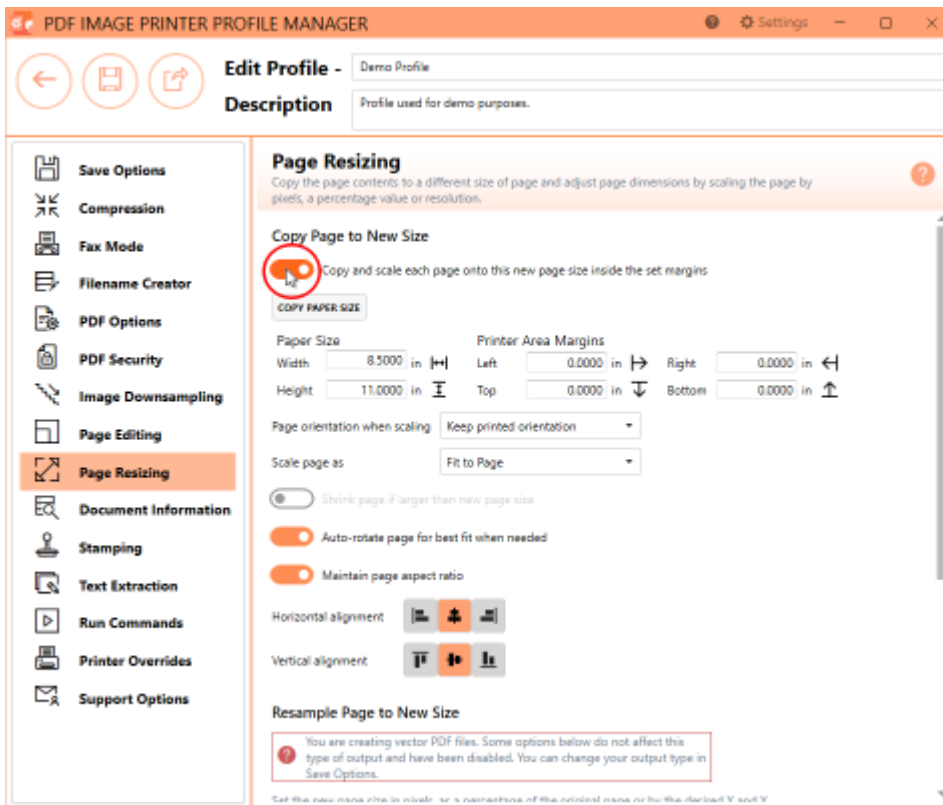
The steps below demonstrate how to take a multipaged document with a mixture of portrait and landscape pages, and produce an output file with only portrait pages, using the [copy page contents to a new page size](#) settings available on the **Page resizing tab**. Use this method if you do not want to rotate the contents of the page, but still want the output file to only have portrait pages.

Step by Step Instructions

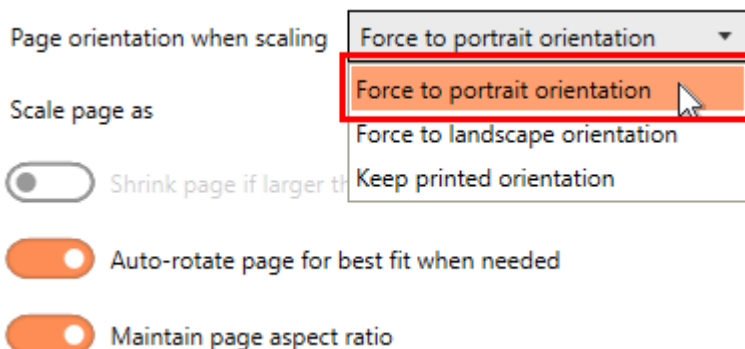
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



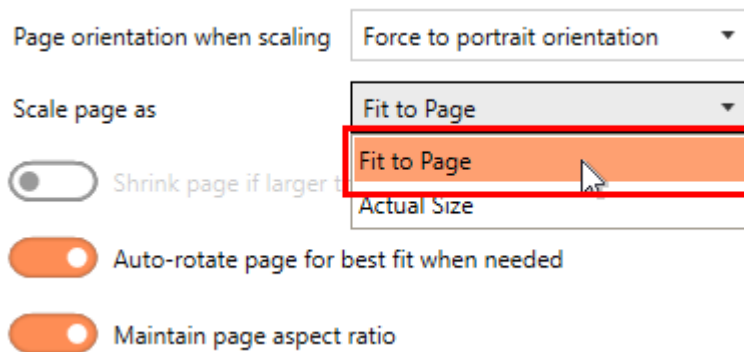
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Page Resizing tab**, enable **Copy and scale each page onto this new page size inside the set margins**. This setting means that PDF Image Printer will take a snapshot of each page and copy it onto the new page size.



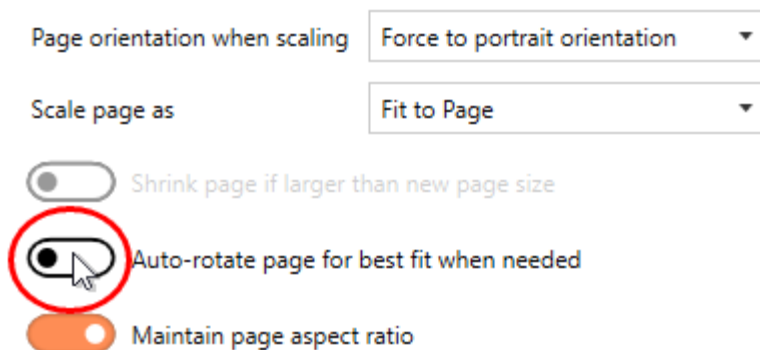
6. You can amend the **Paper Size** if you wish, but by default page size is set to *Letter*. Click "Copy Paper Size" to copy a new paper size from our list of paper sizes.
7. Beside **Page Orientation when scaling**, drop the box and select *Force to portrait orientation*. This means that the contents of all landscape pages in our mixed orientation document, will be copied to portrait pages during conversion.



8. Ensure **page scaling** is set to *Fit to Page*.



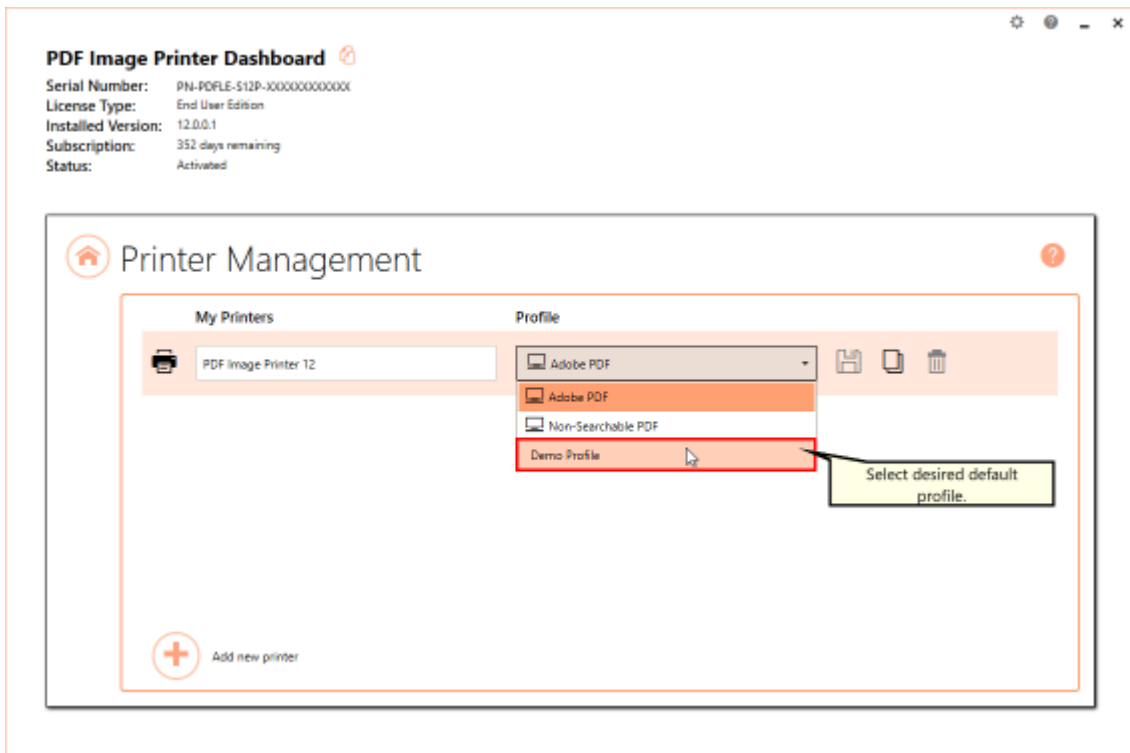
9. Disable **Auto-rotate page for best fit when needed**.



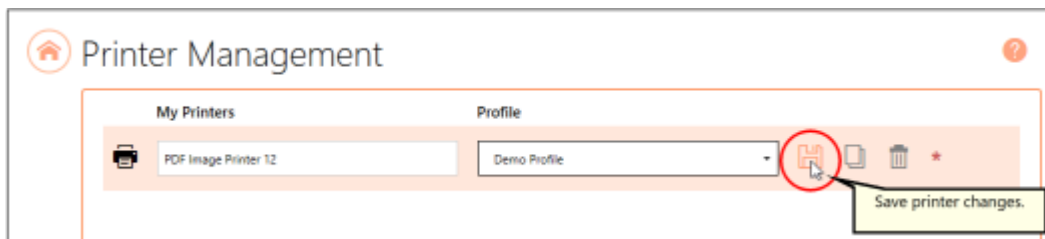
8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

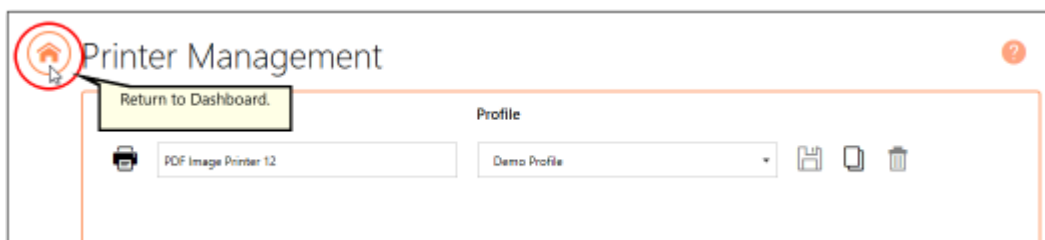
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, any page contents on landscape pages will be copied to portrait pages in the output file.

Crop Page Margins or Areas

The cropping features in PDF Image Printer are used to crop, or cut away, the outer parts of the page, and keep the inner area. While most often associated with editing photos, cropping also works to remove unwanted areas of your printed pages.

There are methods available that you can use to crop images or pages:

- Page Margins
- Page Areas or Regions.

A side effect of cropping can be a change in outputted page size. If you need to remove the margins, and also keep the original page size, see also [Copy Page Contents to a New Page Size](#).

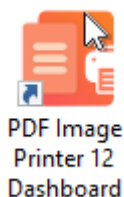
All [cropping settings](#) are controlled through the profile.

Cropping Page Margins

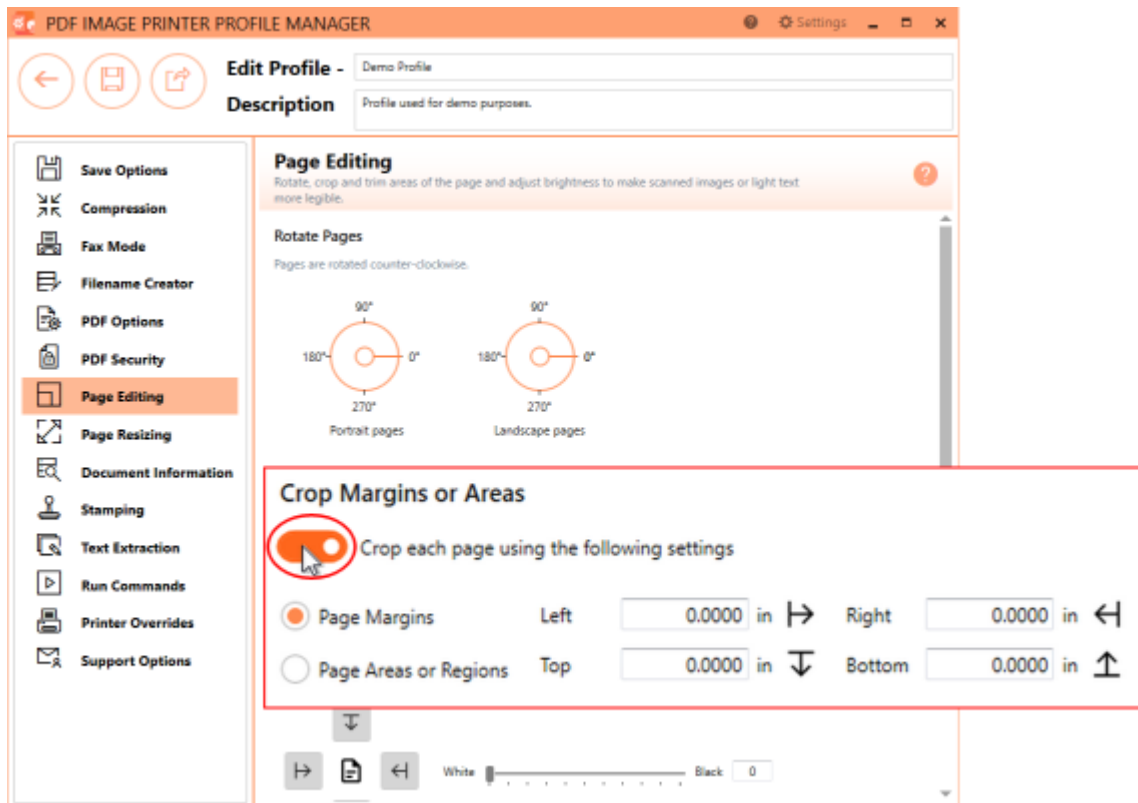
The steps below demonstrate how to use the crop page margins features to remove a solid-color frame (border) on each page, such as the white border around the page shown below.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.

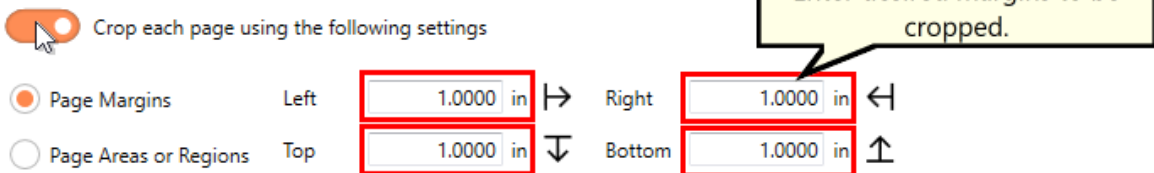


2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Page Editing tab**, under **Crop Margins or Areas**, enable **Crop each page using the following settings**.



6. Ensure that the **Page Margins** cropping method is selected.
7. For each side of the page, *Left*, *Top*, *Right* and *Bottom*, enter your desired margins to be cropped. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

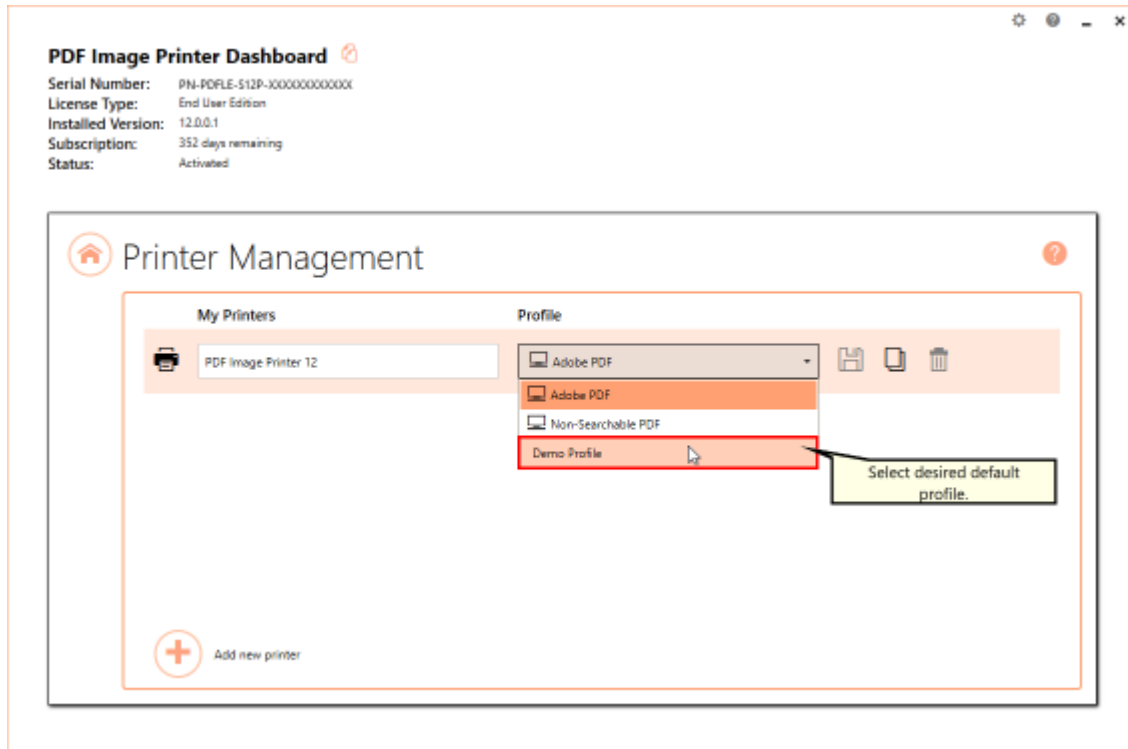
Crop Margins or Areas



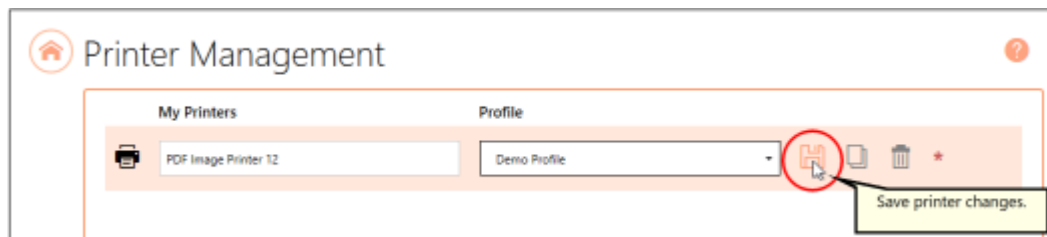
8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

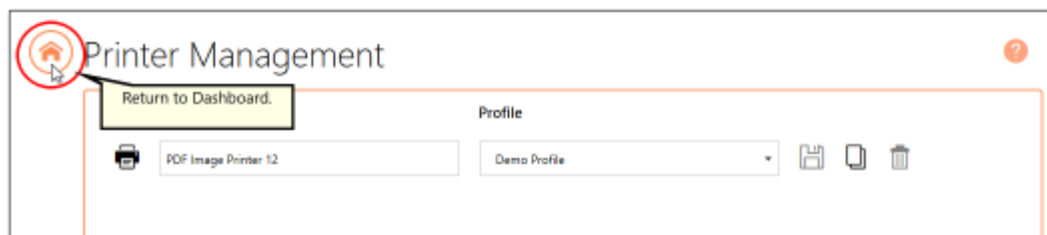
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



- iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



- iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



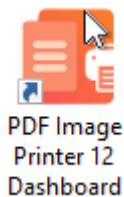
9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the margins (white border) will be cropped away and removed from the output file.

Cropping Page Areas or Regions

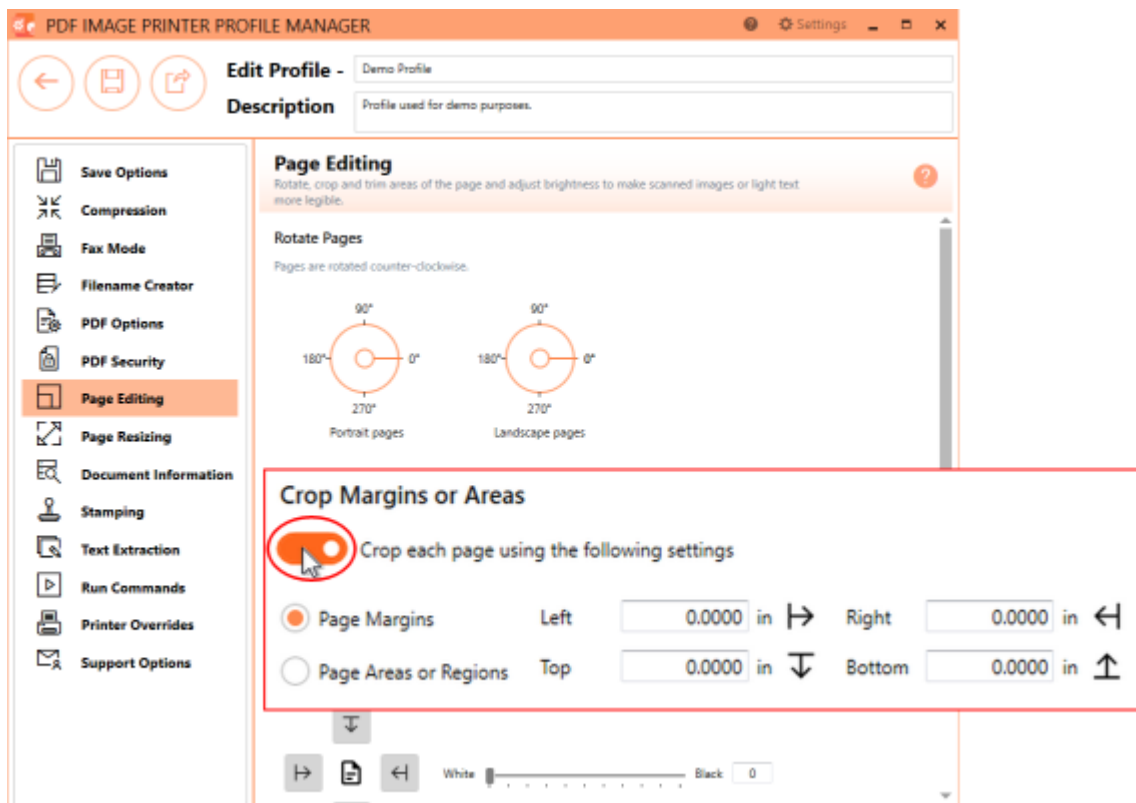
The steps below demonstrate how to use the crop page areas or regions features to cut the desired part of the image out of the page, such as cutting out the colored areas of the page shown below.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.

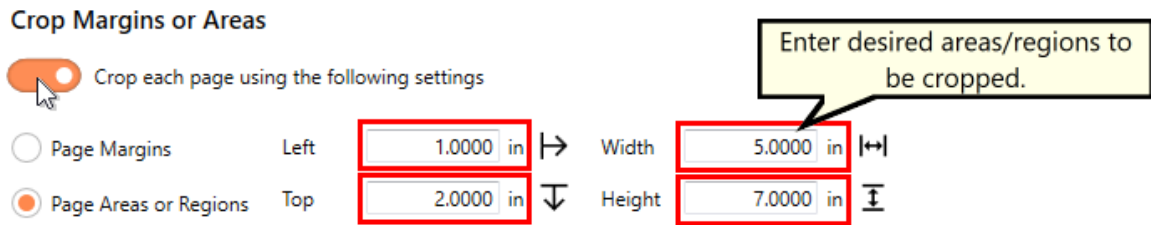


2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Page Editing tab**, under **Crop Margins or Areas**, enable **Crop each page using the following settings**.



6. Select the **Page Areas and Regions** cropping method.
7. For each of the *Left*, *Top*, *Width* and *Height* fields enter your desired area/region to be cropped:
 - *Left* - enter how far from the left hand side to start cropping
 - *Top* - enter in how far down from the top edge of the page to start cropping
 - *Width* - enter in the width of the area to crop
 - *Height* - enter in the height of the area to crop

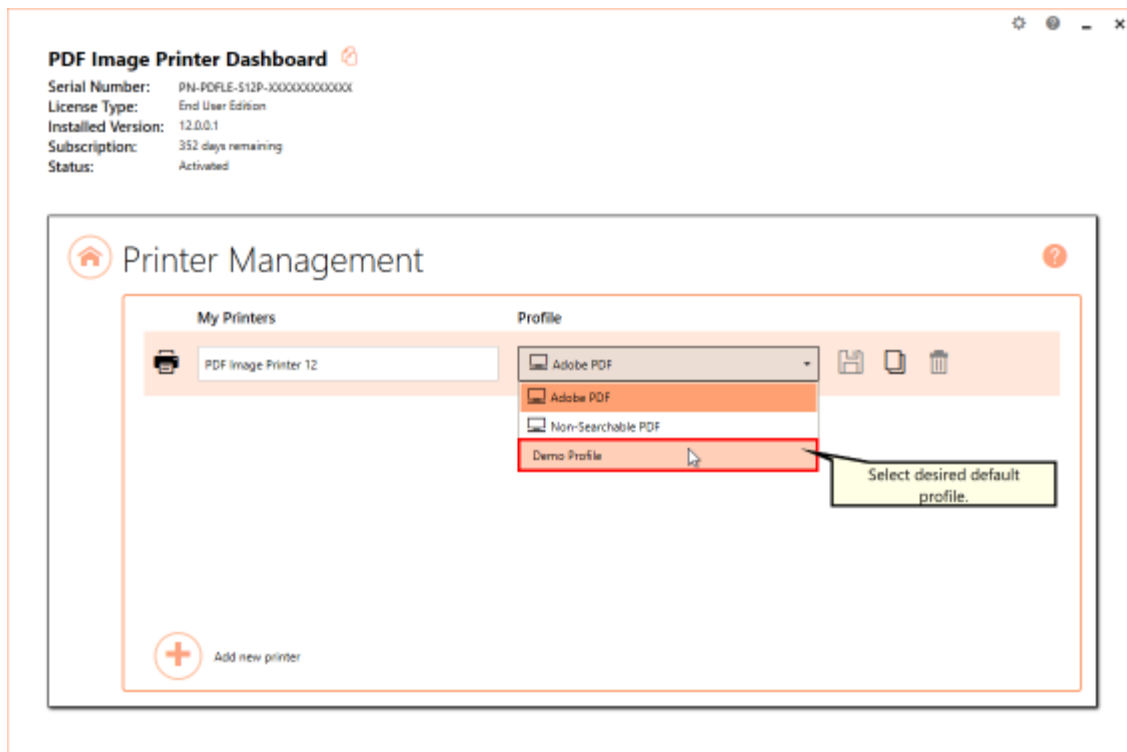
You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).



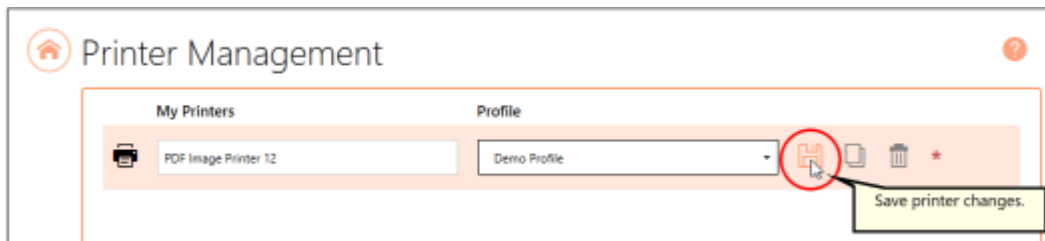
8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

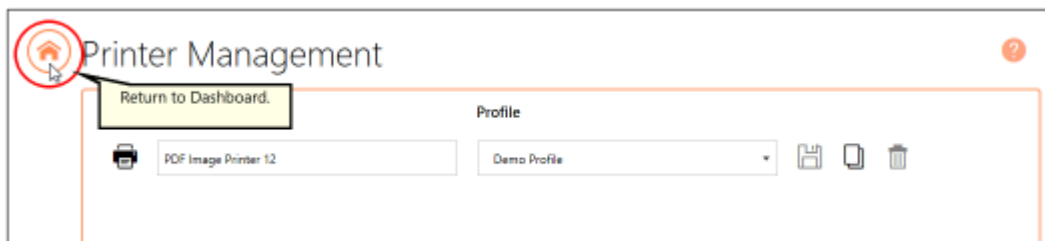
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the area/regions (colored area) will be cropped out and saved in the output file.

Trim Existing Margins

The trimming feature is an easy way to remove unwanted margins or borders from your pages. While similar to cropping, trimming is an automatic process. All areas to the left, top, right and bottom of the document where the color falls at or below the chosen color intensity level are removed. As soon as a color that is above the intensity level is found, trimming on that side stops.

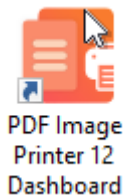
A common use of this feature would be to remove the lighter shades of grey on scanned images, as we do in the example below. This also works with color images as PDF Image Printer will use a greyscale representation of the page to determine trimming.

A side effect of trimming can be a change in outputted page size. If you need to remove the grey from the sides, and also keep the original page size, see also [Copy Page Contents to a New Page Size](#).

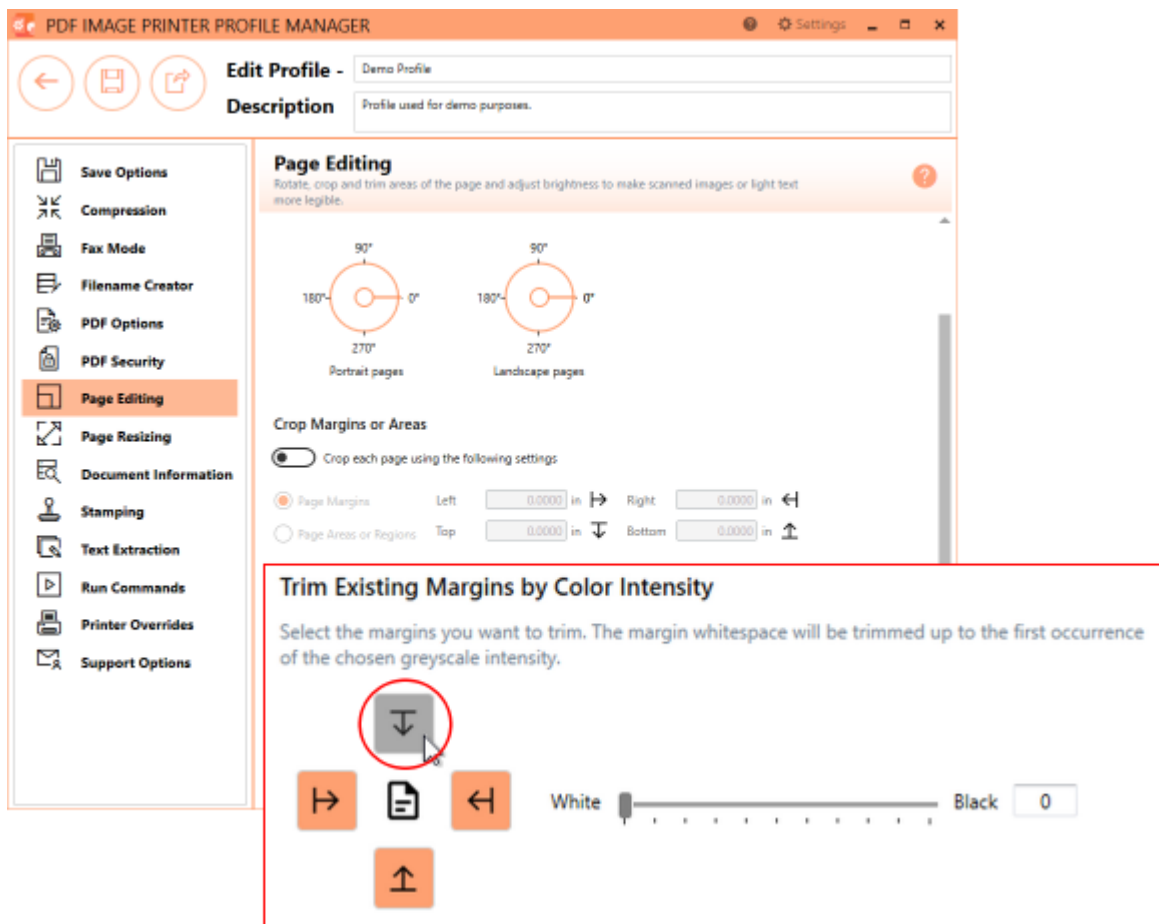
All [trimming settings](#) are controlled through the profile.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



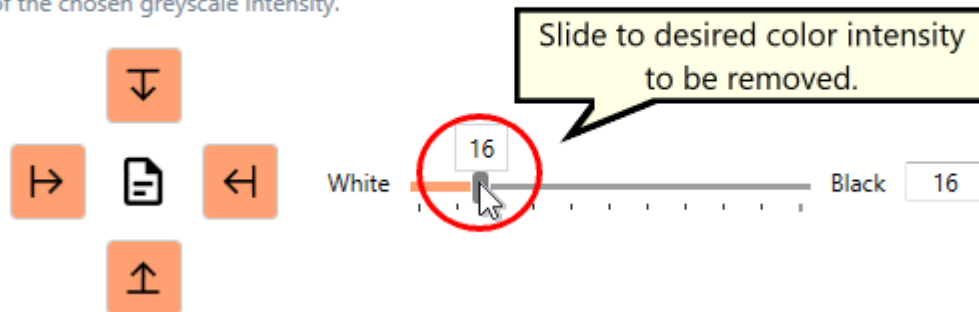
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Page Editing tab**, under **Trim Existing Margins by Color Intensity**, use the arrow buttons to select which sides of the document to trim. You can trim *Left*, *Top*, *Right* or *Bottom*, or any combination of all four.



- Use the sliding scale or enter a value to choose the level of grey to remove. If the slider is all the way to the left, or White, only pure white pixels will be removed. For a scanned image, the border is generally not pure white so the intensity should be moved to the right. The darker the grey on the border, the further towards Black you will need to move the slider.

Trim Existing Margins by Color Intensity

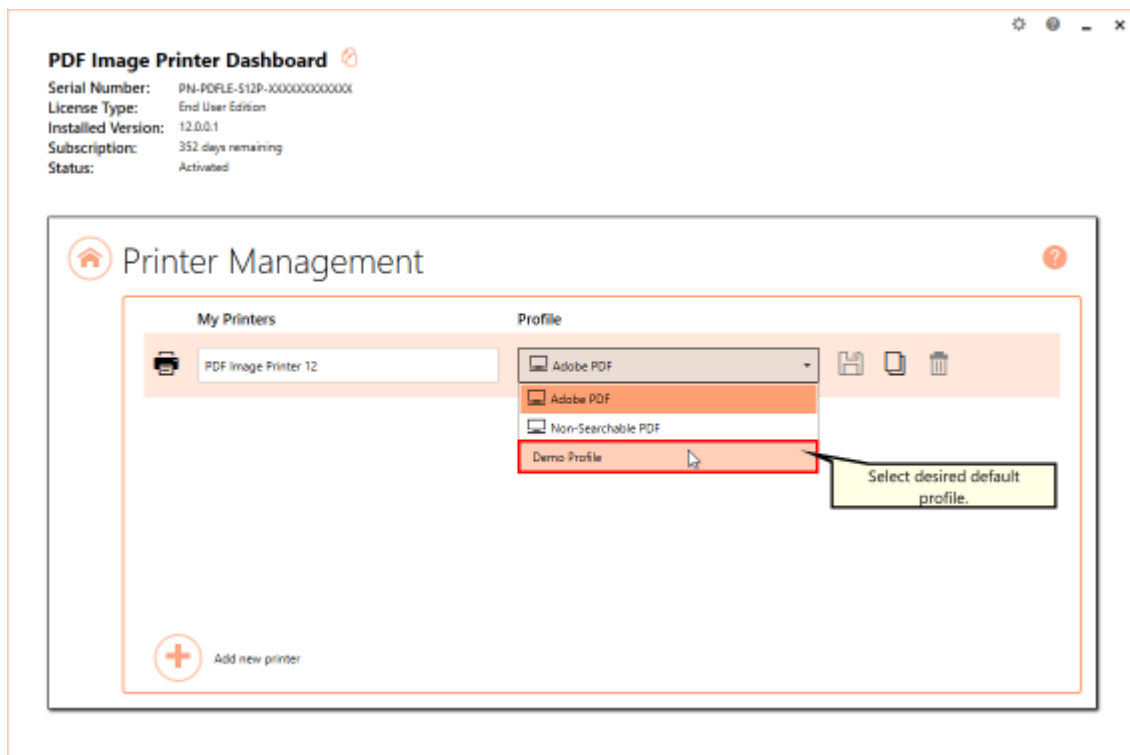
Select the margins you want to trim. The margin whitespace will be trimmed up to the first occurrence of the chosen greyscale intensity.



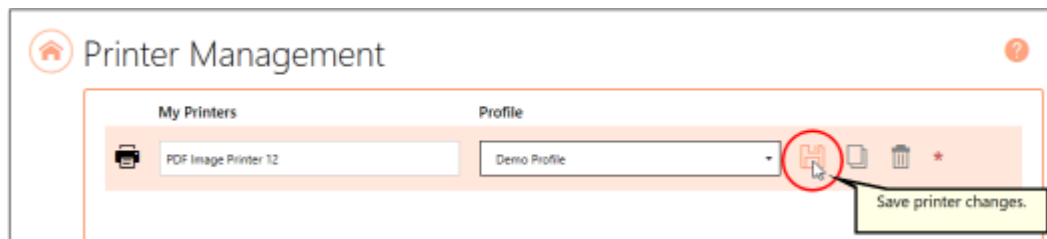
7. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

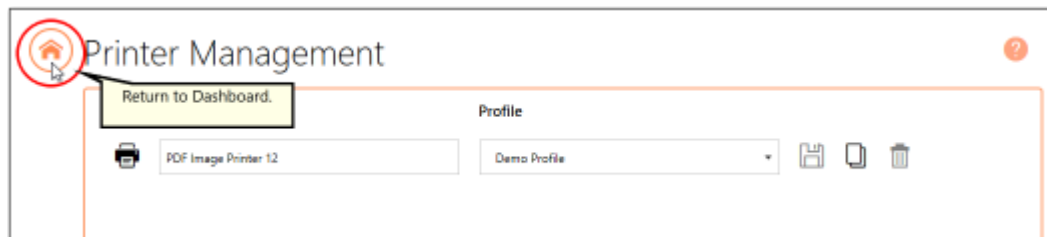
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



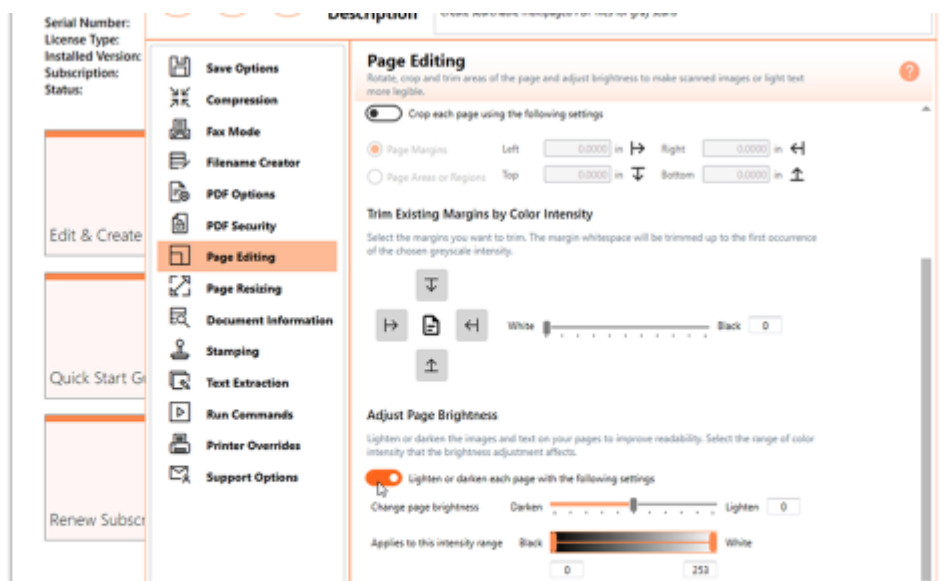
8. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the grey will be trimmed from all four sides stopping at the designated intensity level.

Adjust Page Brightness

Adjusting page brightness will lighten or darken the images or text on your pages to improve readability. Darkening the page can help to make light colored text more readable, or, conversely, lightening a page can make a dark image more visible.

A common use of this feature would be to remove the grey cast from the background of scanned images. It is particularly common to get a grey cast when scanning a book or receipts. This setting is only available if **Create each page of the PDF as an image** is enabled on the Save Options tab.

All [page brightness settings](#) are controlled through the profile.

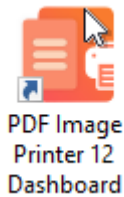


Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Step by Step Instructions

The steps below demonstrate how to use the page brightness features to remove a gray cast from a scanned image.

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Page Editing tab**, under **Adjust Page Brightness**, enable **Lighten or darken each page with the following settings**.

PDF IMAGE PRINTER PROFILE MANAGER

Settings

← Save Profile →

Edit Profile - Demo Profile

Description Profile used for demo purposes.

Page Editing

Rotate, crop and trim areas of the page and adjust brightness to make scanned images or light text more legible.

Crop each page using the following settings

Page Margins Left in → Right in ←

Page Areas or Regions Top in ↓ Bottom in ↑

Trim Existing Margins by Color Intensity

Select the margins you want to trim. The margin whitespace will be trimmed up to the first occurrence of the chosen grayscale intensity.

↓

→ [] ← White [] Black [0]

↑

Adjust Page Brightness

Lighten or darken the images and text on your pages to improve readability. Select the range of color intensity that the brightness adjustment affects.

Lighten or darken each page with the following settings

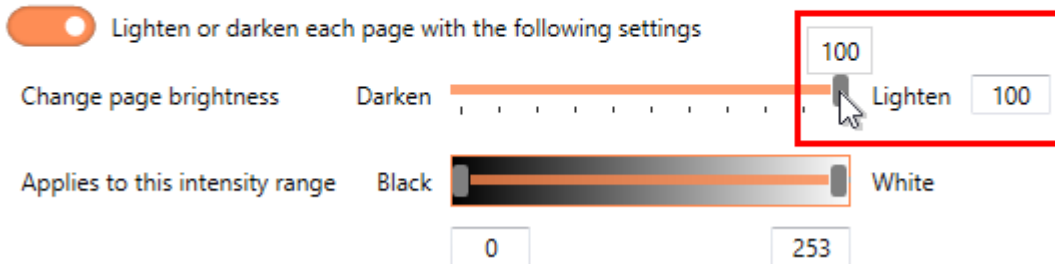
Change page brightness Darken [] Lighten [0]

Applies to this intensity range Black [] White [253]

6. Drag the sliding scale all the way to Lighten or enter the value of 100.

Adjust Page Brightness

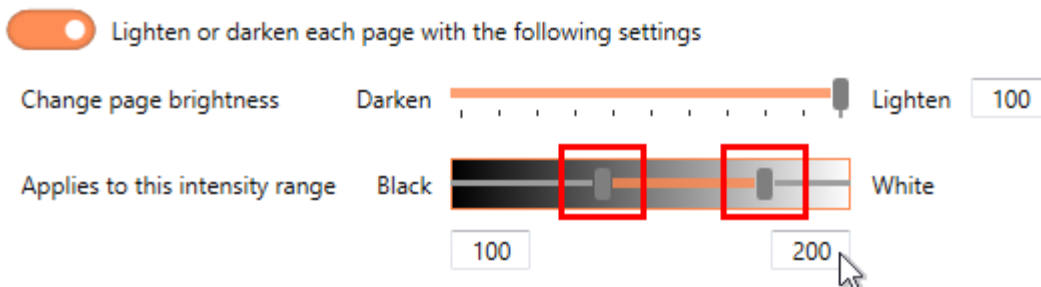
Lighten or darken the images and text on your pages to improve readability. Select the range of color intensity that the brightness adjustment affects.



7. Then set the intensity range that you want lightened. We just want the grey shades to be lightened, so we could use the values of 100 to 200 for example.

Adjust Page Brightness

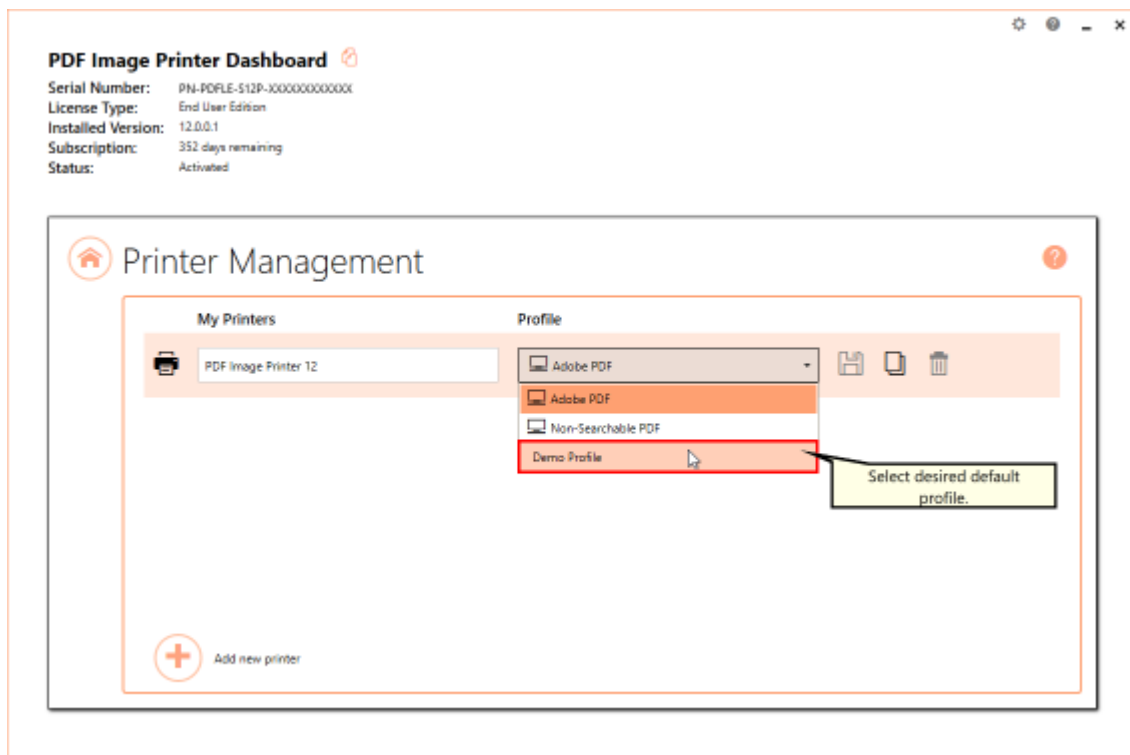
Lighten or darken the images and text on your pages to improve readability. Select the range of color intensity that the brightness adjustment affects.



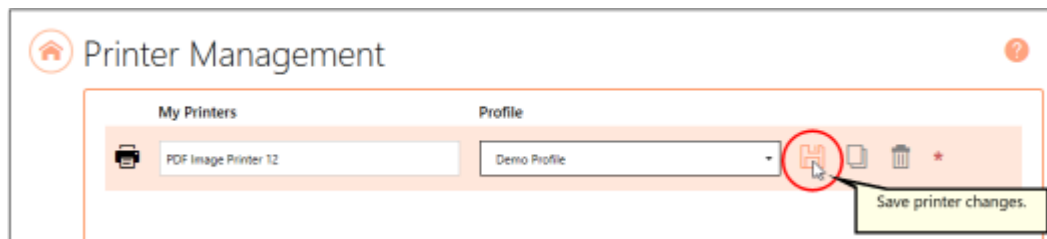
8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

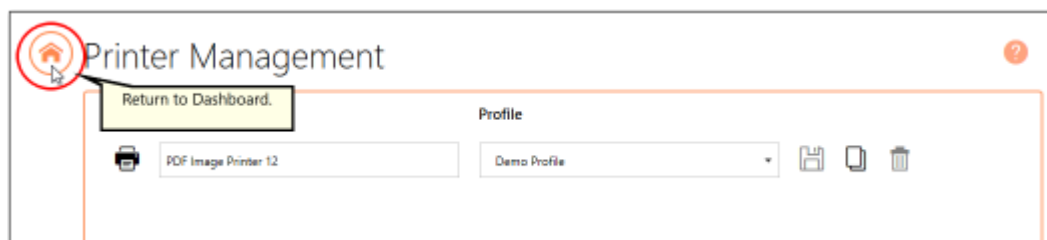
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, all shades between the designated intensity will be replaced by pure white. This may be too much lightening for your

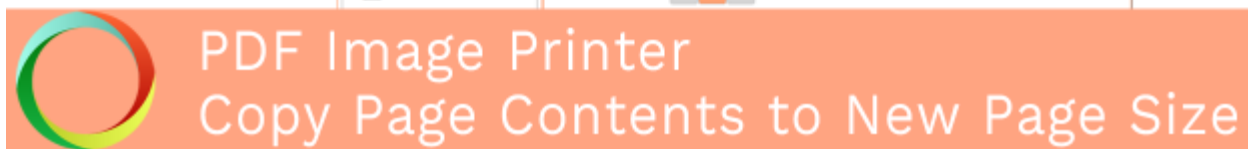
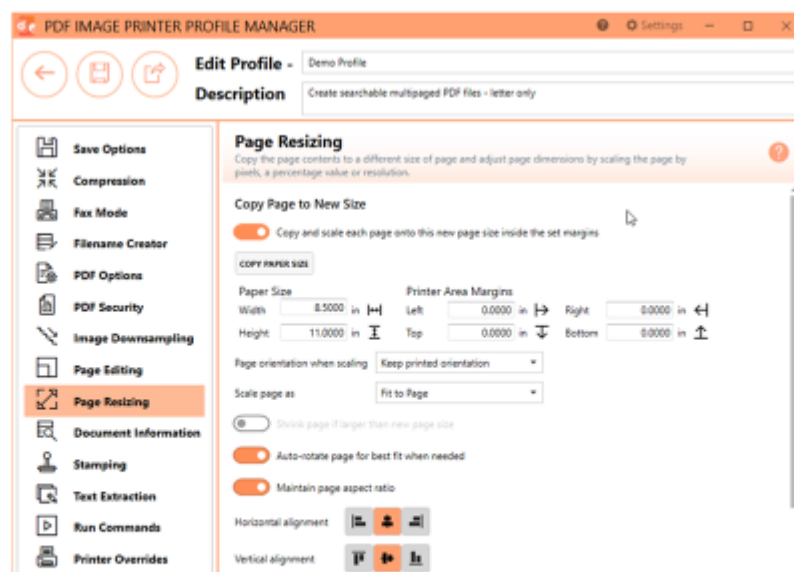
needs. Adjust the page brightness and applicable intensity range as needed.

Copy Page Contents to a New Page Size

The Copy To feature is used to copy the output image to a new "page" of a different size. If you have a document consisting of a mix of Letter, Legal and other paper sizes, the Copy To feature can be used to create an image or file where each page is the same size.

This feature can also be used in conjunction with [Cropping](#) and [Trimming](#) to remove unwanted margins and borders and then place the image back onto the same size page.

All [Copy To settings](#) are controlled through the profile.

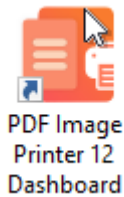


Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

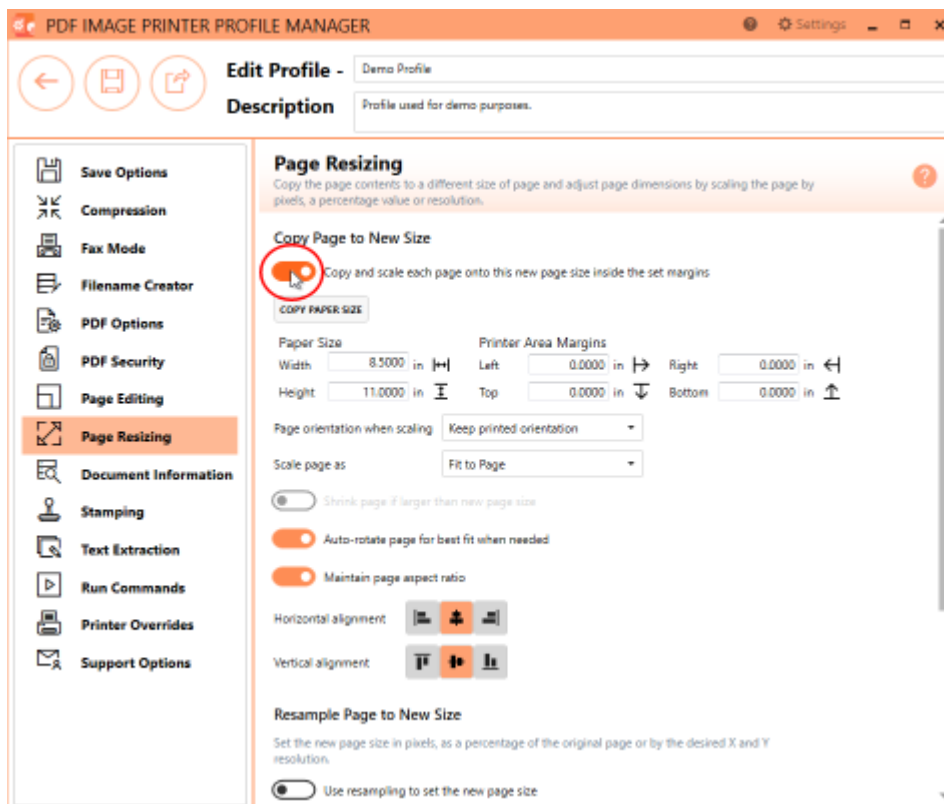
Step by Step Instructions

The steps below demonstrate how to use the Copy To feature to convert a document with a mix of letter and legal paper sizes to a single paper size file.

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.

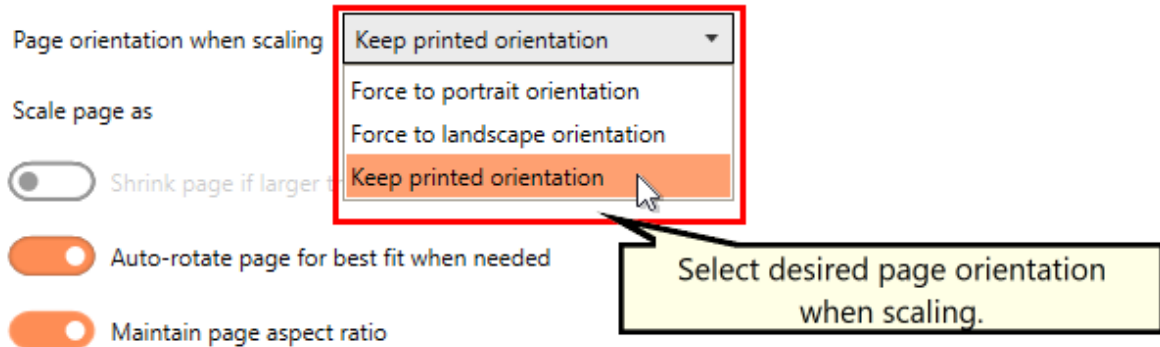


2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Page Resizing** tab, under **Copy Page to New Size**, enable **Copy and scale each page onto this new page size inside the set margins**.

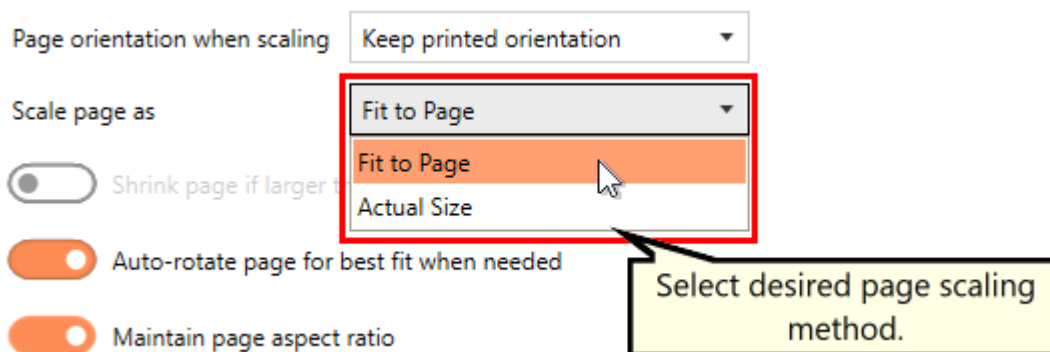


6. Enter the dimensions of your desired output page size. Select **Copy Paper Size** to copy the dimensions from our list of standard paper sizes.

7. Beside **Page orientation when scaling**, you have the option to *force either portrait or landscape orientation*, or just *keep printed orientation*.



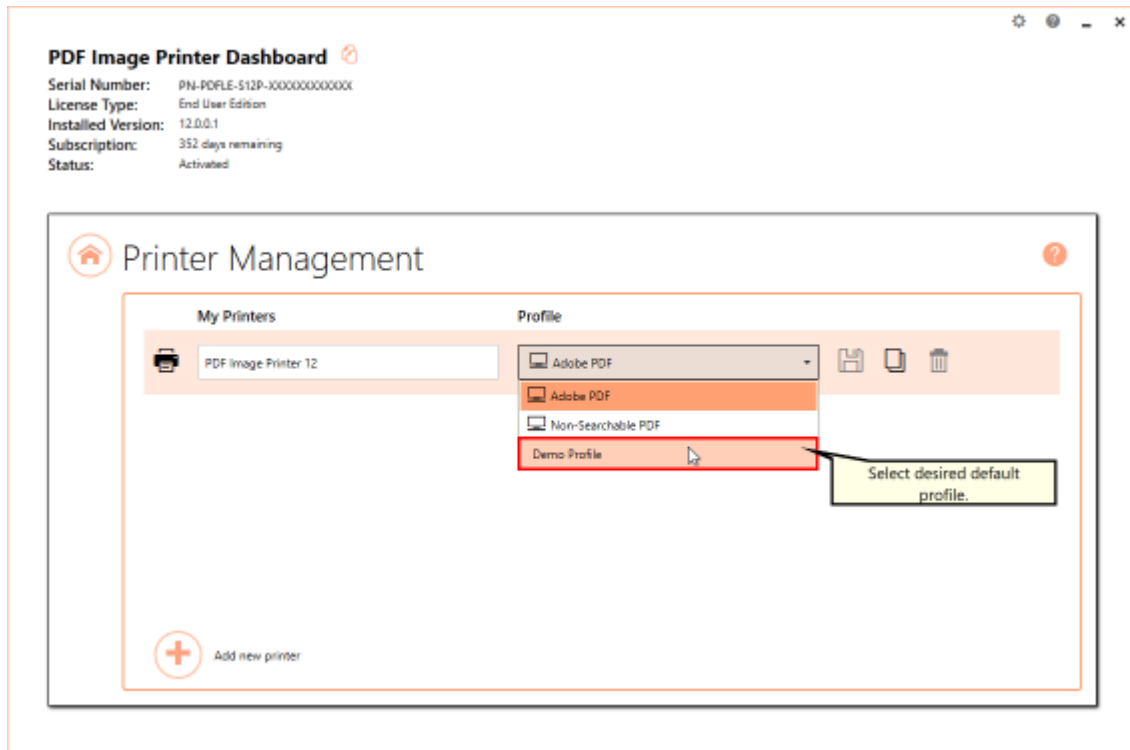
8. Beside **Scale page as** you can select *Fit to Page* or *Actual Size*. We recommend setting this to *Fit to Page* so that PDF Image Printer can increase or decrease the size of the page contents as needed to fit the new page size. The only time you may need to change scale page to *Actual Size* is if your original document is a much smaller page size and you do not want the contents stretched to fit the new page size.



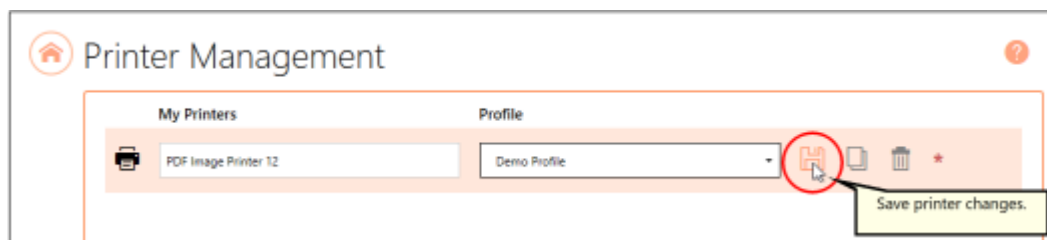
9. Leave **Auto-rotate page for best fit when needed** enabled unless you are forcing a specific page orientation and want any page contents on the wrong page orientation to be copied to the new page size and orientation without being rotated.
10. We recommend leaving the settings related to **maintaining aspect ratio** and **alignment** in their default states.
11. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

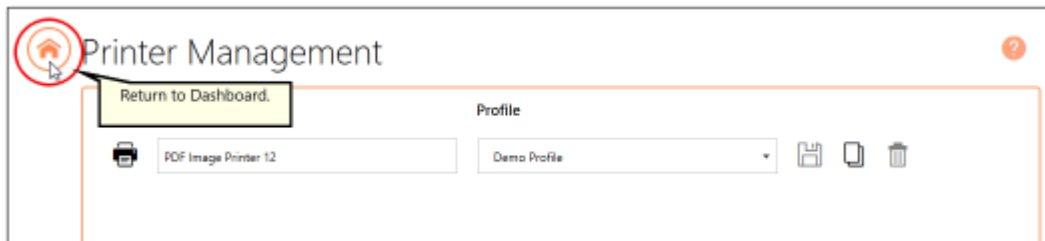
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



- iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



- iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



12. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the original page contents will be copied to the new page size.

Resize Images Using Resampling

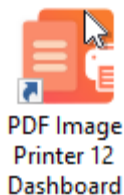
The Resampling feature is used to create images or files in custom sizes. The resampling features are not a replacement for choosing the proper page size on the properties dialog when printing, or setting up a custom paper size through the [Printer Overrides](#) tab. This setting is only available if **Create each page of the PDF as an image** is enabled on the Save Options tab.

You can resample images by choosing Pixels, Percentage (%) or Resolution (DPI). To prevent image distortion (a stretched or squished image), Lock Aspect Ratio can be left enabled to have PDF Image Printer calculate the height needed automatically.

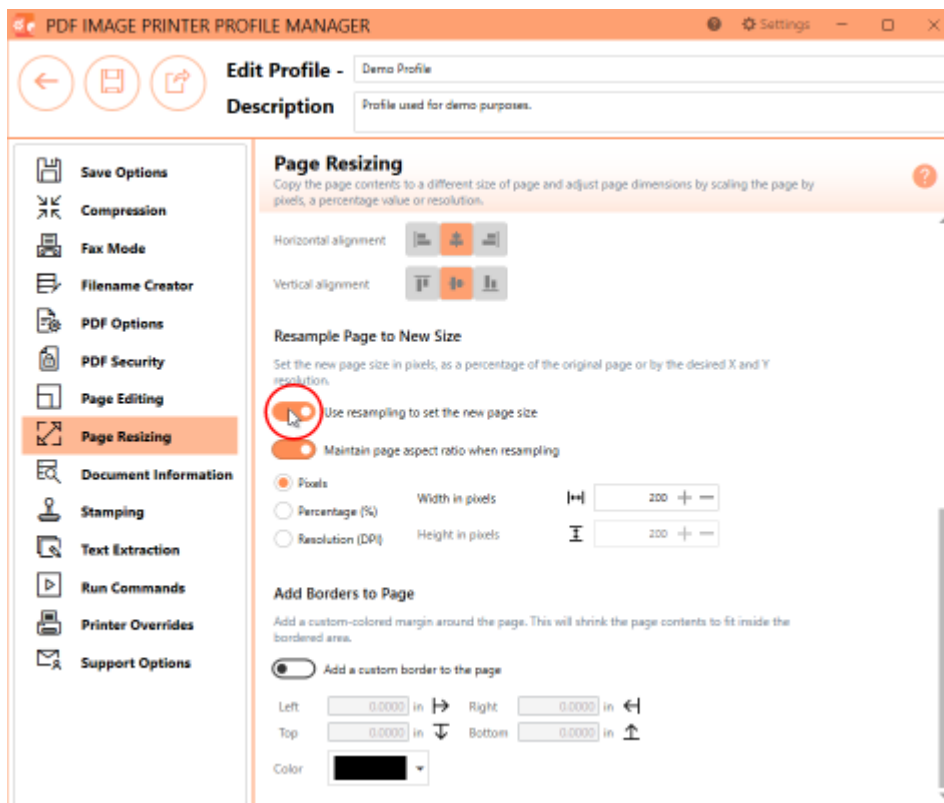
All [page resampling settings](#) are controlled through the profile.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Page Resizing tab**, under **Resample Page to New size**, enable **Use resampling to set the new page size**.



6. Leave **Maintain page aspect ratio when resampling** enabled if you want PDF Image Printer to automatically determine the *Height* based on the value entered for the *Width*.

Resample Page to New Size

Set the new page size in pixels, as a percentage of the original page or by the desired X and Y resolution.

Use resampling to set the new page size

Maintain page aspect ratio when resampling

Pixels
 Percentage (%) Width in pixels
 Resolution (DPI) Height in pixels

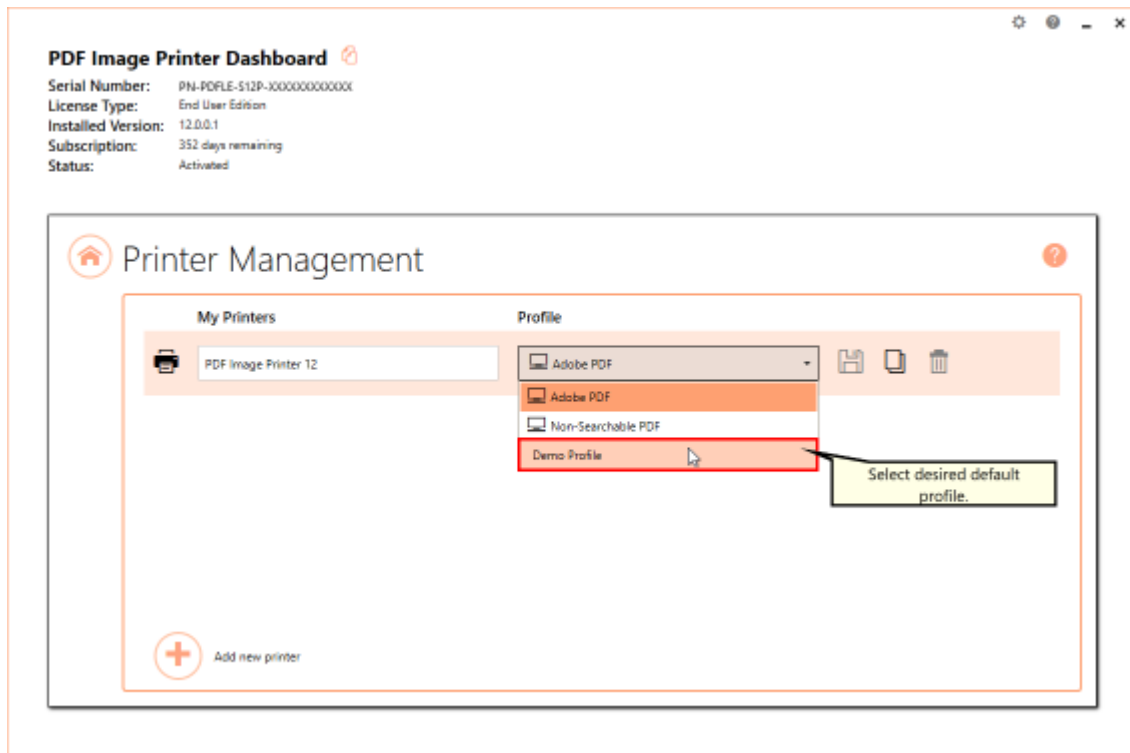
7. Select either *Pixels*, *Percentage (%)*, or *Resolution (DPI)* and enter your desired measurements.

<input checked="" type="radio"/> Pixels	Width in pixels	↔	<input type="text" value="200"/>	+ -
<input type="radio"/> Percentage (%)				
<input type="radio"/> Resolution (DPI)	Height in pixels	↕	<input type="text" value="200"/>	+ -
<input type="radio"/> Pixels	% of original image width	↔	<input type="text" value="100"/>	+ -
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Percentage (%)	% of original image height	↕	<input type="text" value="100"/>	+ -
<input type="radio"/> Resolution (DPI)				
<input type="radio"/> Pixels	X Resolution	↔	<input type="text" value="200"/>	+ -
<input type="radio"/> Percentage (%)				
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Resolution (DPI)	Y Resolution	↕	<input type="text" value="200"/>	+ -

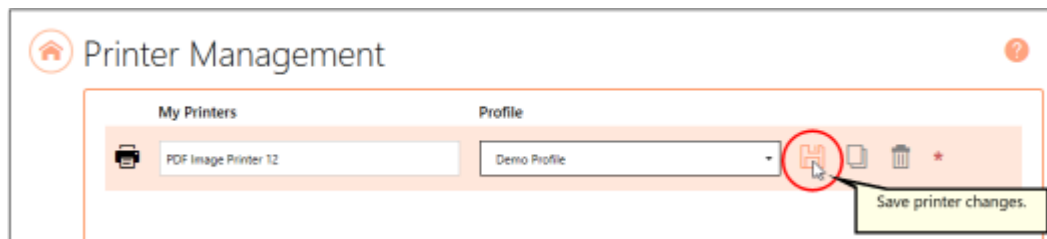
8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

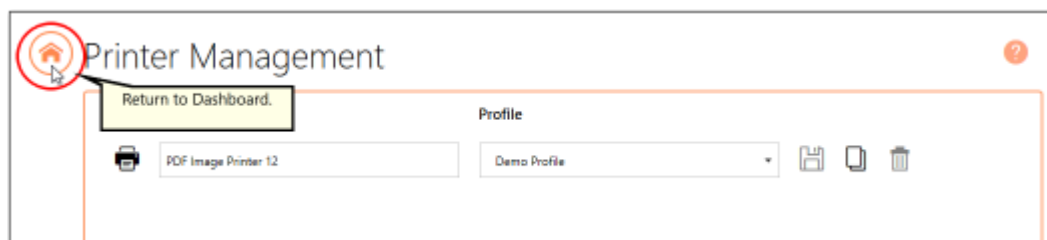
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the output file will have your designated dimensions.

Add Borders to Page

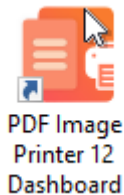
The Adding Borders to Page feature is used to add a custom-colored margin around the page. This feature will shrink the page contents to fit inside the bordered area.

A common use of this feature would be to create a white border in order to create space to add a watermark to the header or footer of a page where the page contents previously went right to the edge of the page.

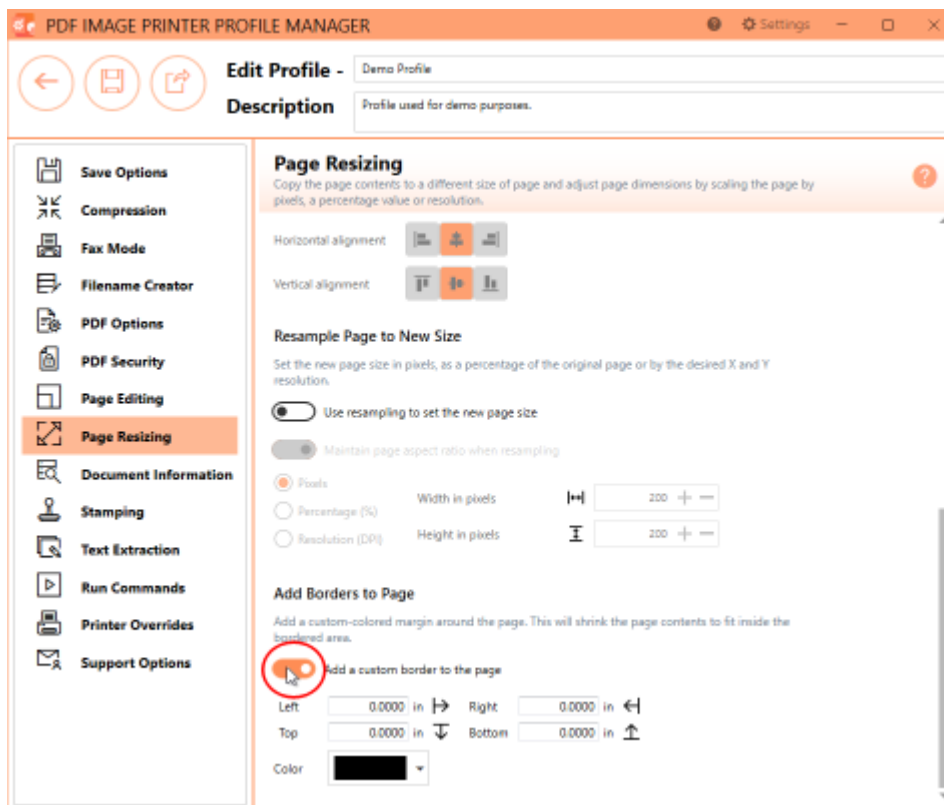
All [adding border settings](#) are controlled through the profile.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



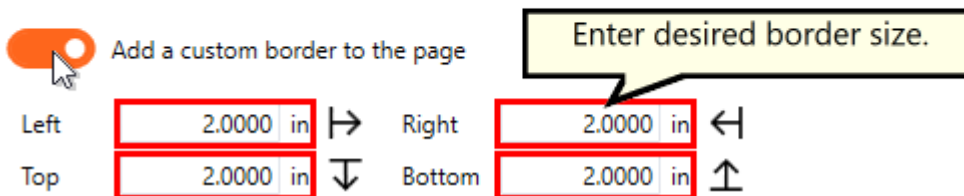
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Page Resizing tab**, under **Add Borders to Page**, enable **Add a custom border to the page**.



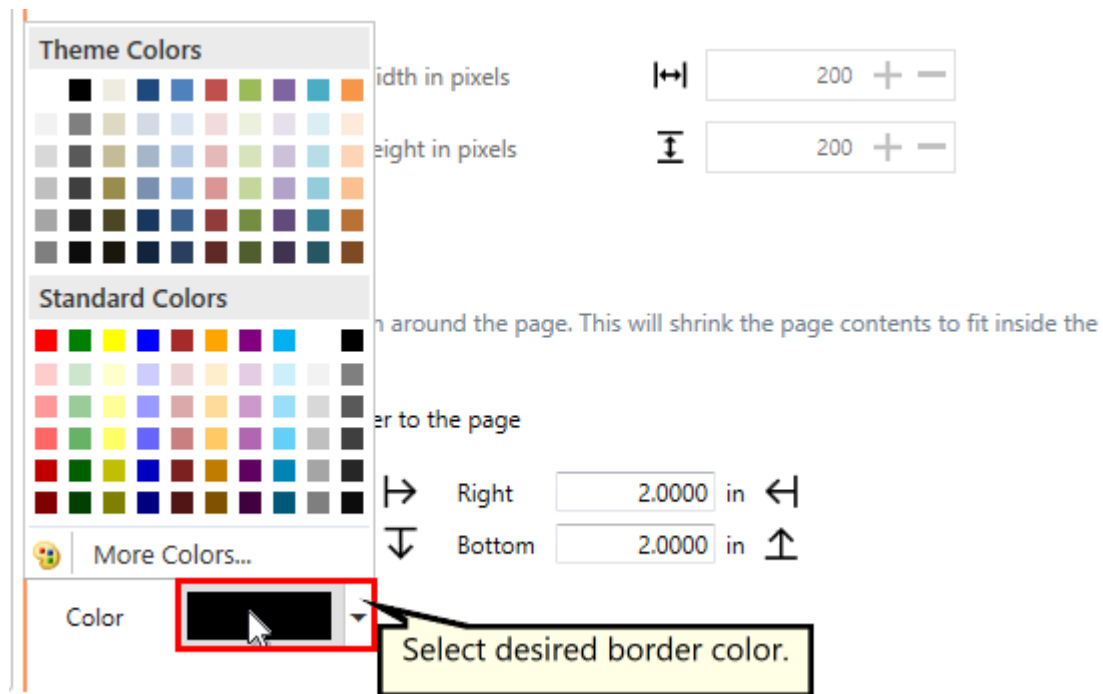
- For each side of the page, *Left*, *Top*, *Right* and *Bottom*, enter your desired border size. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

Add Borders to Page

Add a custom-colored margin around the page. This will shrink the page contents to fit inside the bordered area.



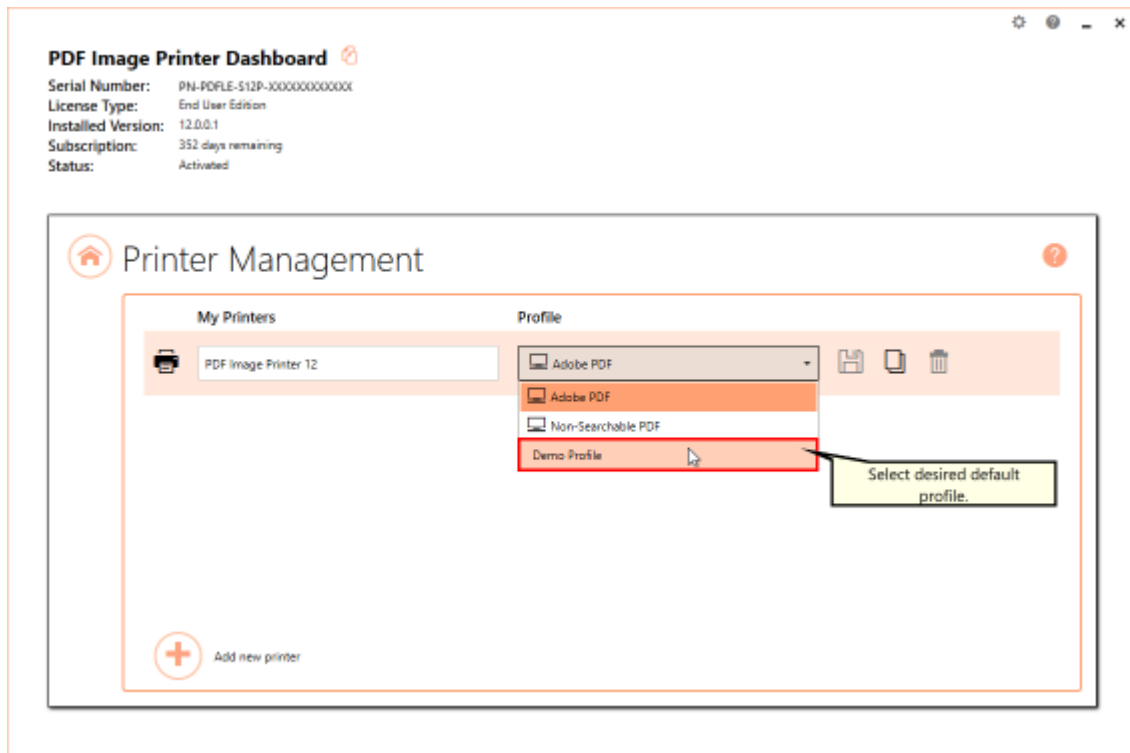
- Select your desired border color either by using the color picker, entering the hex color code, or entering the RGBA color code. Note that the A slider will allow you to adjust the transparency of the border color.



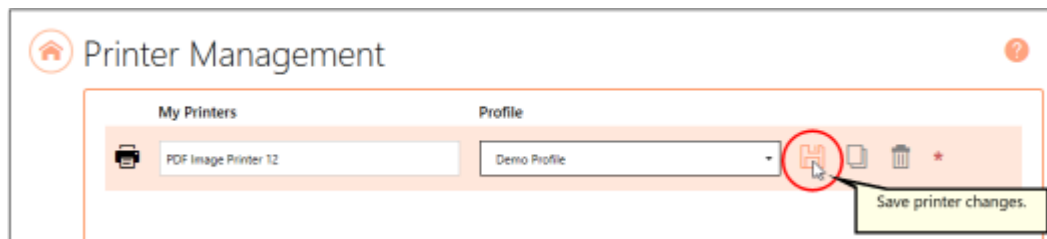
8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

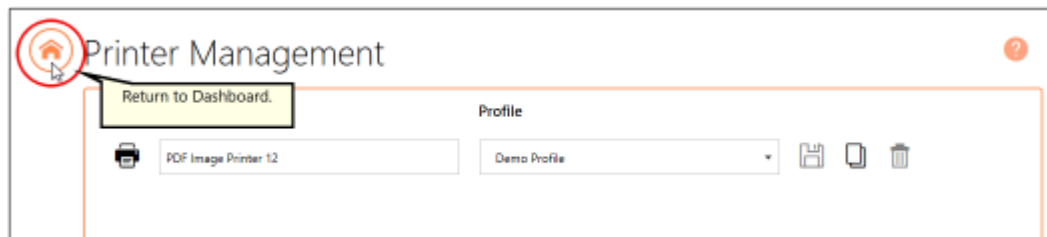
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the page contents will be shrunk down to fit within your designated border size and color.

Add Watermark to Each Page

The Stamping tool will add text, images, page numbering or date/time information as a watermark stamp onto a page. The watermark will overlay the page content.

If your page has standard 1 inch margins, adding a stamp to the top or bottom of the page will appear as though it is in the header or footer, but in fact the Stamping tool does not reserve space for the stamp. Therefore, if you have a page with no margins or very small margins, the stamp may be layered over the page content. If you have non-traditional margins and need to reserve space for a stamp in the header or footer space, please go to the **Page Resizing tab** and [add borders to the page](#).

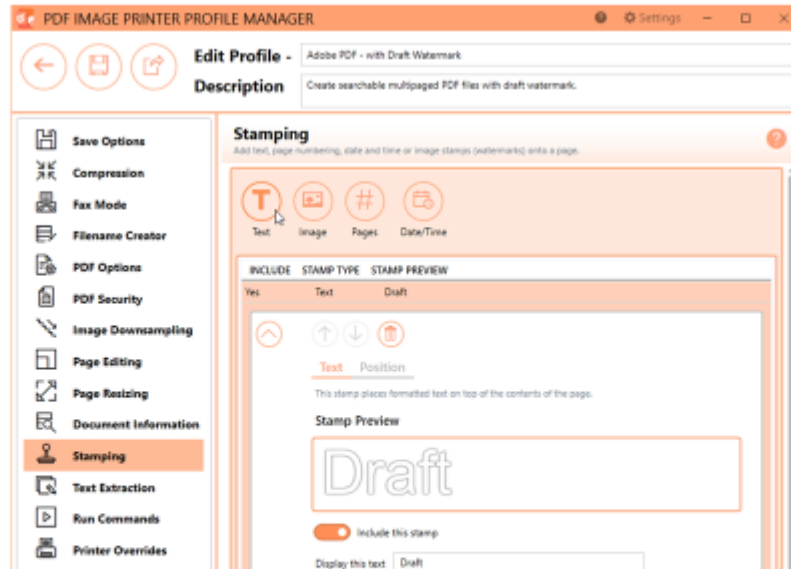
All [stamping options](#) are controlled through the profile.

There are four types of watermark stamps that can be added to output files using the **Stamping tab**:

- [Adding Text Watermark Stamp](#)
- [Adding Image Watermark Stamp](#)
- [Adding Page Numbering Watermark Stamp](#)
- [Adding Date and Time Watermark Stamp](#)

Text Stamp

The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Stamping tab** to add a text watermark to output files.

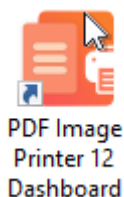


PDF Image Printer
Add Watermark to Each Page

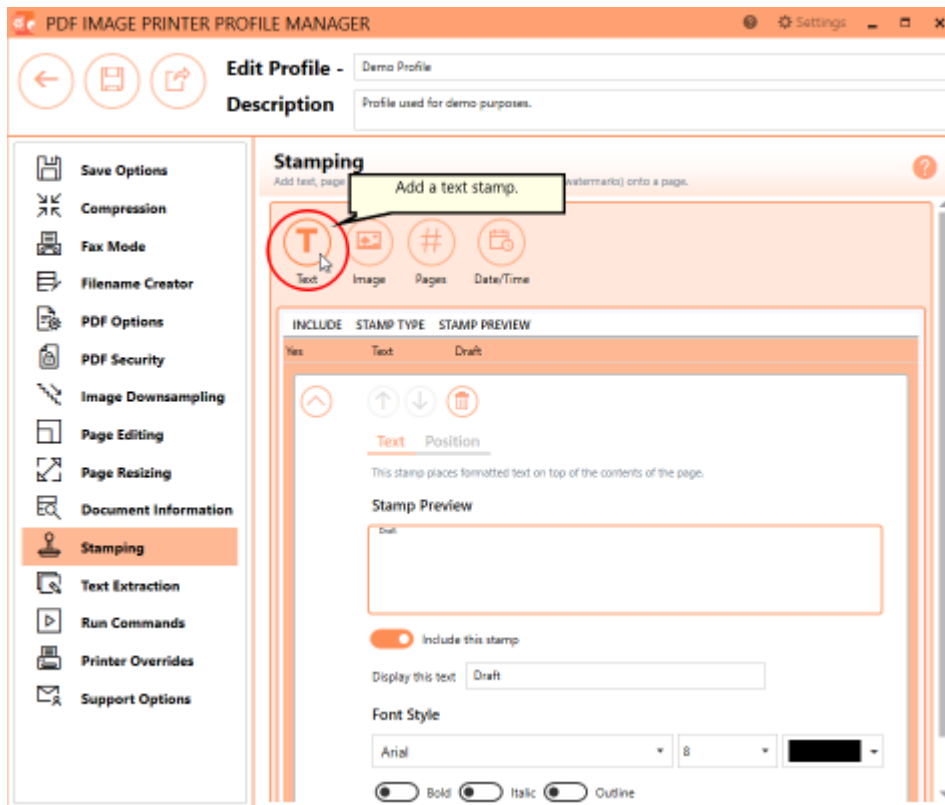
Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Step by Step Instructions

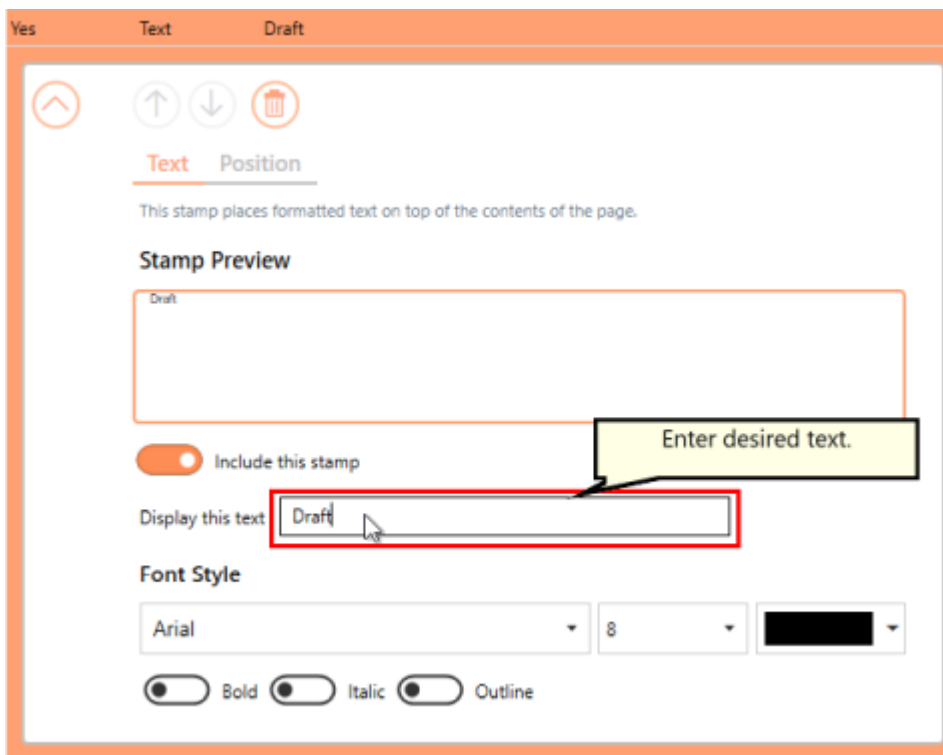
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



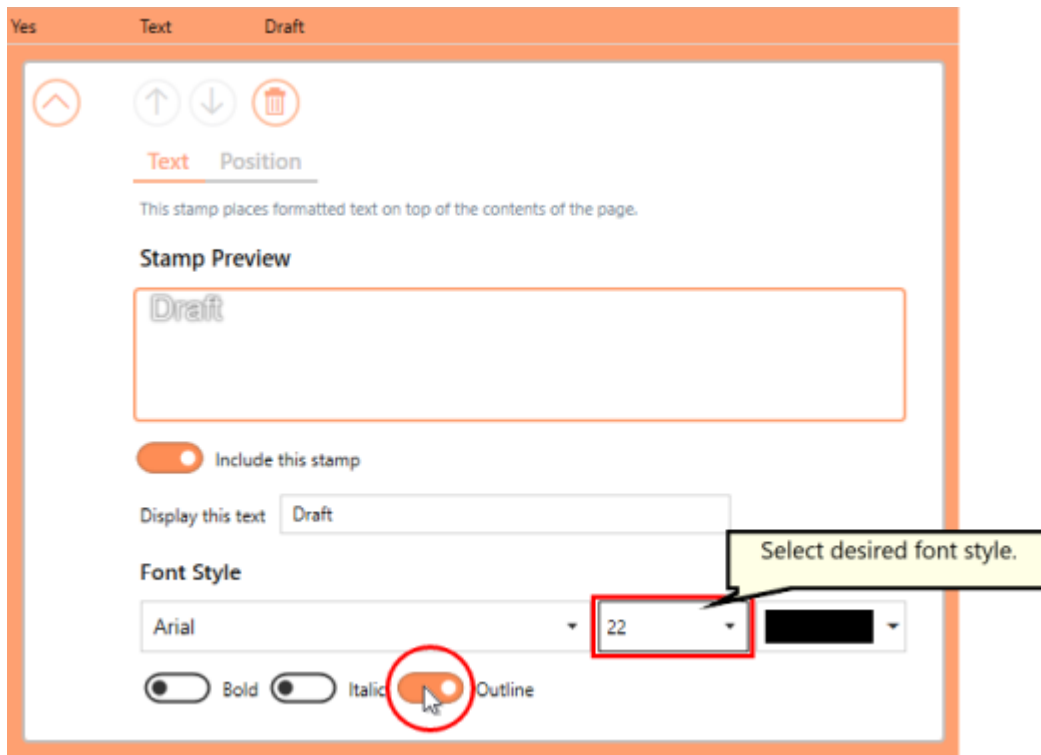
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Stamping tab**, select **Add a text stamp**.



6. Beside *Display this text*, enter your desired text. By default, the text that is entered is: "Draft".



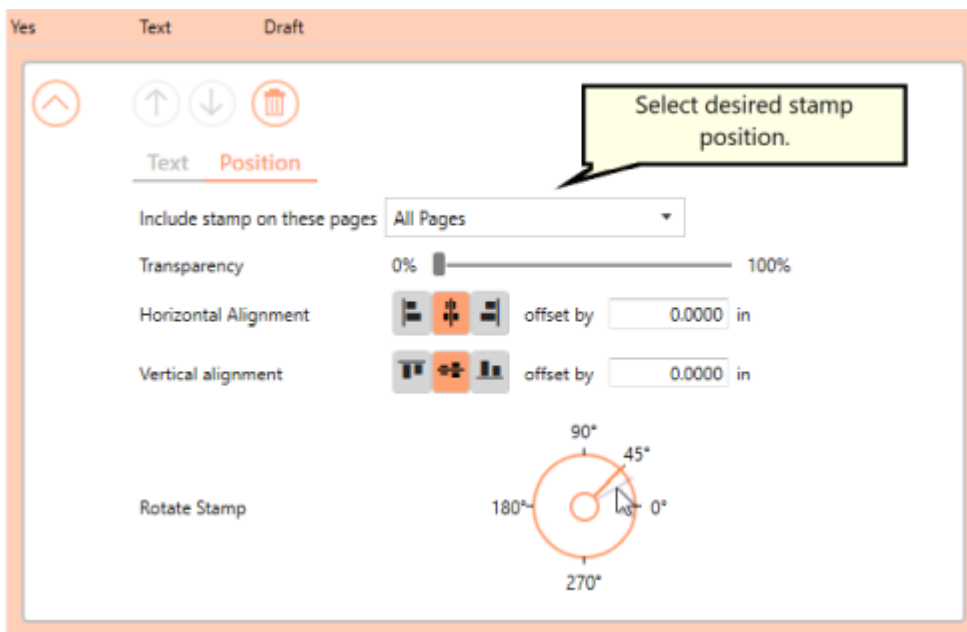
7. You can change the font type, font size, font color, and enable *bold*, *italic* or *outline* font styles. For this example, we will use font size 22 and enable outline.



8. Under **Position**:

- you can choose which pages in the output file will be stamped,
- you can adjust the transparency of the stamp,
- you can change the horizontal and vertical alignment of the stamp,
- and you can rotate the stamp.

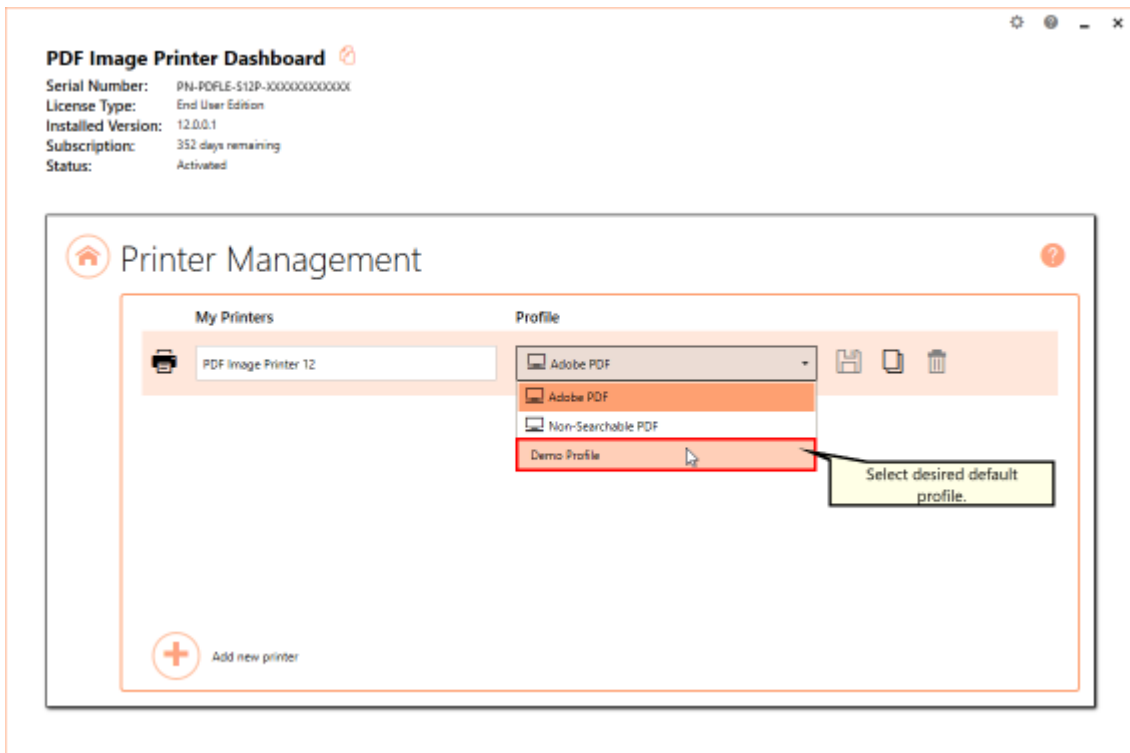
For this example, we will rotate the text stamp 45 degrees.



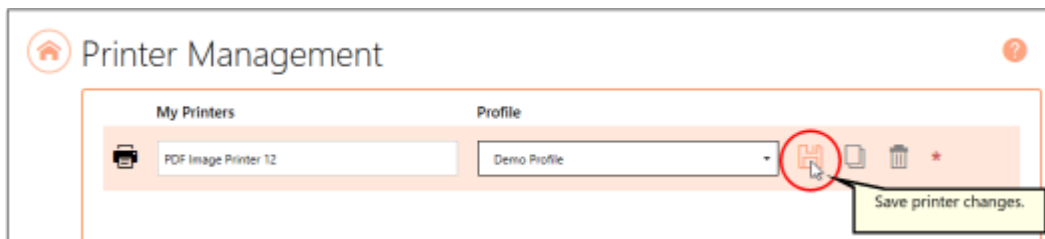
9. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

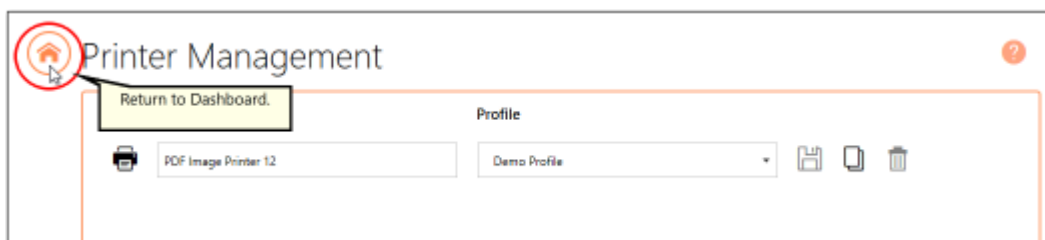
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



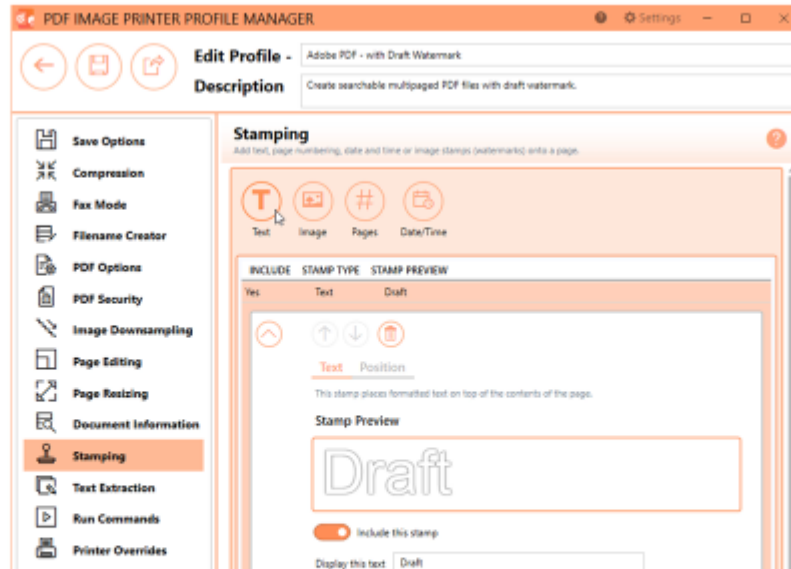
iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



10. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, every page of the output file will be stamped with the text watermark **DRAFT** diagonally across the center of the page.

Image Stamp

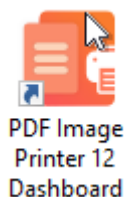
The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Stamping tab** to add an image watermark to output files.



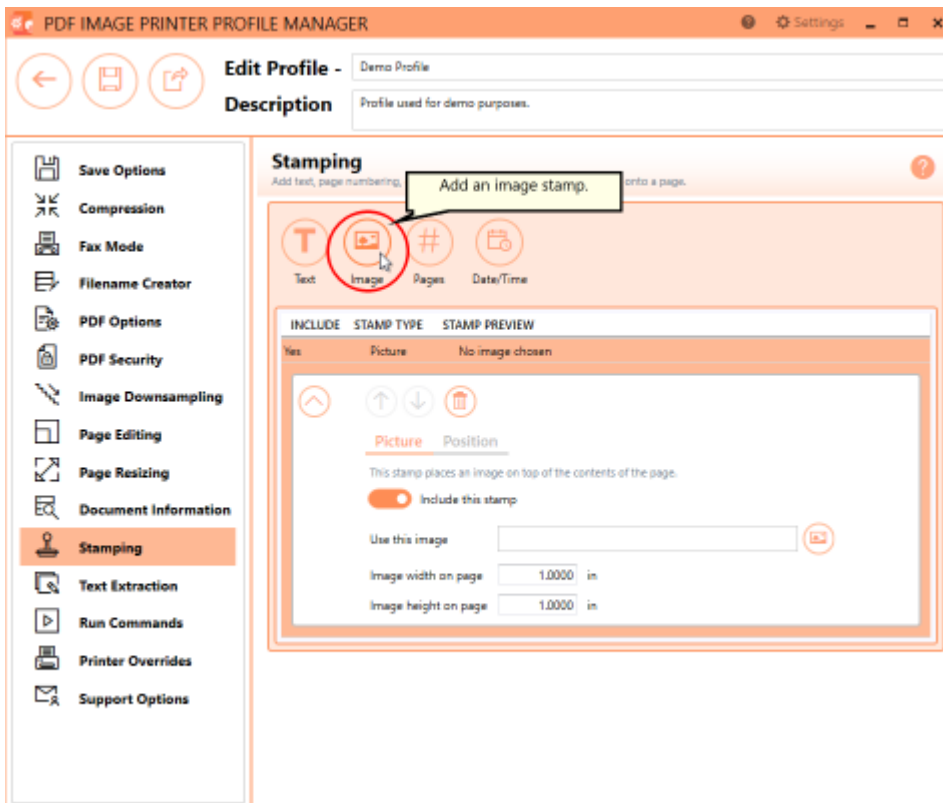
Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Step by Step Instructions

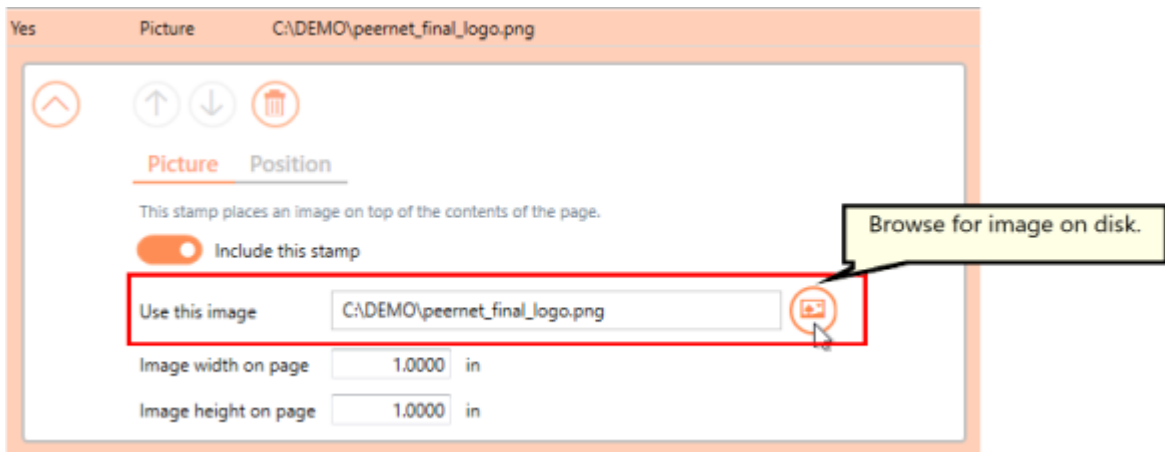
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



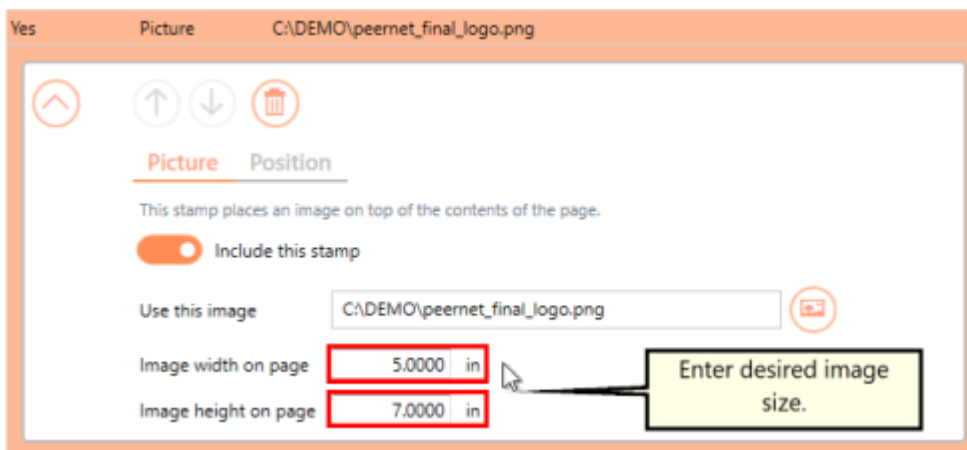
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Stamping tab**, select **Add an image stamp**.



6. Beside *Use this image*, select the file icon to browse to your desired image. We recommend selecting a PNG image. If PDF Image Printer cannot find the selected image when creating the output file, no image stamp will be added to your output file.



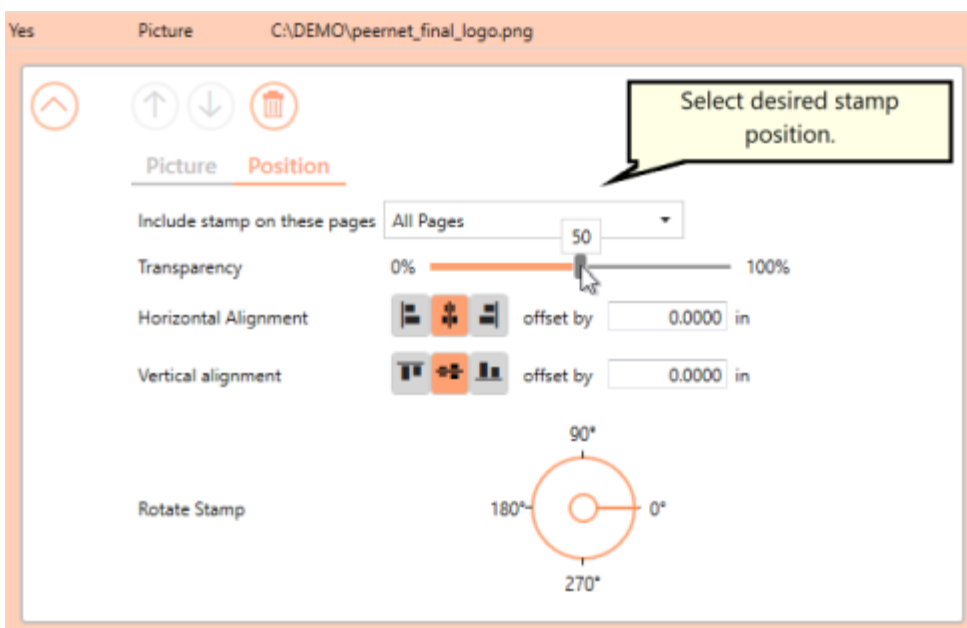
7. Change the image *width* and *height* on the page to match the image aspect ratio. By default, image *width* and *height* are set to 1.0000 inch or 2.5400 cm.



8. Under **Position**:

- you can choose which pages in the output file will be stamped,
- you can adjust the transparency of the stamp,
- you can change the horizontal and vertical alignment of the stamp,
- and you can rotate the stamp.

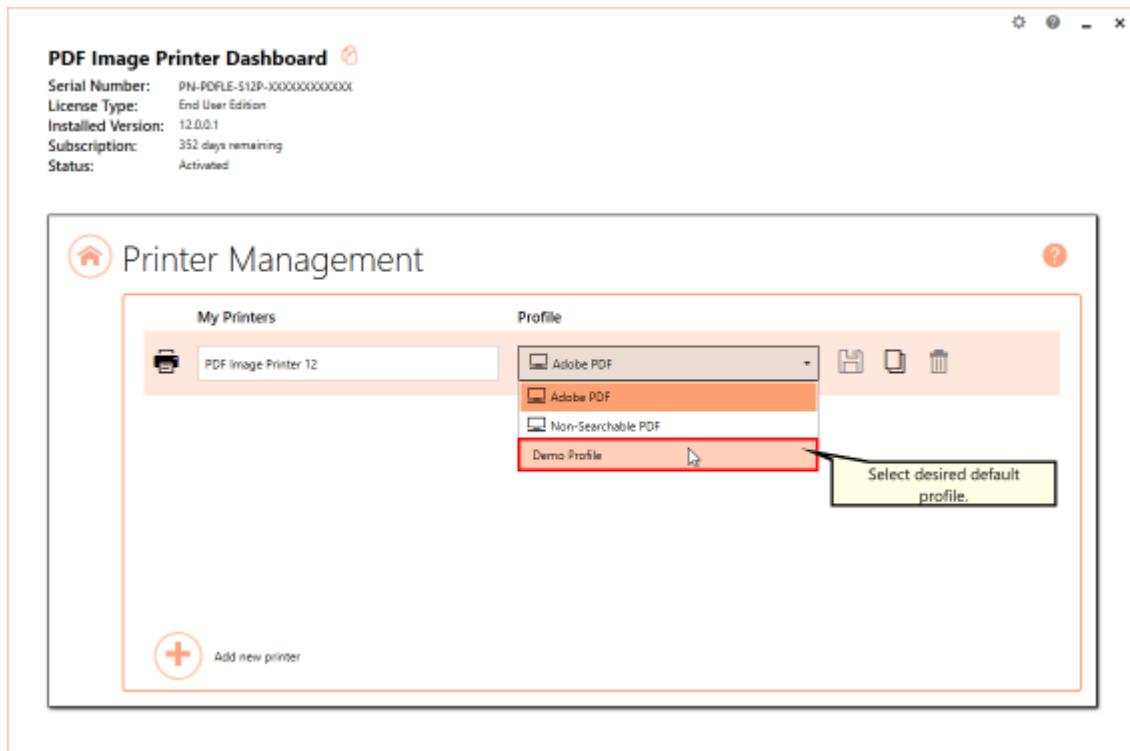
For this example, we will adjust the transparency of our image stamp to 50%.



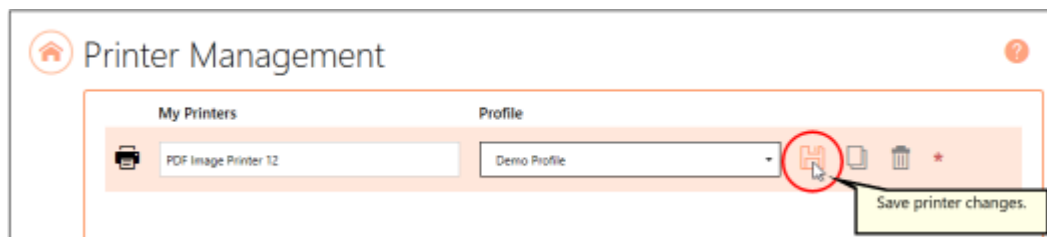
9. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

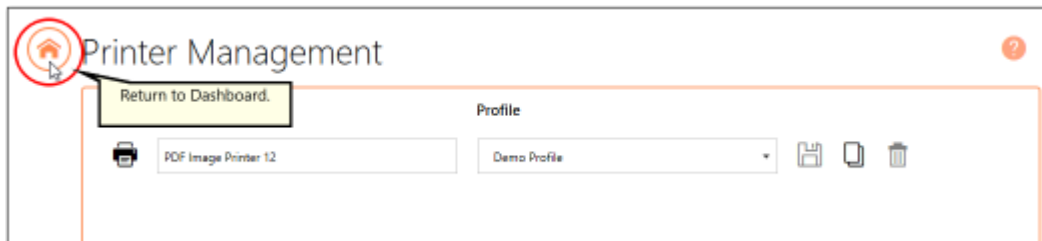
- Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



- Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



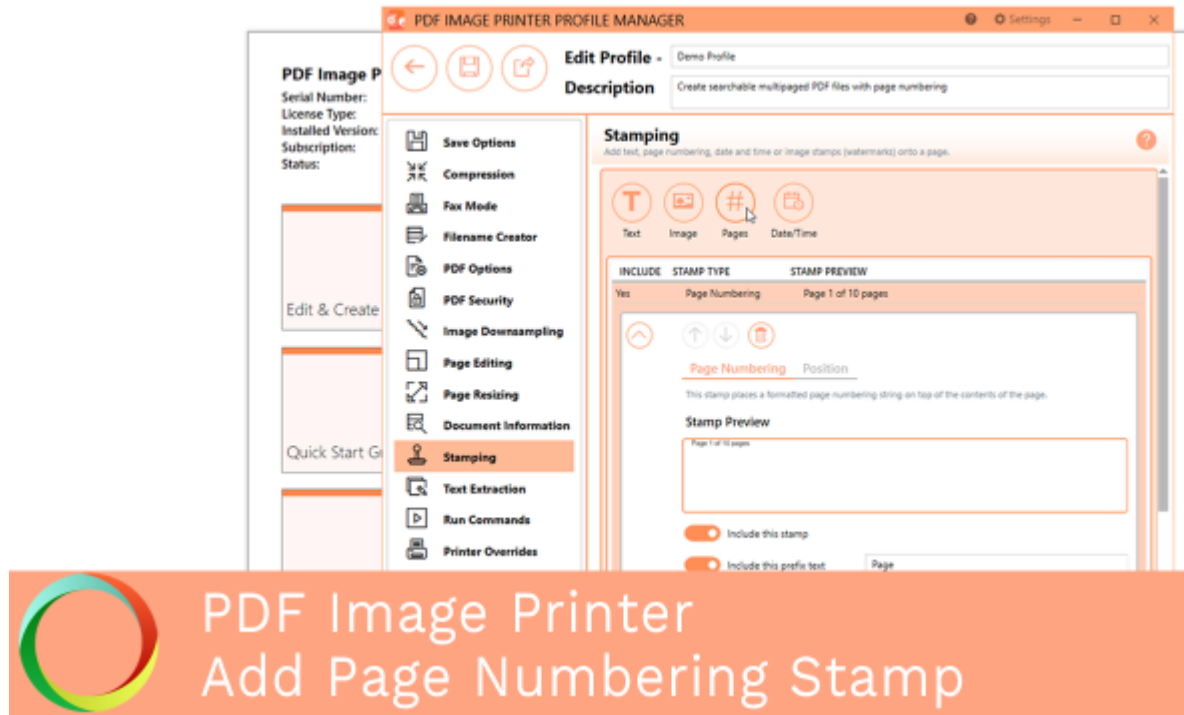
- Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



10. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, every page of the output file will be stamped with the image watermark at 50% transparency across the center of the page.

Page Numbering Stamp

The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Stamping tab** to add page numbering to output files.



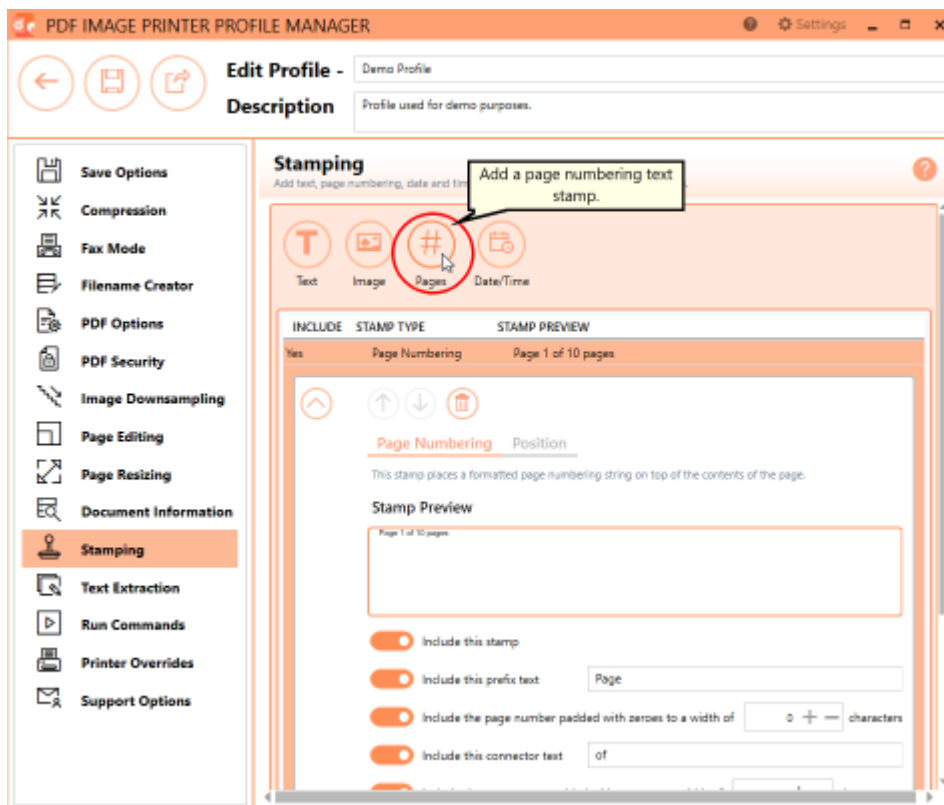
Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.

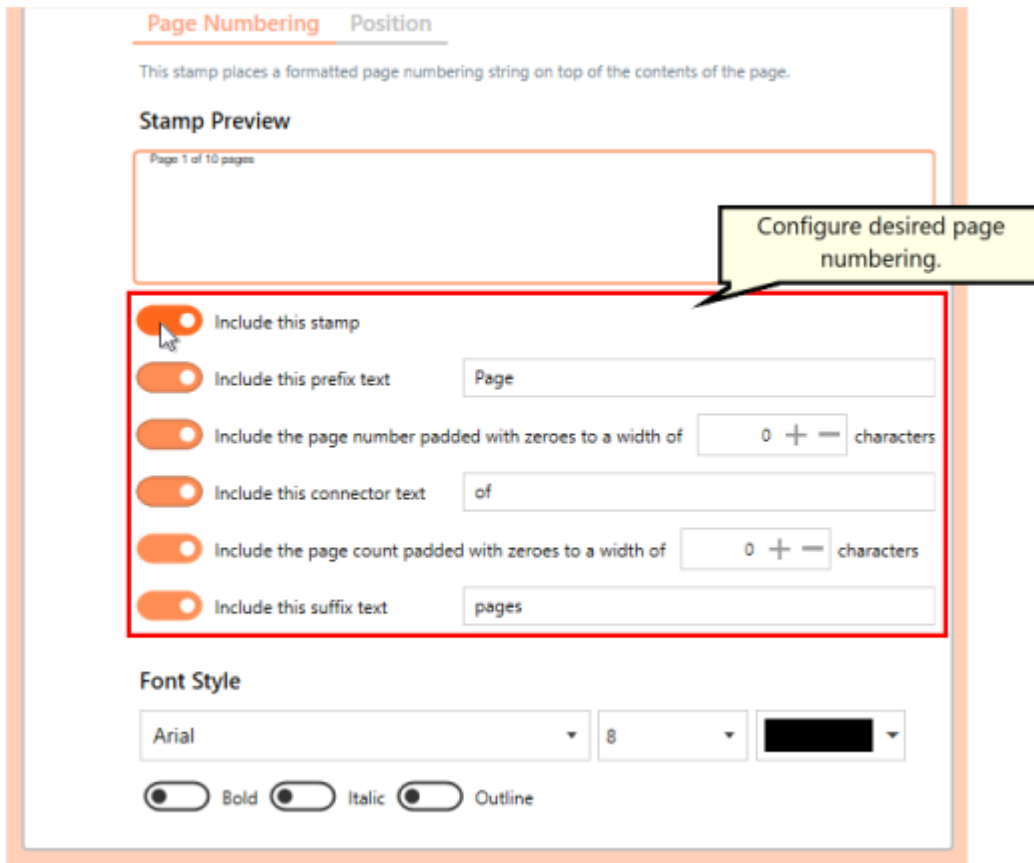


2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Stamping tab**, select **Add a page numbering text stamp**.



6. Use the settings toggles to customize your page numbering stamp:

- Enable/disable *prefix text*
- Enable/disable *specific page number* and increase/decrease the number of padding zeros
- Enable/disable *connector text*
- Enable/disable *total page count* and increase/decrease the number of padding zeros
- Enable/disable *suffix text*



7. You can change the font type, font size, font color, and enable *bold*, *italic* or *outline* font styles.

Page Numbering Position

This stamp places a formatted page numbering string on top of the contents of the page.

Stamp Preview

Page 1 of 10 pages

Include this stamp

Include this prefix text

Include the page number padded with zeroes to a width of characters

Include this connector text

Include the page count padded with zeroes to a width of characters

Include this suffix text

Font Style

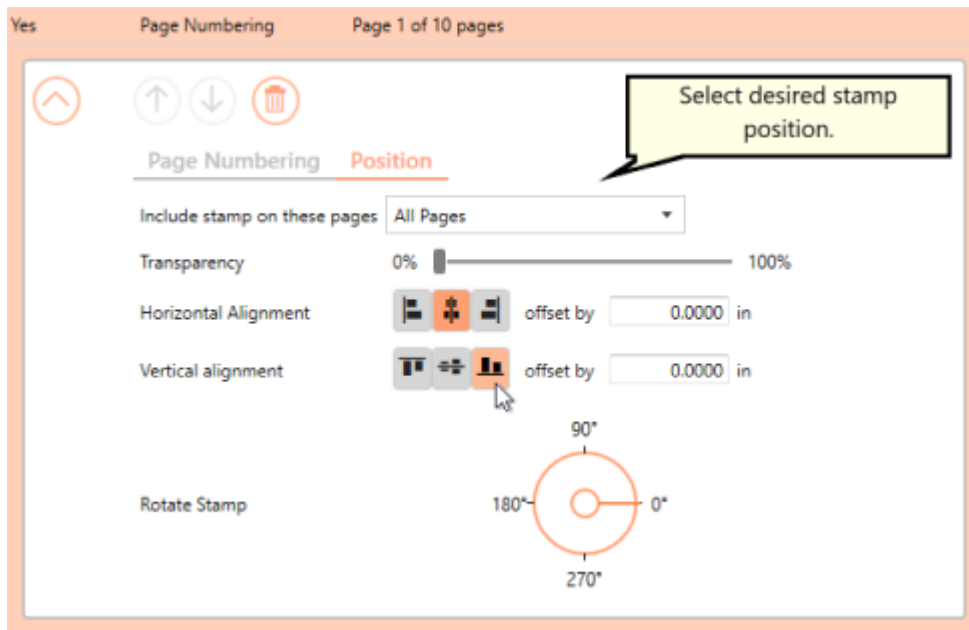
Bold Italic Outline

Select desired font style.

8. Under **Position**:

- you can choose which pages in the output file will be stamped,
- you can adjust the transparency of the stamp,
- you can change the horizontal and vertical alignment of the stamp,
- and you can rotate the stamp.

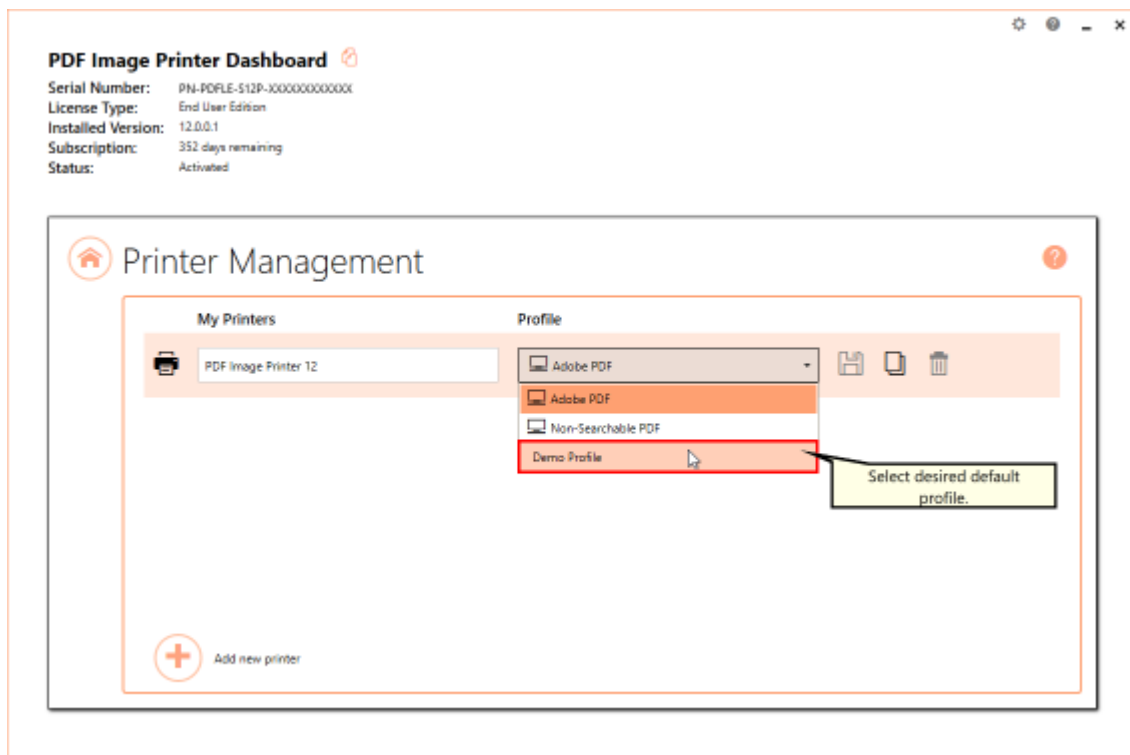
For this example, we will change the vertical alignment to bottom so that the page numbering stamp appear in the footer area.



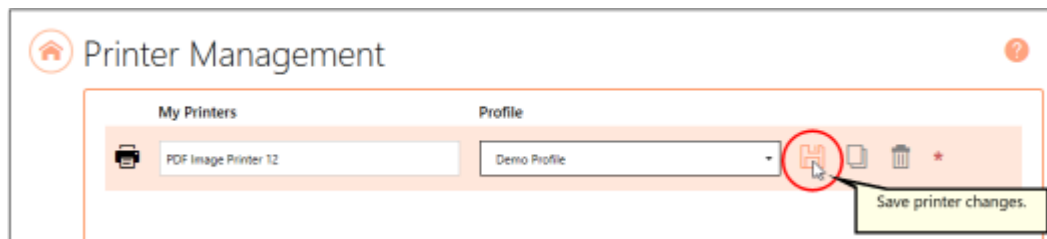
9. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

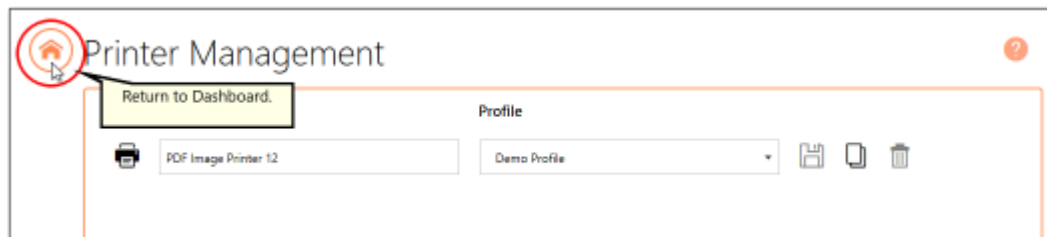
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.

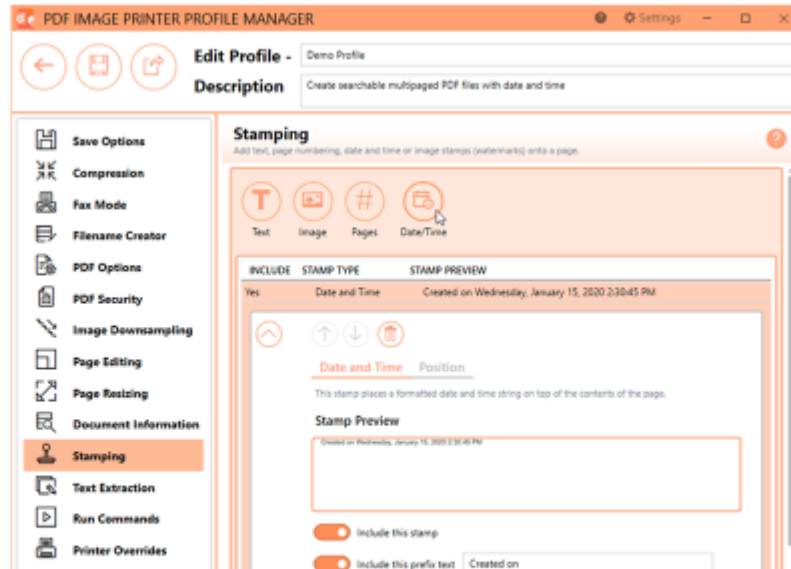


10. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, every page of the output file will be stamped with the page numbering stamp in the bottom center of the page.

If your page has standard 1 inch margins, this stamp will appear in the footer area, but the Stamping tool does not reserve space for the stamp. Therefore, if you have a page with no margins or very small margins, the stamp will be layered over the page content. If you have non-traditional margins and need to reserve space for a stamp in the footer space, please go to the **Page Resizing tab** and [add borders to the page](#).

Date and Time Stamp

The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Stamping tab** to stamp the date and time of conversion on output files.

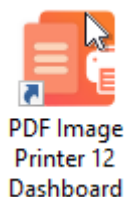


PDF Image Printer
Add Date and Time Stamp

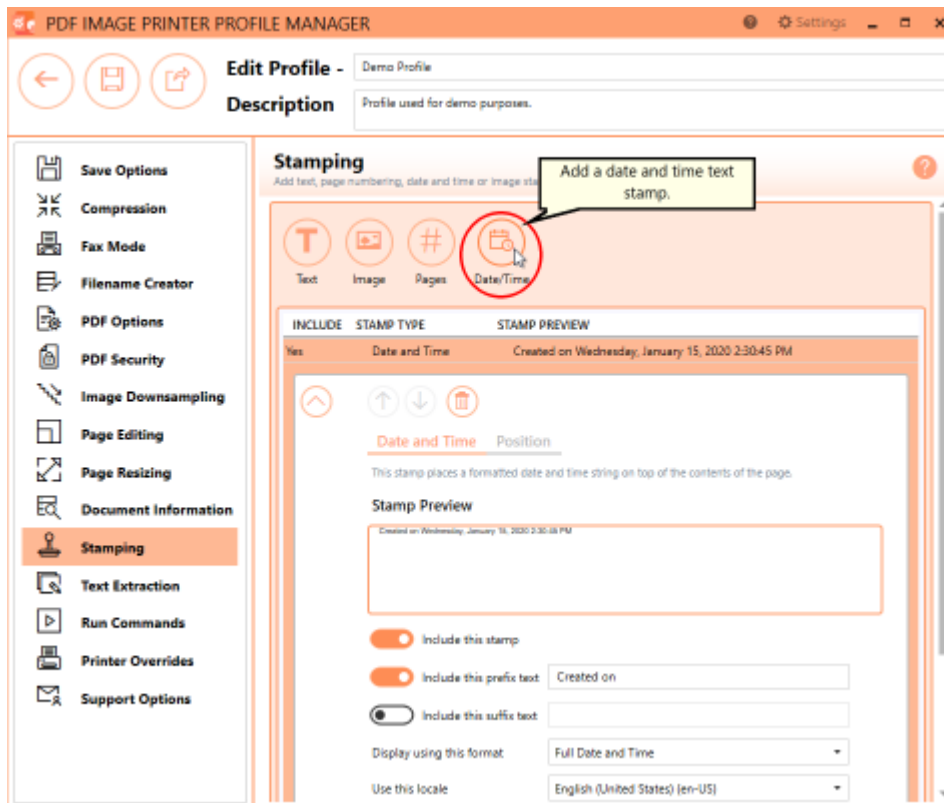
Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Step by Step Instructions

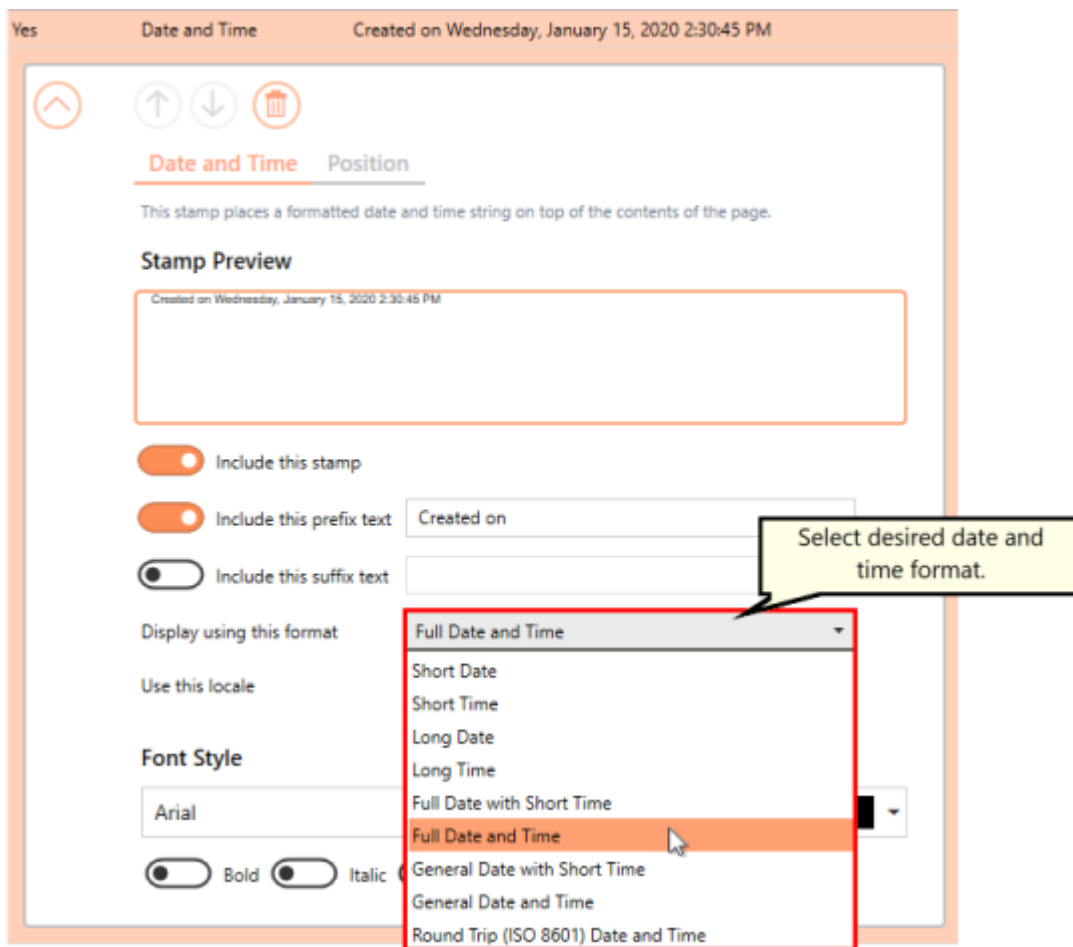
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



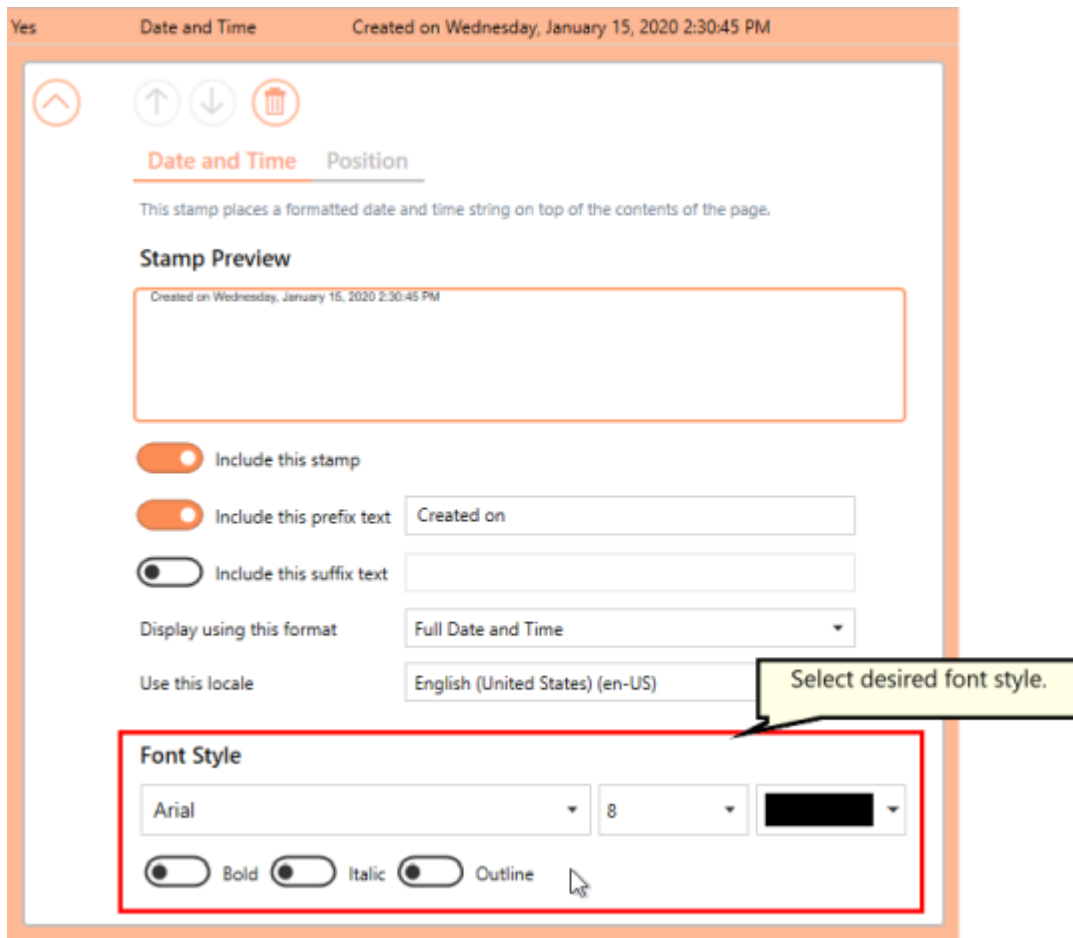
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Stamping tab**, select **Add a date and time text stamp**.



6. Use the settings toggles to customize your date and time text stamp:
 - Enable/disable *prefix text*
 - Enable/disable *suffix text*
7. Select date and time format. By default, the format is set to *Full Date and Time*.



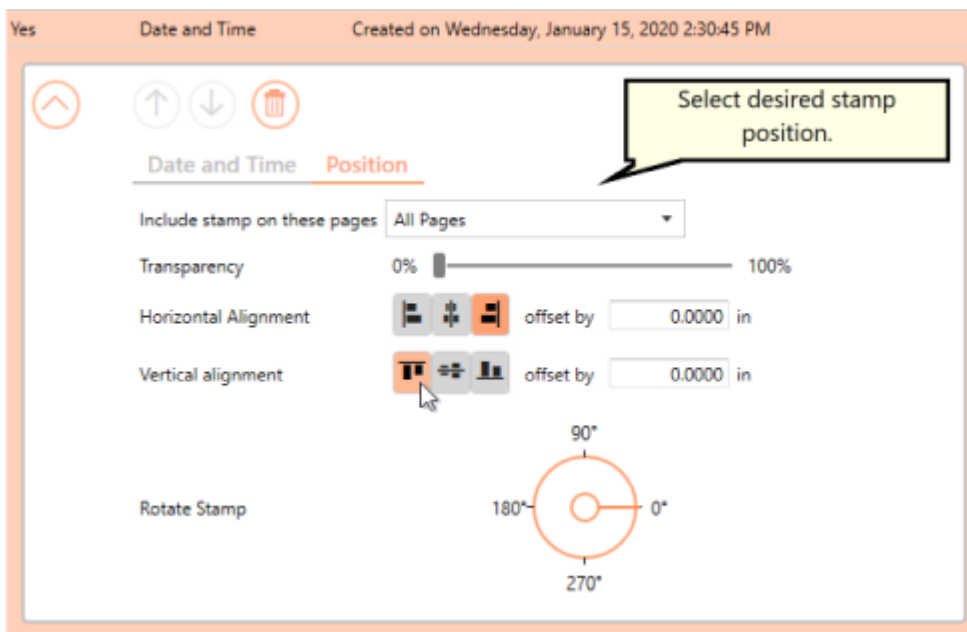
8. You can change the font type, font size, font color, and enable *bold*, *italic* or *outline* font styles.



9. Under **Position**:

- you can choose which pages in the output file will be stamped,
- you can adjust the transparency of the stamp,
- you can change the horizontal and vertical alignment of the stamp,
- and you can rotate the stamp.

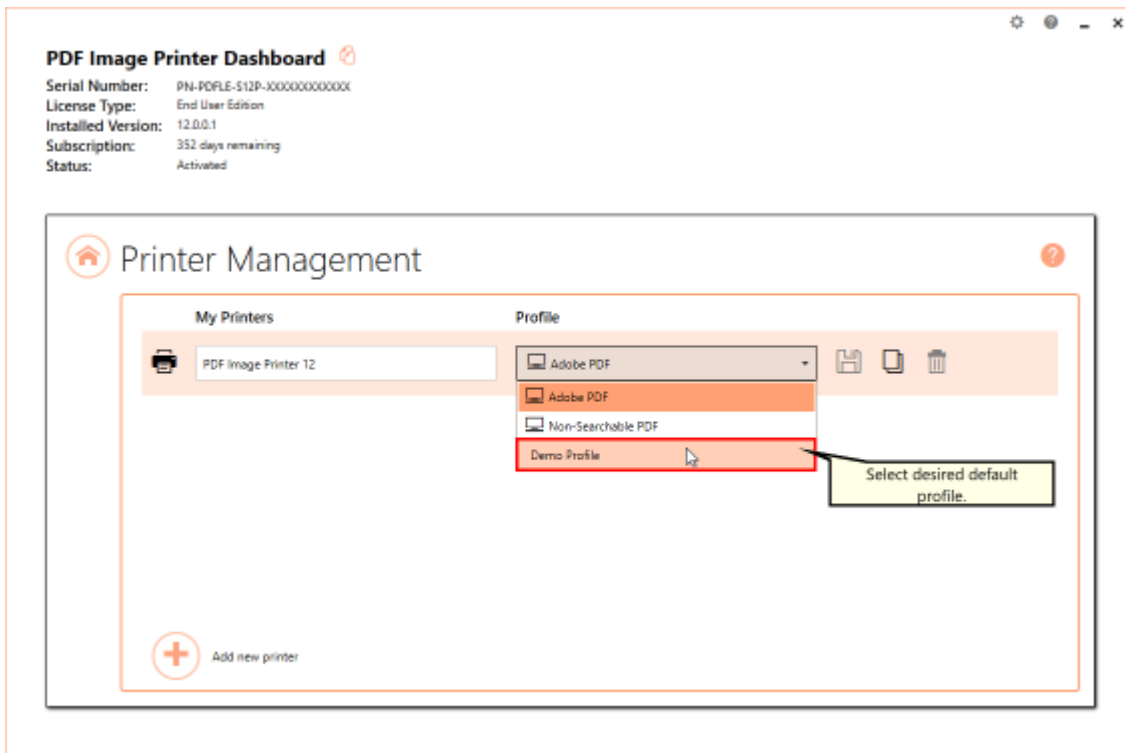
For this example, we will change the horizontal alignment to right and the vertical alignment to top so that the date and time stamp appear in the header area.



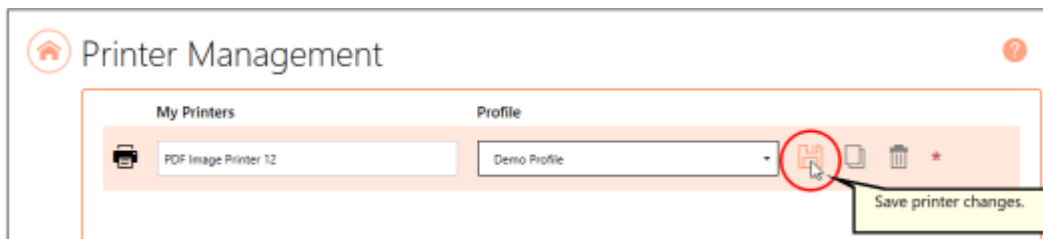
10. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

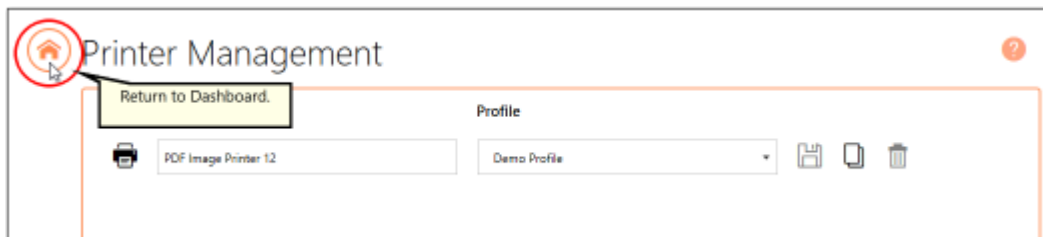
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



11. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, every page of the output file will be stamped with the date and time of conversion in the top right of the page.

If your page has standard 1 inch margins, this stamp will appear in the header area, but the Stamping tool does not reserve space for the stamp. Therefore, if you have a page with no margins or very small margins, the stamp will be layered over the page content. If you have non-traditional margins and need to reserve space for a stamp in the header space, please go to the **Page Resizing tab** and [add borders to the page](#).

Extract Text From the Created File

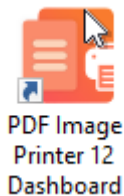
This feature will create a separate text file containing all of the textual elements of your printed document. These text files are often paired with the output files when stored in archival systems to allow searching and retrieval of the files using textual data. By default all of the text extraction files are stored in the same directory with the same base name as the original document. For example, creating a PDF file with a base name of JanuaryMemo.pdf will also create a file JanuaryMemo.txt containing all the text in file.

The text extraction feature extracts as much text as it can from the printed document. This feature will not necessarily produce the same results as Optical Character Recognition (OCR) software. Any text formatting is approximate and may not completely match your original document.

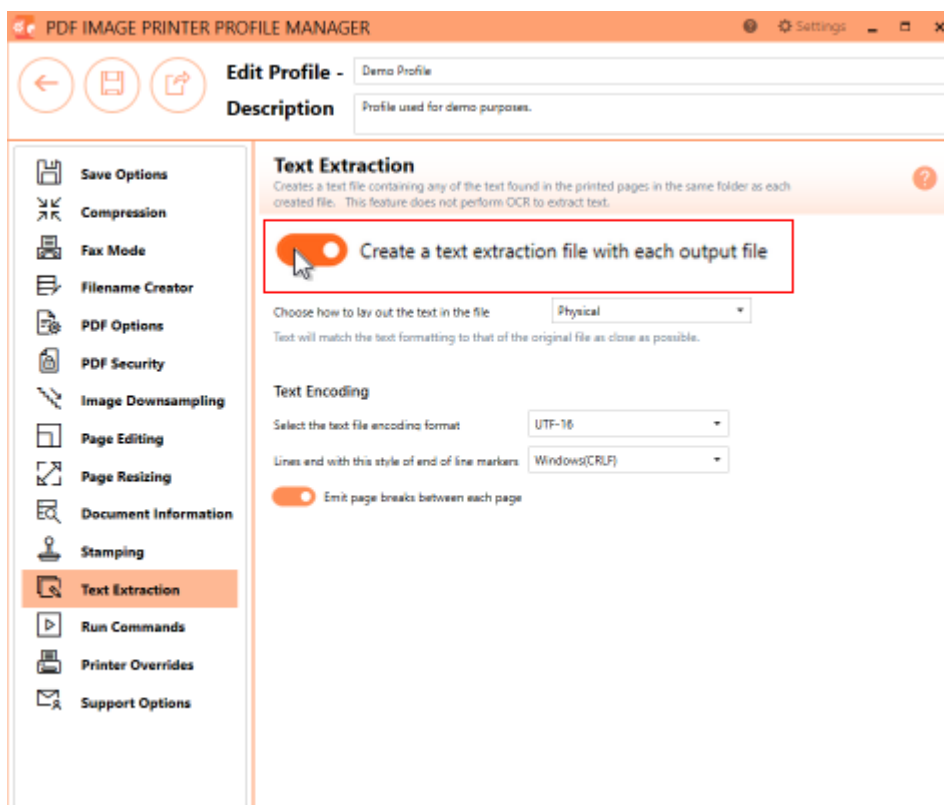
All [text extractions settings](#) are controlled through the profile.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Text Extractions tab**, enable **Create a text extraction file with each output file**.

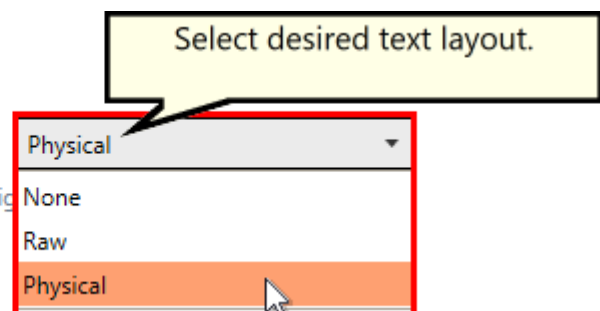


6. Under **Text Layout**, select how to lay out the text in the file. The default layout, *Physical*, will try and match the format of the text in the original file as much as possible.

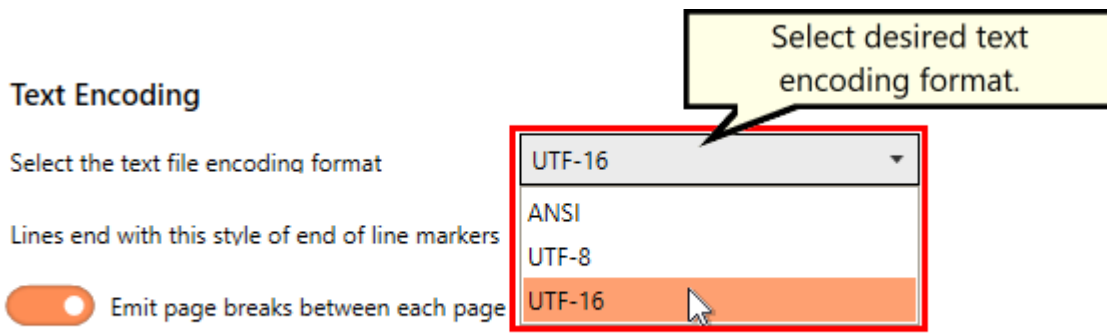
Text Layout

Choose how to lay out the text in the file

Text will match the text formatting to that of the original file as much as possible.



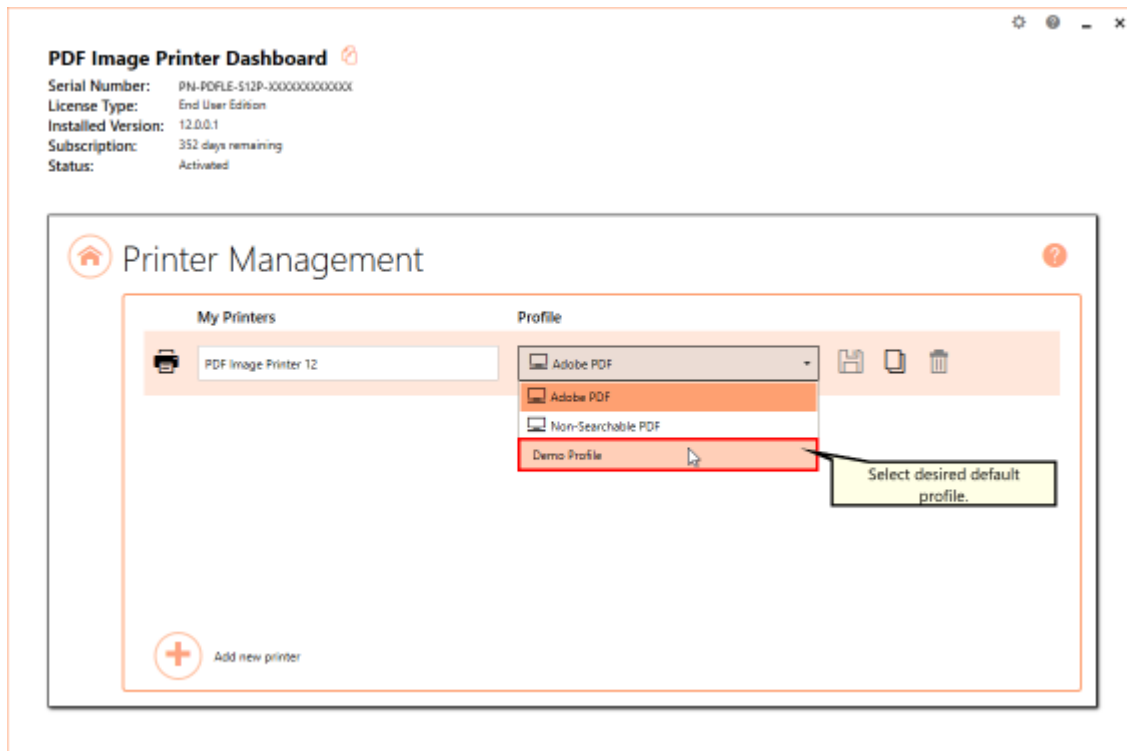
7. Under **Text Encoding**, select your desired text file encoding format.



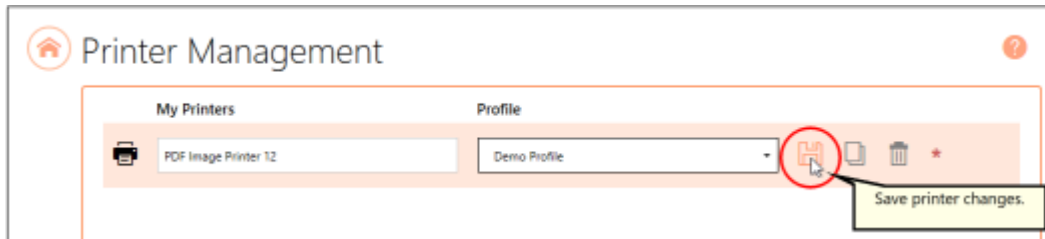
8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

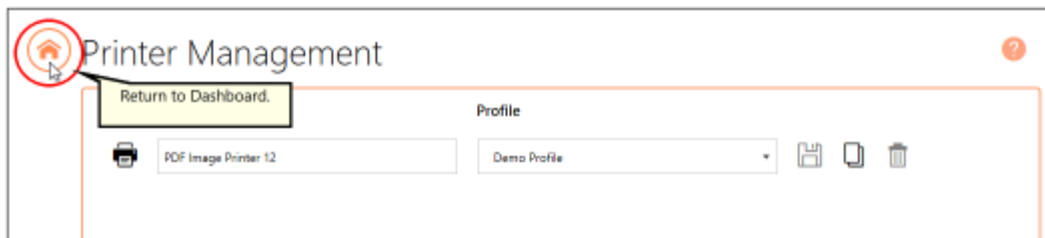
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, you will also create a text file with the textual contents of the original file.

Using the Run Commands

The run commands can be used to run different actions after a successful print and/or a failed print. You can run commands from a batch file (.bat), an executable (.exe) or a command (.com).

Examples of possible run commands include: sending the output file to a document management system, uploading the output file to an FTP server, emailing the user after a failed print, compressing the output file into a zip, or automatically opening a created file.

When a run command is executed by PDF Image Printer, the last parameter is always a path to a text file that contains a list of the file(s) created by the conversion process. This text file can contain zero or more lines, with each line being the full path to a file created by PDF Image Printer. You can then use this text file to operate on the files successful created and the files that failed to convert. The text file is created with UTF-16LE encoding.

All [run command options](#) are controlled through the profile.

Users need to code their own run command files (.bat, .exe. or .com) to meet their specific requirements, but we have provided some common examples:

- [Automatically View the Created File](#)
- [Send Email when File Created](#)
- [Compress Created File into ZIP](#)

Automatically View the Created File

The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Run Commands tab** to automatically open and view created files.

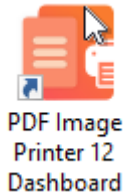
We have provided a bat file, **AutoOpen.bat**, to automatically open a file. It can be found in the **RunCommands** folder of the installation folder. This is usually C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\RunCommands\.

If you enable a conversion profile to run our **AutoOpen.bat** on success, PDF Image Printer will auto open the created file if the profile creates multipaged output, or it will open the first page of the output series when creating serialized output.

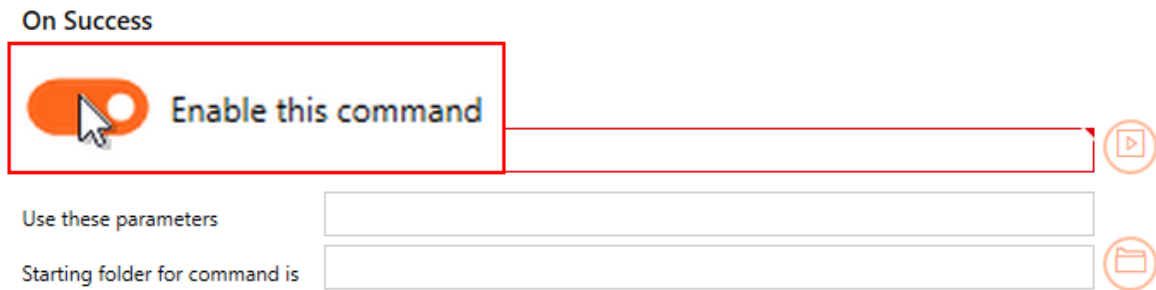
The AutoOpen. batch file performs the same action as when you double click the output file in Windows Explorer to open it. If double-clicking a TIFF file opens in Windows Photos, that is what will happen through the run command.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



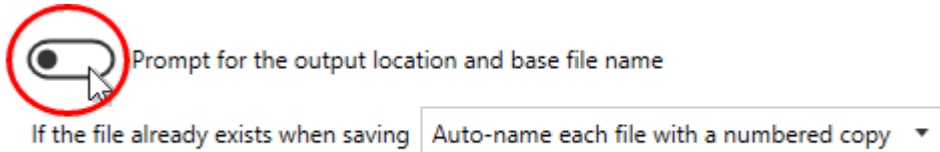
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Run Commands tab**, under *On Success*, enable **Enable this command**.



6. Beside *Run this command*, browse to your desired command or enter the full path and file name of the command. In this case we will use our sample auto open batch file which is **C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\RunCommands\AutoOpen.bat**.
7. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

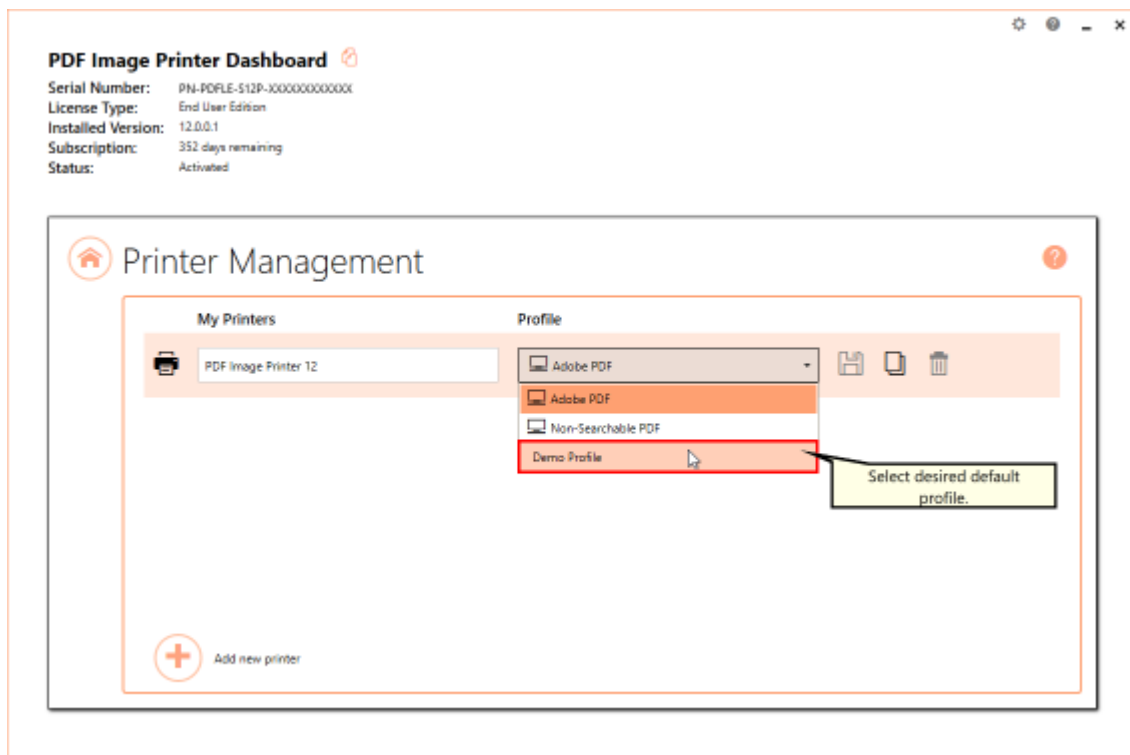
If you choose to enable run commands, you may also want to [disable prompting by the Save As dialog](#) each time you print.

- i. To turn off prompting by the Save As dialog, disable **Prompt for the output location and base file name**.

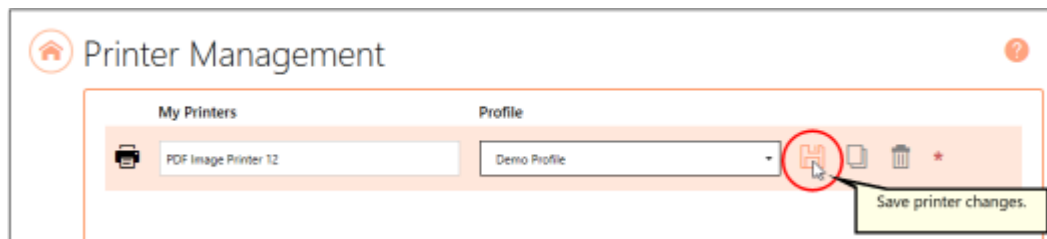


If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

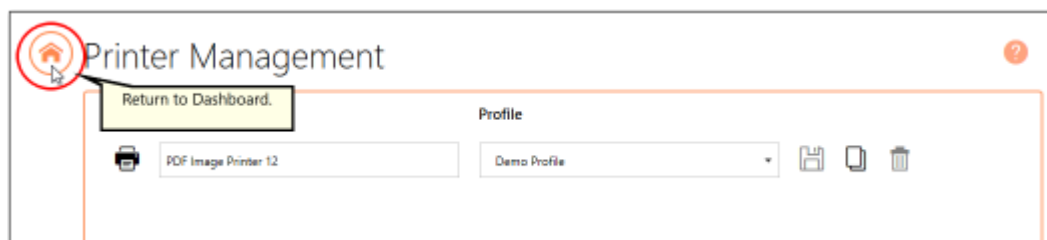
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



8. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the output file automatically open after a successful print.

Send Email when File Created

The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Run Commands tab** to automatically send yourself an email after both a successful and failed print.

Using the Built-In SMTP Email Utility

The included email utility, **PNSMTPSend.exe**, uses the **SMTP protocol** to create and send an email to the specified recipients. **SMTP** stands for *Simple Mail Transfer Protocol*, which is a protocol for sending e-mail messages. This option does not require an email client to be installed but it does require the following information from your SMTP or IT administrator.

- the SMTP host server and port that you use to send email
- credentials for authentication, if required by the SMTP server
- the email address of the sender

There are two parts to the settings for this utility - the SMTP settings in the utility configuration file, and command line arguments passed down via the [Run Commands parameters](#) in your conversion profiles.

The utility is located in the **RunCommands** folder in your PDF Image Printer install folder. This is usually C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\RunCommands\.

The configuration file, **PNSMTPSend.exe.config**, located in the same folder as the utility, defines and uses these SMTP protocol settings.

PNSMTPSend.exe Configuration Settings	
SMTPUserName	The user email address that has permissions to send SMTP email on the server. This user name is used to create credentials when SMTPUseDefaultCredentials is set to <i>true</i> .
SMTPPassword	The password for the user email address. This password is used to create credentials when SMTPUseDefaultCredentials is set to <i>true</i> .
SMTPServerName	The mail server.
SMTPPort	The port used for SMTP transactions on the SMTP host. The default value is 25.
SMTPSendTimeout	Set how long to try and send the email, in milliseconds. Default is 2 minutes, 120,000ms.

PNSMTPSend.exe Configuration Settings

SMTPUseDefaultCredentials	Default is <i>false</i> to create credentials from SMTPUserName and SMTPPassword. Credentials are necessary if the server requires the client to authenticate before it will send email on the client's behalf. Set to <i>true</i> to use default credentials to send the email instead.
SMTPUseSSL	Set to <i>true</i> to Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) to encrypt the connection.
SMTPSendMailDelay	Sets a delay between sending emails to multiple recipients.
SMTPToRecipients	The email addresses to send the email to. Multiple emails can be separated with a comma (,) or a semi-colon (;).
SMTPFromEmailAddress	The from address for the email.

The utility arguments allow custom subject line, message text and optionally attaching the created files.

PNSMTPSend.exe Command Line Arguments

"subject:subject line"	The text to put on the subject line of the email. If there are spaces in your subject, use quotes around the argument.
"message:body text"	The message body to include in the email. This is a simple text string. If there are spaces in your subject, use quotes around the argument.
clean	Optional Deletes any created output files at the end after sending the email.
list	Optional Lists the files in the email, but does not attach them to the message. Default behavior is to attach any files from the output files list as well as list them in the email body.

PNSMTPSend.exe Command Line Arguments

<path to file list>	Path to the list of files to attach to the email message. This must be the last argument on the command line. It is automatically passed as the last argument via the Run command.
---------------------	--

Sample Usage For Run Commands

Send an email message:

```
PNSMTPSend.exe "subject:Convert Success" "message:Files successfully converted"
```

Send an email message on success but only list the file output location":

```
PNSMTPSend.exe "subject:Convert Success" "message:Files successfully converted"
```

Send an email message with attached files and delete the files when finished:

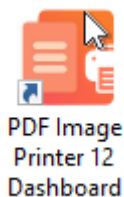
```
PNSMTPSend.exe "subject:Convert Success" "message:File Conversion Status " cle
```

Send an email message but don't attach the files, good for failure notifications:

```
PNSMTPSend.exe "subject:Convert Failed" "message:There were errors with the co
```

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Run Commands tab**, under *On Success*, enable **Enable this command**.

On Success

 **Enable this command**

Use these parameters

Starting folder for command is

6. Beside *Run this command*, enter the full path and file name of the command. In this case we will use our example C# command file called **PNSMTPSend.exe**.


Command Preview "C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\RunCommands\PNSMTPSend.exe" "subject:Converted to PDF" "message:See attached files." "pnf-fe5c4300906e4e069d69a04176c78736.txt"

Run this command

Use these parameters Using the Built-In SMTP Email Utility at the top of this topic.

8. On the **Run Commands tab**, under *On Failure*, enable **Enable this command**.

On Failure


 **Enable this command**

Use these parameters

Starting folder for command is

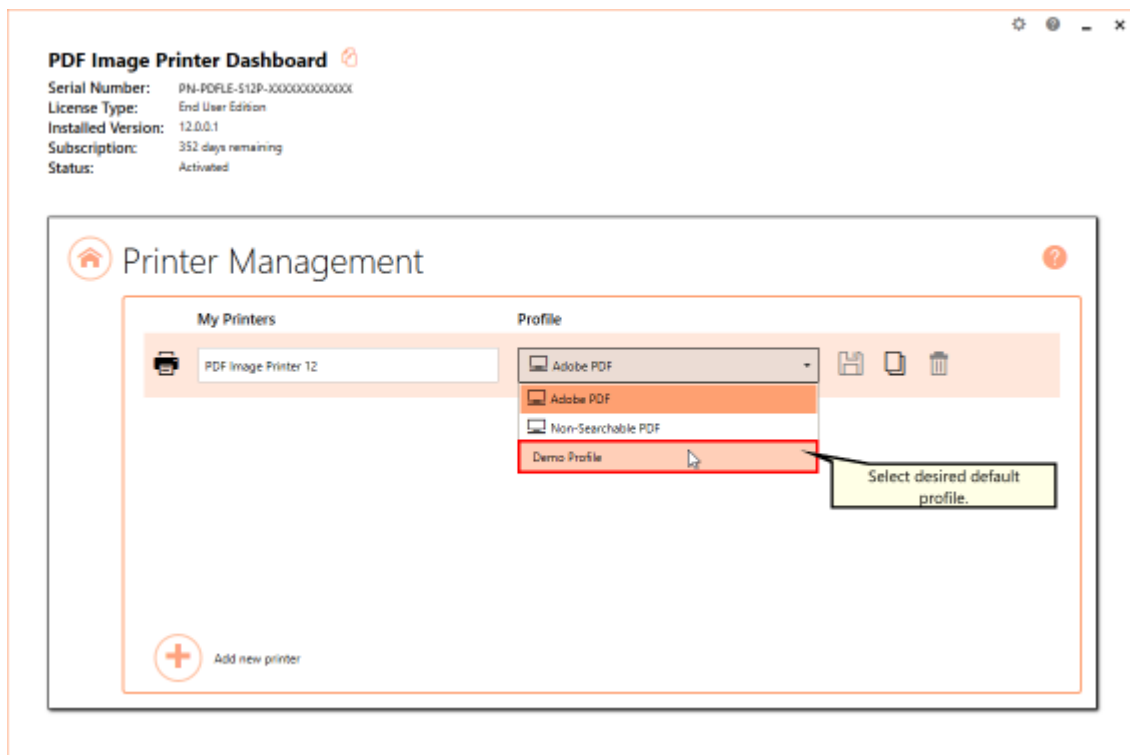
9. Beside *Run this command*, enter the full path and file name of the command. Again we will use our example C# command file called **SendEmail.com** which is located in the PDF Image Printer's setup folder.

10. On the **Run Commands tab**, under *On Failure*, enable **Enable this command**.

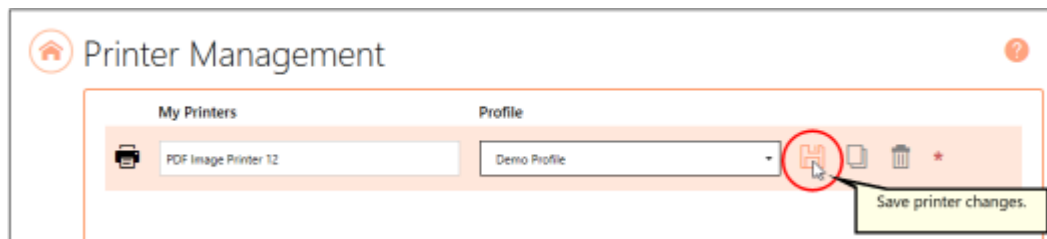
Command Preview	"C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\RunCommands\PNSMTPSend.exe" "subject:Conversion Failed" "message:Conversion process failed." list	
Run this command	<input type="text" value="C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\RunCommands\PNSMTPSend.exe"/>	
Use these parameters	<input 'auto-name="" 'if="" a="" already="" and="" base="" copy'."="" dropdown="" each="" exists="" file="" for="" location="" menu="" name'="" numbered="" output="" prompt="" saving'="" set="" the="" to="" type="text" value='"subject:Conversion Failed" "message:Conversion process failed." list"/></td></tr><tr><td>Starting folder for command is</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td></td></tr></table></div><div><p>11. Click Save-Back, and close Profile Manager.</p></div><div><p>If you choose to enable run commands, you may also want to disable prompting by the Save As dialog each time you print.</p></div><div>i. To turn off prompting by the Save As dialog, disable Prompt for the output location and base file name.</div><div> <p>The image shows a settings dialog with a toggle switch for "Prompt for the output location and base file name" which is currently turned off. Below it, there is a dropdown menu for "If the file already exists when saving" with the selected option being "Auto-name each file with a numbered copy".</p>	

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

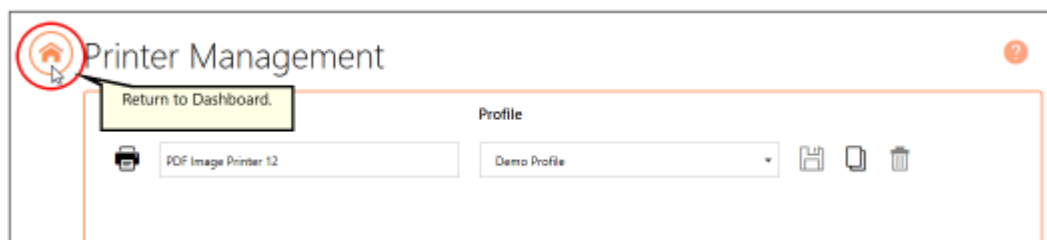
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



12. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, you will receive an email notifying you if the print is a success or failure.

Compress Created File into ZIP

The steps below demonstrate how to use the **Run Commands tab** to automatically compress created files into a ZIP file.

Using the Built-In Compression Utility

A compression utility, **PNCompressToZip.exe**, that creates a zip file has been provided in the **RunCommands** folder in your PDF Image Printer install folder. This is usually C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\RunCommands\.

PNCompressToZip.exe Command Line Arguments

path:zip path	Optional argument. Pass in the path in which to create the zip file; use quotes if there are spaces in the path. If the directory path doesn't exist, it is created. Do not enter a trailing backslash on the path name. If this argument is not provided, the zip file is created in the same location as the output files.
name: zip name	Optional argument. Pass in the base name to use for the zip file; use quotes if there are spaces in the name. If this argument is not provided, the zip file name will match the name of the first output file created. with the .zip extension added.
create add update	Optional arguments. When not used, the default is to create a new zip file, deleting any existing zip file of the same name. <i>create</i> - creates a new zip file, replaces any existing zip file <i>add</i> - adds files as new entries if the zip already exists, zip file can have duplicate entries with the same name <i>update</i> - adds files as new entries, matching entries, based on the file name, are replaced.
clean	Optional

PNCompressToZip.exe Command Line Arguments

	Deletes the files at the end if the zip file is successfully created or updated.
<path to file list>	Path to the list of files to add into the zip file. This must be the last argument on the command line. It is automatically passed as the last argument via the Run command.

Sample Usage for Run Commands

Create a zip file in the same location as the output folder, using the base name of the created files, and then delete the files:

```
PNCompressToZip.exe clean
```

Create a zip file in a different folder with the same name as the output files:

```
PNCompressToZip.exe "path:C:\Zipped Output"
```

Create a zip file in a different folder with a custom name and keep adding files to the zip:

```
PNCompressToZip.exe "path:C:\Zipped Output" "name:ConvertedFiles.zip" add
```

Using 7-Zip

Another option is the freeware utility, **7-Zip** and its command line options. Any command line zip tool that can take a list of files as a text file to compress should work as well.

A batch file, **7ZipCompress.bat** has been provided with basic settings. This batch file is located in the **RunCommands** folder in your PDF Image Printer install folder.

The batch file is listed below showing the arguments and parameters used. When using the batch file, you only need to specify the full output path and file name (**%1**) for the zip file as a parameter. The list of files to compress (**%2**) is automatically appended as the last argument for all run commands.

Note that the list of files created by the printer driver is UTF-16LE encoded and this argument needs to be set for 7zip to read the file.

```
"%programfiles%\7-Zip\7z.exe" a -tzip "%1" -scsUTF-16LE @"%2"
```

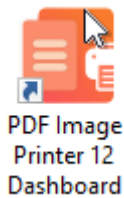
A second batch file, **7ZipCompressAutoName.bat**, is also provided that will use the path and base name of the first file in the list of created files as

basis for the zip file name and location. For this batch file you do not need to provide any arguments.

If your installed location for 7-Zip is different, you may need to edit the batch files accordingly.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.





2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Run Commands tab**, under *On Success*, enable **Enable this command**.

On Success

The screenshot shows a user interface for configuring a command. Under the heading "On Success", there is a red-bordered box containing a toggle switch labeled "Enable this command" with a mouse cursor over it. To the right of this box is a play button icon. Below the box are two input fields: "Use these parameters" and "Starting folder for command is", each followed by a folder icon.

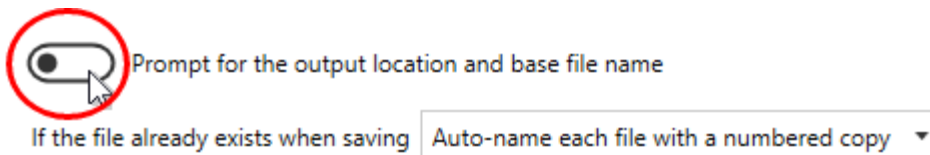
6. Beside *Run this command*, enter the full path and file name of the command. In this case we will use our provided utility, **PNCompressToZip.exe**, which is located in the **RunCommands** folder in your install folder. A complete parameter list is described [above](#).

Command Preview	<code>"C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\RunCommands\PNCompressToZip.exe" "path:C:\Zipped Output" "pnf-f8c017c71b214624b860195b89a8d9a2.txt"</code>	
Run this command	<input type="text" value="C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\RunCommands\PNCompressToZip.exe"/>	
Use these parameters	<input "c:\output\compress.zip""="" type="text" value='"path:C:\Zipped Output""/></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Starting folder for command is</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td></td> </tr> </table> </div> <div> <p>7. Alternatively, if you wish to use 7-Zip, you need to provide the full path and file name to the zip file as the parameter to the provided 7ZipCompress.bat utility. If you use the 7ZipCompressAutoName.bat instead, you do not need to provide any parameters. An explanation of these batch zip utilities is included above.</p> </div> <div> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Command Preview</td> <td colspan="2"><code>"C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\RunCommands\7ZipCompress.bat" "C:\Output\compress.zip" "pnf-d08c75da187e4d89be3908a35ef56c40.txt"</code></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Run this command</td> <td><input type="text" value="C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\RunCommands\7ZipCompress.bat"/></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Use these parameters</td> <td><input type="text" value='/>	
Starting folder for command is	<input type="text"/>	

8. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

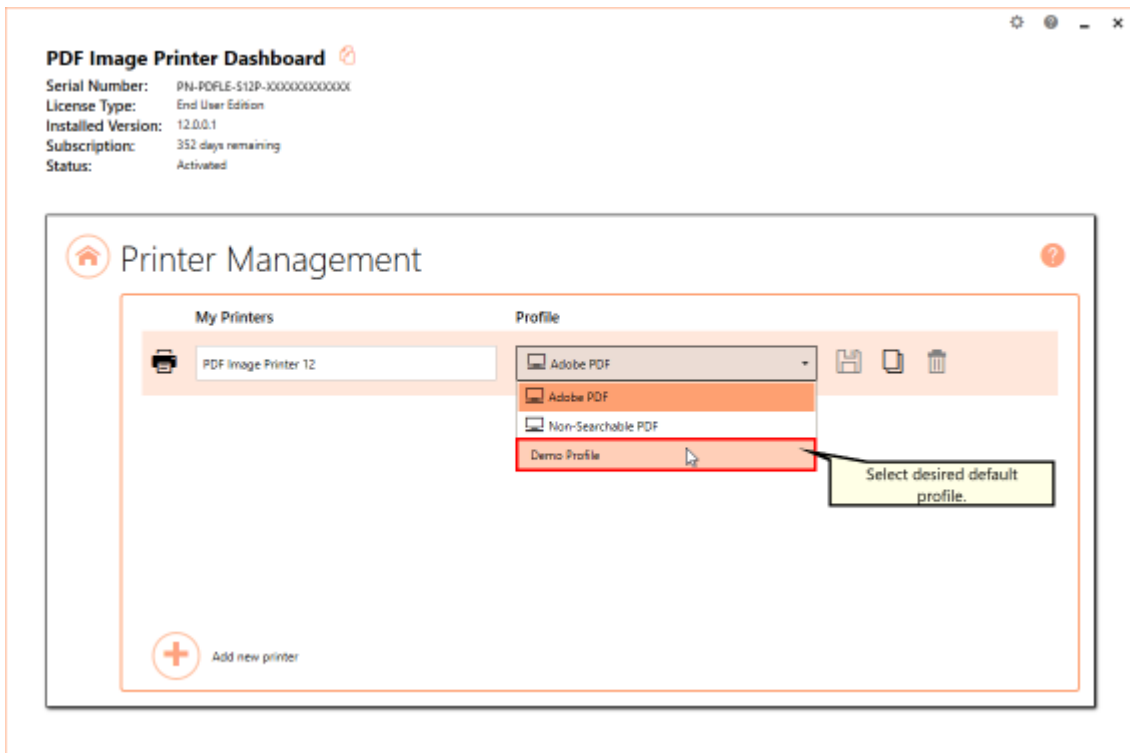
If you choose to enable run commands, you may also want to [disable prompting by the Save As dialog](#) each time you print.

- i. To turn off prompting by the Save As dialog, disable **Prompt for the output location and base file name**.

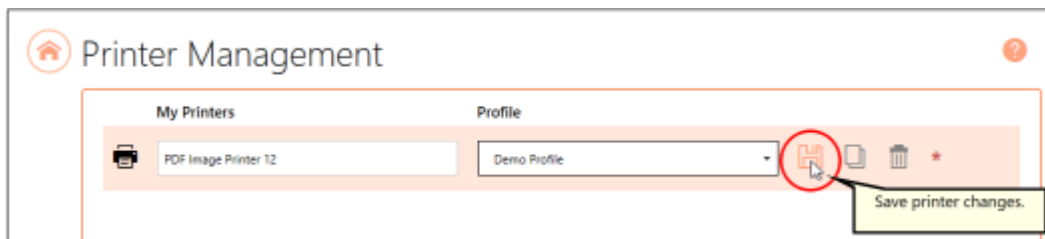


If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

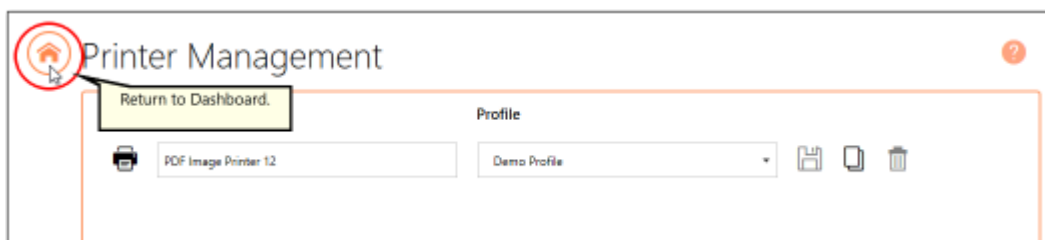
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



9. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the output file will automatically be compressed into a ZIP file at the desired location.

Working with Large Paper Size

Large paper sizes are commonly needed when CAD (computer aided design) software is being used. This type of software is often used by engineers and architects when making large scale drawings. Some applications require that you create custom forms, or paper sizes, in order to print to a particular paper size.

There are two ways to have PDF Image Printer use a larger paper size:

- [Adding a Custom Paper Form](#)
- [Configuring PDF Image Printer to use a Custom Paper Size](#)

A good example of a situation where users would need to configure PDF Image Printer to use a custom paper size is if they are printing oil well logs and therefore need to [print a long page as one continuous page](#).

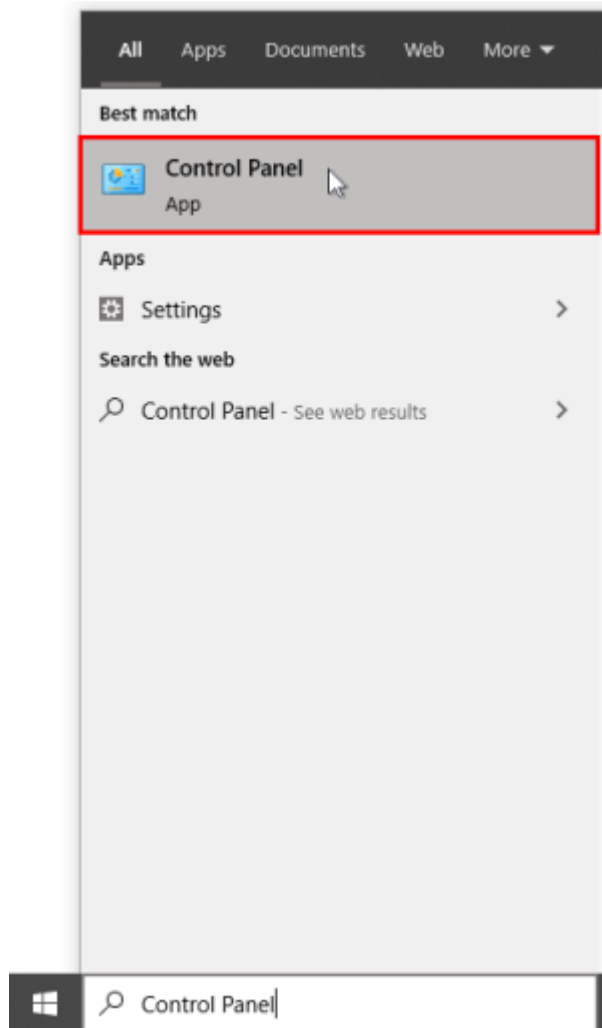
Add a Custom Paper Form

The following steps outline how to create a custom paper size or form and use it in your application. You will need to close your application before doing these steps.

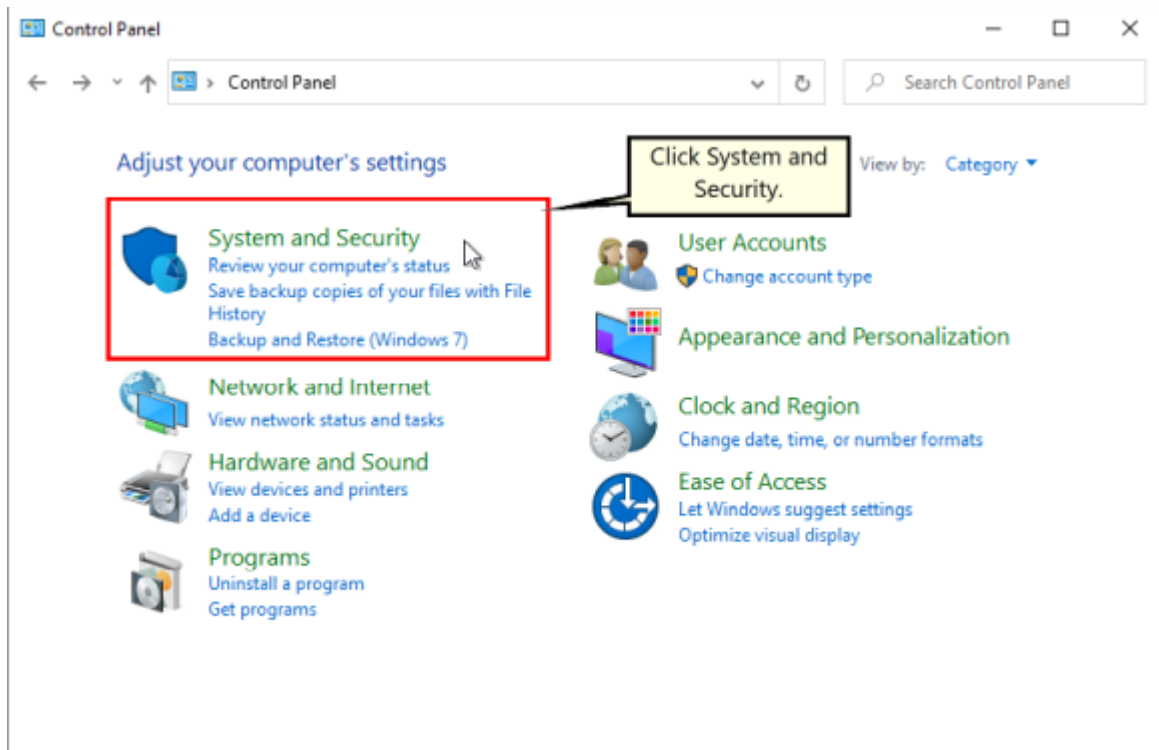
Note: You may require administrative permissions to add custom paper sizes.

▼ **Adding custom paper sizes to Windows 10, Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2019**

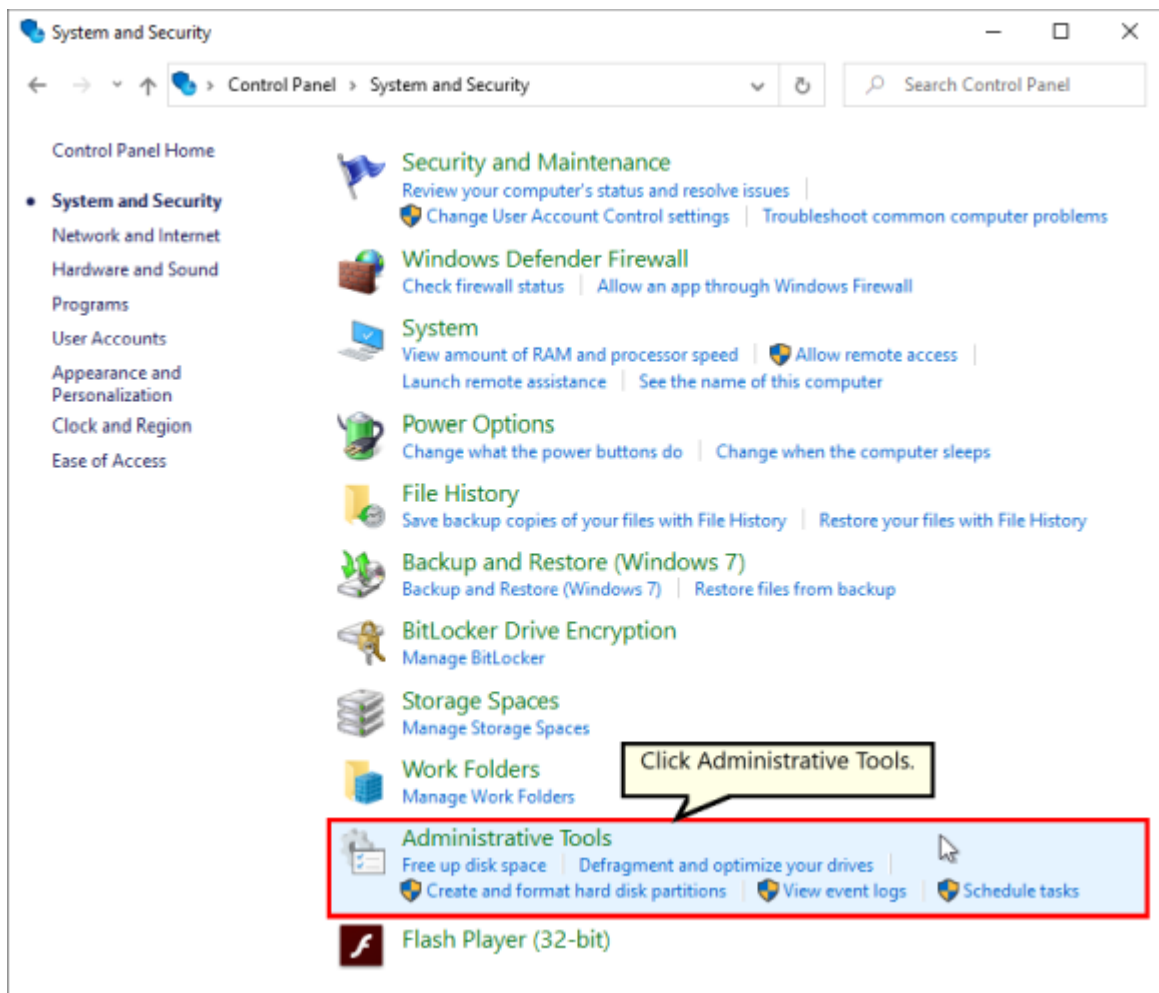
1. Close any open applications.
2. Go to **Start** and search for "Control Panel" to open **Control Panel** applet.



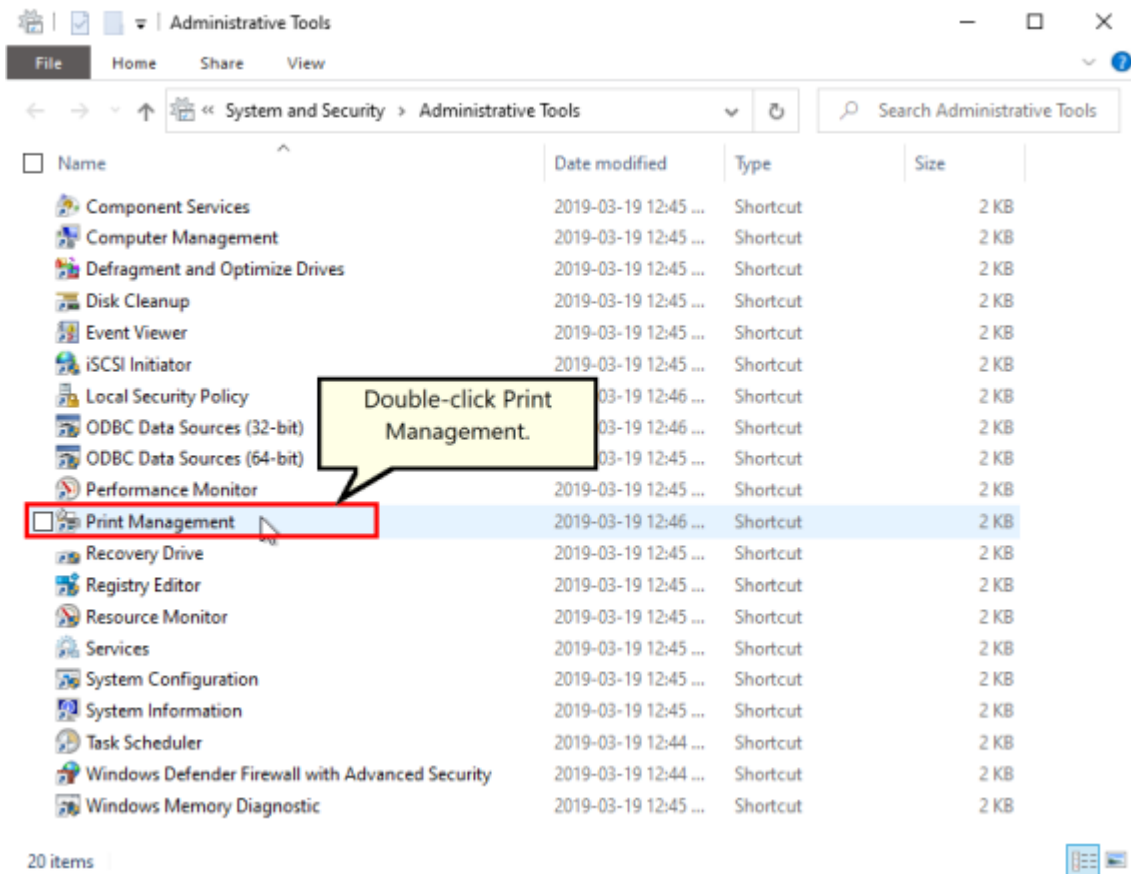
3. Click **System and Security**.



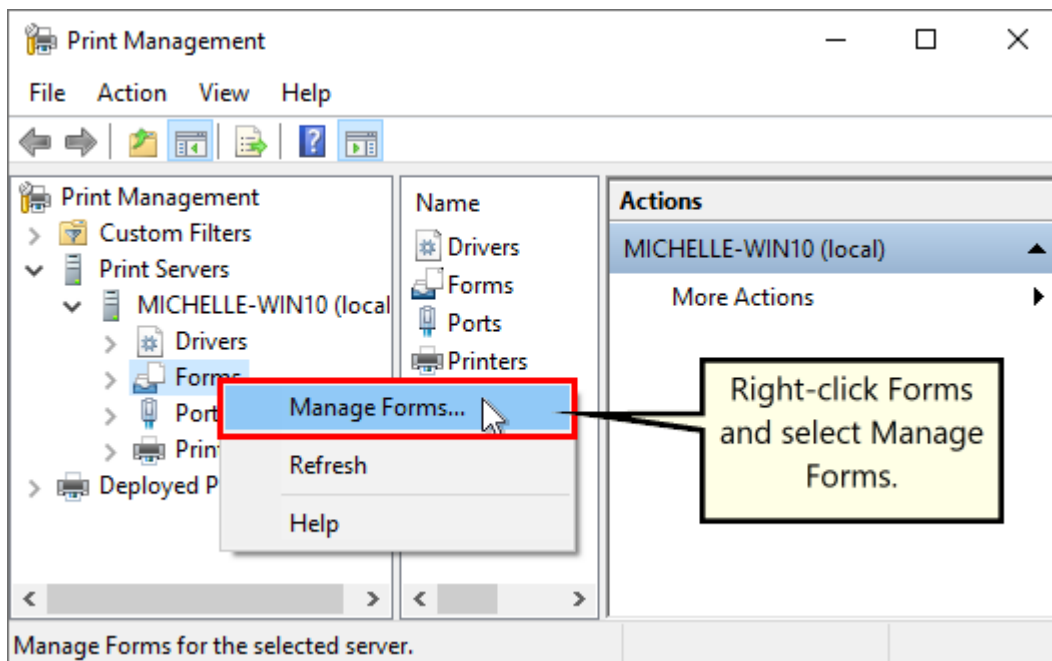
4. Click **Administrative Tools**.



5. Double-click **Printer Management**.

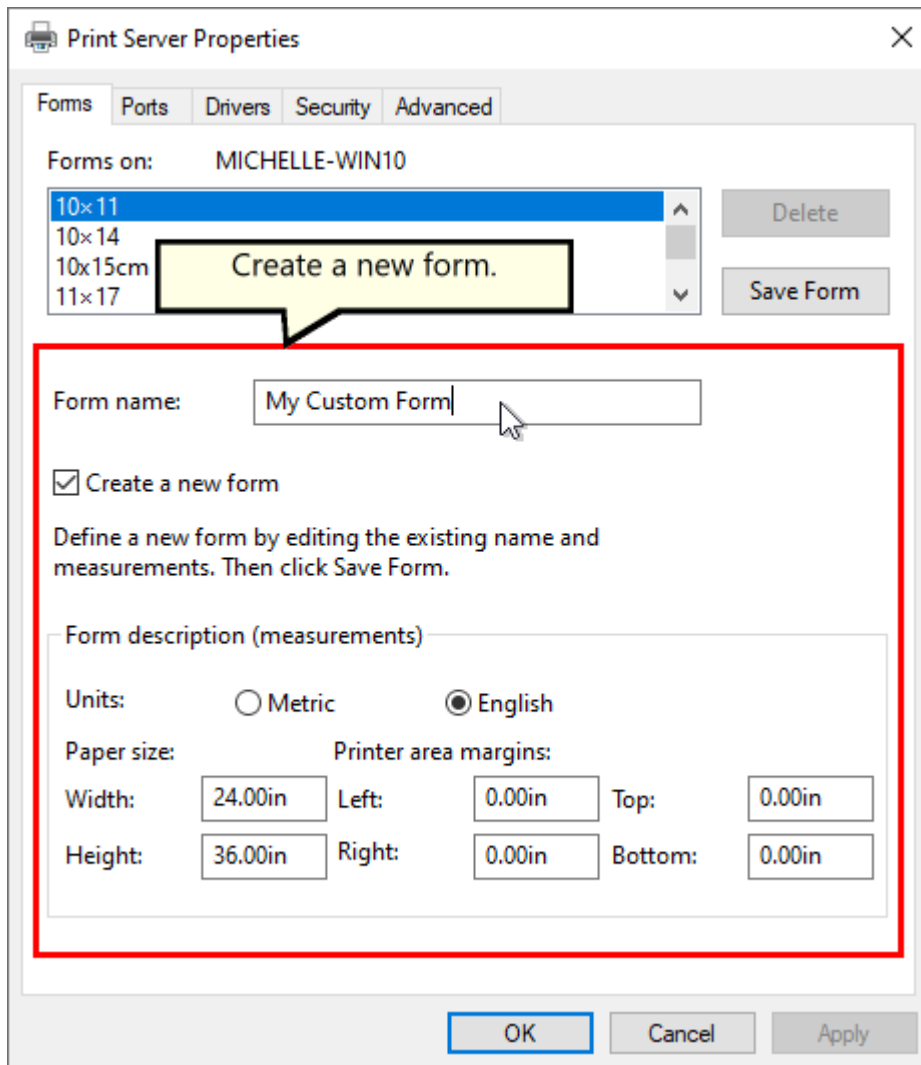


6. Select **Print Servers** and then select the name of your computer (ie. Server1).
7. Right-click **Forms** and select **Manage Forms...**



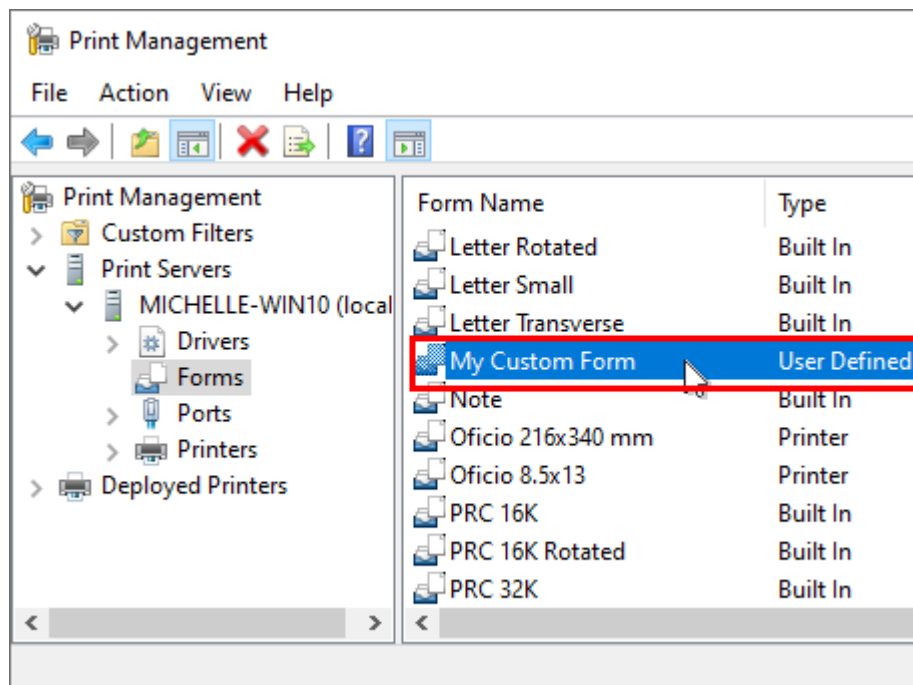
8. Check "Create a new form".

- a. Enter a descriptive name in the "Form name:" field (e.g. "30 x 42" or "36 x 48")
- b. Set the measurement units of "Metric" or "English"
- c. Enter the desired Width and Height for your paper size. **NOTE:** Always make the Width less than the Height (e.g. Width 30, Height 42) as you can always choose Landscape orientation later.



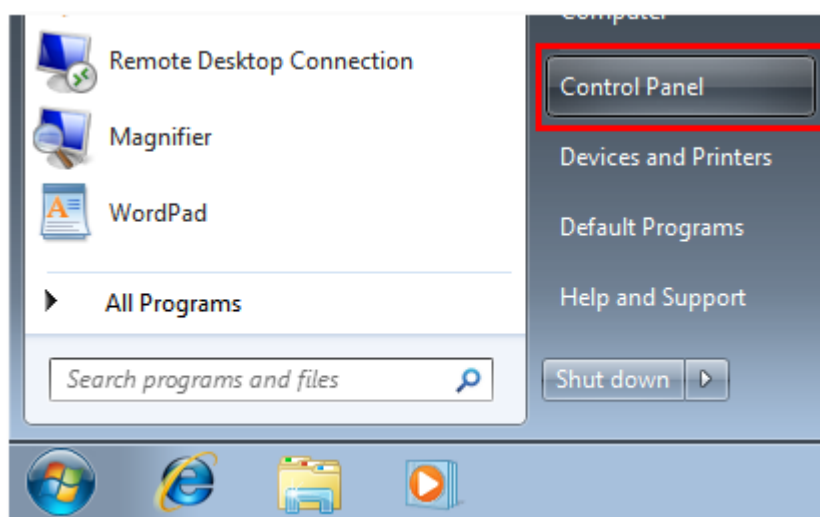
9. Click **Save Form**, and then click **OK** to close the window.

10. You can now use your new computer paper size in your application, or as a paper size on PDF Image Printer's Profile Manager [Printer Overrides tab](#).

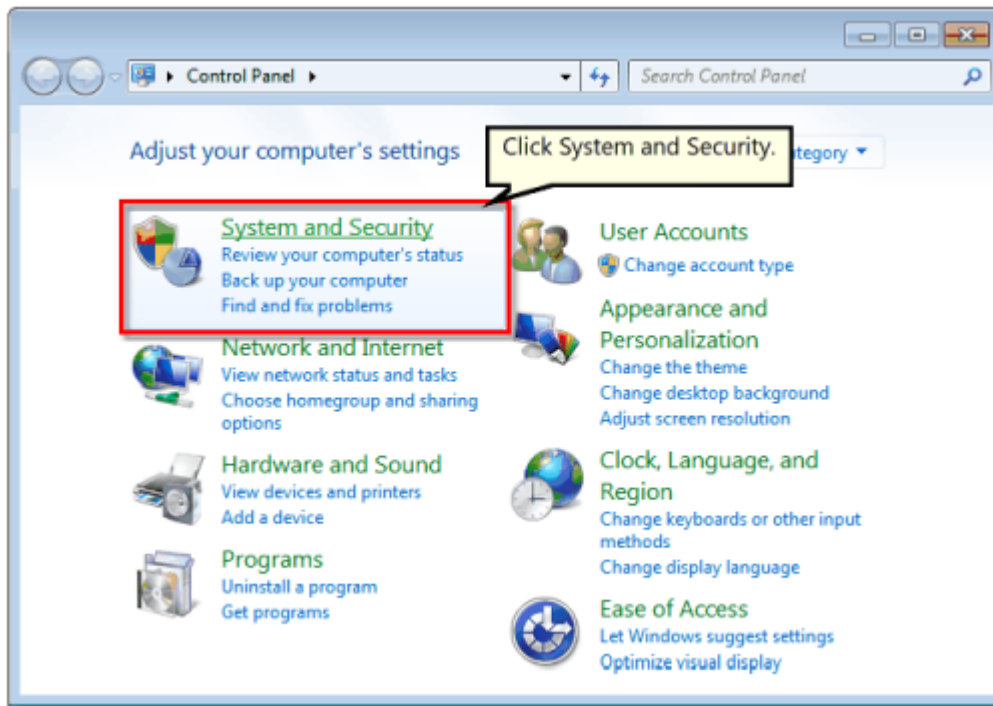


▼ Adding custom paper sizes to Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2

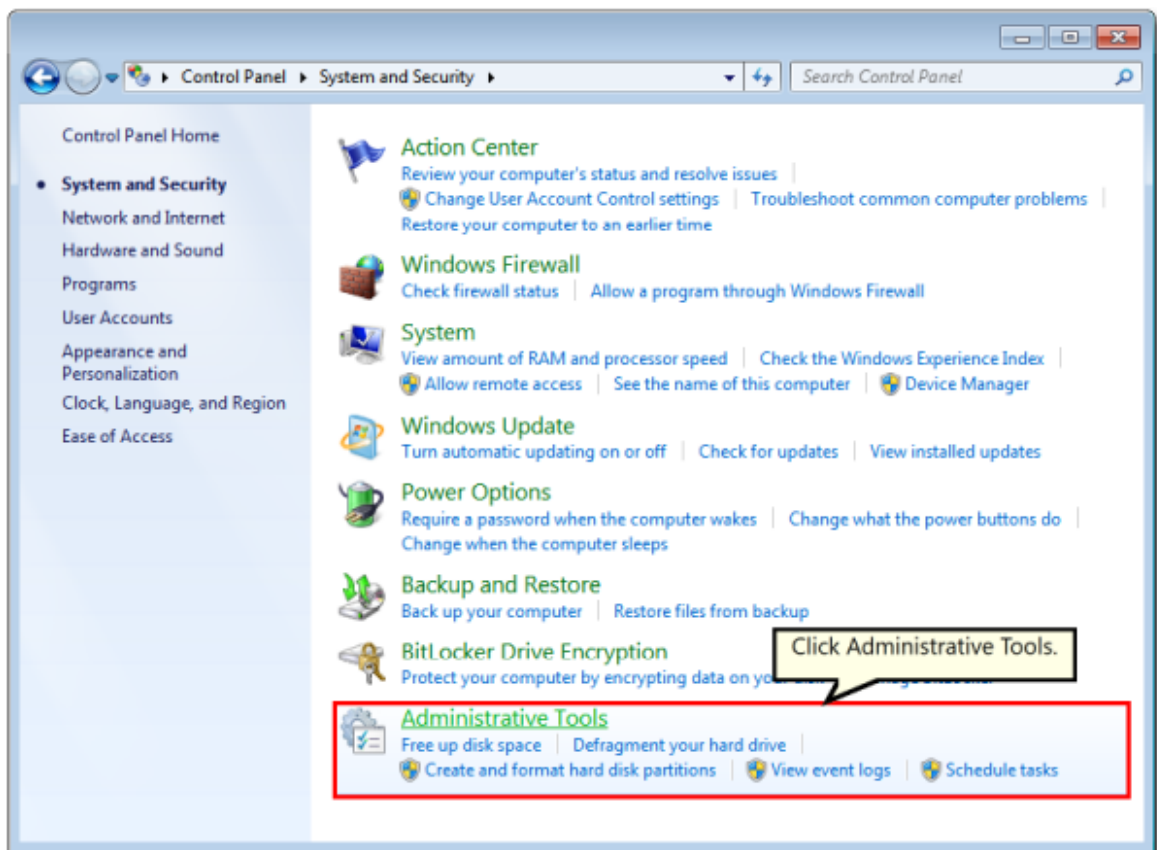
1. Close any open applications.
2. Go to **Start - Control Panel** to open Control Panel applet.



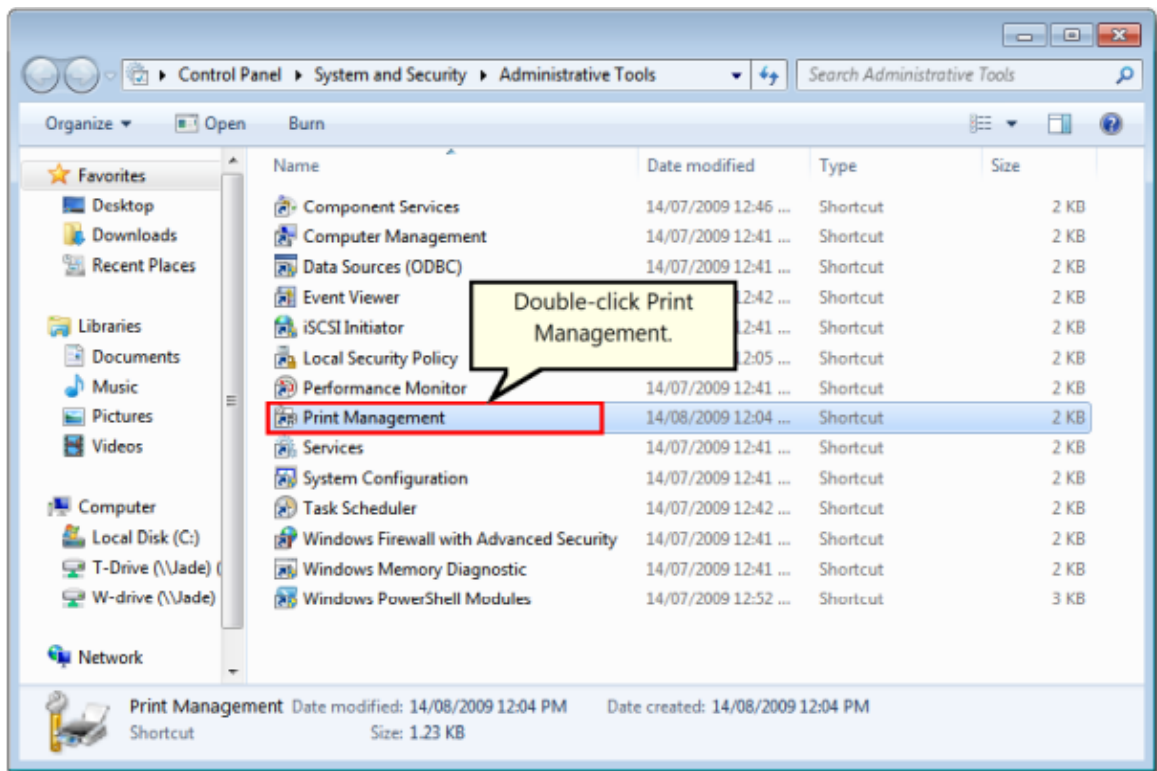
3. Click **System and Security**.



4. Click **Administrative Tools**.

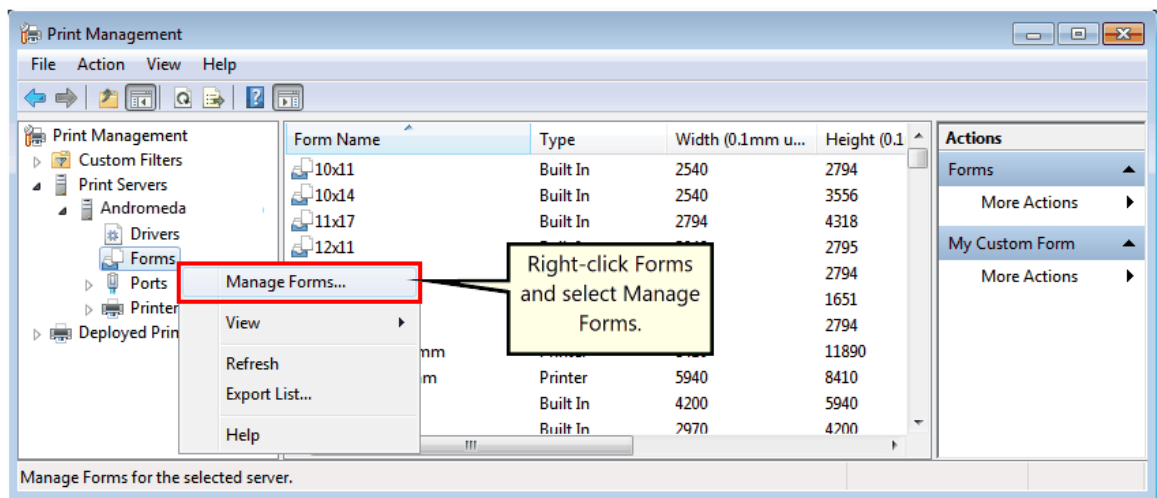


5. Double-click **Printer Management**.



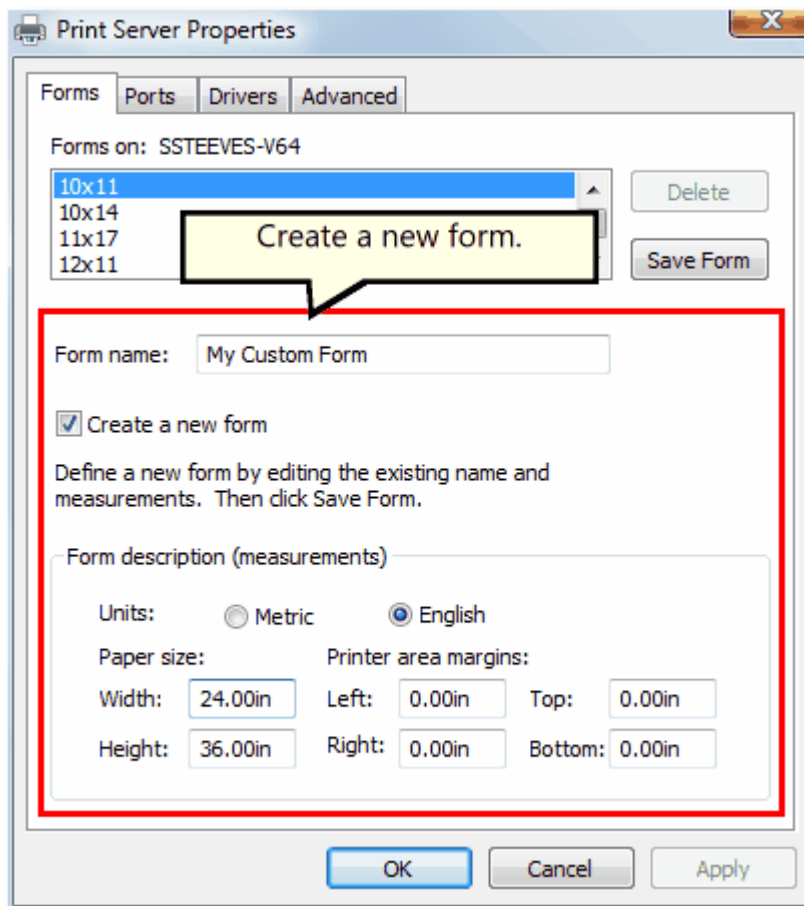
6. Select **Print Servers** and then select the name of your computer (ie. Server1).

7. Right-click **Forms** and select **Manage Forms...**

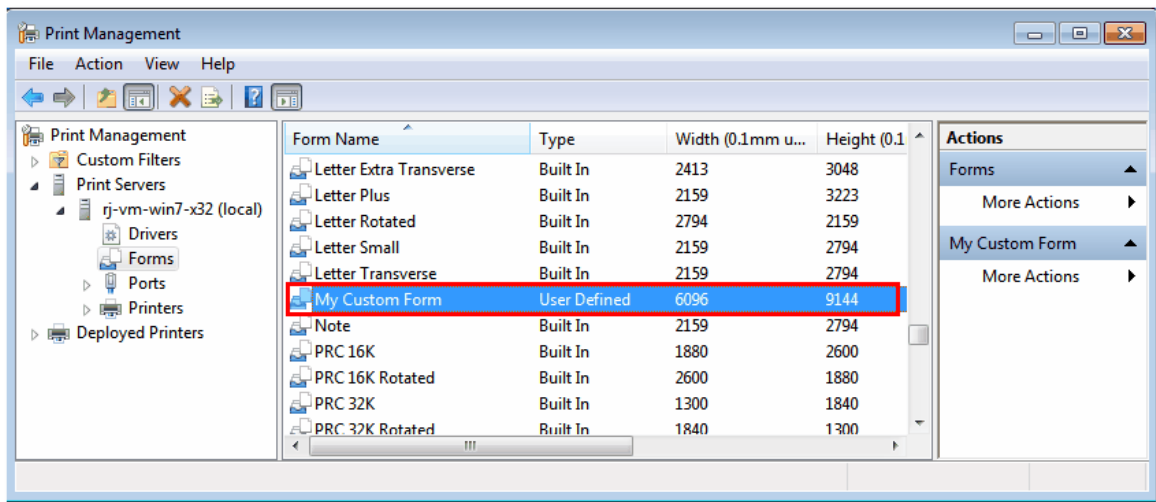


8. Check "Create a new form".

- a. Enter a descriptive name in the "Form name:" field (e.g. "30 x 42" or "36 x 48")
- b. Set the measurement units of "Metric" or "English"
- c. Enter the desired Width and Height for your paper size. **NOTE:** Always make the Width less than the Height (e.g. Width 30, Height 42) as you can always choose Landscape orientation later.



9. Click **Save Form**, and then click **OK** to close the window.



10. You can now use your new computer paper size in your application, or as a paper size on PDF Image Printer's Profile Manager [Printer Overrides tab](#).

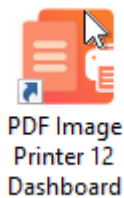
Configure PDF Image Printer to Use a Custom Paper Size

For most applications, when the original file is printed, the paper size is part of the information being sent to PDF Image Printer. Therefore, we would recommend [adding a custom paper form](#) and selecting that paper size in the application before printing. That said, there are some instances where you may need to override the paper size within PDF Image Printer, such as when [printing oil well logs](#).

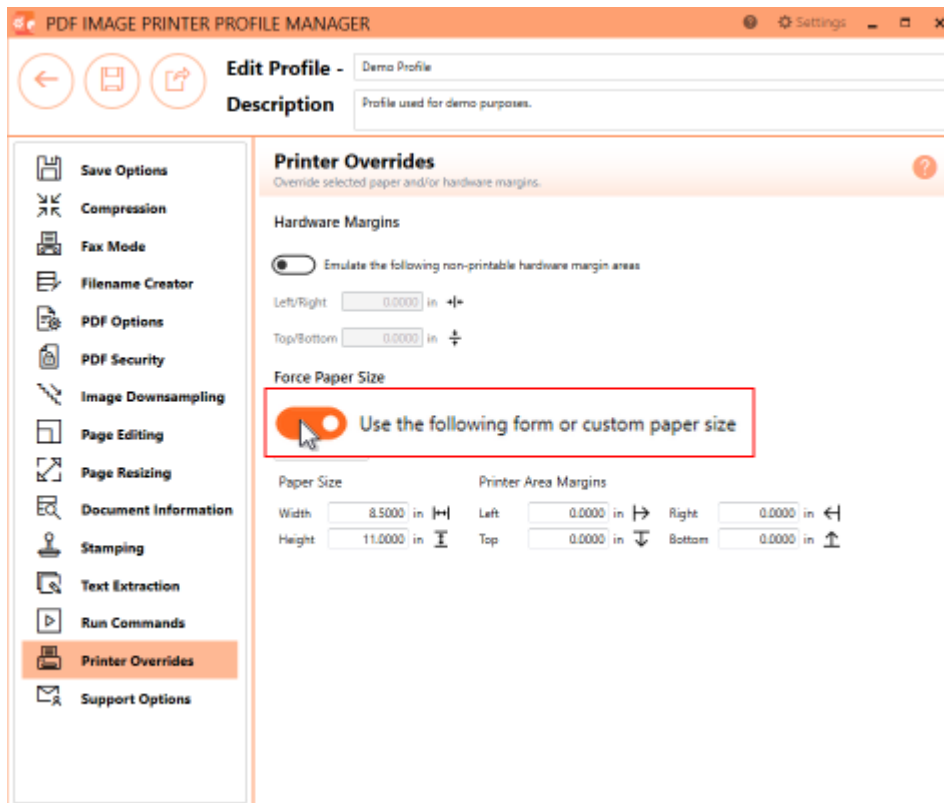
All settings to [override paper size](#) are controlled through the profile. Note that configuring a custom paper size within the profile will override any other paper size selection that you have set on the application.

Step by Step Instructions

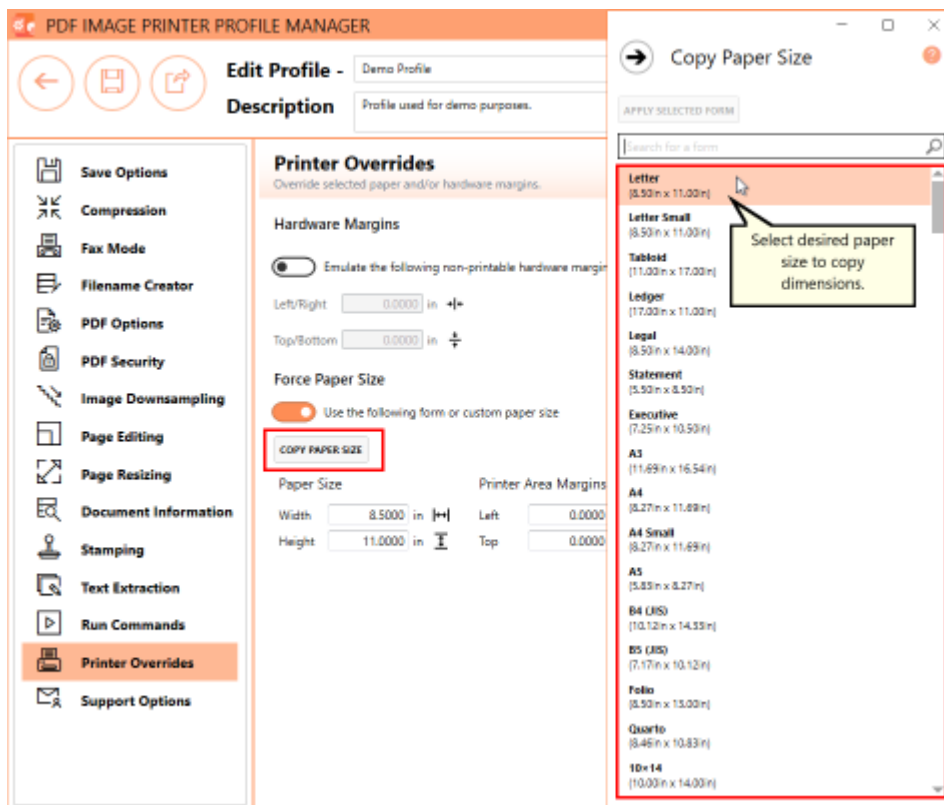
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Printer Overrides tab**, under **Force Paper Size**, enable **Use the following form or custom paper size**.



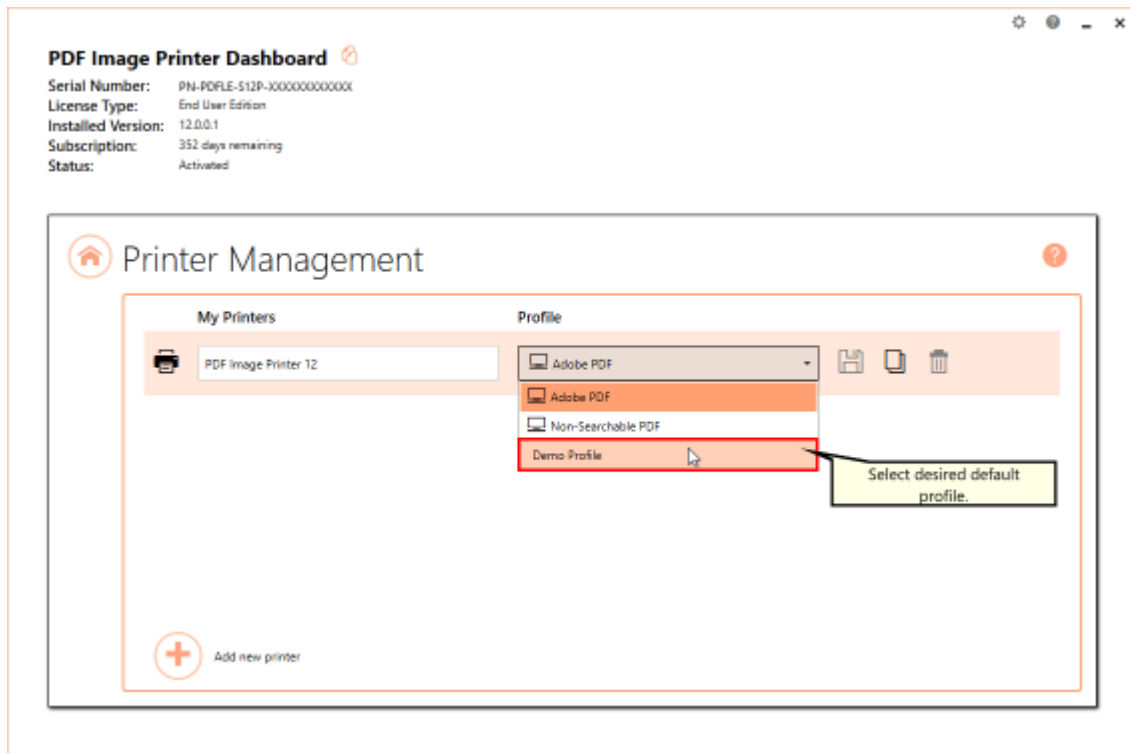
6. Enter the desired *Width* and *Height* for the custom paper size, or use the **Copy Paper Size** button to copy the dimensions from our list of standard paper sizes. Dimensions for Paper Size are entered based on a portrait oriented page. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).



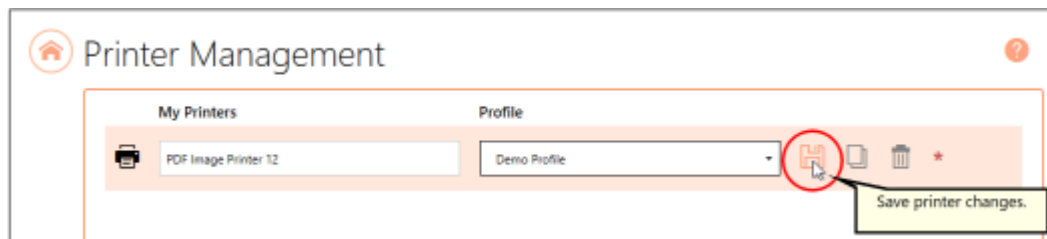
7. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

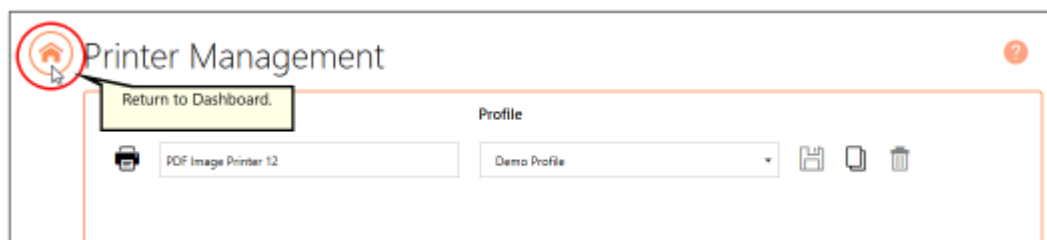
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.



8. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your document to PDF Image Printer, the output page size will match the custom paper size you entered.

Print Well Logs as One Continuous Image

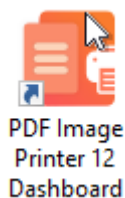
A common application for using PDF Image Printer's printer overrides to force the paper size is when printing oil well logs. An oil well log is one long continuous page of data that varies in length. We have many companies that use PDF Image Printer to print oil well logs because PDF Image Printer can be configured to print the oil well log as one continuous page, rather than breaking the oil well log into multiple pages, and end the page where the data ends despite the variability in page length.

Below are instructions on how to create a profile that will correctly convert your oil well logs to your desired output format by using the [Printer Overrides tab](#) to force a custom paper size and the [Page Editing tab](#) to enabling trimming.

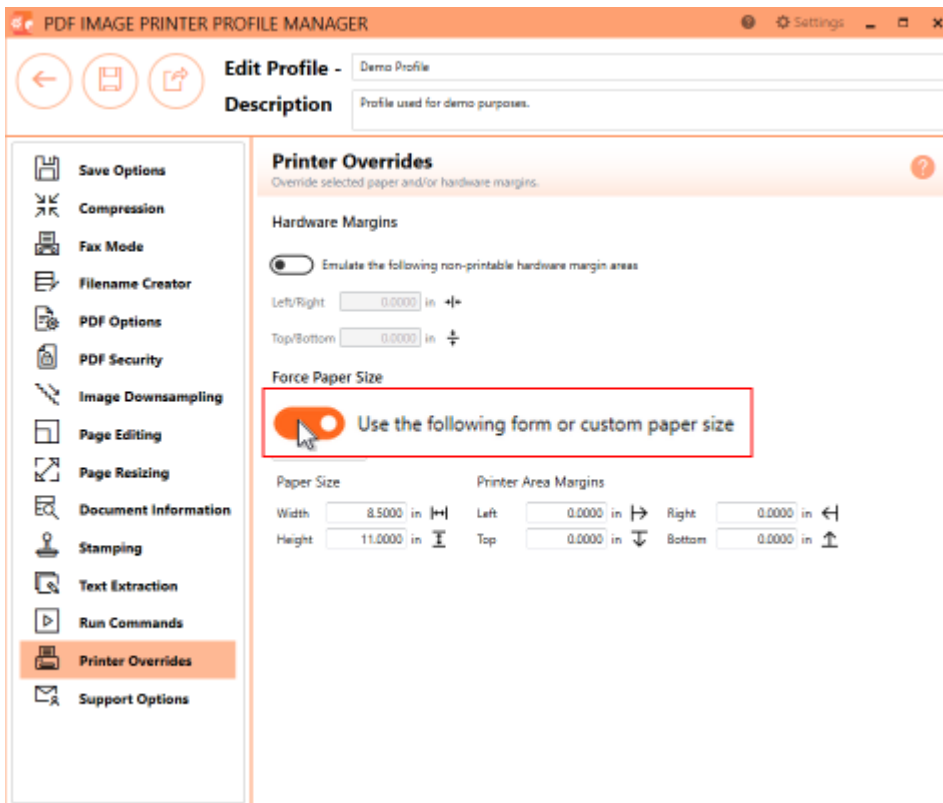
Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a personal profile, or create a copy of one of our system profiles.
4. Name the profile, add a description, and click Save.
5. On the **Printer Overrides tab**, under **Force Paper Size**, enable **Use the following form or custom paper size**.



6. Enter the page size. In this example we will use *Width 8.5"* and *Height 100"*. Since the length of oil well logs vary, we are going to enter the maximum possible page length which is 100". This will create a varying amount of white space at the bottom of your output files which we will remove using the trimming feature.

Force Paper Size

Use the following form or custom paper size

COPY PAPER SIZE

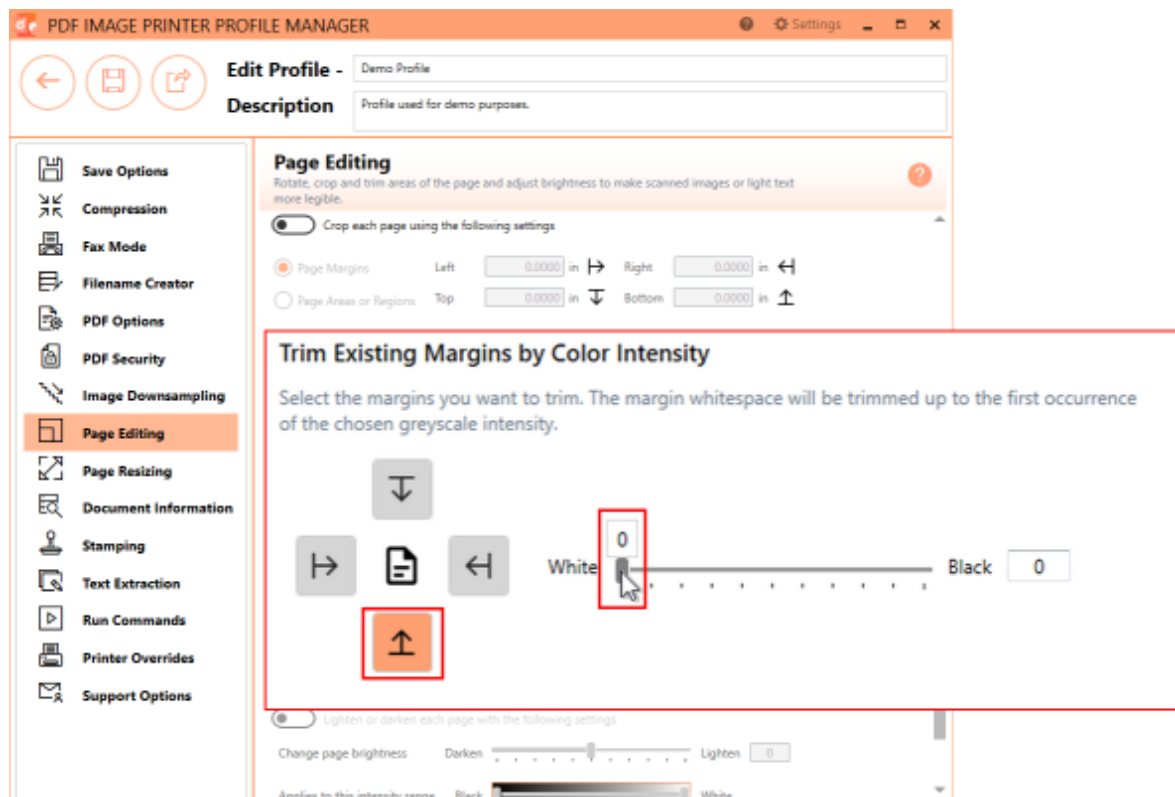
Paper Size

Width
Height

Printer Area Margins

Left
Right
Top
Bottom

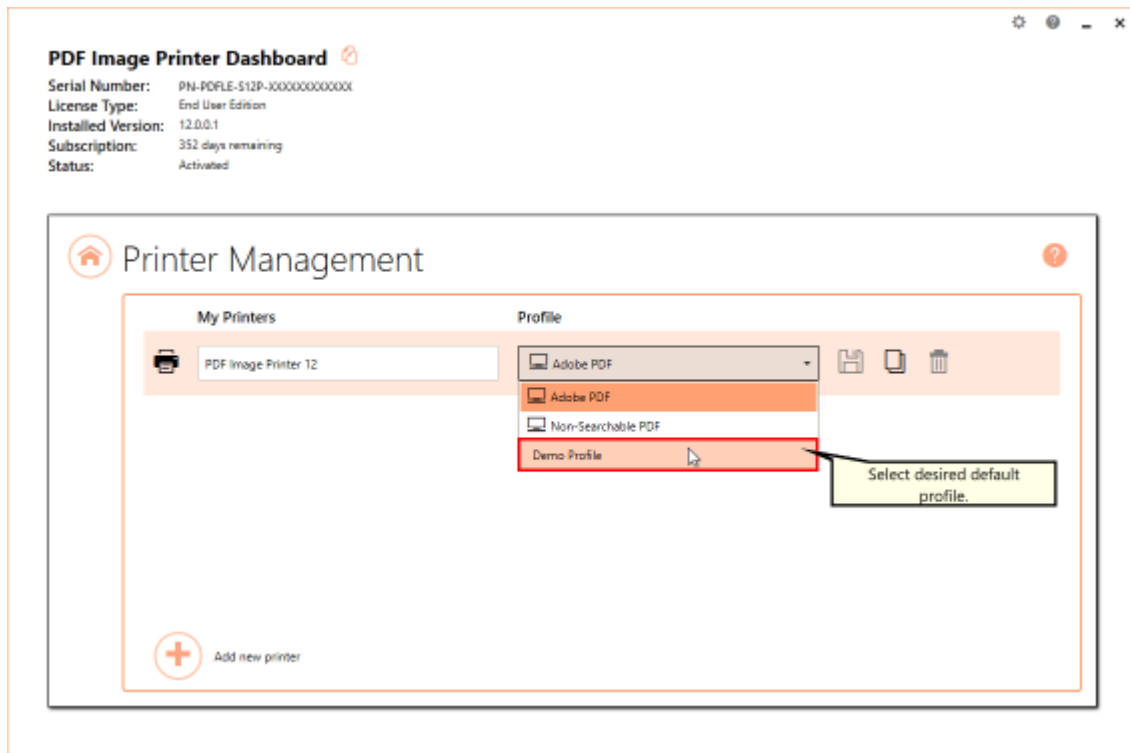
7. On the **Page Editing** tab, under **Trim Existing Margins by Color Intensity**, click the **bottom arrow** to enable trimming of the bottom margin of the page.
8. Ensure that the color intensity sliding scale is set to white. This means that PDF Image Printer will trim your output file from the bottom of the page until it reaches the first pixel that is not white.



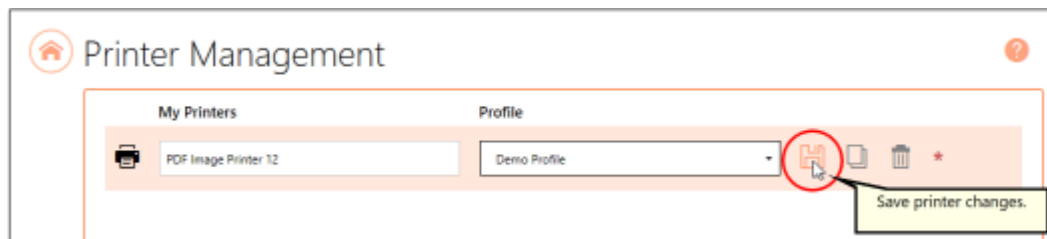
9. Click **Save-Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

If you plan to use these settings regularly, you may wish to make this personal profile the [default profile](#) used by PDF Image Printer.

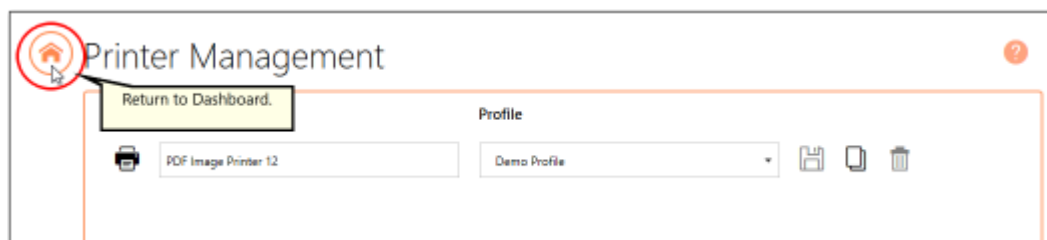
- i. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
- ii. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



iii. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



iv. Select the **Home icon** to return to the **Dashboard**.

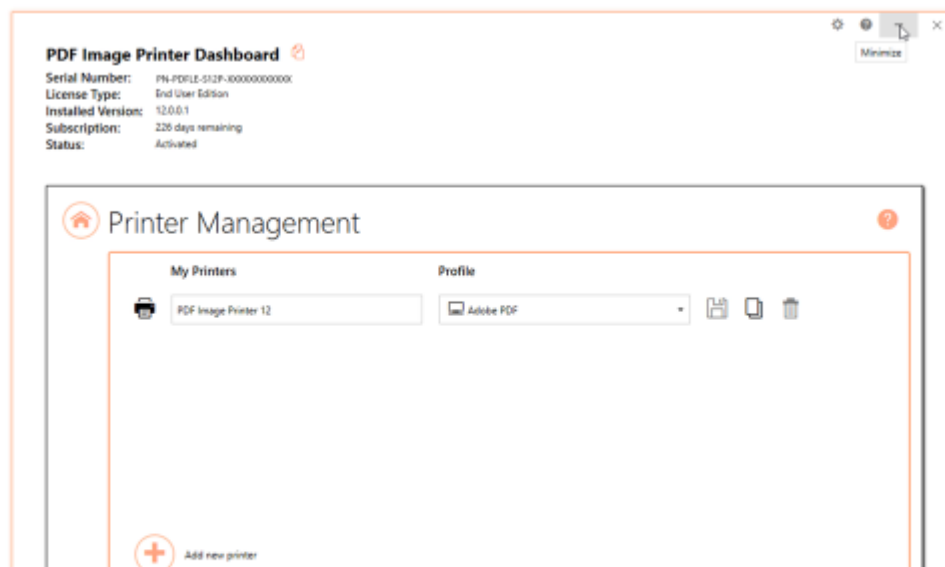


10. Close the **Dashboard**. Now when you print your documents to PDF Image Printer, you will create output files as one continuous page of varying lengths depending on the length of the original oil well logs.

Printer Management

This section contains information on how to use the Printer Management utility. Printer Management allows users to rename PDF Image Printer, assign the default Profile used by PDF Image Printer, create a copy of PDF Image Printer, and add a new PDF Image Printer.

- [Rename Printer](#)
- [Change Default Profile Assigned to Printer](#)
- [Create a Copy of Printer](#)
- [Add a New Printer](#)



PDF Image Printer Printer Management Overview

Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

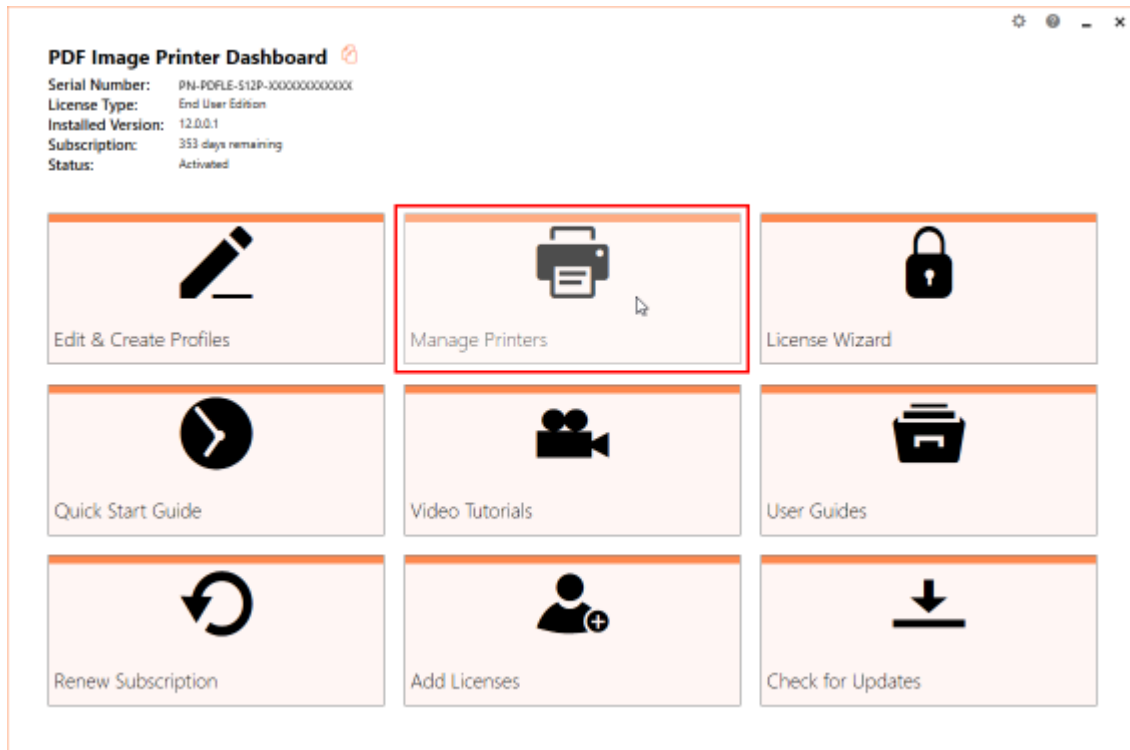
Printer Management

To launch **Printer Management**:

1. Begin by opening the **Dashboard** (double-click the PDF Image Printer icon on your desktop or select PDF Image Printer 12 from the Start menu).



2. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.



On launch, **Printer Management** will show you all of the existing printer(s), the name of the printer(s), and the default profile currently assigned to each printer. If PDF Image Printer has just been installed, there will only be one printer listed with the name PDF Image Printer 12, and the default profile will be set to Adobe PDF.

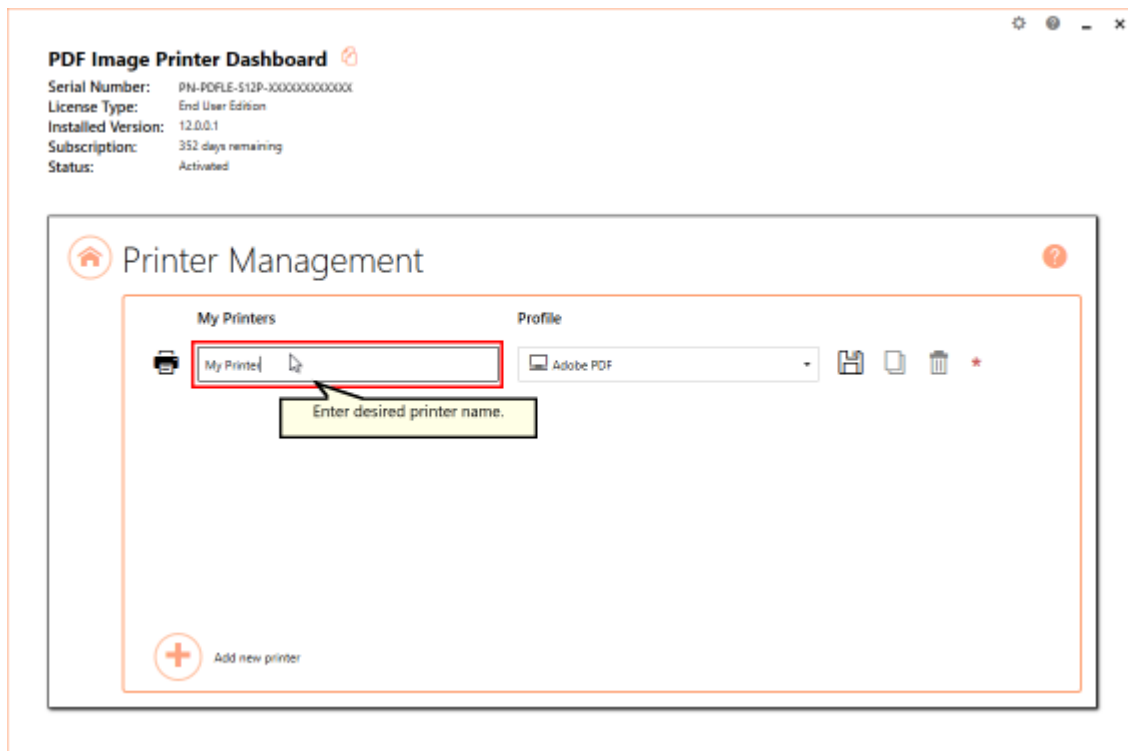
Rename Printer

By default, the printer name is set to PDF Image Printer 12, meaning that users would need to look for PDF Image Printer 12 when printing a document to the PDF Image Printer software for conversion to PDF.

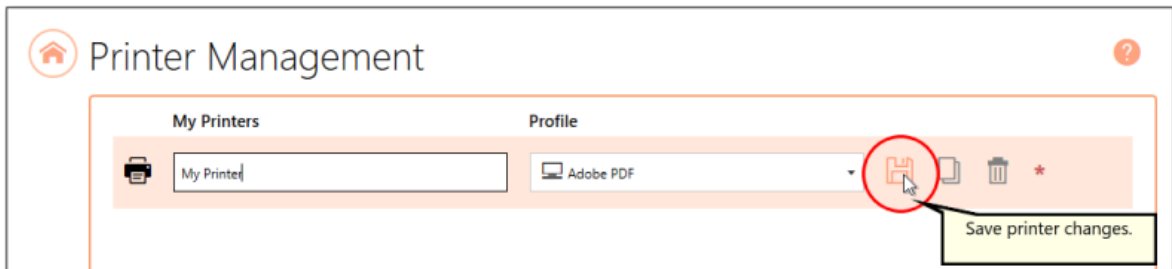
Using **Printer Management** the printer name can be changed to any custom name desired by the user or organization. The new name may be a reflection of the conversion function of the printer (ie. "Convert to PDF") or the use of the printer within the company (ie. "Save Invoices"). Renaming is particularly relevant when a user has [created a copy of the printer](#) or [added a new printer](#), and the two printers serve different functions.

Step by Step Instructions

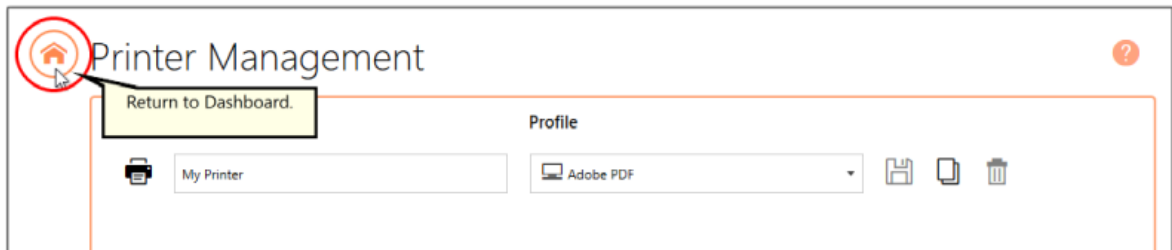
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.
2. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
3. Select the current name of the printer (by default, this is set to PDF Image Printer 12) and enter your desired printer name.



4. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



5. Select the **Home icon** to return to the Dashboard.



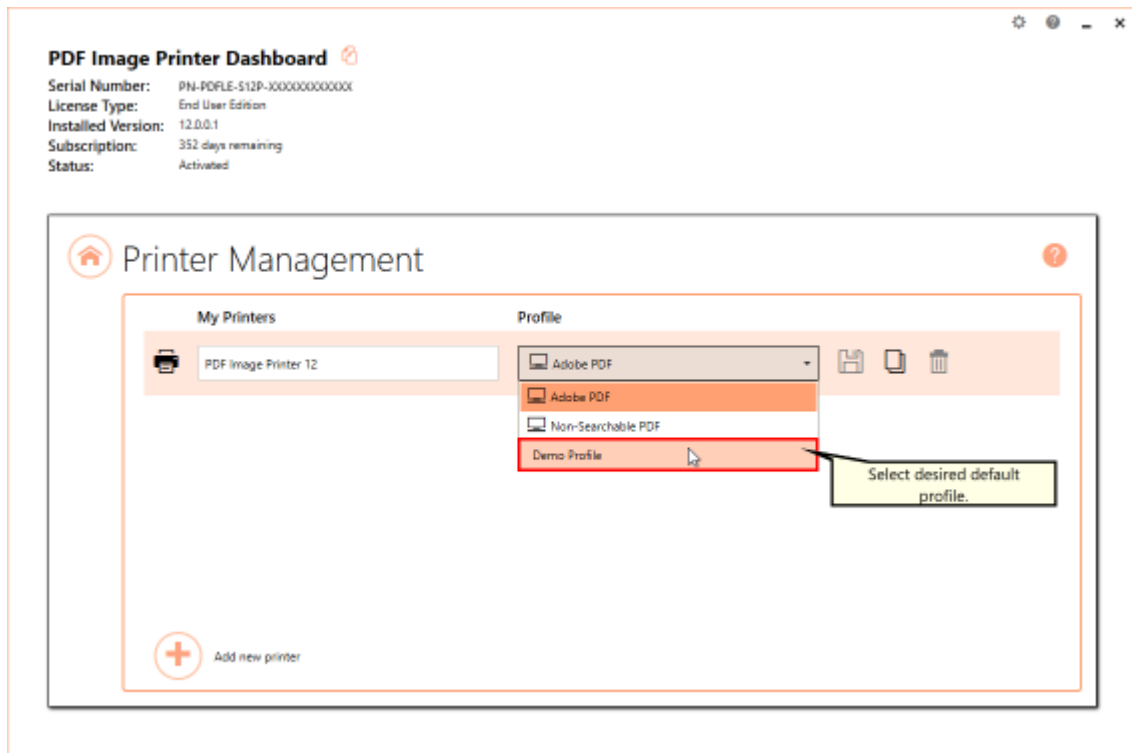
Change Default Profile

PDF Image Printer uses Profiles, which are a group of settings, to create the output image you want. Personal profiles are created and edited through the [Profile Manager](#) utility. Users can select their desired profile either using the **Printer Management** utility or on the fly during the printing process on the Save As dialog. In the [Working with PDF Image Printer](#) section, which contains step-by-step instructions demonstrating how to use [Profile Manager](#) to enable and configure specific settings in order to create personal profiles, each topic concludes by recommending users that plan to use those settings regularly set their personal profile as the default profile used by PDF Image Printer.

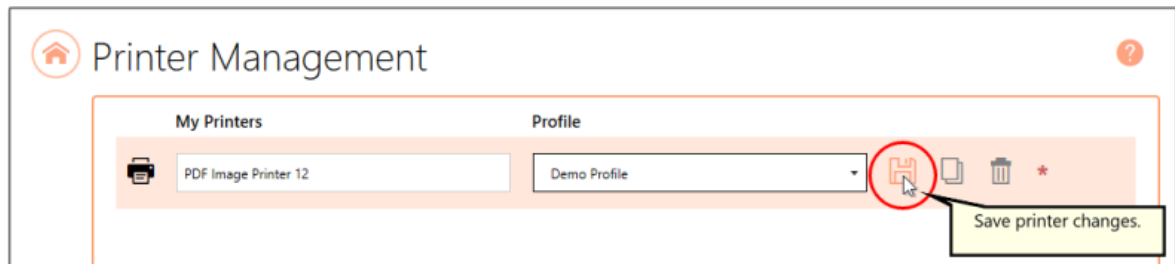
By default, the profile assigned to PDF Image Printer 12 will be Adobe PDF, meaning that when the user prints to PDF Image Printer, the settings stored in this default profile will automatically be applied to the output file. The default profile used by a printer can be changed to either another one of the system profiles that come with PDF Image Printer or to one of your personal profiles.

Step by Step Instructions

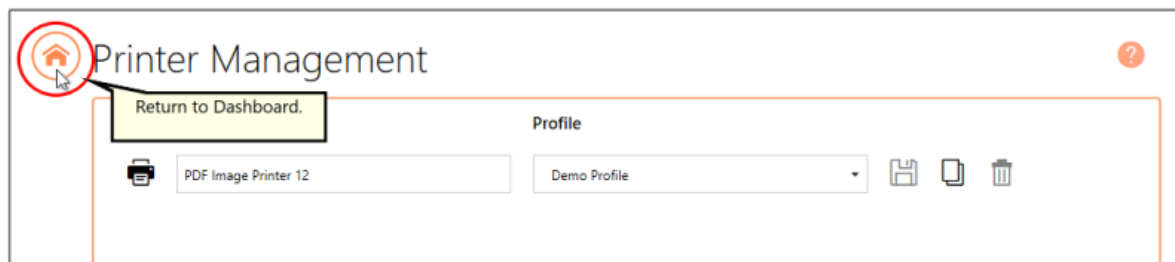
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.
2. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
3. Select the printer you wish to edit and use the Profile drop box to select your desired default profile.



4. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



5. Select the **Home icon** to return to the Dashboard.

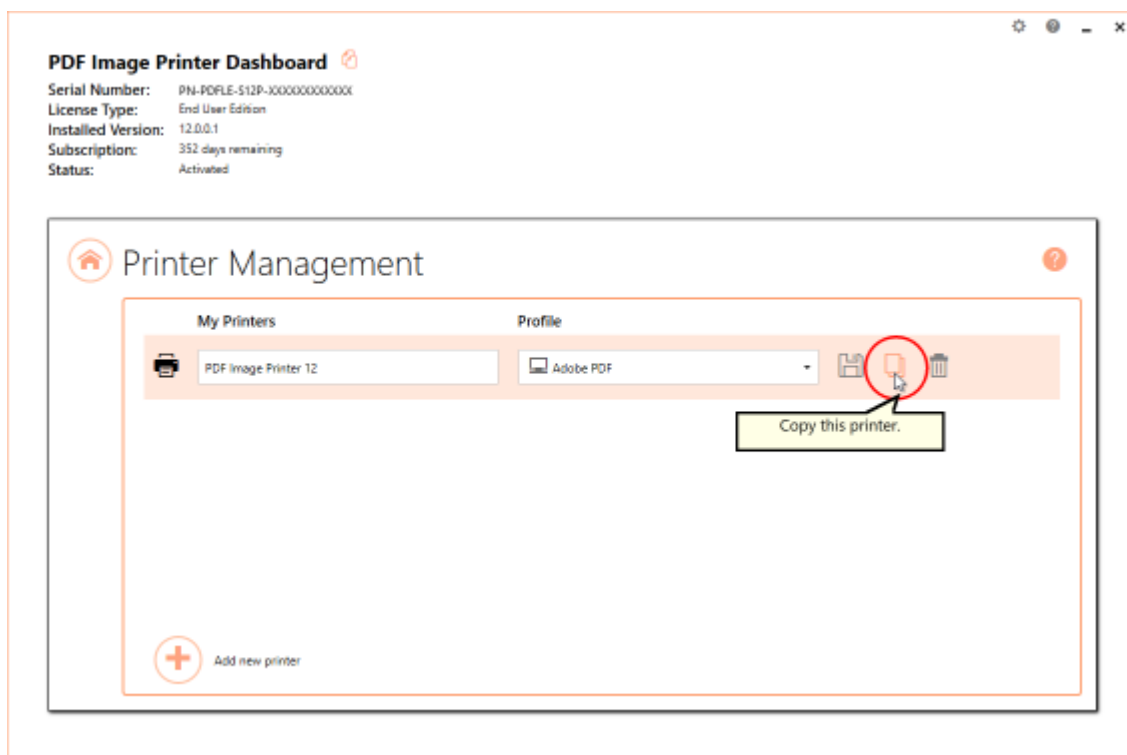


Create Copy of Printer

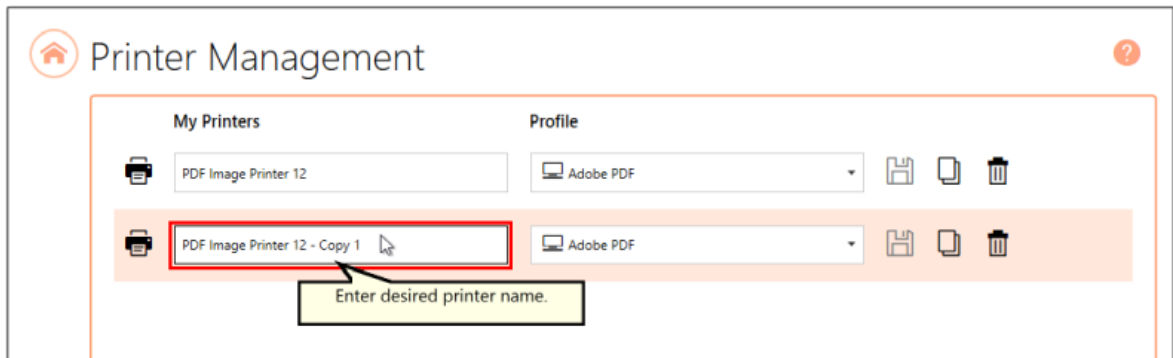
By default, only a single copy of PDF Image Printer is created. If you know that you need to use two groups of settings - two profiles - on a regular basis, you may consider creating a second copy of PDF Image Printer instead of continuously changing the profile that is being applied to output files. A common example of this is users that need to create both searchable and non-searchable PDF files.

Step by Step Instructions

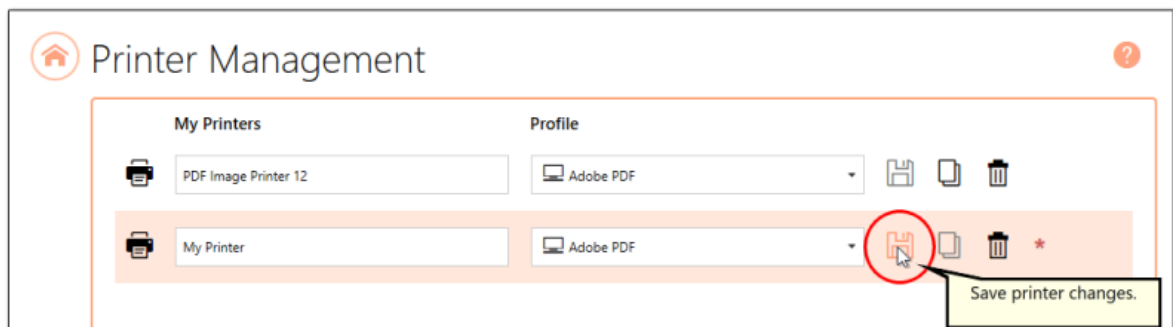
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.
2. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
3. Beside the printer you wish to copy, select the **Copy icon** to create a copy of the selected printer.



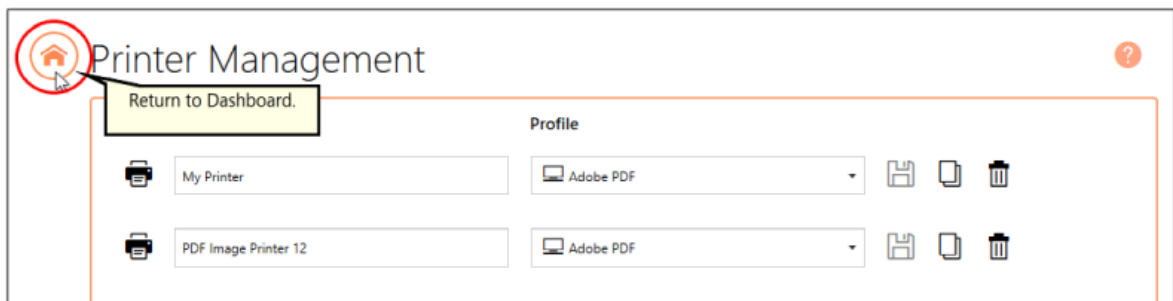
4. By default, the newly copied printer will be named "Printer Name - Copy 1". You can change the name by selecting the current name of the printer and entering your desired printer name.



5. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



6. Select the **Home icon** to return to the Dashboard.

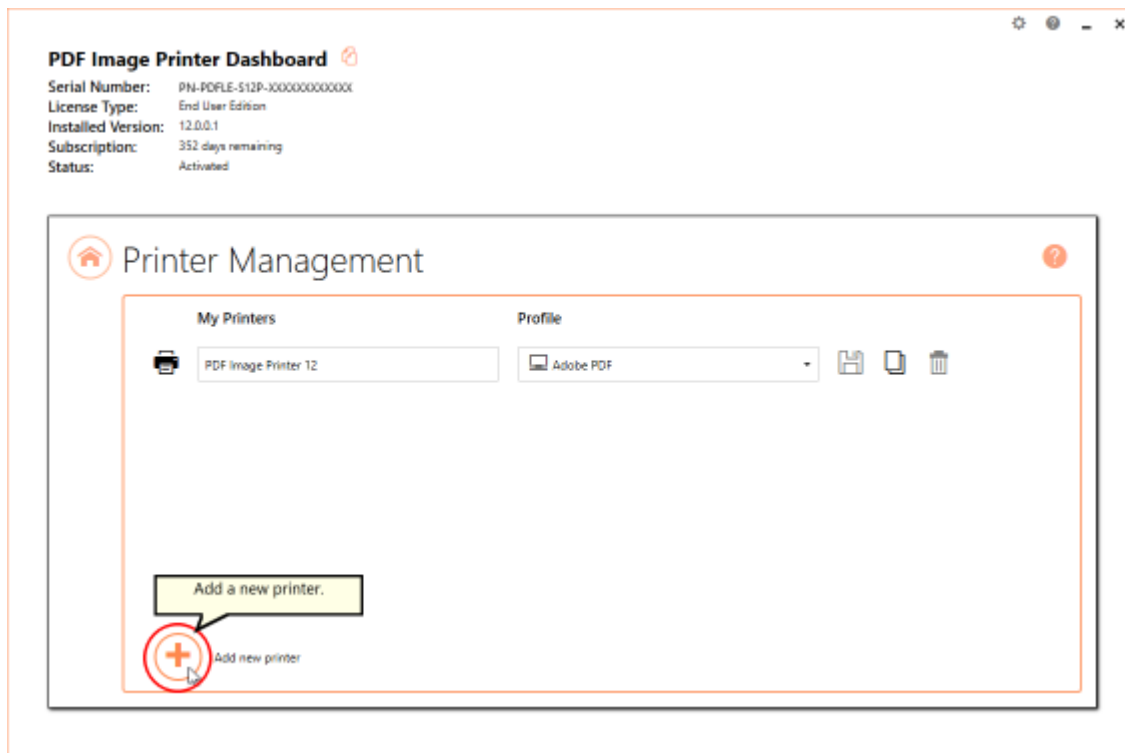


Add New Printer

By default, only a single instance of PDF Image Printer is created. If you know that you need to use two groups of settings - two profiles - on a regular basis, you may consider creating a second instance of PDF Image Printer instead of continuously changing the profile that is being applied to output files. A common example of this is users that need to create both searchable and non-searchable PDF files.

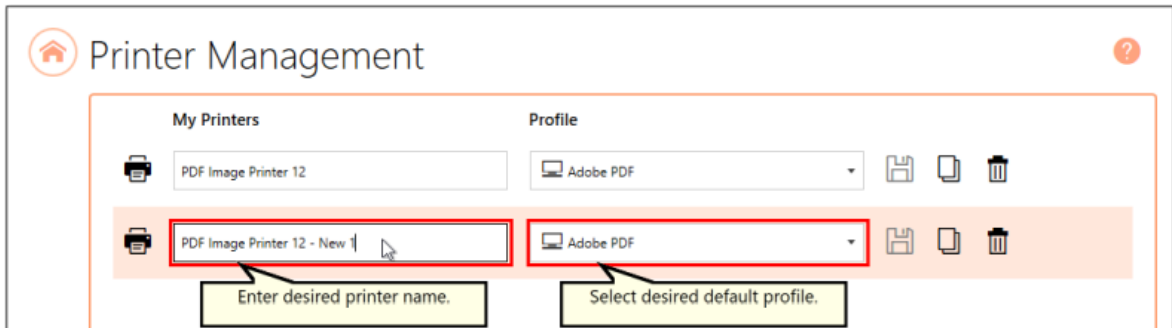
Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.
2. Select "Manage Printers" to open **Printer Management**.
3. Select the **Add icon** at the bottom of the screen to add a new printer.

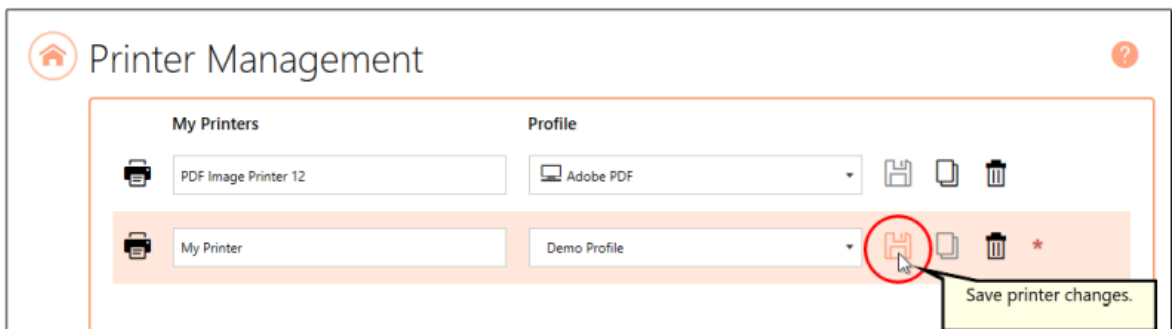


4. By default, the newly added printer will be named "PDF Image Printer <%PRODVERSION_S% - New 1" and will be assigned the default profile .
 - i. You can change the name by selecting the current name of the printer and entering your desired printer name.

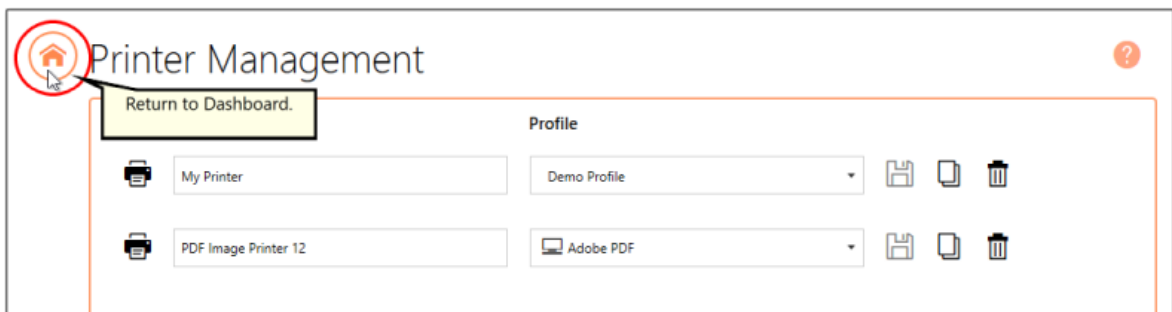
- ii. You can change the default profile by dropping the box and selecting your desired profile.



- 5. Select the **Save icon** to save changes.



- 6. Select the **Home icon** to return to the Dashboard.

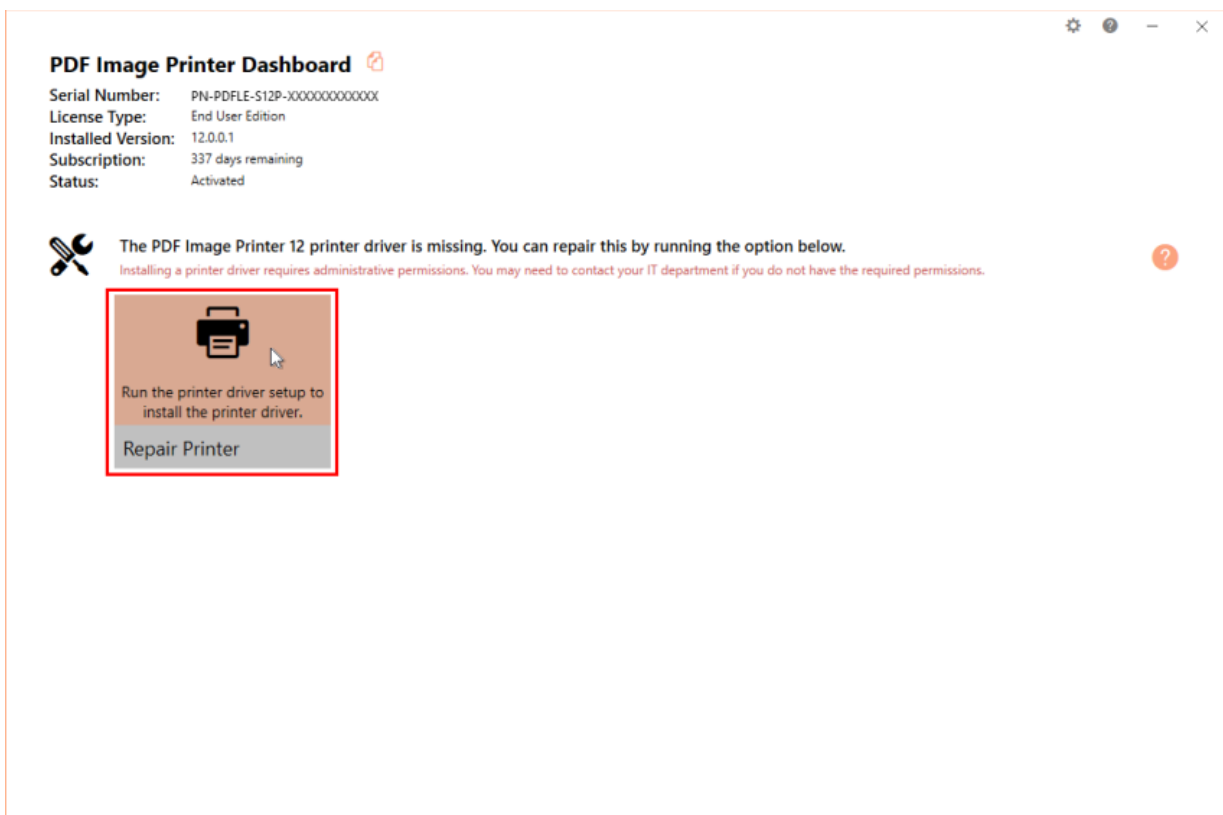


Repair Missing Printer

If all copies of PDF Image Printer have been deleted from *Devices and Printers*, you will see the message below when you launch the **Dashboard** indicating that the PDF Image Printer 12 printer driver is missing. You are given the option to repair the missing printer driver by installing it again without having to reinstall the software completely. Select **"Run the printer driver setup to install the printer driver"** in order to repair the missing printer.

Installing a printer driver requires administrative permissions. You may need to contact your IT department if you do not have the required permissions.

If the repair printer function does not work, please contact PEERNET support at support@peernet.com for further assistance.



Profile Manager

This section contains technical documentation for each of the property tabs found in the **Profile Manager** utility. For step-by-step instructions demonstrating how to use these properties tabs to enable and configure specific settings offered by PDF Image Printer, see the [Working with PDF Image Printer](#) section.

PDF Image Printer uses Profiles, which are a group of settings, to create the output image you want. Personal profiles are created and edited through the **Profile Manager** utility. Users can select their default profile either using the [Printer Management](#) utility or on the fly during the printing process on the Save As dialog.

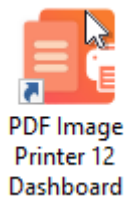


Click the image above to watch the video tutorial.

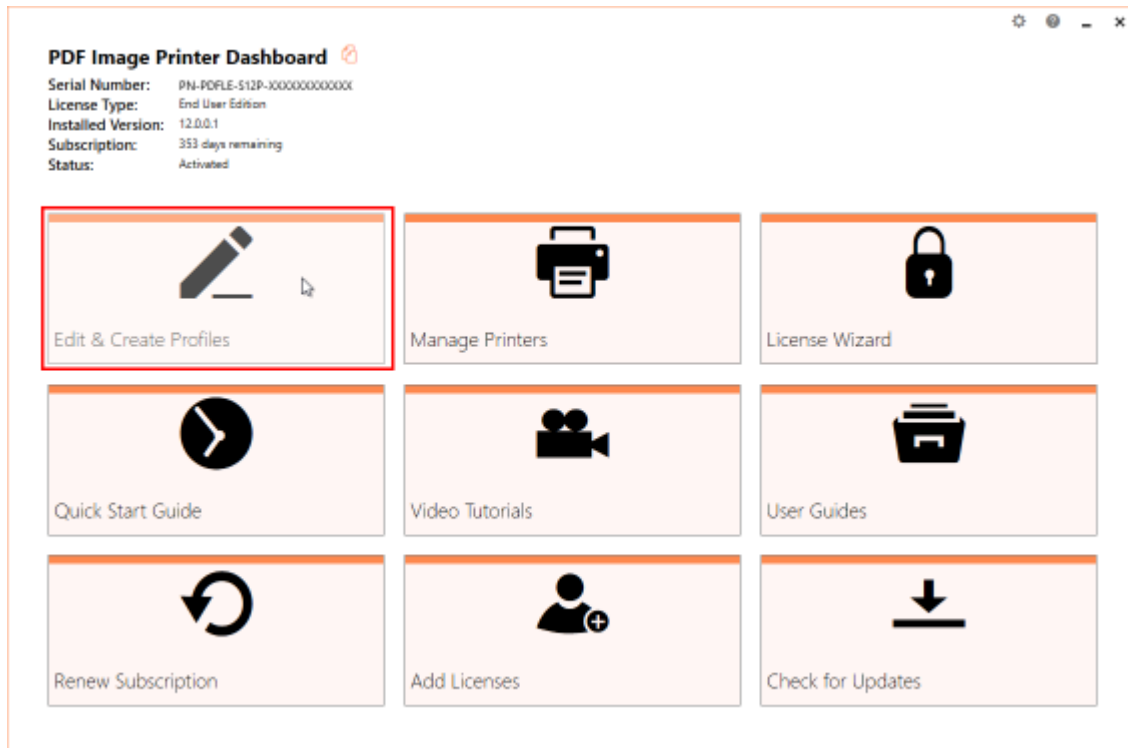
Profile Manager

To launch **Profile Manager**:

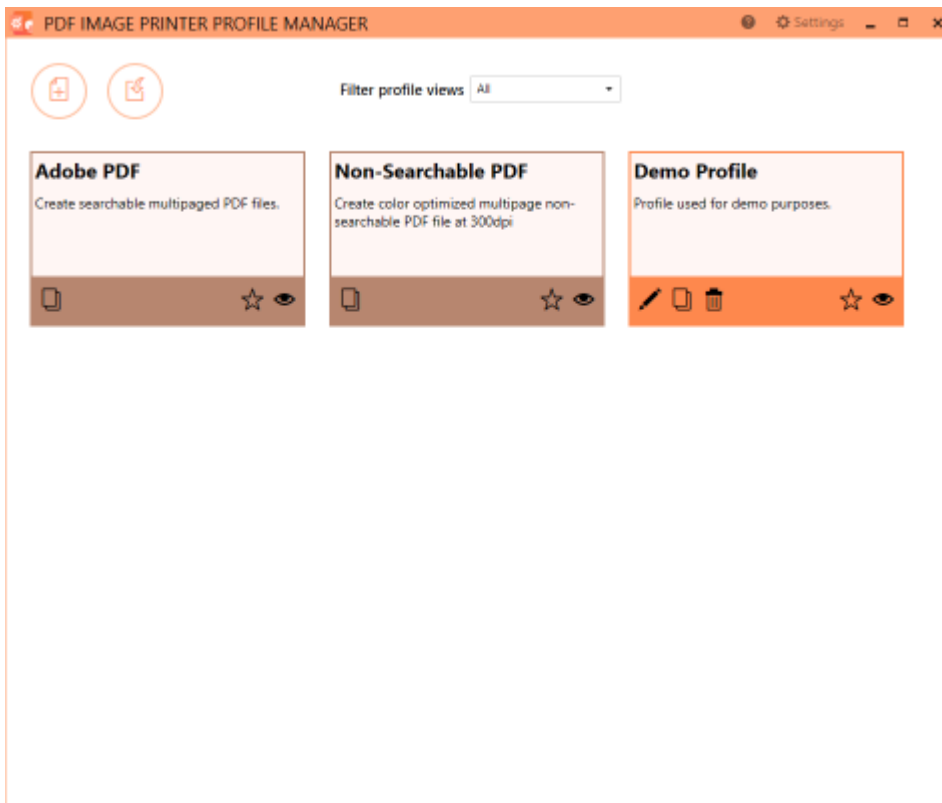
1. Begin by opening the **Dashboard** (double-click the PDF Image Printer icon on your desktop or select PDF Image Printer 12 from the Start menu).



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.

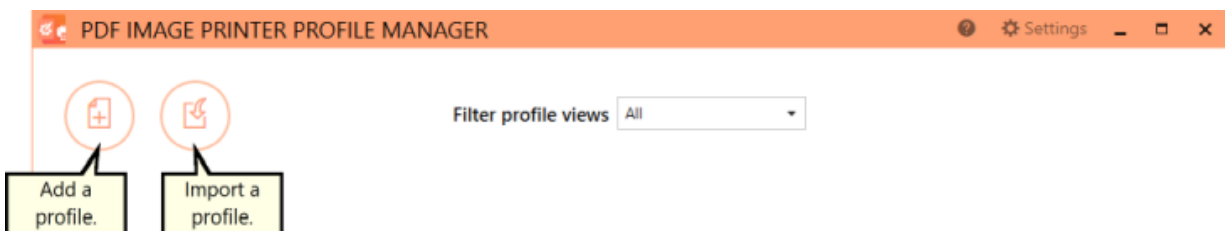


On launch, **Profile Manager** will show you all of the existing profiles. If PDF Image Printer has just been installed, only the system profiles that come with the printer will be present. PDF Image Printer comes with system profiles: Adobe PDF and Non-Searchable PDF.

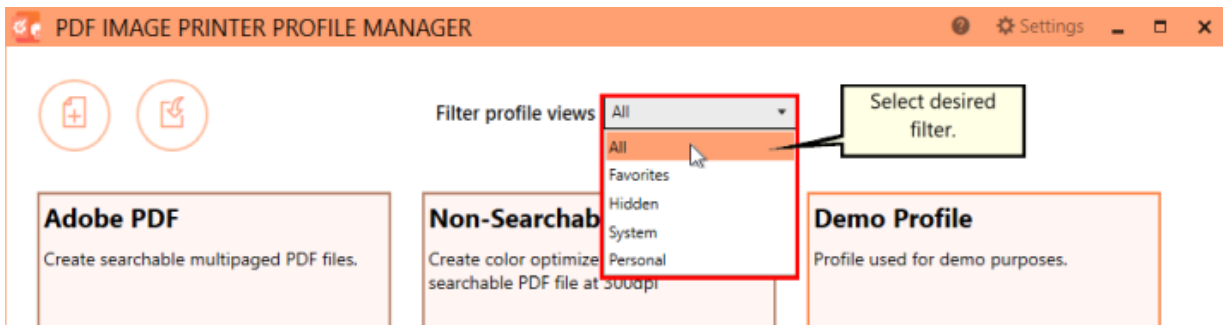


Top action buttons

1. *Add a profile* - Create a new personal profile.
2. *Import a profile* - Import a profile file into your Profile Manager. For example, if a colleague shares a profile file with you.



Filter profile views

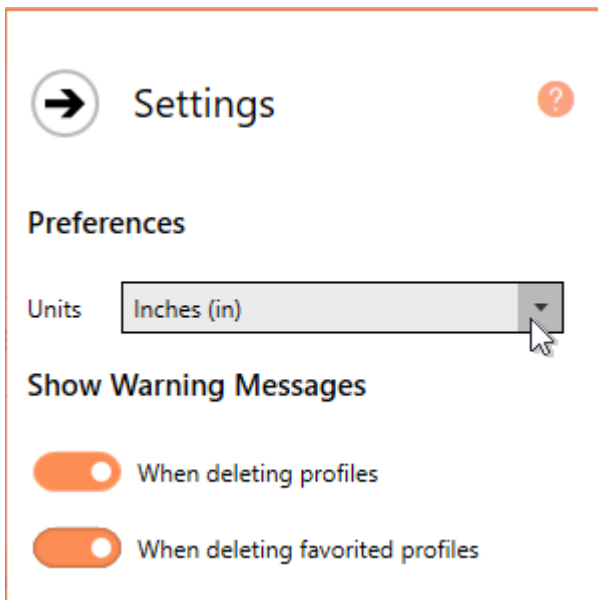


- *All* - All profiles are visible.
- *Favorites* - Only profiles marked as favorite are visible.
- *Hidden* - Only profiles marked as hidden are visible.
- *System* - Only system profiles installed with PDF Image Printer are visible.
- *Personal* - Only your custom personal profiles are visible.

Settings panel

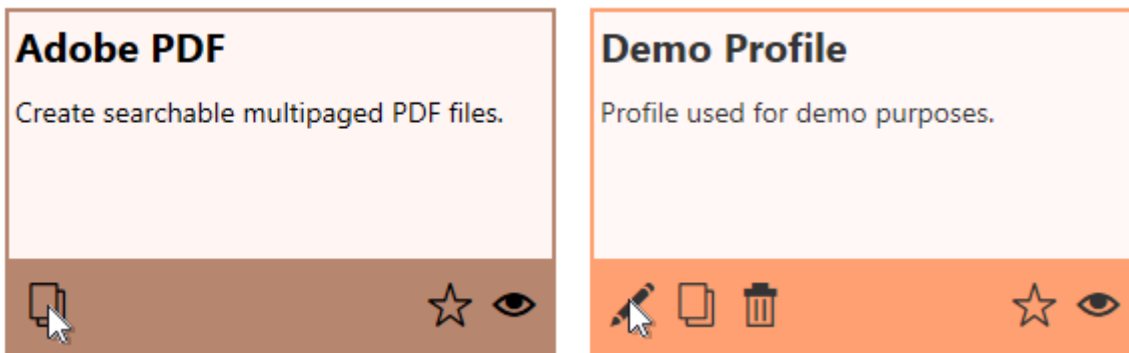
Select the **Settings gear icon** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window at any time to access additional setting customizations.

- Change units by toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm)
- Enable/disable warning messages:
 - When deleting profiles
 - When deleting favorited profiles



Profile tiles

System profiles are denoted by darker colored tiles. These system profiles cannot be edited or deleted, but can be copied. Personal profiles are denoted by lighter colored tiles. These personal profiles can be edited, copied and deleted. Personal profiles will only be available under the user's logon account.



- *Edit this profile* - Open profile to edit settings stored within the profile.
- *Create a copy of this profile* - Duplicate profile to create a new personal profile. Useful to create a personal profile starting with the settings in a system profile.
- *Delete this profile* - Delete profile that is no longer required. You can disable warning messages prompting upon deletion by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager

window, and disabling show warning messages When deleting profiles and When deleting favorited profiles. You cannot delete a profile that is currently assigned to a printer through [Printer Management](#).

- *Add to favorites* - Click the star icon to mark the profile as a favorite.
- *Hide this profile* - Click the eye icon to mark the profile as hidden.

Editing profile view

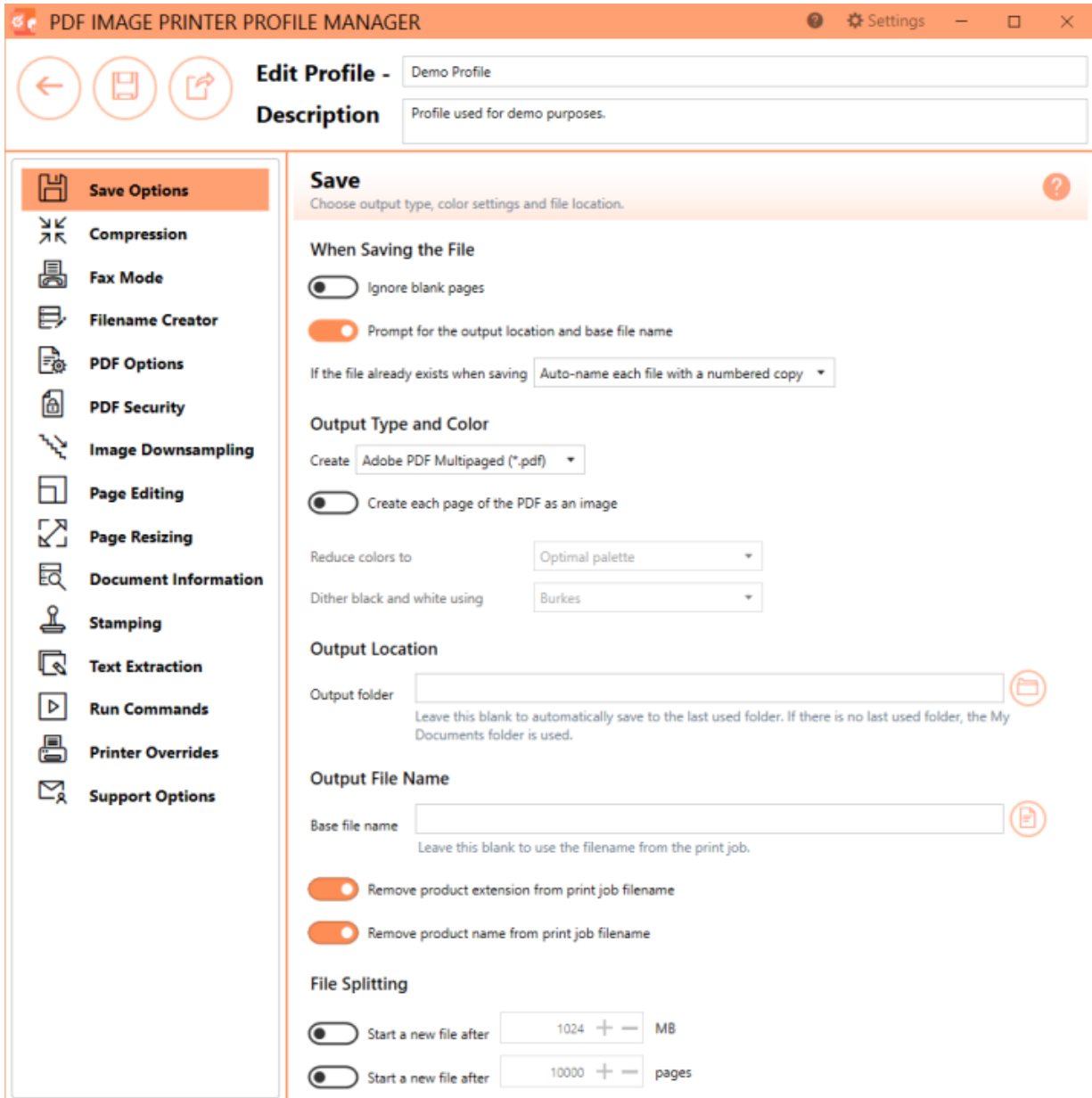


- *Go back to the profiles list* - Return to Profile Manager home screen
- *Save profile* - Save any changes made to the settings stored in the profile.
- *Export profile* - Export profile file to share with other users. For example, to share your personal profile file with a colleague.
- *Edit Profile* - Edit the name of the profile. We recommend that you name your personal profiles something recognizable.
- *Description* - If desired, you can add a description to the profile to remind you of the settings stored in the profile and/or the purpose of the profile.

Visit the topics within this [Profile Manager](#) section to learn about the settings stored on each property tab within the editing profile view.

Save Options

The **Save Options tab** holds all of the most frequently used settings. On this tab you can choose output type, color settings and file location.



When Saving the File

When Saving the File

Ignore blank pages

Prompt for the output location and base file name

If the file already exists when saving

Ignore blank pages

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means that blank pages will be omitted from the output file.

Prompt for the output location and base file name

By default this setting is enabled. Disabling this setting means that you will not be prompted with the Save As dialog to choose where you want save the output file after each print. When disabling prompting, it is important to consider how to handle overwrite situations.

PDF Image Printer offers three options for "If the file already exists when saving":

1. Auto-name each file with a numbered copy (default)
2. Show prompt to let me choose my action
3. Always overwrite the existing file (Warning! This option means that if a file of the same name already exists, it will be replaced by the new file and no warning dialog will be shown).

See Also: [Save Files Without Prompting](#)

Output Type and Color

Output Type and Color

Create

Create each page of the PDF as an image

Reduce colors to

Dither black and white using

Output Type

PDF Image Printer can create two output types: Adobe PDF Multipaged (*.pdf) and Adobe PDF Serialized (*.pdf).

See Also: [Change Output Type](#)

Resolution

By default, resolution is set to 300 DPI. This setting specifies the print resolution, or DPI (Dots Per Inch) of the output file. Higher resolutions produce graphic images that are sharper and show finer detail, but are also very large if they are not compressed. Low-resolution images are not of as high a quality, but they take up less disk space. In general, PDF Image Printer will perform a readable text conversion at any resolution. If your document contains graphics, you may want to use one of the higher resolution settings. Resolution is only applicable to image file formats and is therefore unavailable when creating searchable Adobe PDF files.

Color Reduction

By default, color reduction is set to reduce colors to optimal palette. Several color reduction options are available for reducing the number of colors in the output files. In general, the fewer the colors in an image, the smaller the file size. If the output file type chosen does not support that color mode, the closest match is found.

- *Optimal palette* - Reduces each page down to the smallest number of colors needed to represent the page. Each page is counted separately, meaning the end result can be a file containing a mix of black and white, greyscale and color pages. If your pages are mixed black and white with occasional color, this method will often result in the smallest size file.
- *Black and white* - All pages are reduced to monochrome, or black and white. This color reduction method uses the Dithering Method chosen to smooth the appearance of the text and information on the page.
- *Greyscale* - Pages are reduced to a greyscale image composed exclusively of shades of neutral gray.
- *256 color palette* - Reduce each page down to 256 colors.
- *16 color palette* - Reduce each page down to 16 colors.
- *Optimal palette, maximum 256 colors* - Reduces each page down to the smallest number of colors needed to represent the page. Any color pages that result in more than 256 colors are reduced to 256 colors.
- *Optimal palette, maximum 16 colors* - Reduces each page down to the smallest number of colors needed to represent the page. Any color pages that result in more than 16 colors are reduced to 16 colors.
- *None* - No color reduction is done.

Dithering Method

By default, dithering method is set to Burkes. Dithering greatly enhances the appearance of color images that have been reduced to black and white. Because the same dithering method may produce different results in different situations, it is best to experiment when trying to determine the best dithering method for a given source image.



Original image



Floyd-Steinberg



Burkes



Bayer



Halftone

See Also:

[Reduce Searchable PDF File Size](#)

[Reduce Non-Searchable PDF File Size](#)

Output Location

Output Location

Output folder



Leave this blank to automatically save to the last used folder. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used.

Output folder

This is the default directory for saving your output files. If this field is empty, the last used folder is used as the default directory. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used. Select the folder icon to browse to your desired folder location or enter in the absolute path (for example, C:\My Files) of the directory to be used. If the path entered does not exist, an error message will appear giving you the option to create the new folder now or wait to create the new folder during conversion.

See Also: [Change Where the Files are Saved](#)

Output File Name

Output File Name

Base file name



Leave this blank to use the filename from the print job.



Remove product extension from print job filename



Remove product name from print job filename

Base file name

This is the base filename for your output file. If this field is empty, the filename from the print job will be used. The base filename excludes any

directory path and file extension. If you want your images to always use the same filename, enter that name here. Select the folder icon to browse to an existing filename on your computer.

Advanced file naming options are available on the [Filename Creator tab](#).

Remove product extension from print job filename

By default this setting is enabled. PDF Image Printer automatically inserts the appropriate file format extension of the new output file type. Disabling this settings means that, in addition to the output file extension, the file extension from the original print job filename will also be maintained in the output filename.

Remove product name from print job filename

By default this setting is enabled. Some applications precede the document name with the name of their product. Disabling this setting means that the product name from the print job will be maintained in the output filename.

File Splitting

File Splitting

Start a new file after MB

Start a new file after pages

File splitting is only available for multipaged file formats (ex. PDF Multipaged)

Split after size

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means your file will be split into a new file based on a size threshold. The file will be split when the size exceeds the threshold. When file splitting is enabled, the file splitting naming scheme is always used to name each file in the sequence. File size and page count splitting can be used together.

Split every N pages

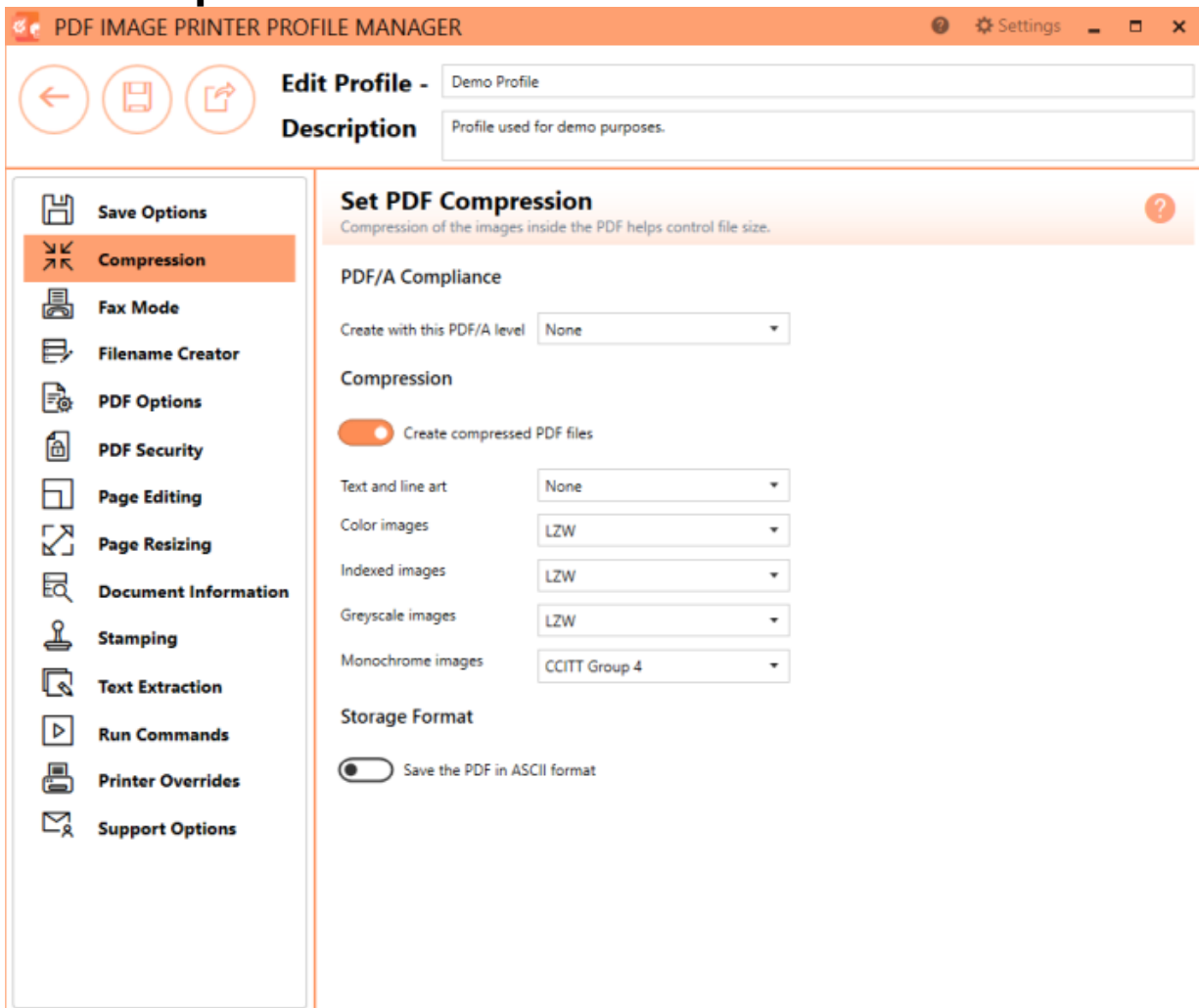
By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means your file will be split into a new file based on the page count. When file splitting is enabled, the file splitting naming scheme is always used to name each file in the sequence. File size and page count splitting can be used together.

See *Also*: [Automatically Split Files](#)

Compression

Changing the compression options can have a large impact on the size of the file but care must be taken when choosing compression methods as the file contents can also determine how well the chosen compression method will work. For instance, full color publication from Microsoft® Publisher or similar will compress better using JPEG compression than using Packbits because JPEG compression was designed to compress images with lots of color variation while Packbits works best with runs of solid colors in the image.

► PDF Compression



PDF/A Compliance

This setting is only available if **Create each page of the PDF as an image** is enabled on the Save Options tab. A PDF file created with PDF/A-1b compliance is meant for long-term archiving of electronic documents and ensures that the document is visually correct. When creating a PDF/A-1b compliant PDF file, all PDF security options are automatically ignored and any LZW compression is replaced with ZIP compression.

Compression

By default, compression is enabled for all PDF files created. Turning the compression options off will increase the size of your document.

Note: PDF Compression only applies to images within a PDF file. For searchable PDFs, the PDF compression settings are only applied to any imaged embedded in the Adobe PDF file. For non-searchable PDFs, the PDF compression is applied to the whole page since each page inside a non-searchable PDF file is an image.

The default compression methods chosen for each color type will often give the smallest PDF file. When changing compression methods, be sure that you are changing the correct compression field in relation to the coloration of the image.

Text and Line Art - Always used when selected. Not affected by the color mode.

- None
- Run Length
- Zip
- LZW

Color Images - Used when Color Reduction on the Save Options tab is set to *Reduce Color to Optimal Palette* and there are more than 256 colors in the document, or when Color Reduction on the Save Options tab is set to None.

- None
- JPEG (Low, Medium Low, Medium, Medium High, High)
- Run Length

- LZW

Indexed Images - Used when Color Reduction on the Save Options tab is set to *Reduce Colors to Optimal Palette* and there is less than 256 colors in the document.

- None
- JPEG (Low, Medium Low, Medium, Medium High, High)
- Run Length
- LZW

Greyscale Images - Used when Color Reduction on the Save Options tab is set to *Reduce Colors to Optimal Palette* and there are only greyscale colors in the document, or when Color Reduction on the Save Options tab is set to *Reduce Colors to Greyscale*.

- None
- JPEG (Low, Medium Low, Medium, Medium High, High)
- Run Length
- LZW

Monochrome Images - Used when Color Reduction on the Save Options tab is set to *Reduce Colors to Optimal Palette* and there are only 2 colors, black and white, in the document, or when Color Reduction on the Save Options tab is set to *Reduce Colors to Black and White*.

- None
- CCITT Group 3 1D
- CCITT Group 3 2D
- CCITT Group 4
- CCITT Modified Huffman

Storage Format

The ASCII format compression option creates a 7-bit compressed PDF file. This option is rarely needed anymore and is only included for compatibility

with older networks and e-mail systems. Leave this option disabled to create an 8-bit compressed document.

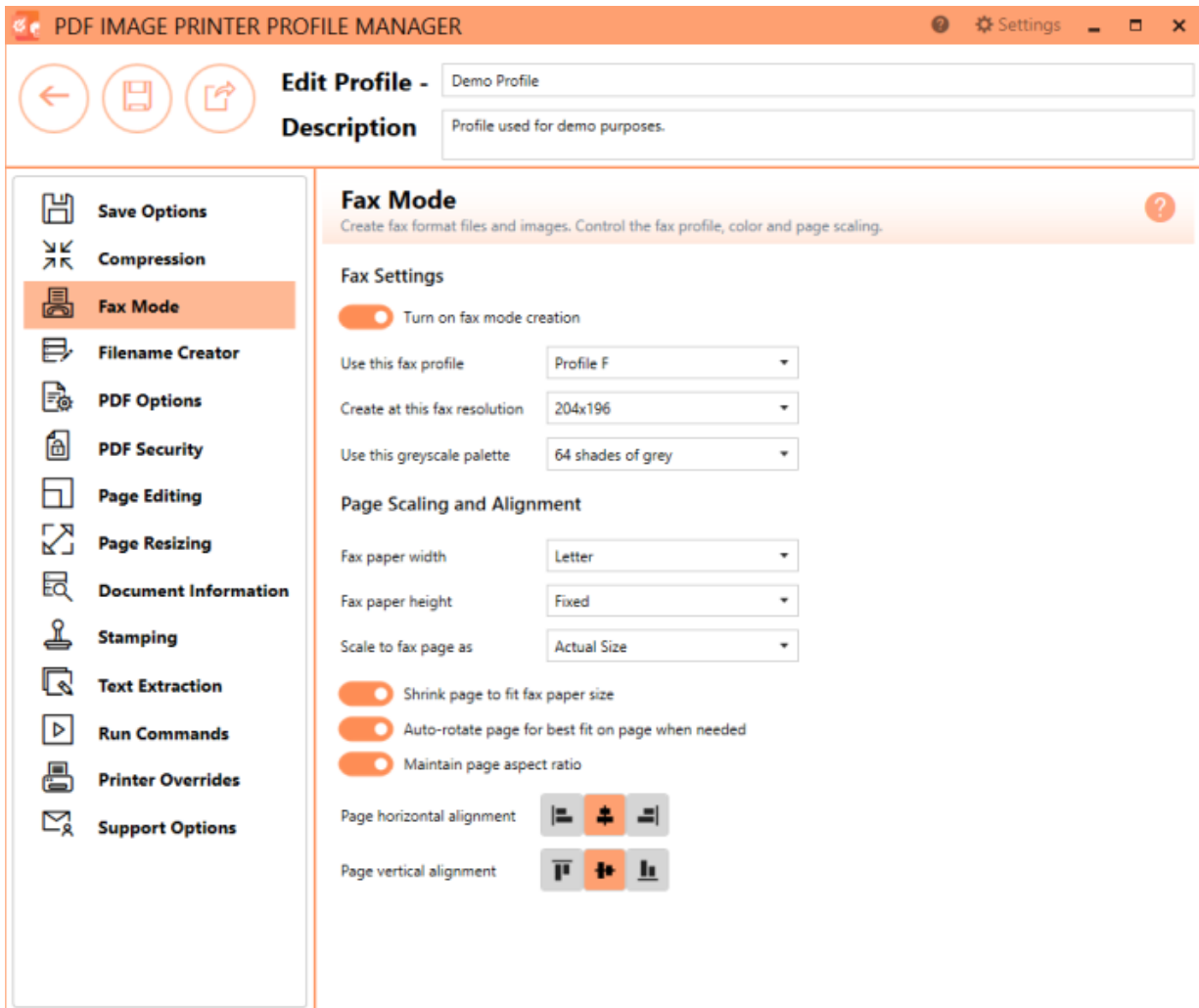
See Also:

[Reduce Searchable PDF File Size](#)

[Reduce Non-Searchable PDF File Size](#)

Fax Mode

The Fax Mode tab holds all settings used to create fax-format images and files. On this tab you can control the fax profile, create your fax in various paper size, and determine how the fax image is scaled and aligned on the page. For searchable PDFs (ie. Adobe PDF), PDF Image Printer can only create files that are restricted to fax paper size. For non-searchable PDFs (note: Create each page of the PDF as an image is enabled on the Save Options tab) PDF Image Printer can create files that are restricted to both fax resolutions and fax paper size.



See Also: [Create Fax Format Files](#)

Fax Settings

Enable fax mode creation

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer will create faxable files.

Fax profile

Select a fax format profile for your output file.

- Profile F will create standard monochrome faxes.
- Profile S will create simplified monochrome faxes.
- Profile C will create color faxes.

Fax resolution

Different fax profiles allow different fax resolutions, with Profile F having the most.

Fax Resolution	Profiles S	Profile F	Profile C
100x100		✓	✓
200x100	✓	✓	
200x200	✓	✓	✓
204x98	✓	✓	
204x196	✓	✓	
204x391		✓	
300x300		✓	✓
300x600		✓	
400x400		✓	✓
400x800		✓	
408x391		✓	
600x600		✓	✓
600x1200		✓	
1200x1200		✓	✓

Greyscale palette

By default, the greyscale palette is set to *64 shades of grey* to reduce the size of the fax and eliminate low intensity colors used normally to shape areas. There is also the option to allow fax mode to use the full *256 shades of grey* when dithering to black and white.

Page Scaling and Alignment

Fax paper width

Sets the width of the fax paper to be used when creating the faxable image. If you choose one of the paper sizes: Letter, Legal, A4, B4, or A3, the width of your original document will be scaled to fit this selection, based on the scaling options chosen. If you choose Auto, the original paper size of your source document will be used to find the closed match of the five paper sizes and that size will be used.

Fax paper height

Sets the height of the fax image.

- *Fixed fax paper height* will limit the image length based on the *Fax Paper Width* chosen above. Any scaling required is done based on the scaling options chosen.
- *Variable fax paper height* will vary the image length depending on the size of the document sent to the printer and its resulting size after being scaled to fit the chosen *Fax Paper Width*.

Fax page scaling

Determines how the original information is placed on the fax sized image.

- *Fit to Page* will scale the original page to fit on the fax paper size chosen, scaling up to a larger page size or down to a smaller page size as needed. Pages will maintain their aspect ratio if **Maintain page aspect ratio** is enabled.
- *Actual Size* keeps the original information at the same size. Any part that does not fit on the fax paper is cut off. If **Shrink page to fit fax**

paper size is enabled, then you also have the choice of maintaining the aspect ratio.

Shrink page to fit fax paper size

By default this setting is enabled. Scales the image down to fit the fax paper if the original image is larger.

Auto-rotate page to best fit on page when needed

By default this setting is enabled. The original image is rotated to fit on the fax-sized paper if the rotated image will fit without having to scale the image.

Maintain page aspect ratio

By default this setting is enabled. Prevents distortion when scaling larger or smaller pages. When this option is enabled, the height and width of the page change in relation to one another.

Page horizontal alignment

By default, horizontal alignment is set to center. Choose how to horizontally align the incoming image on the fax-sized paper.

- *Left* will align the left side of the image to the left side of the fax paper.
- *Center* will center the image in the horizontal middle of the fax paper.
- *Right* will align the right side of the image to the right side of the fax paper.

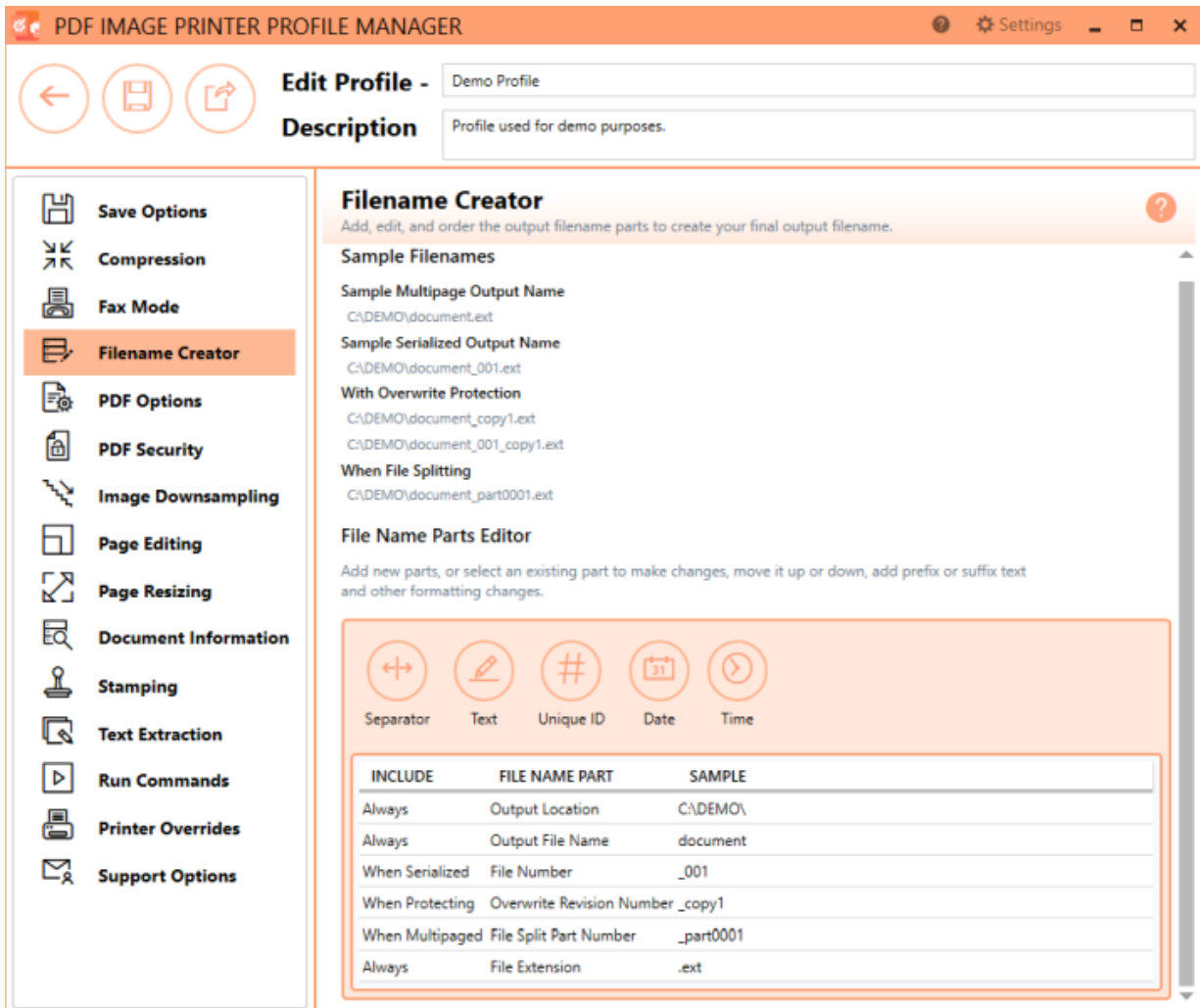
Page vertical alignment

By default, horizontal alignment is set to center. Choose how to vertically align the incoming image on the fax-sized paper.

- *Top* will align the top of the image to the top of the fax paper.
- *Center* will center the image in the vertical middle of the fax paper.
- *Bottom* will align the bottom of the image to the bottom of the fax paper.

Filename Creator

The Filename Creator tab allow you to add, edit, and reorder output filename parts to automatically create unique filenames for your PDF Image Printer output files.



Using File Name Parts Editor

The File Name Parts Editor allows users to add new parts, select an existing part to make changes, move parts up or down, add prefix or suffix text, and make other formatting changes.

- *Add new parts* - Select a button across the top to add a new file name part.

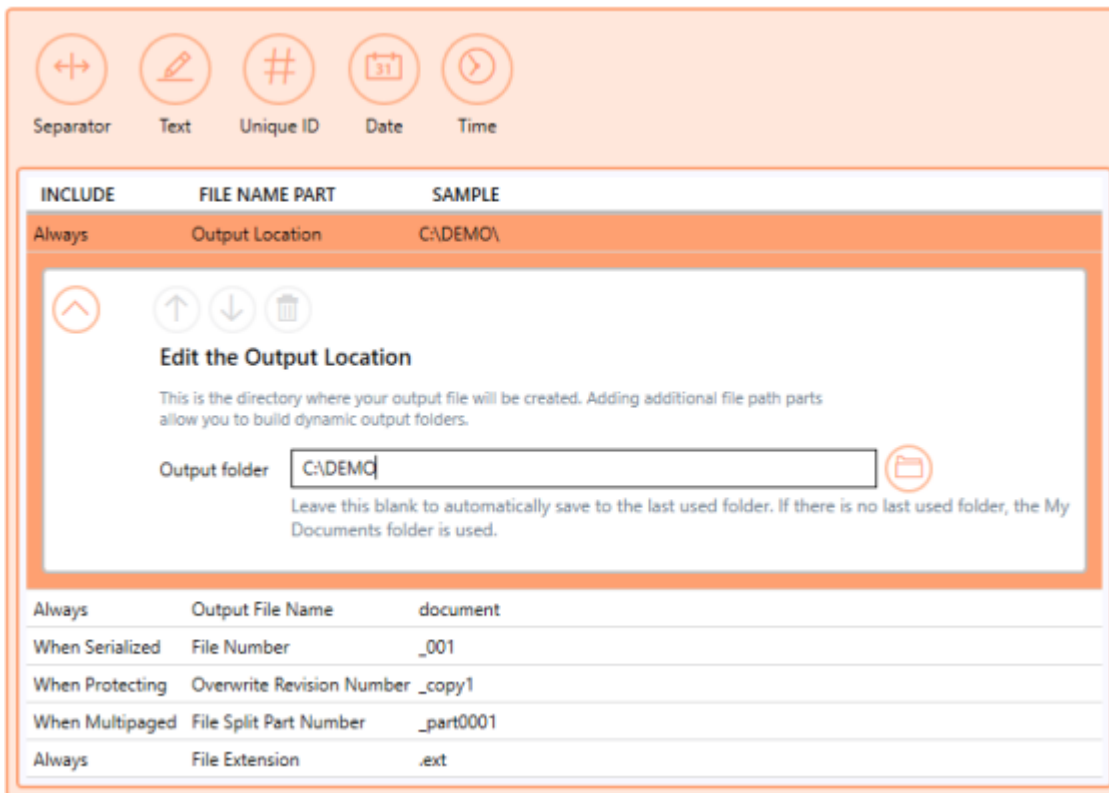
- *Select an existing part to make changes* - Hover over file name parts until the desired file name part is highlighted, and click to edit.
- *Hide details of selected part* - Click the left-most close arrow to hide details of selected file name part. Selecting another file name part will also close the previous file name part.
- *Move parts up or down* - Click the up and down arrows from within the edit window of a file name part to re-order file name parts. There are some file name parts which cannot be reordered.
- *Delete parts* - Click the trash bin to delete unwanted file name parts. There are some file name parts which are required and cannot be deleted.

File Name Parts

Output Location

This is the default directory for saving your output files. If this field is empty, the My Documents folder is used as the default directory. Select the folder icon to browse to your desired folder location or enter in the absolute path (for example, C:\My Files) of the directory to be used. If the path entered does not exist, an error message will appear giving you the option to create the new folder now or wait to create the new folder during conversion.

Any changes made to this file name part will be reflected on the [Save Options tab](#).



See Also: [Create a Custom Filename](#)

Output File Name

This is the base filename for your output file. If this field is empty, the last used folder is used as the default directory. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used. The base filename excludes any directory path and file extension. If you want your images to always use the same filename, enter that name here. Select the folder icon to browse to an existing filename on your computer.

Any changes made to this file name part will be reflected on the [Save Options tab](#).

The screenshot shows the 'Filename Creator' interface. At the top, there are five icons representing different file naming options: Separator, Text, Unique ID, Date, and Time. Below these is a table with columns 'INCLUDE', 'FILE NAME PART', and 'SAMPLE'. The table contains the following rows:

INCLUDE	FILE NAME PART	SAMPLE
Always	Output Location	C:\DEMO\
Always	Output File Name	document
When Serialized	File Number	_001
When Protecting	Overwrite Revision Number	_copy1
When Multipaged	File Split Part Number	_part0001
Always	File Extension	.ext

Below the table is a dialog box titled 'Edit the Output File Name'. It contains the following elements:

- Navigation icons: Home, Up, Down, and Delete.
- Section title: 'Edit the Output File Name'.
- Instruction: 'Leave this empty to use the document name, or set a default name that will be used for all files.'
- Text input field: 'Base file name' with a text box and a copy icon.
- Instruction: 'Leave this blank to use the filename from the print job.'
- Toggle switch: 'Include this prefix text' with an empty text box.
- Toggle switch: 'Include this suffix text' with an empty text box.

See Also: [Create a Custom Filename](#)

File Number

Used when creating [serialized output](#) when appending additional files to an existing sequence. This is the number of the current file in the sequence. There is the option to add or remove prefix/suffix text or increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.

The screenshot shows the Profile Manager Filename Creator interface. At the top, there are five icons: Separator, Text, Unique ID, Date, and Time. Below these is a table with columns 'INCLUDE', 'FILE NAME PART', and 'SAMPLE'. The table contains the following rows:

INCLUDE	FILE NAME PART	SAMPLE
Always	Output Location	C:\DEMO\
Always	Output File Name	document
When Serialized	File Number	_001
When Protecting	Overwrite Revision Number	_copy1
When Multipaged	File Split Part Number	_part0001
Always	File Extension	.ext

The 'File Number' row is highlighted, and a dialog box titled 'Edit the File Number' is open. The dialog box contains the following text and controls:

Edit the File Number
Used when creating serialized output when appending additional files to an existing sequence. This is the number of the current file in the sequence.

Pad with zeroes to a minimum width of characters

Include this prefix text

Include this suffix text

Overwrite Revision Number

Used when [prompting is disabled and override protection is enabled](#). There is the option to add or remove prefix/suffix text or increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.

The interface shows a top toolbar with icons for Separator, Text, Unique ID, Date, and Time. Below is a table of settings:

INCLUDE	FILE NAME PART	SAMPLE
Always	Output Location	C:\DEMO\
Always	Output File Name	document
When Serialized	File Number	_001
When Protecting	Overwrite Revision Number	_copy1
When Multipaged	File Split Part Number	_part0001
Always	File Extension	.ext

The 'Overwrite Revision Number' setting is expanded to show the following configuration:

Edit the Overwrite Revision Number

When override protection is on, this part formats the text added to create a unique file name.

Pad with zeroes to a minimum width of characters

Include this prefix text

Include this suffix text

File Split Part Number

Used when [automatically splitting](#) multipaged files by file sizes or number of pages. There is the option to add or remove prefix/suffix text or increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.

The screenshot shows the 'PDF Image Printer' configuration window. At the top, there are five icons representing different file naming options: Separator, Text, Unique ID, Date, and Time. Below these is a table with columns 'INCLUDE', 'FILE NAME PART', and 'SAMPLE'. The table lists various conditions and their corresponding file name parts and samples. A modal window titled 'Edit the File Split Part Number' is open, showing options to pad with zeroes, include prefix text (currently '_part'), and include suffix text. The 'File Extension' is set to '.ext'.

INCLUDE	FILE NAME PART	SAMPLE
Always	Output Location	C:\DEMO\
Always	Output File Name	document
When Serialized	File Number	_001
When Protecting	Overwrite Revision Number	_copy1
When Multipaged	File Split Part Number	_part0001

Edit the File Split Part Number

When splitting multipaged files by size or pages is on, this file name part is added to the file name.

Pad with zeroes to a minimum width of characters

Include this prefix text

Include this suffix text

Always File Extension .ext

File Extension

By default, the file extension of the output file will match the [output type selected](#). There is the option to replace the default file extension with a custom extension.

The screenshot shows the Filename Creator interface. At the top, there are five icons: Separator (a double-headed arrow), Text (a pencil), Unique ID (a hash symbol), Date (a calendar), and Time (a clock). Below these icons is a table with three columns: INCLUDE, FILE NAME PART, and SAMPLE. The table contains the following rows:

INCLUDE	FILE NAME PART	SAMPLE
Always	Output Location	C:\DEMO\
Always	Output File Name	document
When Serialized	File Number	_001
When Protecting	Overwrite Revision Number	_copy1
When Multipaged	File Split Part Number	_part0001
Always	File Extension	.ext

Below the table is a dialog box titled "Edit the File Extension". It contains the following text: "Use a custom file extension or leave blank to use the default output file type extension." There is a toggle switch labeled "Replace default file extension with" which is currently turned on. To the right of the toggle is an empty text input field.

Separator

Add a path separator to a filename. Useful for creating dynamic output folders on the fly.

The screenshot shows the 'Profile Manager Filename Creator' interface. At the top, there are five icons: Separator, Text, Unique ID, Date, and Time. Below these is a table with columns 'INCLUDE', 'FILE NAME PART', and 'SAMPLE'. The table contains several rows, with the 'Path Separator' row highlighted in orange. Below the table is a modal window titled 'Edit the Path Separator' with a toggle switch for 'Include this file part' which is currently turned on. Below the modal is another table with columns 'INCLUDE', 'FILE NAME PART', and 'SAMPLE'.

INCLUDE	FILE NAME PART	SAMPLE
Always	Output Location	C:\DEMO\
Always	Output File Name	document
Yes	Path Separator	\

Edit the Path Separator

Add a path separator to your filename, useful for creating dynamic output folders on the fly.

Include this file part

Yes	Custom Text	DEMO
When Serialized	File Number	_001
When Protecting	Overwrite Revision Number	_copy1
When Multipaged	File Split Part Number	_part0001
Always	File Extension	.ext

See Also: [Create Dynamic Output Folders](#)

Text

Add custom text as part of a filename or directory path. There is the option to enter a custom text string and add or remove prefix/suffix text.

The screenshot shows the 'Unique ID' configuration page in the Profile Manager Filename Creator. At the top, there are five icons representing different file name parts: Separator, Text, Unique ID, Date, and Time. Below these is a table with columns 'INCLUDE', 'FILE NAME PART', and 'SAMPLE'. The 'Unique ID' row is highlighted in orange. Below the table is a modal window titled 'Edit the Custom Text' with a description 'Add custom text as part of a file name or directory path.' It contains a toggle switch for 'Include this file part' (which is turned on), and three input fields for 'Custom text string', 'Include this prefix text', and 'Include this suffix text'. The 'Custom text string' field contains the text 'DEMO'. Below the modal is another table with columns 'When Serialized', 'File Name Part', and 'SAMPLE'.

INCLUDE	FILE NAME PART	SAMPLE
Always	Output Location	C:\DEMO\
Always	Output File Name	document
Yes	Path Separator	\
Yes	Custom Text	DEMO

⬆ ⬆ ⬆ 🗑
Edit the Custom Text
Add custom text as part of a file name or directory path.

Include this file part

Custom text string

Include this prefix text

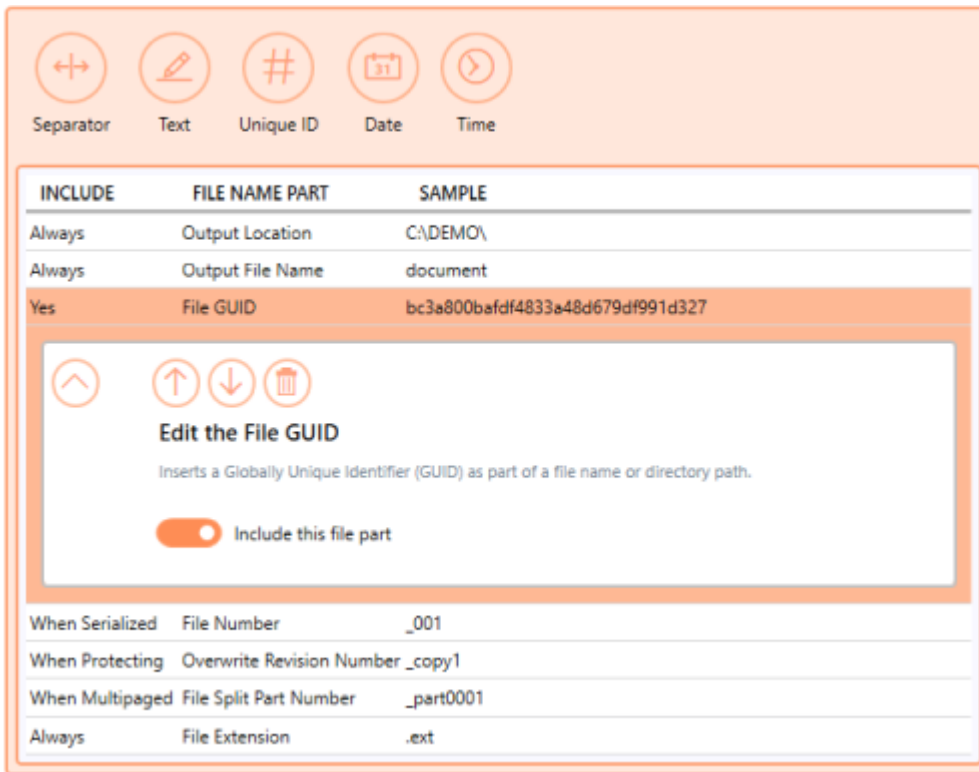
Include this suffix text

When Serialized	File Number	_001
When Protecting	Overwrite Revision Number	_copy1
When Multipaged	File Split Part Number	_part0001
Always	File Extension	.ext

See Also: [Create Custom Filename with Custom Text](#)

Unique ID

Insert a Globally Unique Identifier (GUID) as part of a file name or directory path.



See Also: [Create Custom Filename with Unique File ID \(GUID\)](#)

Date

- *Add Year* - Insert the 4-digit year into a file name or directory path. There is the option to add or remove prefix/suffix text.
- *Add Month* - Insert the 2-digit minute (01 to 12) into a file name or directory path. There is the option to add or remove prefix/suffix text.
- *Add Day* - Insert the 2-digit day (01 to 31) into a file name or directory path. There is the option to add or remove prefix/suffix text.

Yes	Year	2020
<div style="border: 2px solid orange; padding: 10px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> ↑ ↑ ↓ 🗑️ </div> <h3>Edit the Year Format</h3> <p>Insert the 4-digit year into your file name or folder path. Use prefix and suffix text to separate it from other formatting pieces.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include this file part</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Include this prefix text <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Include this suffix text <input type="text"/></p> </div>		
Yes	Month	01
Yes	Day	01

Time

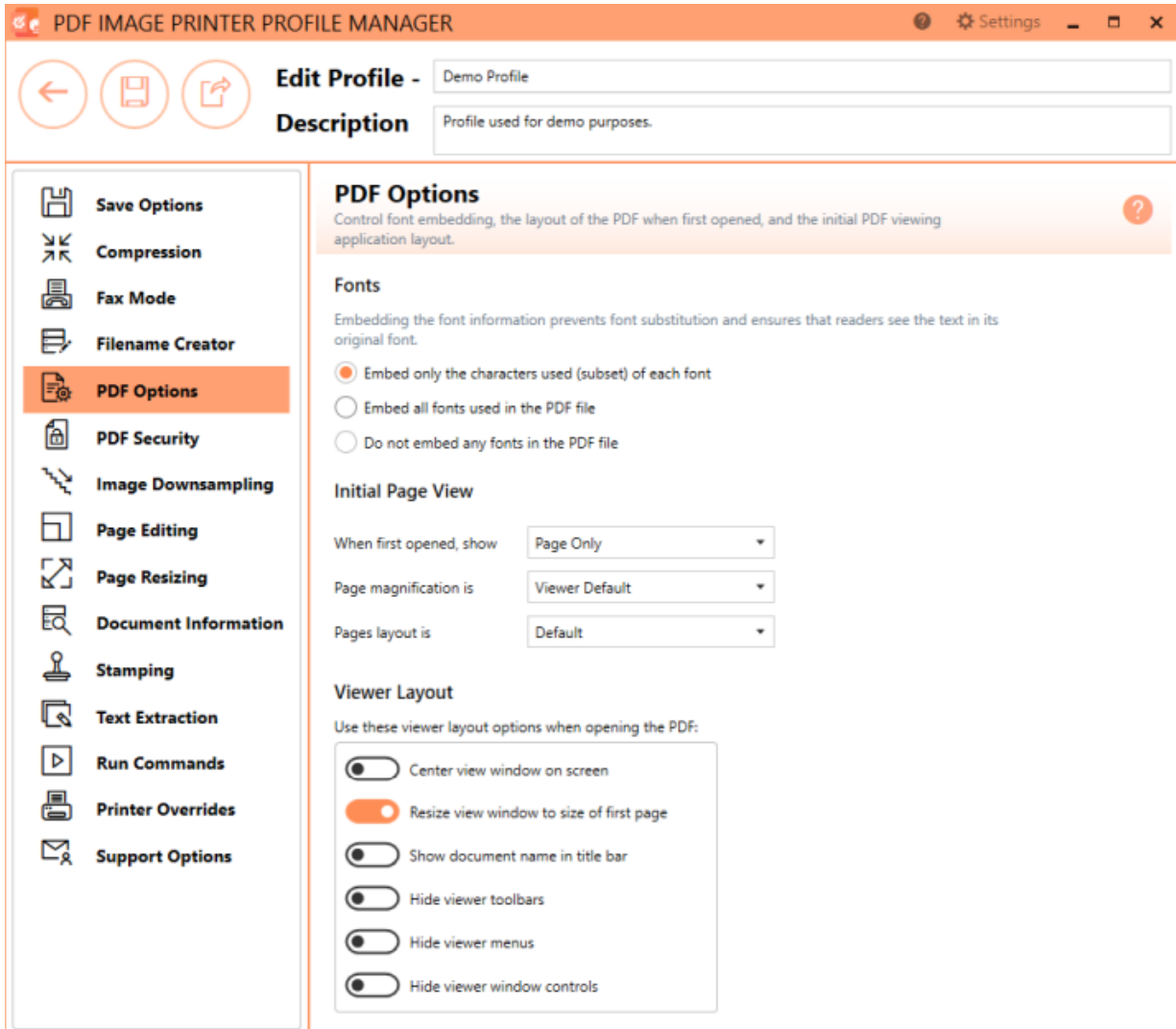
- *Add Hour* - Insert the 2-digit hour (00 to 23) into a file name or directory path. There is the option to add or remove prefix/suffix text.
- *Add Minute* - Insert the 2-digit minute (00 to 59) into a file name or directory path. There is the option to add or remove prefix/suffix text.
- *Add Second* - Insert the 2-digit second (00 to 59) into a file name or directory path. There is the option to add or remove prefix/suffix text.

Yes	Hour	13
<div style="border: 2px solid orange; padding: 10px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> ↑ ↑ ↓ 🗑️ </div> <h3>Edit the Hour Format</h3> <p>Insert the 2-digit hour (00-23) into your file name or folder path. Use prefix and suffix text to separate it from other formatting pieces.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include this file part</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Include this prefix text <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Include this suffix text <input type="text"/></p> </div>		
Yes	Minute	30
Yes	Second	45

See Also: [Create Custom Filename with Date and Time](#)

PDF Options

The PDF Options tab holds all PDF specific settings including embedding of fonts and PDF viewer layout .



Fonts

By default, PDF Image Printer embeds only the characters used (subset) of each font. Embedding the font information prevents font substitution and ensures that readers see the text in its original font. There are three font embedding options:

- *Embed only the characters used (subset) of each font*
- *Embed all fonts used in the PDF file*

- *Do not embed any fonts in the PDF file*

Initial Page View

Depending on the contents of your PDF file, you may want control over how that file is initially displayed to the user when it is opened in a PDF viewer such as Adobe Reader.

When first opened

By default, the PDF viewer is set to show the *page only* when the PDF first opened. This setting determines which panes and tabs are visible when the PDF file is first viewed.

- *Page Only* - hides the navigation panel and its tabs and shows only the page in the document pane
- *Bookmark Panel and Page* - shows the navigation panel set to the Bookmarks tab, and shows the page in the document pane
- *Pages Panel and Page* - shows the navigation panel set to the Pages tab, and shows the page in the document pane
- *Full Screen* - displays the PDF in full screen mode
- *Full Screen with Bookmark Panel* - displays the PDF in full screen mode with a popup window displaying the Bookmark tab
- *Full Screen with Pages Panel* - displays the PDF in full screen mode with a popup windows displaying the Pages tab

Page magnification

By default, the PDF viewer is set to display the file at *viewer default* magnification. This setting sets the magnification, or zoom level, used when the file is first opened.

- *Viewer Default* - uses the viewing applications default page magnification setting
- *Fit Visible* - magnification adjusted so that the text and images on the page fit the width of the PDF viewer's document window

- *Fit Height* - magnification adjusted so that the entire page will fit the PDF viewer's document window vertically
- *Fit Width* - magnification adjusted so that the entire page will fit the PDF viewer's document window horizontally (in this mode parts of the page may be out of view)
- *Fit Page* - magnification adjusted so that the entire page fits the width of the PDF viewer's document window
- *Actual Size* - page displayed at 100% magnification
- *Magnification Levels* - set the initial page magnification to a preset level ranging from 25% up to 6400%

Pages layout

By default, the PDF viewer is set to the file using the viewer's *default* layout. This setting determines the view of the pages in the document pane.

- *Default* - uses the individual user's preferences for page view as set in the PDF viewer
- *Single* - shows a single page at a time
- *Continuous* - shows all the pages in a single column
- *Facing* - shows the pages in two columns, two pages at a time, starting with the first page in the right-most column
- *Continuous Facing* - shows all the pages in two columns, starting with the first page in the right-most column, with continuous scrolling

View Layout

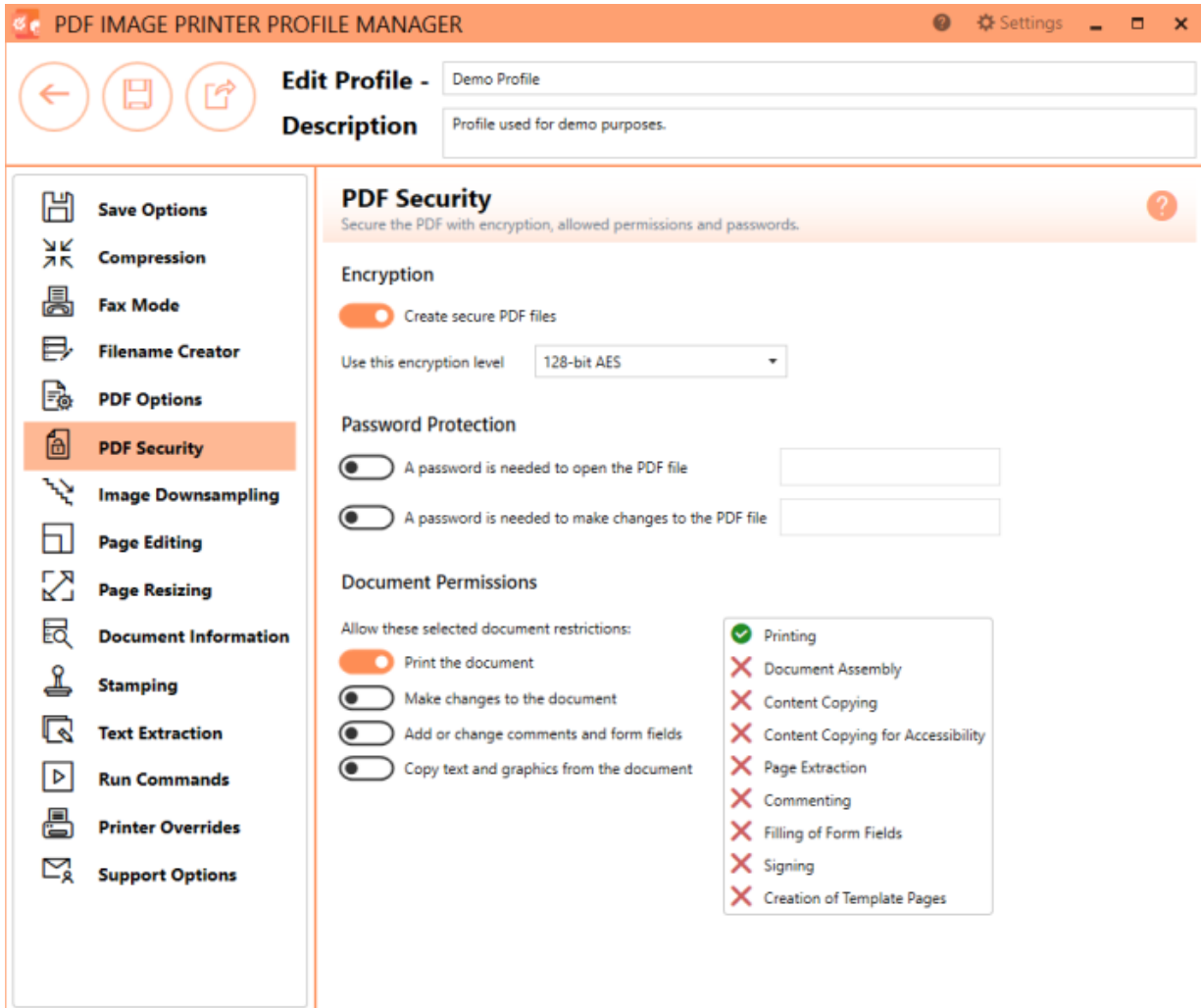
These options can be used to control how the PDF viewer application looks when the PDF file is opened. These options are recognized by Adobe Acrobat and Adobe Reader. They may or may not be recognized by a third-party PDF viewer.

- *Center view window on screen*
- *Resize view window to size of first page*
- *Show document name in title bar*
- *Hide viewer toolbars*

- *Hide viewer menus*
- *Hide viewer window controls*

PDF Security

The PDF Security tab holds all PDF security settings including file encryption, file permissions and password protection .



Encryption

Enable creation of secure PDF files

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer will create secure PDF files.

Encryption Level

By default, the encryption level is set to *128-bit AES*, which is supported by all recent version of Adobe Reader. If you only need to support Adobe Reader 9.0 or higher we recommend using *256-bit AES* encryption as this is an even better encryption algorithm.

- *40-bit RC4* - PDF file can be opened in Adobe Reader 3.0 or later versions
- *128-bit RC4* - PDF file can be opened in Adobe Reader 5.0 or later versions
- *128-bit AES* - PDF file can be opened in Adobe Reader 7.0 or later versions
- *256-bit AES* - PDF file can be opened in Adobe Reader 9.0 or later versions

Password Protection

There are two levels of password protection that can be set – one for opening the PDF file (also known as the document open password), and one for making changes or modifying the file (also called the permissions password).

A password is needed to open the PDF file

Enable this setting to require anyone opening this file to type in the password you specify. Hold the eye icon to unmask the password you have typed.

A password is needed to make changes to the PDF file

Enable this setting to require anyone making changes to this file to type in the password you specify. Hold the eye icon to unmask the password you have typed.

Document Permissions

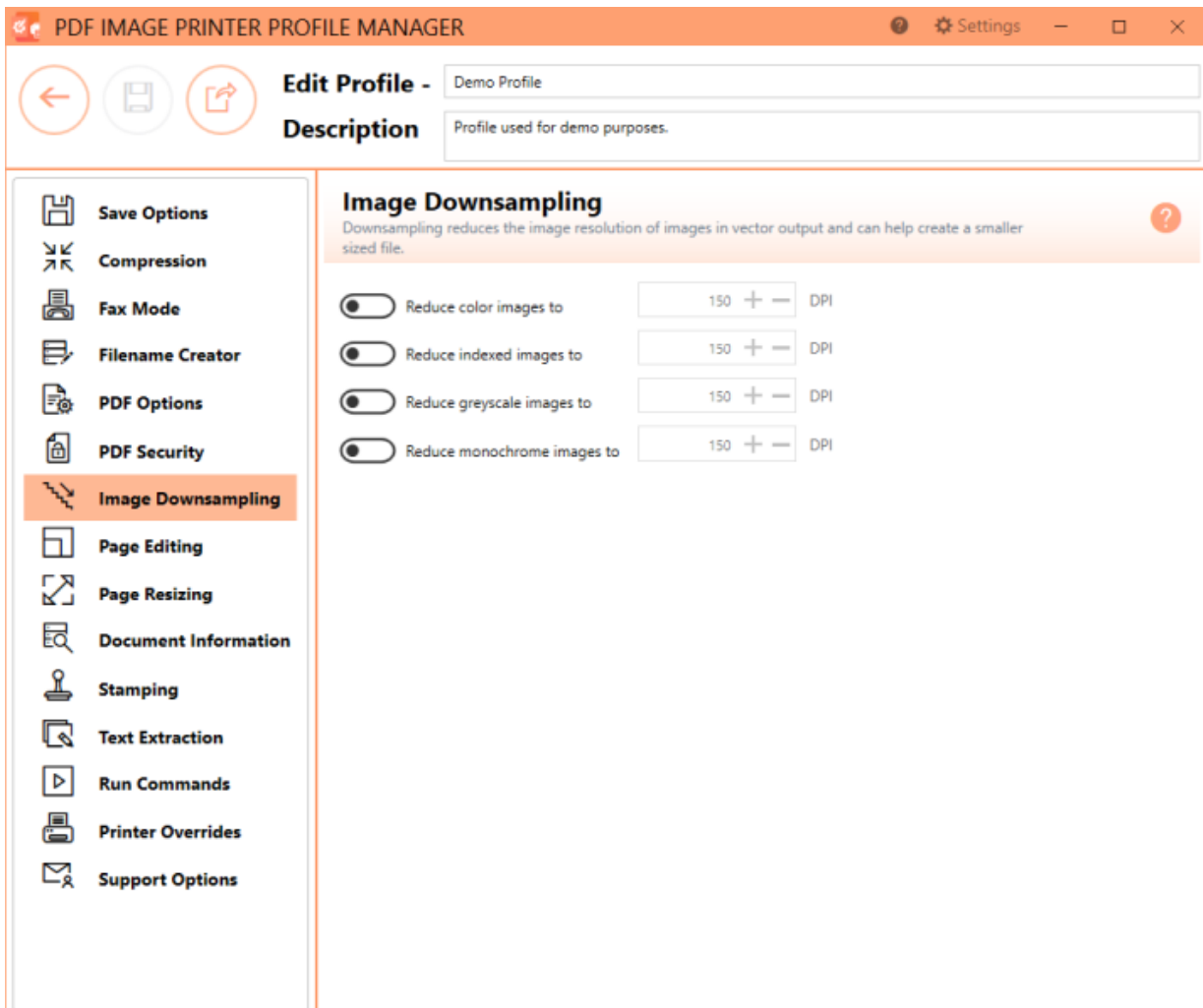
By default, users are only allowed to print secure PDF files. Depending on what you want viewers to be permitted to do with the PDF file you create, different permissions can be enabled or disabled.

- *Print the document* - allows printing
- *Make changes to the document* - allows filling of form fields, signing, and creation of template pages
- *Add or change comments and form fields* - allows commenting, filling of form fields, signing, and creation of template pages
- *Copy text and graphics from the document* - allows content copying and content copying for accessibility

See Also: [Set PDF Security Options](#)

Image Downsampling

The Image Downsampling tab is used to control the size and quality of any images (such as pictures, screenshots, company logos) in the PDF file, which can help reduce the final size of the PDF. This tab is only available if the output type is set to Adobe PDF on the Save Options tab; not available if **Create each page of the PDF as an image** is enabled on the Save Options tab.



Downsampling can be enabled or disabled and set to different levels for color, indexed, greyscale and monochrome (or black and white) images. By default, downsampling is enabled and set to 150 DPI for all 4 image coloration categories.

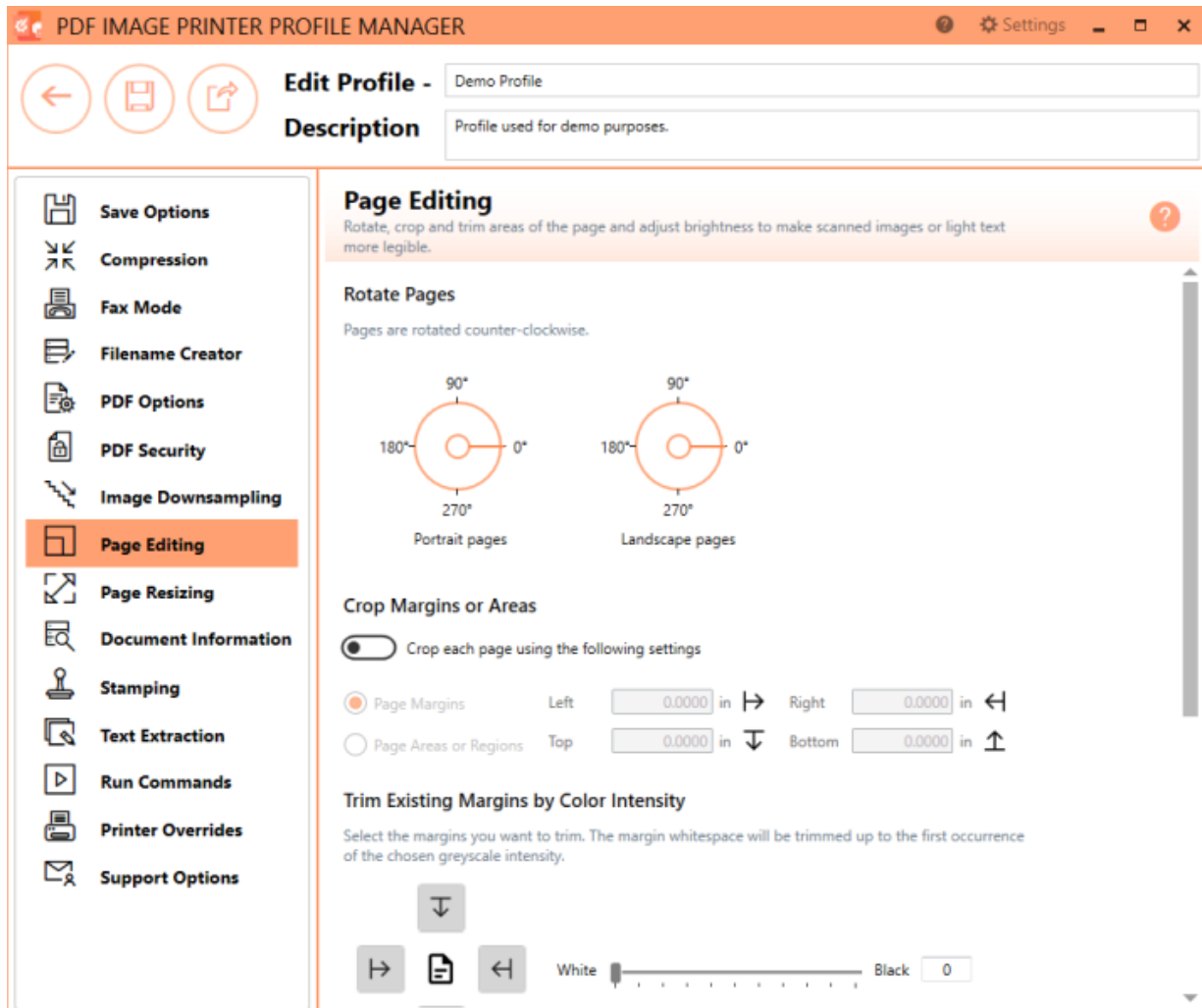
The downsampling DPI can be set anywhere between 50 DPI and 2400 DPI by typing the desired level into the edit field, or using the plus and minus buttons to the right of each edit field to set the value.

Images will only be downsampled if the DPI of the image is greater than the requested DPI. If the DPI of the image is already less than the downsampling DPI, the image is not changed.

See Also: [Reduce Searchable PDF File Size](#)

Page Editing

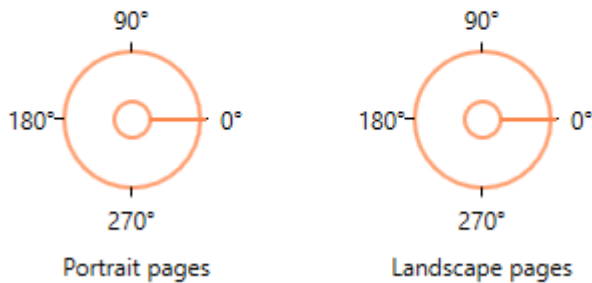
The Page Editing tab holds settings used to modify each page of the document, including rotate, crop and trim areas of the page, and adjust brightness to make scanned images or light text more legible.



Rotate Pages

Rotate Pages

Pages are rotated counter-clockwise.



Set any rotation options for the incoming pages before they are put into the output file. Rotation options can be set separately for Portrait and Landscape oriented pages.

Use the dials to select the degree of rotation for portrait and landscape oriented pages. All pages are rotated counter-clockwise. Pages can be rotated 0°, 90°, 180°, or 270°.

See Also: [Rotate Pages](#)

Crop Margins or Areas

Enable crop each page

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer will crop each page using either Page Margins or Page Areas or Regions.

If any rotation is chosen, cropping is applied as if the page was not rotated. For example, rotating a portrait page 90° counter-clockwise and cropping a 1" margin from the Top, will crop a 1" margin off the left hand side of the rotated page, which was originally the top of the page.

Page Margins

Crop Margins or Areas

Crop each page using the following settings

Page Margins Left in ⇨ Right in ⇤
 Page Areas or Regions Top in ⇩ Bottom in ⇧

Enter the desired measurements to crop margins of that width from the *Left*, *Top*, *Right*, or *Bottom* of the page. If all four fields are zero then no cropping is performed. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

See Also: [Crop Page Margins](#)

Page Areas or Regions

Crop Margins or Areas

Crop each page using the following settings

Page Margins Left in ⇨ Width in ⇄
 Page Areas or Regions Top in ⇩ Height in ⇕

Opposite to Page Margins, cropping using Page Areas or Regions using the entered measurements to determine what area of the page to preserve.

Enter the desired measurement to crop out a section of the page.

- The *Left* and *Top* measurement are the starting points for your cropped area; the left and topmost edges of the preserved area.
- The *Width* and *Height* are the actual dimensions of the area you want to crop from the original page.

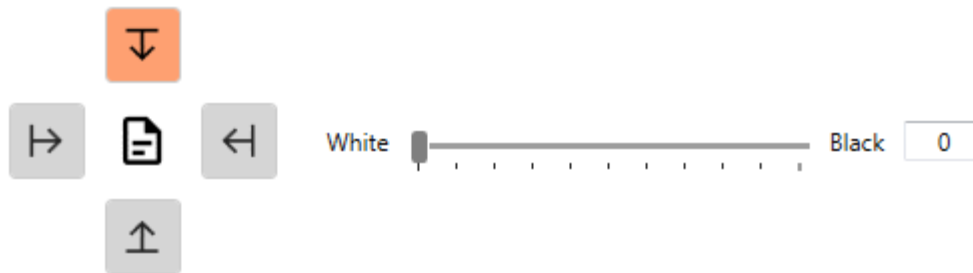
If all four fields are zero then no cropping is performed. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

See Also: [Crop Page Areas or Regions](#)

Trim Existing Margins by Color Intensity

Trim Existing Margins by Color Intensity

Select the margins you want to trim. The margin whitespace will be trimmed up to the first occurrence of the chosen greyscale intensity.



Trimming is similar to cropping. PDF Image Printer will automatically remove all areas on the chosen sides (*Left, Right, Top or Bottom*) of the image that fall at or below the chosen intensity level.

The intensity level is used to decide what pixels get thrown away. Colors are converted to a greyscale palette, and then compared to the chosen intensity level. Trimming on any side stops as soon as a pixel is encountered that is greater the chosen level.

Left/Right/Top/Bottom

Use the arrow buttons to select the side or sides of the document to be trimmed.

Intensity

By default, intensity is set to White. Use the sliding scale or enter in the absolute value to set the intensity level desired. When the intensity is set all the way to the left on White(0), only pure white pixels will be removed. The higher the intensity, the more colors will removed. If the intensity is set to

Black(100), the entire page will in effect be "trimmed", and the trimming operation is abandoned.

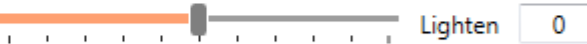
See Also: [Trim Existing Margins](#)


Adjust Page Brightness

Adjust Page Brightness

Lighten or darken the images and text on your pages to improve readability. Select the range of color intensity that the brightness adjustment affects.

Lighten or darken each page with the following settings

Change page brightness Darken  Lighten

Applies to this intensity range Black  White

This setting is only available if **Create each page of the PDF as an image** is enabled on the Save Options tab.

Enable lighten or darken each page with the following settings

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer lighten or darken the images or text on your pages to improve readability. Darkening the page can help to make light colored text more readable, or, conversely, lightening a page can make a dark image more visible.

Change page brightness

By default, page brightness is set in the middle. Use the sliding scale or enter in the absolute value to set the brightness desired.

Applies to this intensity range

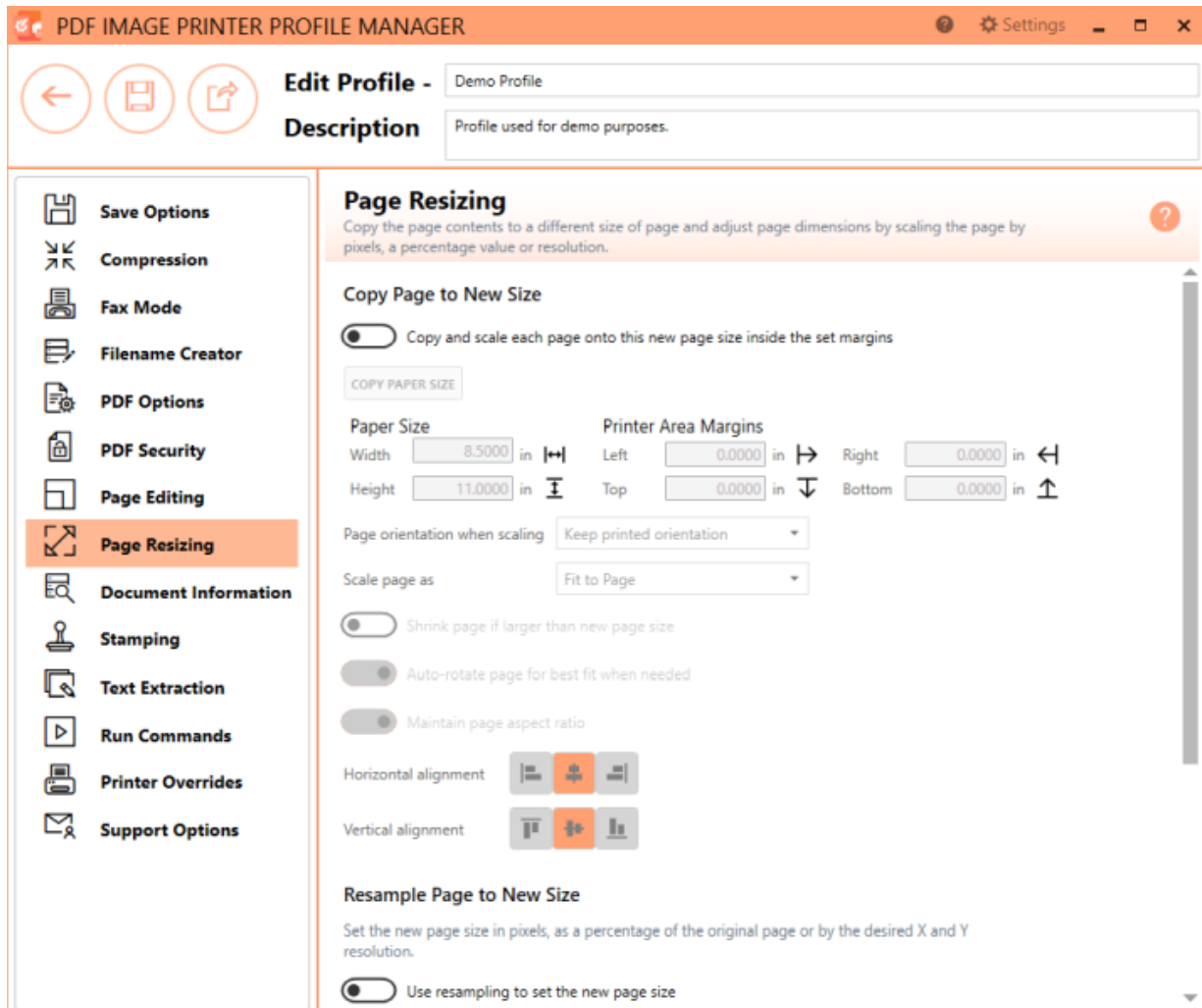
Use the two sliders or enter in the absolute values to set the intensities, or shades, to which you want the page brightening setting selected above

applied. All intensities between the two sliders will be brightened or darkened accordingly.

See *Also*: [Adjust Page Brightness](#)

Page Resizing

The Page Resizing tab holds settings used to modify page contents to fit a new page, including copy page to new size, resample page to new size, and add borders to page.



Copy Page to New Size

Copy Page to New Size

Copy and scale each page onto this new page size inside the set margins

COPY PAPER SIZE

Paper Size		Printer Area Margins			
Width	<input type="text" value="8.5000"/> in	Left	<input type="text" value="0.0000"/> in	Right	<input type="text" value="0.0000"/> in
Height	<input type="text" value="11.0000"/> in	Top	<input type="text" value="0.0000"/> in	Bottom	<input type="text" value="0.0000"/> in

Page orientation when scaling Keep printed orientation

Scale page as Fit to Page

Shrink page if larger than new page size

Auto-rotate page for best fit when needed

Maintain page aspect ratio

Horizontal alignment |≡ ≡ ≡|

Vertical alignment ≡ + ≡

Enable copy and scale each page onto this new page size inside the set margins

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer will copy and scale each page onto your desired new page size.

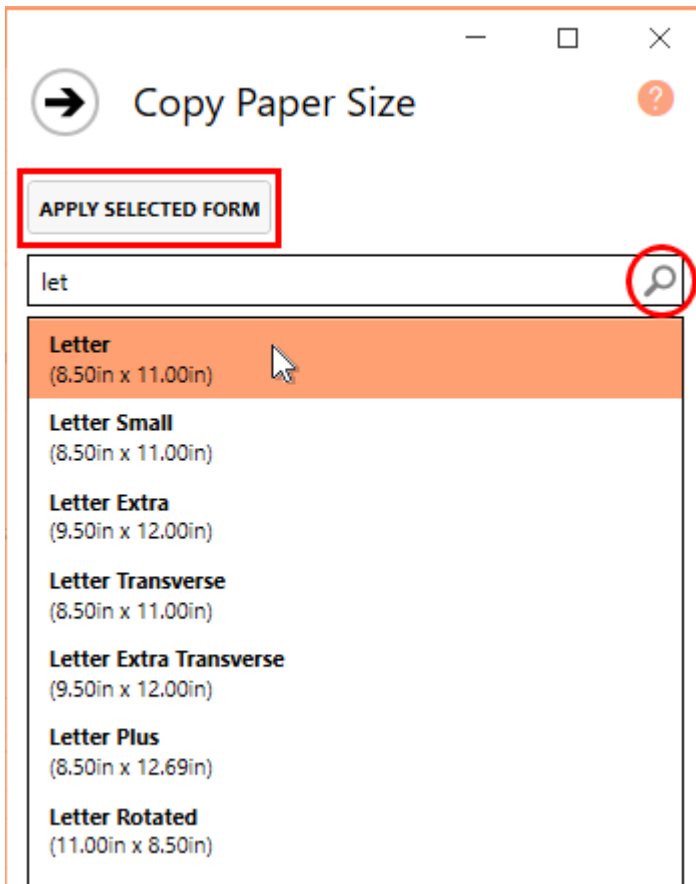
The concept of image copying is similar to enlarging or shrinking a page using a photocopier, with the added ability to position the page on the new image using the scaling and alignment options.

Paper Size

Enter the desired *Width* and *Height* of the new page.

Use the **Copy Paper Size** button to copy the dimensions from our list of standard paper sizes.

- Select **Copy Paper Size** to open the Copy Paper Size flyout.
- Use the filter field to search and refine the list.
- Click **Apply Selected Form** to copy selected paper size directly to *Width* and *Height* fields.



Dimensions for Paper Size are entered based on a portrait oriented page. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

Printer Area Margins

Enter the desired *Left*, *Right*, *Top* and *Bottom* image area margin settings for the new image. The original page will be copied inside this area using the scaling options as selected.

The combined *Left* and *Right* margins must be less than the *Width* of the new page. The combined *Top* and *Bottom* margins must be less than the *Height* of the new page.

Dimensions for Printer Area Margins are entered based on a portrait oriented page. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

Page Orientation

Determines the page orientation of new page.

- *Keep printed orientation* will maintain the original orientation of the page.
- *Force to portrait orientation* will create only portrait oriented pages. Any content from pages that were originally landscape will be auto-rotated to best fit the new portrait page, unless **auto-rotate page for best fit when needed** is disabled.
- *Force to landscape orientation* will create only landscape oriented pages. Any content from pages that were originally portrait will be auto-rotated to best fit the new landscape page, unless **auto-rotate page for best fit when needed** is disabled.

Page Scaling

By default page scaling is set to **Fit to Page**. Determines how the original page is placed on the new image.

- *Fit to Page* will scale the original page to fit on the new image size chosen, scaling up to a larger image or down to a smaller one as needed. Pages will maintain their aspect ratio if the **Maintain page aspect ratio** is enabled.
- *Actual Size* keeps the original information at the same size. Any part that does not fit on the new image size will be cut off. If **Shrink page if larger than new page size** is enabled, then you also have the choice of maintaining the aspect ratio. *Actual Size* is typically only required if your original document is a much smaller page size and you do not want the contents stretched to fit the new page size.

Shrink page if larger than new page size

Only available if page scaling is set to **Actual Size**. Scales the image down to fit the new page size if the original image is larger than the new page size.

Auto-rotate page for best fit when needed

By default this setting is enabled. Allows PDF Image Printer to rotate page content when necessary in order to best fit the new page size. This is most relevant when forcing portrait orientation or forcing landscape orientation, and page content needs to be rotated in order to best fit the new page orientation.

Disabling this settings means that the original orientation of the content from the original document will be preserved on the new page. For example, if the original page was landscape orientated, and you are copying the content of that page onto a new portrait page, if this setting is disabled, the content from the original will be shrunk down to fit in an upright orientation on the new portrait page.

See Also: [Rotate Pages](#)

Maintain page aspect ratio

By default this setting is enabled. This settings is used to prevent distortion when scaling larger or smaller page to different page sizes. When this option is on, the height and width of the page change in relation to one another.

Horizontal alignment

Choose how to horizontally align the original page contents on the new page.

- *Left* will align the left side of the page contents to the left side of the new page.
- *Middle* will center the page contents in the horizontal middle of the new page.
- *Right* will align the right side of the page contents to the right side of the new page.

Vertical alignment

Choose how to vertically align the original page contents on the new page.

- *Top* will align the top of the page contents to the top of the new page.
- *Middle* will center the page contents in the vertical middle of the new page.
- *Bottom* will align the bottom of the page contents to the bottom of the new page.

See Also: [Copy Page Contents to a New Page Size](#)

Resample Page to New Size

Resample Page to New Size

Set the new page size in pixels, as a percentage of the original page or by the desired X and Y resolution.

Use resampling to set the new page size

Maintain page aspect ratio when resampling

<input checked="" type="radio"/> Pixels	Width in pixels	↔	<input type="text" value="200"/>	+ -
<input type="radio"/> Percentage (%)				
<input type="radio"/> Resolution (DPI)	Height in pixels	↕	<input type="text" value="200"/>	+ -

This setting is only available if **Create each page of the PDF as an image** is enabled on the Save Options tab.

Enable use resampling to set the new page size

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer will scale the output file to a particular width and height in pixels, as a percentage of the original size, or by setting a new image resolution (DPI).

Maintain page aspect ratio when resampling

By default this setting is enabled. This settings means that *Height* will automatically be calculated to prevent distortion of the image. Disable this settings to enter a specific *Height* for your output file.

Pixels

Enter in the new file *Width* in pixels.

Percentage (%)

Enter in the new file *Width* as a percentage (%) of the original page size. You can scale images up to 500% larger, but note that if the image is very large to begin with, it may not scale successfully due to memory limitations.

Resolution (DPI)

Enter in the new X Resolution for your output file. You can scale as low as 50 DPI and up to as high as 3600 DPI.

See Also: [Resizing Images Using Resampling](#)

Add Borders to Page

Add Borders to Page

Add a custom-colored margin around the page. This will shrink the page contents to fit inside the bordered area.

Add a custom border to the page

Left	<input type="text" value="2.0000"/> in	↔	Right	<input type="text" value="2.0000"/> in	↔
Top	<input type="text" value="2.0000"/> in	↕	Bottom	<input type="text" value="2.0000"/> in	↕
Color	<input type="color" value="black"/>				

Enable add a custom border to the page

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer will add a custom-colored margin around the page. This will shrink the page contents to fit inside the bordered area.

This setting is commonly used to create a white border in order to create space to add a watermark to the header or footer of a page if the page contents previously went right to the edge of the page.

Border Size

Enter the desired measurements of custom border for the *Left, Top, Right, or Bottom* of the page. If all four fields are zero then no border is added. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

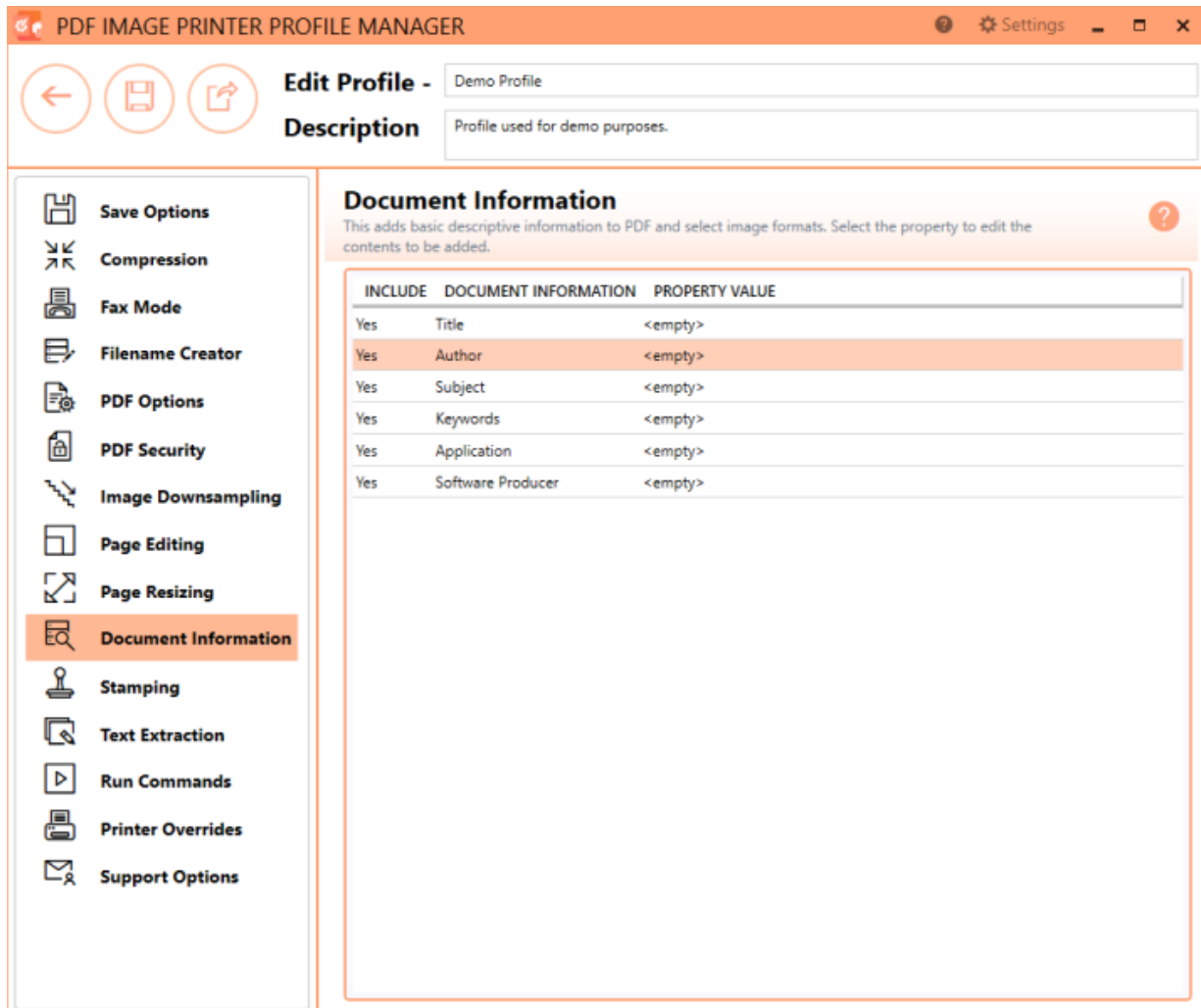
Border Color

Enter the desired color of custom border. Either use the color picker, entering the hex color code, or entering the RGBA color code. Note that the A slider will allow you to adjust the transparency of the border color.

See Also: [Add Borders to Page](#)

Document Information

The Document Information tab allows basic descriptive information to be added to your output file.



This information can later be viewed in most PDF viewers. If viewing your PDF file in Adobe Reader, the information be viewed by selecting File - Properties. These descriptions are used by Adobe's search engine and also by many search engines to describe the document in their results list.

Document Information

Select each document information type to expand the view. Enter the desired descriptive information in the **Property Value** field. To stop that

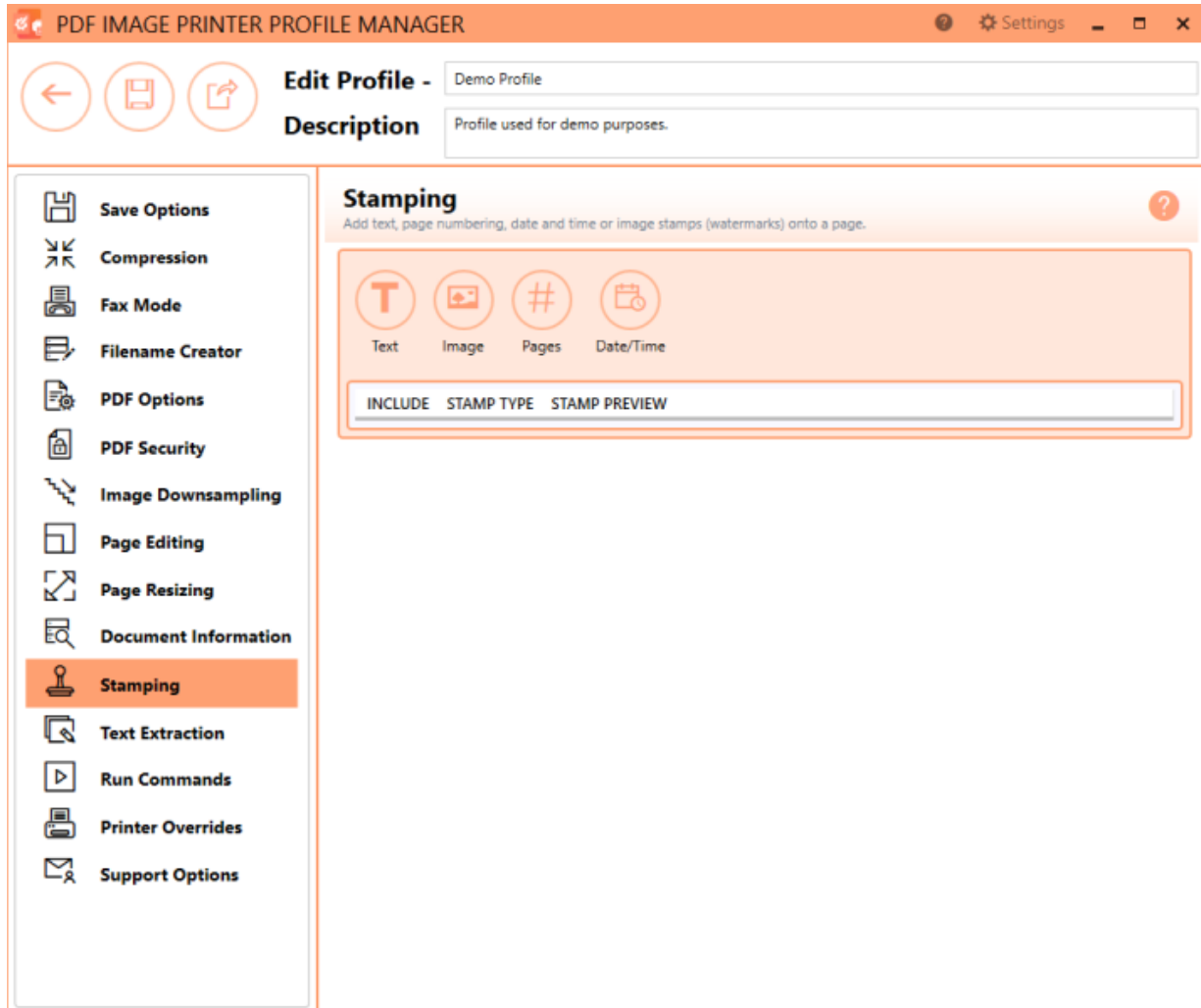
descriptive information being passed to the output file, either delete the text in the property value field or disable **include this property**.

- *Title* - Enter the title of the document. All files created will have this title. This is not the filename of the document.
- *Author* - Enter the author of the document. All files created will have this author.
- *Subject* - Enter the subject of the PDF file. All files created will have this subject.
- *Keywords* - Enter keywords for the PDF file. There is no specific format to what can be entered here. The section can be used to enhance search returns.
- *Application* - Enter the application of the PDF file. If left empty, all files created will have PDF Image Printer 12 as the application.
- *Software Producer* (also *PDF Producer* for PDF files) - Enter the software producer of the document. If left blank, all files created will have PDF Image Printer 12 as the software producer/PDF producer.

See Also: [Set Document Information](#)

Stamping

The Stamping tab holds all settings related to adding a text, image, page numbering, or date/time watermark to your PDF Image Printer output files.



Using Stamping Editor

The Stamping Editor allows users to add new stamps, move stamps up or down, edit existing stamps, and make other formatting changes.

- *Add new stamps* - Select a button across the top to add a new stamp.
- *Select an existing stamp* - Hover over stamp type until the desired stamp is highlighted, and click to edit.

- *Hide details of selected stamp* - Click the left-most close arrow to hide details of selected stamp. Selecting another stamp type will also close the previous stamp.
- *Move stamp up or down* - Click the up and down arrows from within the edit window of a stamp type to re-order stamps. Stamps are applied to the page in the order they are listed, top to bottom.
- *Delete stamps* - Click the trash bin to delete unwanted stamps.

Stamp Types

Text Stamp

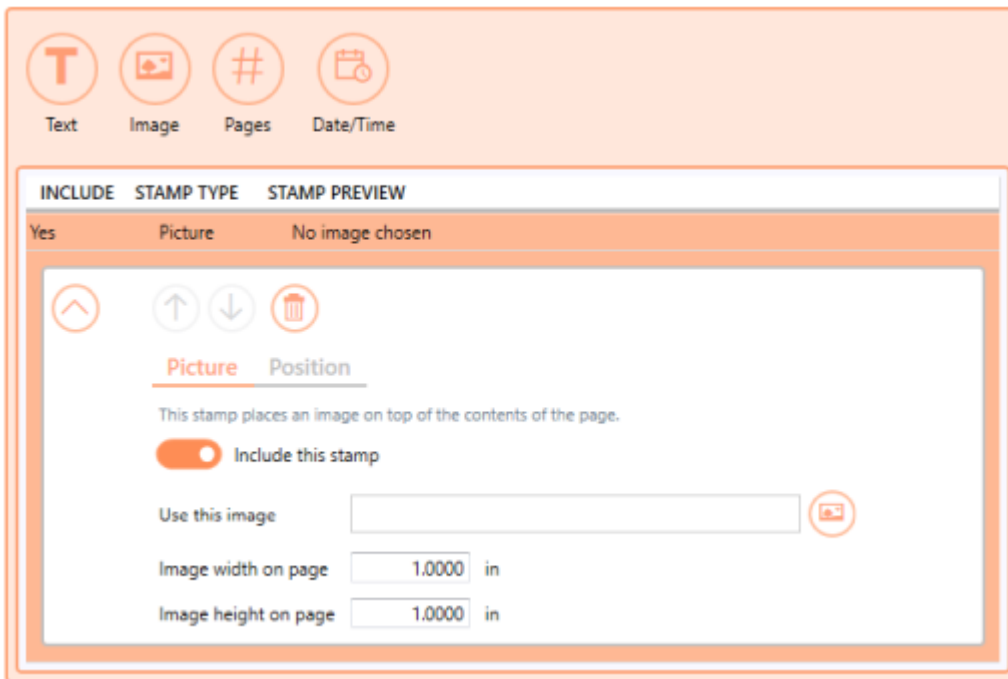
This stamp places formatted text on top of the contents of the page. By default, the text "Draft" is populated for the text stamp. Enter your desired text into the *Display this text* field. The font style of the text can be customized by changing the the font type, font size, font color, and by enabling *bold*, *italic* or *outline* font styles. The stamp preview box will update to reflect any changes made to the text stamp settings.



See Also: [Add Text Watermark Stamp to Each Page](#)

Image Stamp

This stamp places an image on top of the contents of the page. Select the file icon to browse to your desired image. It is recommended the the image be a PNG, but a JPEG can also be selected. PDF Image Printer has support for alpha channels, so the PNG image can be transparent. If PDF Image Printer cannot find the selected image when creating the output file, no image stamp will be added to your output file. Adjust *image width on page* and *image height on page* as desired. The image size set should either match the dimensions of the image or at least maintain the aspect ratio. By default, *image width on page* and *image height on page* are set to 1.0000 inch or 2.5400 cm.



See Also: [Add Image Watermark Stamp to Each Page](#)

Page Numbering Stamp

This stamp places a formatted page numbering string on top of the contents of the page.

Use the settings toggles to customize the page numbering stamp formatting.

- *Include this prefix text* - Add custom text before page numbers (ex. Page).
- *Include the page number padded with zeros to a width of* - Add the specific page number and increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.
- *Include this connector text* - Add custom text between the page number and page count (ex. of).
- *Include the page count padded with zeros to a width of* - Add the total page count and increase/decrease the number of padding zeros.
- *Include this suffix text* - Add custom text after page numbers (ex. pages).

The font style of the text can be customized by changing the the font type, font size, font color, and by enabling *bold*, *italic* or *outline* font styles. The stamp preview box will update to reflect any changes made to the page numbering stamp settings.

The screenshot displays the 'Page Numbering' stamp configuration window. At the top, there are four icons: 'Text' (T), 'Image', 'Pages' (#), and 'Date/Time' (calendar). Below these is a table with columns 'INCLUDE', 'STAMP TYPE', and 'STAMP PREVIEW'. The 'INCLUDE' column has a 'Yes' checkbox, 'STAMP TYPE' is 'Page Numbering', and 'STAMP PREVIEW' shows 'Page 1 of 10 pages'.

Inside the configuration area, there are navigation icons (up, down, left, right, and a trash icon). The title is 'Page Numbering' with a sub-section 'Position'. A description states: 'This stamp places a formatted page numbering string on top of the contents of the page.' Below this is a 'Stamp Preview' box showing 'Page 1 of 10 pages'.

There are six toggle switches, all currently turned on:

- Include this stamp
- Include this prefix text: Page
- Include the page number padded with zeroes to a width of 0 characters
- Include this connector text: of
- Include the page count padded with zeroes to a width of 0 characters
- Include this suffix text: pages

At the bottom, the 'Font Style' section includes:

- Font type: Arial
- Font size: 8
- Font color: Black
- Style checkboxes: Bold (off), Italic (off), Outline (off)

See Also: [Add Page Numbering Watermark Stamp to Each Page](#)

Date and Time Stamp

This stamp places a formatted date and time string on top of the contents of the page.

Use the settings toggles to customize the date and time stamp formatting.

- *Include this prefix text* - Add custom text before date and time (ex. Created on).
- *Include this suffix text* - Add custom text after date and time.

Select your desired date and time formatting using the *Display using this format* drop box. By default, the format is set to *Full Date and Time*.

- *Short Date*
- *Short Time*
- *Long Date*
- *Long Time*
- *Full Date with Short Time*
- *Full Date and Time*
- *General Date with Short Time*
- *General Date and Time*
- *Round Trip (ISO 8601) Date and Time*
- *RFC1123 Date and Time*
- *Sortable Date and Time*
- *Universal Sortable*
- *Universal Full Date and Time*
- *Month and Day*
- *Month and Year*

Select your desired locale (language/location) to be applied to the date and time using the *Use this locale* drop box. By default, the locale will be set to match the locale of the computer.

The font style of the text can be customized by changing the the font type, font size, font color, and by enabling *bold*, *italic* or *outline* font styles. The stamp preview box will update to reflect any changes made to the date and time stamp settings.

The screenshot displays the configuration interface for a Date/Time stamp. At the top, there are four icons: Text (T), Image, Pages (#), and Date/Time (calendar). Below these is a table with columns: INCLUDE, STAMP TYPE, and STAMP PREVIEW. The table shows a single entry with 'Yes' in the INCLUDE column, 'Date and Time' in the STAMP TYPE column, and 'Created on Wednesday, January 15, 2020 2:30:45 PM' in the STAMP PREVIEW column.

Below the table, there are navigation icons (up, down, trash) and a section titled 'Date and Time' with a sub-section 'Position'. A description states: 'This stamp places a formatted date and time string on top of the contents of the page.'

The 'Stamp Preview' section shows a preview box containing the text: 'Created on Wednesday, January 15, 2020 2:30:45 PM'.

Configuration options include:

- Include this stamp
- Include this prefix text: Created on
- Include this suffix text
- Display using this format: Full Date and Time
- Use this locale: English (United States) (en-US)

The 'Font Style' section includes:

- Font type: Arial
- Font size: 8
- Font color: Black
- Bold
- Italic
- Outline

See Also: [Add Date and Time Watermark Stamp to Each Page](#)

Stamp Position

⏪ ⬆ ⬇ 🗑

Date and Time **Position**

Include stamp on these pages:

Transparency: 0% 100%

Horizontal Alignment: offset by in

Vertical alignment: offset by in

Rotate Stamp:

Include stamp on these pages

Choose which pages of the output file to stamp:

- *All Pages*
- *First Page Only*
- *Even Pages Only*
- *Odd Pages Only*
- *All Pages Except First Page*

Transparency

By default, transparency is set to 0%. Use the sliding scale to set the desired degree of transparency. 100% transparency will make the stamp invisible.

Horizontal Alignment

Choose how to horizontally align the stamp on top of the contents of the page.

- *Left* will align the stamp to the left side over the page contents.
- *Middle* will center the stamp over the page contents.
- *Right* will align the stamp to the right side over the page contents.

This alignment can be offset by a desired value. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

Vertical Alignment

Choose how to vertically align the stamp on top of the contents of the page.

- *Top* will align the stamp to the top over the page contents.
- *Middle* will center the stamp over the page contents.
- *Bottom* will align the stamp to the bottom over the page contents.

This alignment can be offset by a desired value. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

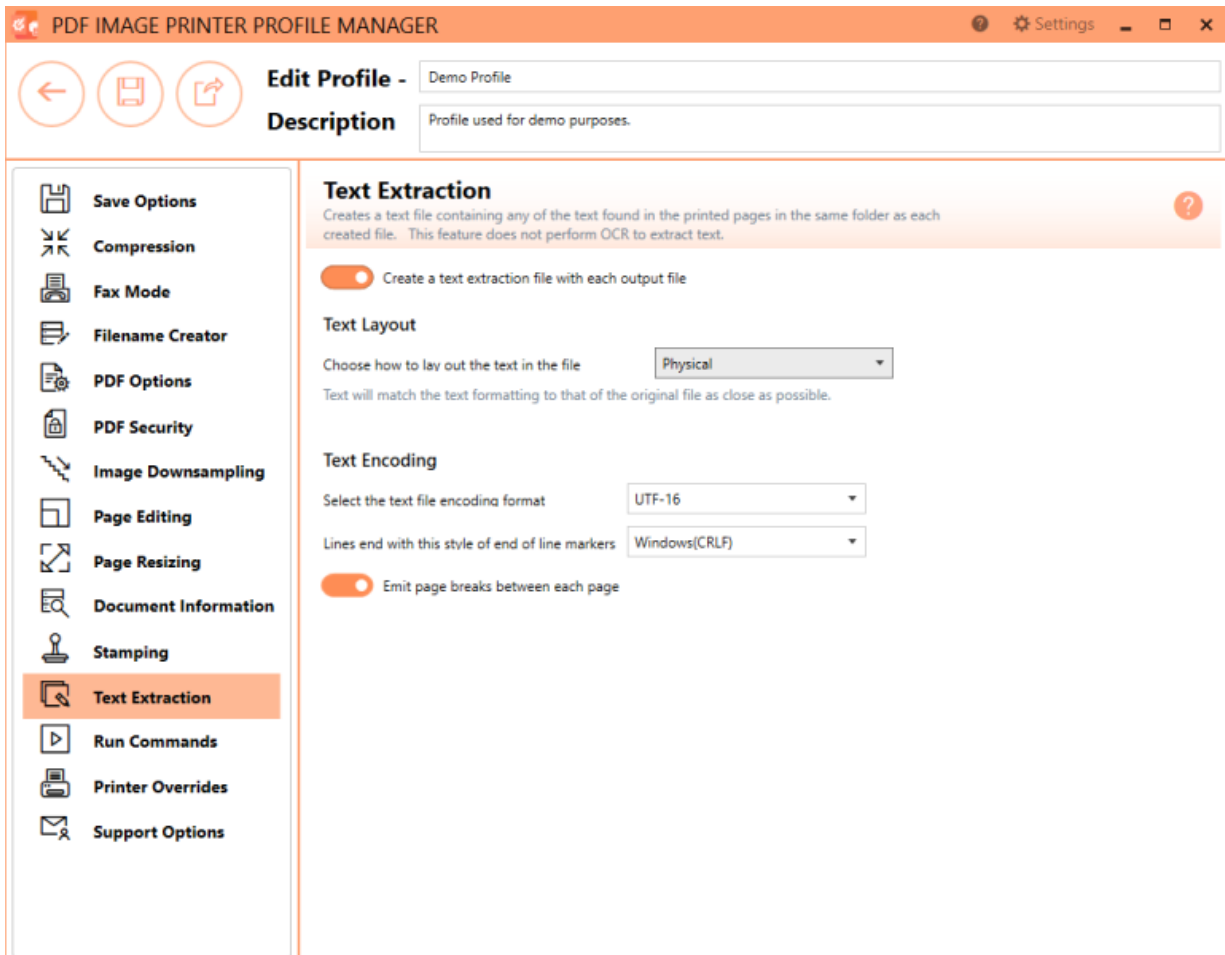
Rotate Stamp

Use the dials to select the degree of rotation of the stamp. Stamps can be rotated in 5 degree increments.

Text Extraction

The Text Extraction tab will create a separate text file containing all of the textual elements of your printed document. These text files are often paired with the files when stored in archival systems to allow searching and retrieval of the files using textual data.

The text extraction feature was not designed to be *Optical Character Recognition (OCR)* software. Only straight text will be extracted and formatting of the text file may not be exact.



Enable create a text extraction file with each output file

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer will extract text and save the created text file in the same directory and with the same name as the output file.

Text Layout

Layout

Choose the layout for the text in your file.

- *Physical* - Attempts to match the format of the text in the original file.
- *Raw* - Saves the text in the order in which it was sent to the driver. This may not be the same order as the text in the original file.
- *None* - No formatting is attempted. All text is written to the file in the order in which it is received from the printing application.

Text Encoding

Format

Choose the encoding format for your text file.

- *UTF-16* - uses 16-bit Unicode encoding
- *UTF-8* - uses 8-bit Unicode encoding
- *ANSI* - uses the current ANSI code page

End-of-Line

Choose the end-of-line encoding for your text file. Depending on the operating system the text file will be used on, you may need to choose the appropriate line return code.

- *Windows* - lines end with the carriage return line feed (CRLF, \r\n) used by Windows
- *Mac* - lines end with the carriage return (CR, \r) used by Macintosh
- *Unix* - lines end with the line feed (LF, \n) used by UNIX.

Emit page breaks between each page

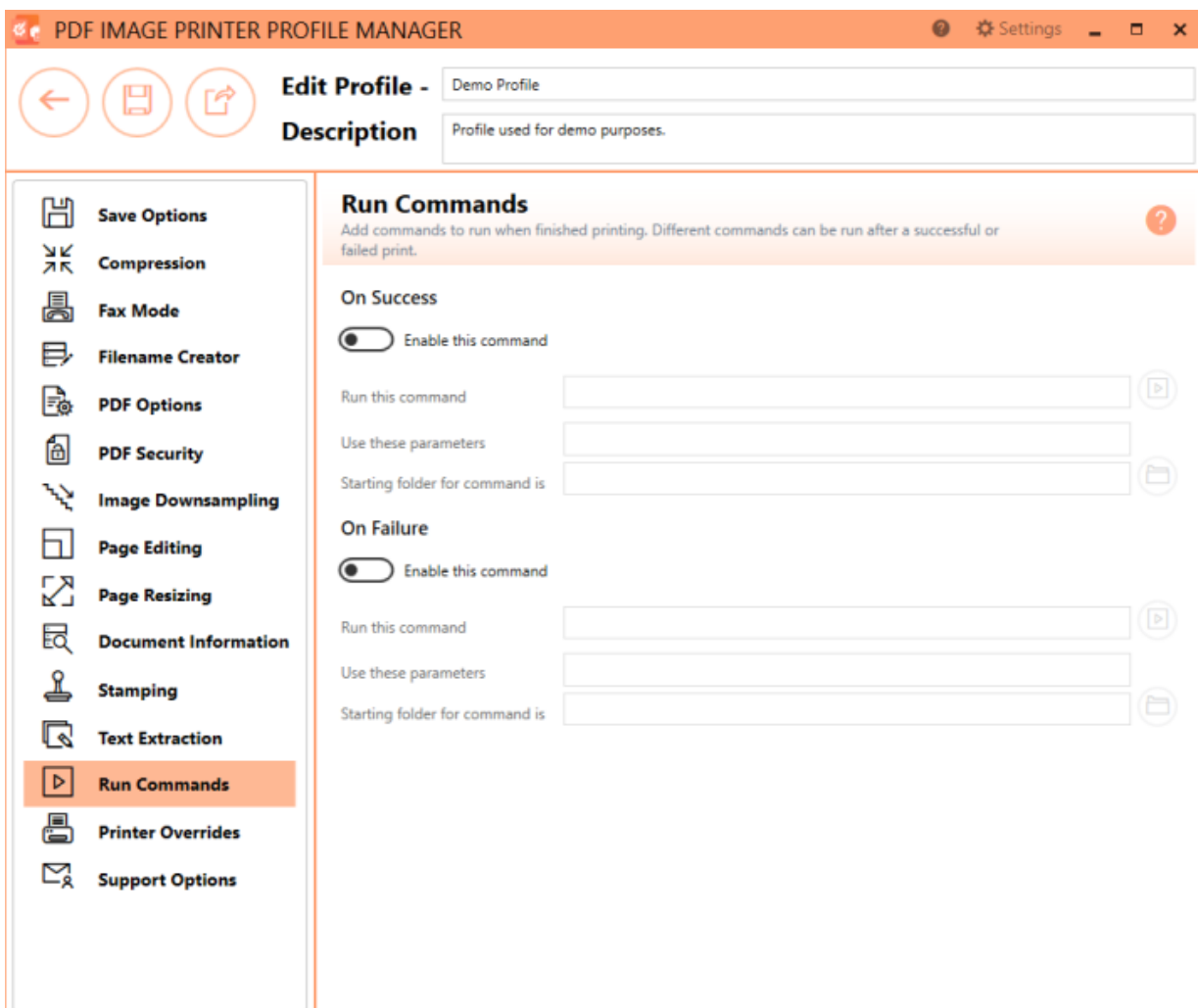
By default this setting is enabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer will insert a page break, or form feed (\f) in your text file for every page in your original document.

See *Also*: [Extracting Text From the Created File](#)

Run Commands

The Run Commands tab holds all settings related to specifying a specific command or running a program after printing to PDF Image Printer. There is the option to run a command only after a successful print, only after a failed print, or after both a successful and failed print.

If you enable run commands, PDF Image Printer will create a text file with the list of files generated, including a line for each file created. This text file can contain zero or more lines, with each line being the full path to a file generated by PDF Image Printer. PDF Image Printer will pass the full path of this text file (pnf-<GUID>.txt) when executing the success or failure command.



Enable this command

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer will run the designated command after printing to PDF Image Printer. When this setting is enabled the command string cannot be left empty.

Run this command

Enter the full path to the command you want to run. Select the run icon to browse to your desired run command or enter in the absolute path (for example, C:\My Files\RUNCOMMAND.exe) of the run command to be used. Environment variable like %userprofile%, %username%, and %systemroot% can be used in the command string.

The most common run commands are executables (.exe) or batch file (.bat), but PDF Image Printer will accept run commands with any file extension inclining .com, .cmd, or PowerShell files. PDF Image Printer will attempt to execute any run command entered. If the command is not runnable, you will receive any error indicating that it could not be run.

A **command preview** will appear for anything entered in the command string, including any possible expansion of environmental variables.

Use these parameters

Type any parameters you need to send to your application.

When entering parameters:

- Use blank spaces to separate parameters.
- Enclose parameters that contain spaces in double quotation marks.

Environment variable like %userprofile%, %username%, and %systemroot% can be used as parameters.

Starting folder for command is

You can specify a default working directory for your application. Select the folder icon to browse to your desired working directory or enter in the absolute path (for example, C:\My Files) of the directory to be used. If the path entered does not exist, the folder will not be automatically created and

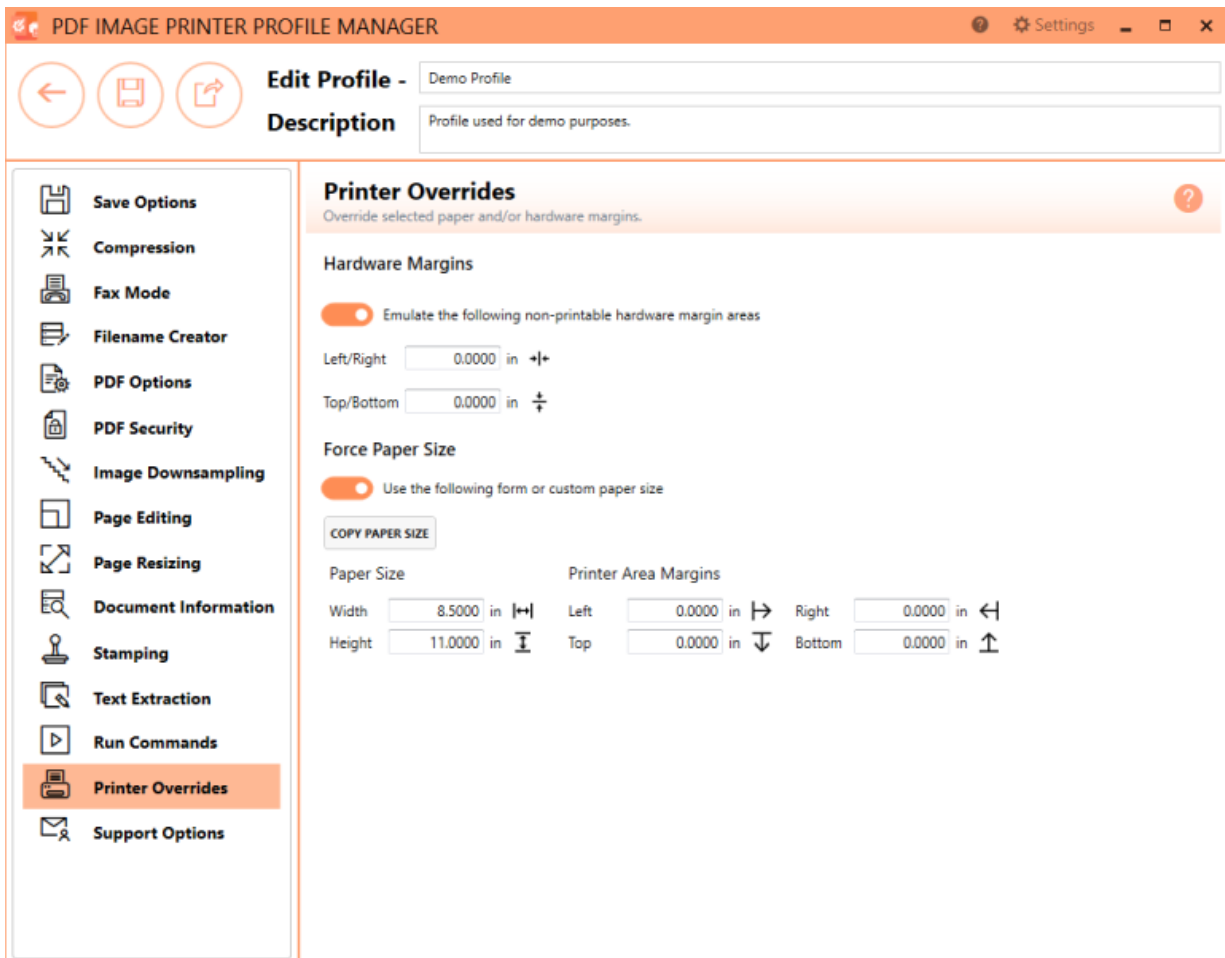
therefore the driver will not run the command. Environment variable like %username%, %systemroot% can be used in the starting folder.

Although designating the starting folder is not frequently required, you may need to designate the starting folder if your run command requires that the working folder be a specific folder.

Printer Overrides

The Printer Overrides Tab holds all settings related to controlling paper size and margins of the printer. For most applications, when the original file is printed, the paper size and margins are part of the information being sent to PDF Image Printer, so setting paper information on the Printer Override Tab is unnecessary. There are some instances where you may need to override the paper information, such as when printing oil well logs.

All settings on the Printer Overrides tab will override any selections that you have set within the application.



See Also: [Print Well Logs as One Continuous Image](#)

Hardware Margins

Enable emulate the following non-printable hardware margin area

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting allows you to customize the size of the printer-supplied edge on your output file. Hardware margins cannot be large than 1.00in (2.54cm) on each side of the paper.

- *Left/Right* - Enter the Left and Right hardware margins settings into the appropriate fields.
- *Top/Bottom* - Enter in the Top and Bottom hardware margin settings into the appropriate fields.

Dimensions for Hardware Margins are entered based on a portrait oriented page. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

Force Paper Size

Enable use the following form or custom paper size

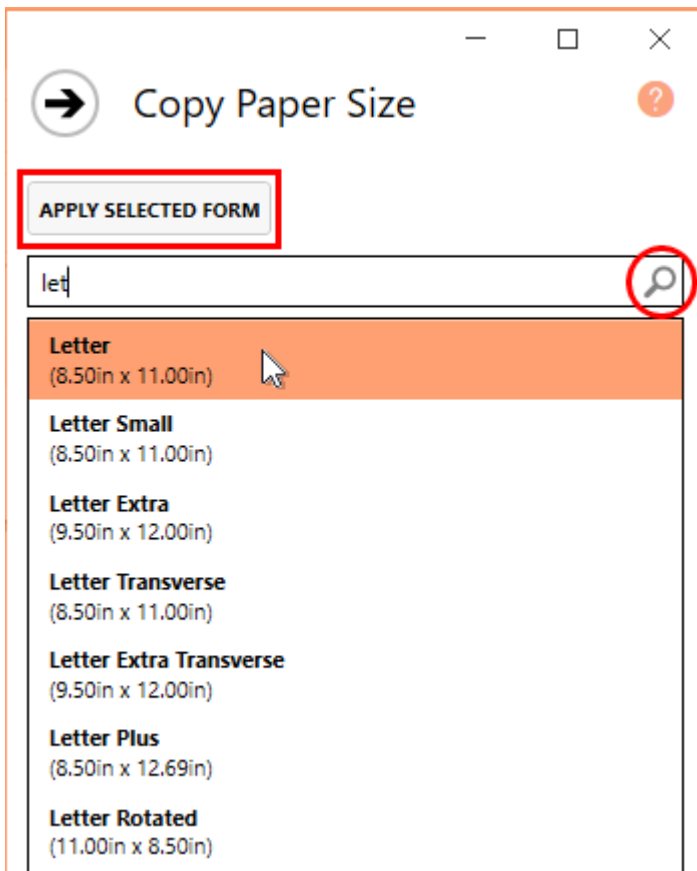
By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer will use custom paper size for the output file. Note that this selection overrides any other paper size selection that you have set on the application.

Paper Size

Enter the desired *Width* and *Height* for the custom paper size.

Use the **Copy Paper Size** button to copy the dimensions from our list of standard paper sizes.

- Select **Copy Paper Size** to open the Copy Paper Size flyout.
- Use the filter field to search and refine the list.
- Click **Apply Selected Form** to copy selected paper size directly to *Width* and *Height* fields.



Dimensions for Paper Size are entered based on a portrait oriented page. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

Printer Area Margins

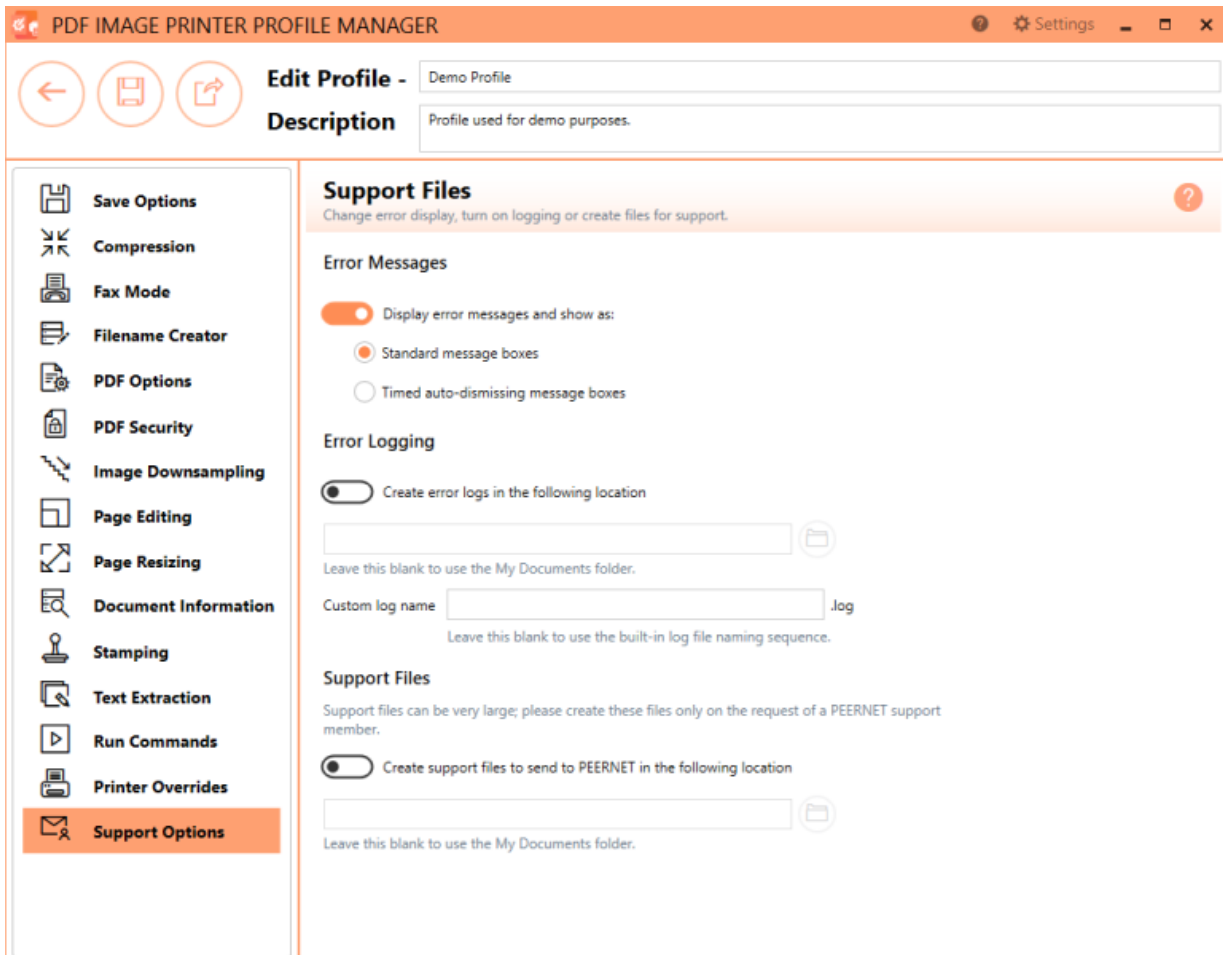
Enter the desired *Left*, *Right*, *Top*, and *Bottom* printer area margin settings for the custom paper size.

The combined *Left* and *Right* printer area margins must be less than the *Width* of the custom paper. The combined *Top* and *Bottom* printer area margins must be less than the *Height* of the custom paper.

Dimensions for Printer Area Margins are entered based on a portrait oriented page. You can change the units by selecting **Settings** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window, and toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).

Support Options

The Support Options tab holds all error reporting features of PDF Image Printer, including the display of any error dialogs and customizing the location of any error log files or support files created.



Error Messages

Display error messages

By default, error messages are displayed as *standard message boxes*.

Choose how to display error messages:

- *Standard message boxes* - required user to dismiss error messages
- *Timed auto-dismissing message boxes* - error messages automatically disappear after 5 seconds

Error Logging

Enable create error logs in the following location

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting will activate error logging. A log file is only created if errors occur during the printing process.

If this field is empty, the My Documents folder is used as the default directory. Select the folder icon to browse to your desired folder location or enter in the absolute path (for example, C:\My Files) of the directory to be used. If the path entered does not exist, an error message will appear giving you the option to create the new folder now or wait to create the new folder when saving log files.

By default, a custom naming sequence is imposed on all logging files so that every job will create its own unique log file. The log file name always includes the name of the printer that printed the job. If you have renamed the printer to a custom name, or are using a copy of the printer with a different name, that name is used to create the log file names. A GUID is also added to create a unique log name. Alternatively, enter a custom log name in the **Custom log name** field.

Support Files

Enable create support files to send to PEERNET in the following location

By default this setting is disabled. Enabling this setting means PDF Image Printer will create support files to send to PEERNET. Support files can be very large so please only create these files on the request of the PEERNET support team.

If this field is empty, the My Documents folder is used as the default directory. Select the folder icon to browse to your desired folder location or enter in the absolute path (for example, C:\My Files) of the directory to be used. If the path entered does not exist, an error message will appear giving you the option to create the new folder now or wait to create the new folder when saving support files.

A custom naming sequence is imposed on all support files so that every job will create its own unique support file. The support file name always includes

the name of the printer that printed the job. If you have renamed the printer to a custom name, or are using a copy of the printer with a different name, that name is used to create the support file names. A GUID is also added to create a unique log name.

Profile Editor

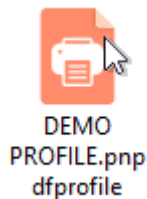
The **Profile Editor** is used to review and edit exported profiles. The Profile Editor is a simplified version of Profile Manager. It will open directly to your exported profile allowing you to review and edit all of the same settings available through Profile Manager.

Go to the [Profile Manager](#) section for information about the settings available within each property tab of the the Profile Editor.

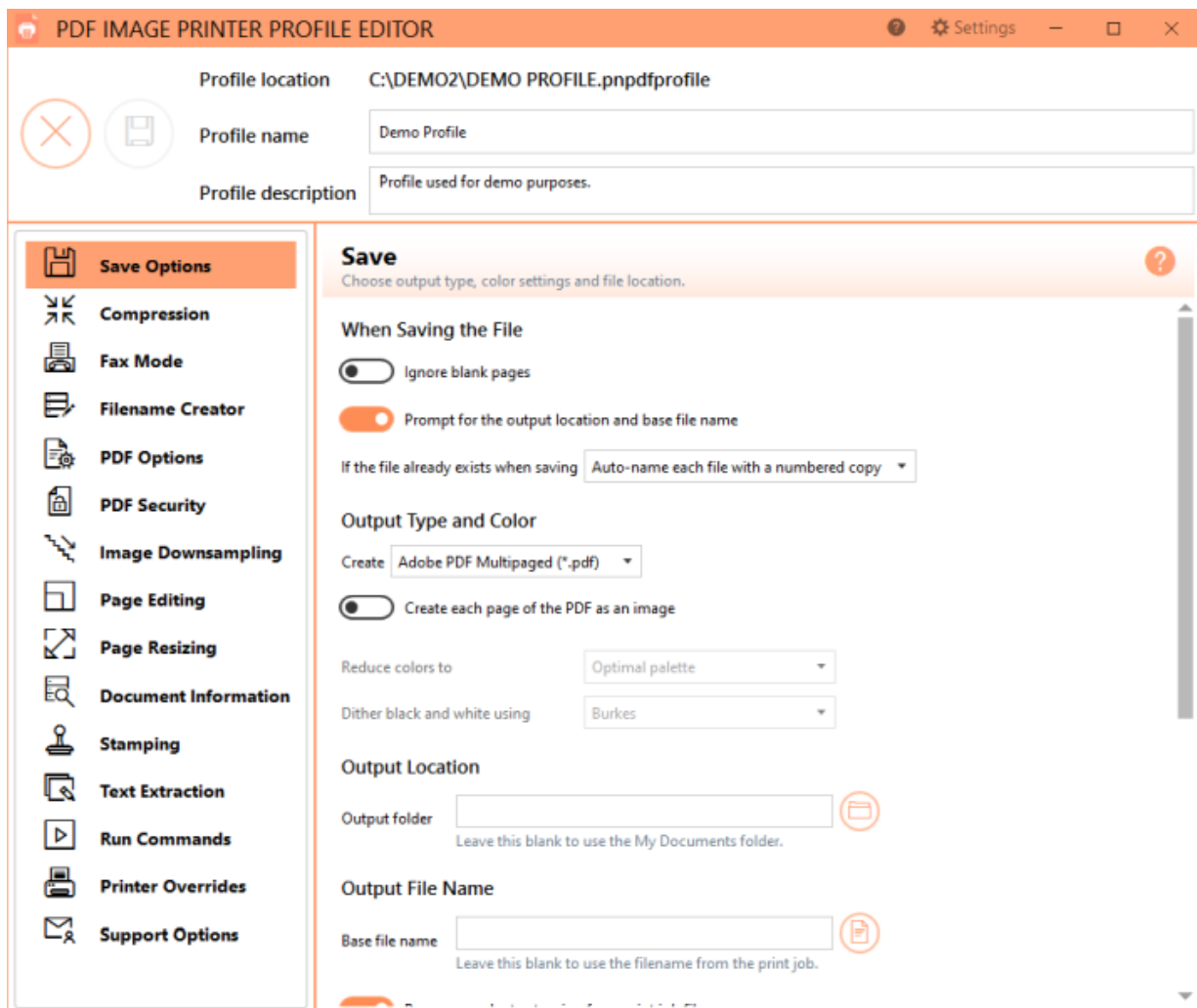
Profile Editor

To launch **Profile Editor**:

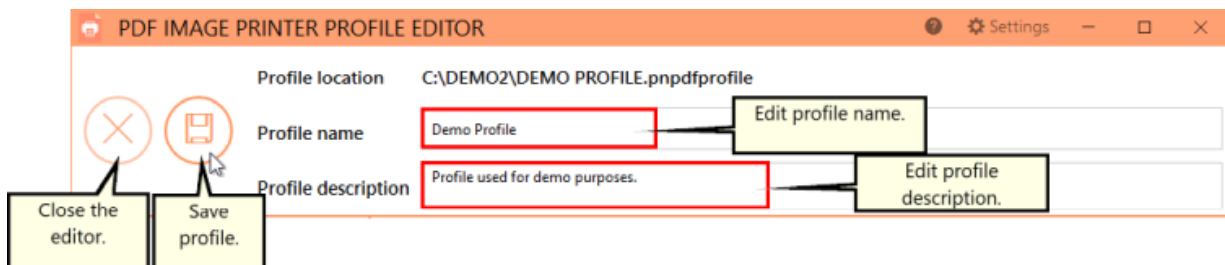
1. Navigate to a where you have saved an exported profile.



2. Double-click the PDF Image Printer profile icon to open the profile in **Profile Editor**.



If you make any changes to the exported profile, select the **save icon** to save profile. Select the **close icon** to close the editor.

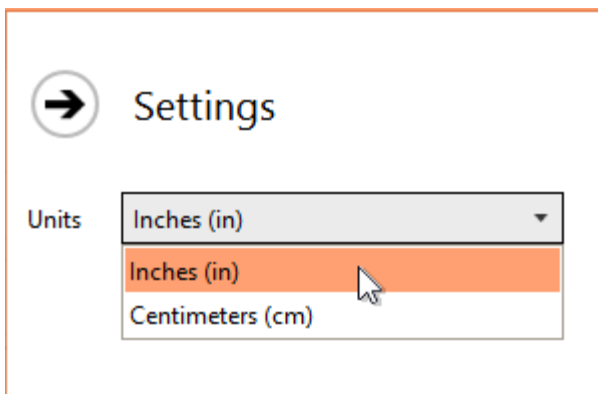


- *Close the editor* - Close the Profile Editor.
- *Save profile* - Save any changes made to the settings stored in the profile.

- *Edit Profile* - Edit the name of the profile. We recommend that you name your personal profiles something recognizable.
- *Description* - If desired, you can add a description to the profile to remind you of the settings stored in the profile and/or the purpose of the profile.

Settings panel

Select the **Settings gear icon** from the top right hand corner of the Profile Manager window at any time to change units by toggling between inches (in) and centimeters (cm).



Visit the topics within the [Profile Manager](#) section to learn about the settings stored on each property tab within the Profile Editor.

PDF Image Printer Advanced Concepts

This section contains technical documentation of the more advanced functionality of PDF Image Printer.

If you only need to create Adobe PDF files (*.pdf) from applications on your desktop you likely will not need the following information.

These topics are geared towards IT personnel who need to install the driver over a network or use push software such as SCCM to distribute the driver to users and computers within an organization. or for programmers who need to automate printing to the PDF Image Printer in their own software.

The following topics are covered:

- [Installing the Printer Silently](#)
- [Installing a Customized Printer](#)

See this topic covering printer automation as well:

- [Automating the Printing Process](#)

Installing the Printer Silently

The PDF Image Printer can be installed silently to multiple users on a network using Microsoft SCCM or a similar product with software push capability. For One Time and Subscription licenses this only installs the software on the computer, it does not activate the license on that computer. If you have a large number of users and need a pre-authorized installation, please contact PEERNET Sales for information on this type of custom install.

Command Line Syntax

Silent install - /S

With the silent install command line parameter set, the entire installation will execute silently, without a user interface, or any user intervention. When any input is required on dialog boxes, the default values of dialog controls will be used.

Subscription License

```
pnpdfsubsetup_12.0.001.exe /S
```

One Time License

```
pnpdfotsetup_12.0.001.exe /S
```

Removing License Activations - DEACTIVATEUSER=TRUE|FALSE

Only valid with Subscription licenses and with an internet connection.

When uninstalling a Subscription license, you can automatically remove this user from your list of authenticated users, provided the computer has internet access and connect to the PEERNET licensing server. This is useful when transferring the subscription installation to another user, or moving the same user to a new computer.

If you are uninstalling and re-installing PDF Image Printer silently for the same user, and do not want to remove the authentication, pass in FALSE for this option. The default value for this is TRUE.

Subscription License - Remove user from authentication list

```
pnpdfsubsetup_12.0.001.exe /S DEACTIVATEUSER=TRUE
```


Installing a Customized Printer

In some environments you may need to install a customized version of the PDF Image Printer printer for all of your users, or to install one or more custom-named printers with their own settings. This approach is commonly used when distributing software remotely and/or silently to multiple users on a network using Microsoft SCCM or a similar product with software push capability.

The steps below will walk you through creating a custom profile, and if desired, a custom-named printer, and setting that profile to be used by the printer.

Once we have our profile created and the PDF Image Printer printer configured, or our custom-named printer created, the [Backup and Restore All Settings](#) feature is used to create an export file containing only the printer(s) you want to update or add during the installation. This export file is used when pushing PDF Image Printer on other computers.

Creating the Custom Settings and Printer

This configures the PDF Image Printer printer with your own settings or creates a custom-named printer with your own settings.

Step by Step Instructions

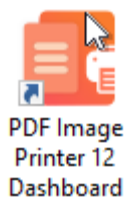
1. Install the PDF Image Printer on a single computer. You do not have to license the software at this point.
2. Follow the steps [Create a New Profile Settings File](#) to create a custom profile with your settings and save the profile.
3. To set the default profile for the PDF Image Printer printer to the one you just created, follow the steps in [Change Default Profile](#).
4. If you want to install your own custom-named printer, follow the steps in [Add New Printer](#) to create and name your custom printer. Set the default profile for your custom printer to the profile you created in step 2 above.

Creating the Export File

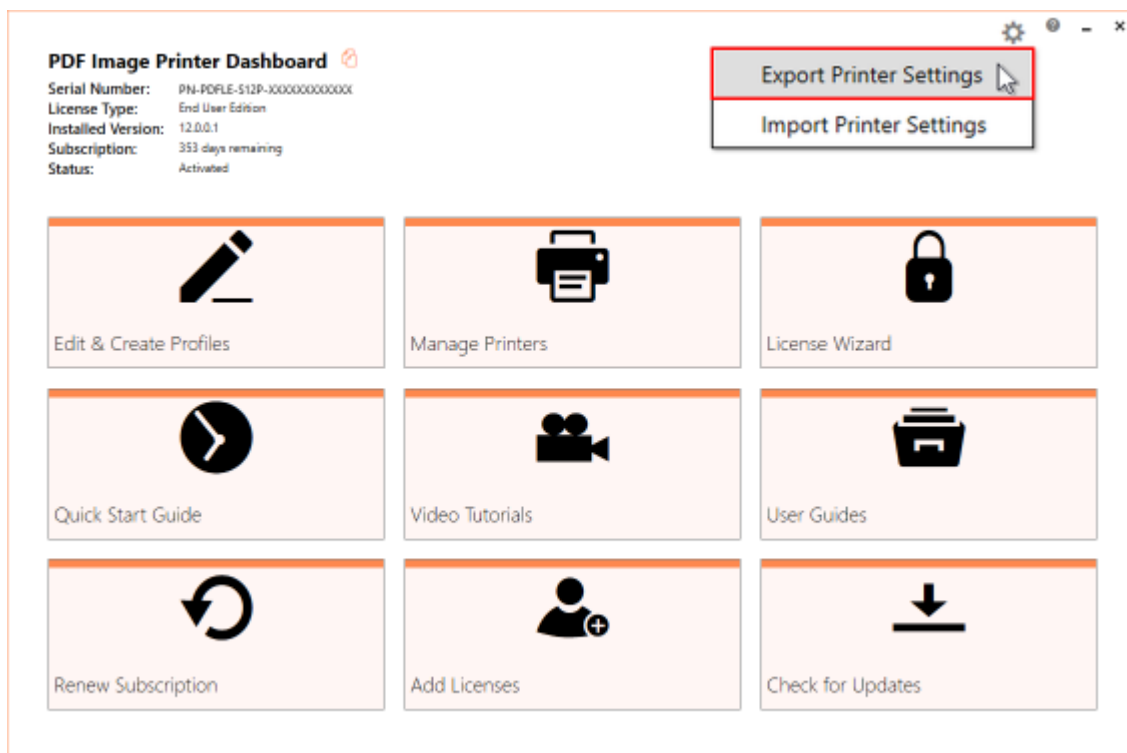
The [Backup and Restore All Settings](#) feature is used to create the export file that contains only the printer(s) you want to update or add when pushing the setup.

Step by Step Instructions

1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.




2. Click the gear icon from the top right hand corner of the **Dashboard** window, and select "Export Printer Settings".



- Under **Choose Printers** disable "Export all printers" and check the printer(s) you want to export.

Choose Printers

Export all printers

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Custom Printer	CustomProfile
<input type="checkbox"/>	PDF Image Printer 12	 Adobe PDF

- Under **Choose Profiles** disable "Export all personal profiles". The profiles that are in use by a printer being exported are automatically selected and cannot be unselected.

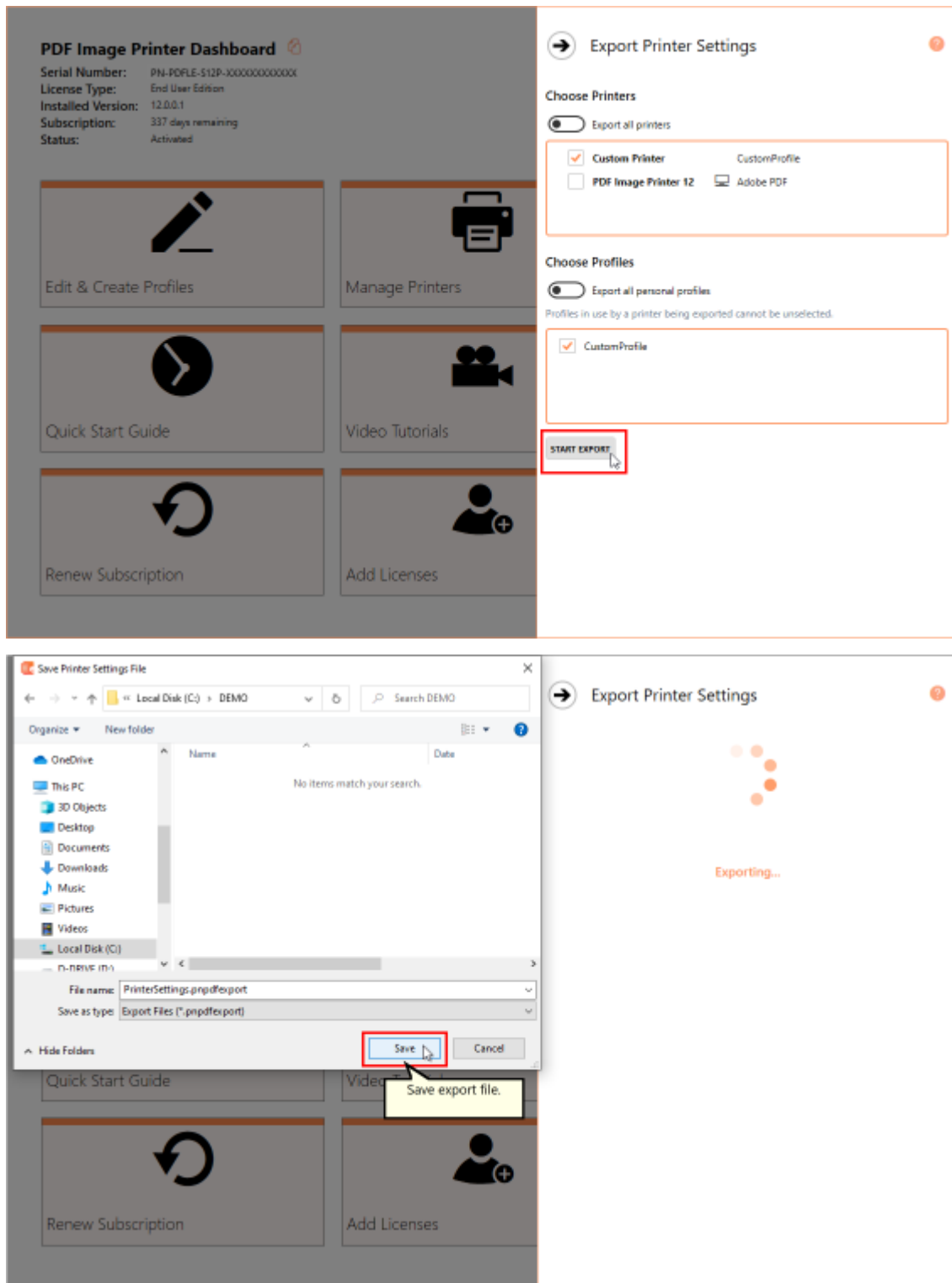
Choose Profiles

Export all personal profiles

Profiles in use by a printer being exported cannot be unselected.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CustomProfile
-------------------------------------	---------------

- Select **Start Export**, and save the export file.



Running the Setup

To run the customized setup on another computer, the setup program and the export file need to be accessible from that computer.

For push software, the export settings file needs to be in a location that is accessible when the push software runs the setup.

Command Line Syntax

/S

With the silent install command line parameter set, the entire installation will execute silently, without a user interface, or any user intervention. When any input is required on dialog boxes, the default values of dialog controls will be used.

CONFIGPRINTER="Path to export file"

This is the full path to the exported settings file created above, in quotes.

Subscription License

```
pnpdfsubsetup_12.0.001.exe /S CONFIGPRINTER="C:\PEERNET\PrinterSettings.pnpdfexport"
```

One Time License

```
pnpdfotsetup_12.0.001.exe /S CONFIGPRINTER="C:\PEERNET\PrinterSettings.pnpdfexport"
```

Automating the Printing Process

PDF Image Printer provides several approaches to allow the printing process to be integrated into a custom desktop program or workflow, or as part of automated solutions such as scheduled tasks and batch scripts.

PDF Image Printer's automation using a script file is the original technique used by programmers to automate printing, especially batch printing.

If you are new to automating PDF Image Printer, it is recommended to start with the PNSrv12 COM object instead:

- [Using the PNSrv12 COM Object](#)
- [Using the Printer Script File](#)

Using the PNSrv12 COM Object

The PNSrv12 COM Interface provides the ability to control and communicate with the printer during the printing and file creation process. It replaces and greatly enhances the older script file methodology.

Through the PNSrv12 you can:

- set file naming and conversion preferences on a per file basis
- wait until the file has been created to continue your workflow
- use a pool of printers to increase conversion capacity
- track the files printed and the output files associated with each file
- retrieve information about the output files created
- interact with the printer in a thread-safe manner

Requirements and Prerequisites

Required Files for Distribution

You do not need to include any additional files with your application but the end-user must have the appropriate printer installed and licensed.

The PNSrv12 COM object is distributed with the following PEERNET printers and is registered as part of their printer installation.

- Raster Image Printer
- TIFF Image Printer
- PDF Image Printer

The code examples shown in the following pages are written using the TIFF Image Printer but are also applicable to both Raster Image Printer and PDF Image Printer unless otherwise stated in the description the method or enumeration.

All code samples are provided in C#.NET.

Supported Development Environments

- Visual Basic 6.0
- Visual Basic .NET
- Visual C# .NET
- Visual C++
- VBA Script

Supported Operating Systems

The PNSrv12 COM object supports the following Microsoft® Windows operating systems:

- Windows 10
- Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2019
- Windows 8 and 8.1
- Windows Server 2012

- Windows 7
- Windows Server 2008 R2

Concepts and Terminology

In order to understand how the PNSrv12 COM interface works, an understanding of printers and the Windows printing subsystem can be useful.

Windows Printing

The main component of the Windows printing subsystem is the *print spooler*. It manages all communication between the printing application and the desired printer. Each printer has its own *print queue*, and each time a document is printed, a *print job*, or a *series of print jobs*, is added to that printer's print queue. Most of the time there is only a single print job in the queue for each document printed, but some applications will send more than one job.

When a print job is submitted, it goes through several states. The first state is *spooling*, meaning the printing application is still sending the document to the printer. Once finished spooling, it switches to *spooled*. At this point the print job is ready to be printed and will enter the *printing* state. If there is more than one job spooled in the *print queue*, a single print job may stay in the spooled state until the printer is finished with job currently being printed. When all pages are printed, the state of the print job is set to *printed*. After a print job is printed, it is then deleted from the print queue by first entering the *deleting* state, and then finally going to the *deleted* state. At this point, the print job is removed from print queue and, if there are more than one job in the queue, the printer begins processing the next job.

Terminology

This guide uses terminology common to Windows applications, as well as some terms specific to the PNSrv12 COM interface. The following terms are used throughout the guide:

asynchronous

An asynchronous operation executes in a thread separate from the main application thread. This leaves the main application window free to continue executing while the second thread performs its time-consuming task. Programming with events and event handlers is asynchronous. See also [synchronous](#).

factory defaults

The default conversion profile installed for the printer properties when the printer was installed contains the factory defaults for the printer settings.

integer

A 32-bit signed value.

JobID

A JobID is a non-unique number associated with every print job submitted to a print queue. It is initially set to zero when the printer is created and is automatically incremented by the printer at the start of every print job submitted to that printer, up to a max of 4294967295. (UINT32 max value). Each printer has its own JobID counter. This is not the same as the unique ID used with the new file name creator option in a conversion profile.

job tracking

When enabled, the [Jobs](#) collection in the IPNSession object is maintained with a new object added for every job printed through any printer in the session's pool. Job tracking is enabled through the IPNSession [TrackingOn](#) property. The feature is off by default.

object

An instance of any COM interface class, such as IPNSession, or IPNJob.

printer

An installed PEERNET printer, such as PDF Image Printer.

printing application

The application being used to print a document, usually the same application used to open the document.

print job

A print job is a file that has been sent to a printer to be printed. Most often there is a single print job for each file (or document) printed, but occasionally printing a single file will create multiple print jobs in a print queue.

printer pool

A group of printers that is created and used by the PNSrv12 COM interface. A printer pool has a minimum of one printer, and can have as many printers in the pool as needed.

print queue

Each printer has its own printer queue. A print queue shows which documents (or print jobs) are being printed or are waiting to be printed.

print spooler

The print spooler is part of the Windows printing subsystem. It manages communication between the printing application and the printers on your computer.

session object

An instance of the [IPNSession](#) COM interface object.

synchronous

Synchronous programming occurs in the same thread in a linear manner. When making a call that blocks until it returns, program execution is halted until the call returns.

What's New in PNSrv12Lib

This version of the PDF Image Printer brings with it major changes and improvements to how the printer operates and how to interact with the printer to control the printer settings.

The PNSrv12 COM object has been updated to support these changes and simplified to make it easier to program. Many methods that you may have used in the past may have been changed or made obsolete and removed.

The biggest change is the move to use *conversion profiles* to control the printer settings. In the past, the settings were initialized by calling various methods on the COM object; now settings are initialized with a single call passing in the path to the desired *conversion profile*.

The settings can be set a single time when the printer pool is created, or multiple conversion profiles can be used to modify the settings on a per-document basis.

Conversion profiles are created using the new [Profile Manager](#) utility, a GUI-based application that makes creating, saving and exporting profiles easy. These exported profiles can then be stored with your custom application and used to control the conversion settings.

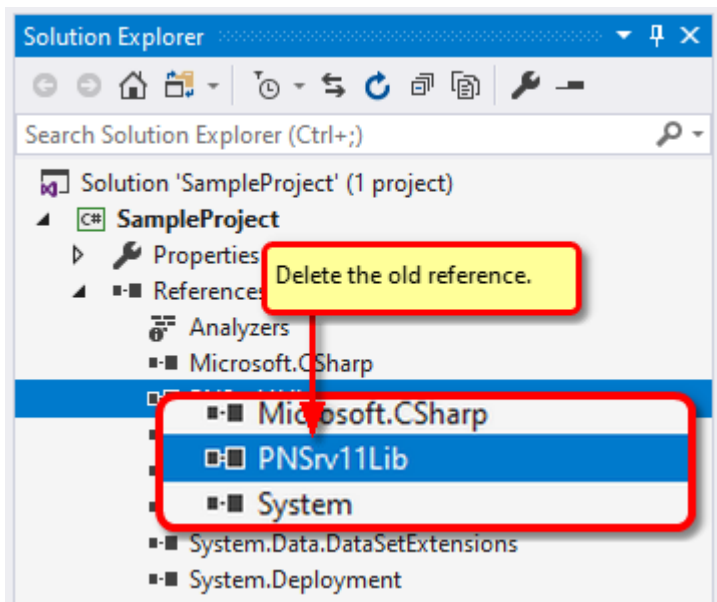
Migrating to PNSrv12Lib

If you need to migrate existing applications that use earlier versions of PDF Image Printer and the COM automation interface, the following steps outline what you need to change in your code.

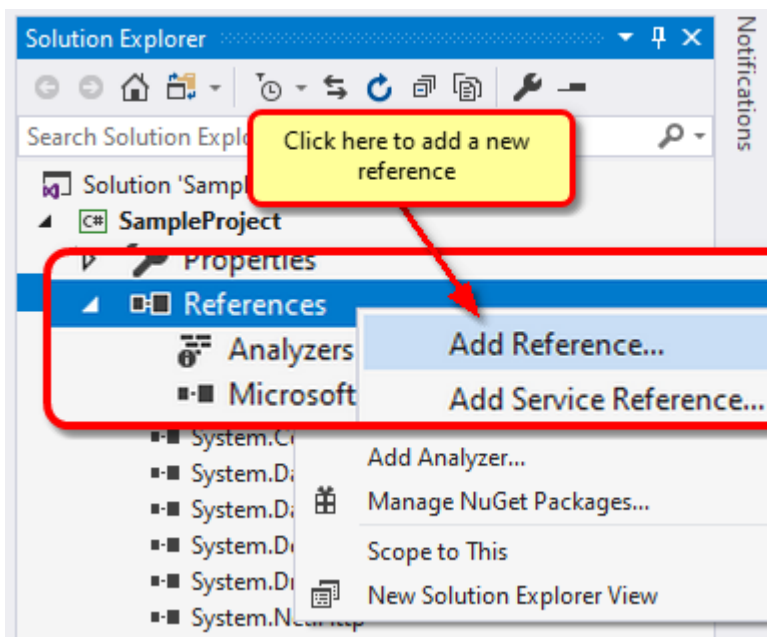
1. Updating the References in Your Application

The first step is to update the references in your application to PNSrv12Lib.

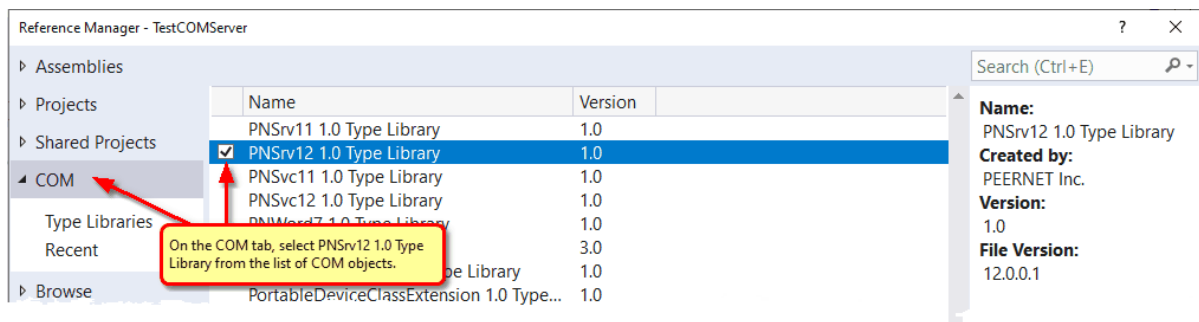
1. Find and delete the old reference from your project.



2. Right click on the **References** node and select **Add Reference...**



3. From the **Add Reference** dialog, select PNSrv12 1.0 Type Library.



2. Update any using Statements

Any **using** statements (for C#) or **Imports** statements (for VB) must be updated to reference PNSrv12Lib.

C#

```
// Update to use the new version
// using PNSrv11Lib
using PNSrv12Lib;
```

Visual Basic

```
' Update to use the new version
' Imports PNSrv11Lib
Imports PNSrv12Lib
```

3. Updating the SetSessionPrinter call

Any calls to [SetSessionPrinter](#) need to be modified to use the new printer name and the new arguments added in version 12.

A process ID must now be passed to the COM object. It is used to monitor the running process to ensure all COM objects, references and printers are cleaned up if the current owner process unexpectedly crashes or is terminated.

An optional prefix can be used when naming the GUID-named printers in the printer pool for easy recognition.

The last argument is the path to an exported conversion profile containing the settings you wish use. This can be overridden later using [SetPrinterProfile](#) or the [property](#) methods.

C#

```
PNSession session = new PNSession();
int pID = Process.GetCurrentProcess().Id;

session.SetSessionPrinter(pID, "PDF Image Printer 12", 2, "Converter-",
    "C:\\Profiles\\NonSearchablePDF.pnpdfprofile");
```

Visual Basic

```
Dim session As PNSession = New PNSession
Dim pID As Integer = Process.GetCurrentProcess().Id

session.SetSessionPrinter(pID, "PDF Image Printer 12", 2, "Converter-",
    "C:\\Profiles\\NonSearchablePDF.pnpdfprofile")
```

4. Updating and Replacing any Deprecated Methods

With the release of PNSrv12Lib many [IPNSession](#) and [INPrintSession](#) methods have been removed or changed. Some classes and enumerations have also been removed. You may find that your previous code will no longer compile.

The following list contains links to what has changed. The [included C# samples](#) also show the programming changes introduced with PNSrv12Lib.

- [Obsolete Classes and Enumerations](#)
- [IPNSession Changes](#)
- [IPNSession Changes](#)

Getting Started With PNSrv12Lib

The PNSrv12 COM object, PNSrv12Lib is included with your PDF Image Printer printer.

This topic covers the sample programs provided, adding PNSrv12Lib to your program, and how to do common tasks.

- [Sample Programs](#)
- [Referencing PNSrv12Lib in Your Application](#)
- [Creating Your own Conversion Profiles](#)
- [Initializing the PNSession](#)
- [Customize the Output File Name](#)
- [Printing Using the IPNPrintSession](#)
- [How to Tell When the File is Converted](#)

Sample Programs

Sample programs are provided as part of the install to demonstrate using PNSrv12Lib in your own programs.

These samples can be found in the **COMSamples** folder of the installation folder. This is usually *C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\COMSamples*.

A pre-built demo of each sample is available in a \Demo folder under each individual project.

All of the sample programs include a reference to Microsoft Word 2016 to automate printing to the PDF Image Printer printer. If you have a different version of Office installed, you will need to update the Word reference in order to build and run the samples.

- **ConvertWord** - converts a Word document using the settings in the selected conversion profile. Also demonstrates overriding the conversion profile's setting for the name of the output file.
- **CustomNaming** - this sample also converts a Word document using the selected conversion profile settings, and then uses the [OnGetNextFileName](#) event to create a unique filename for the output file at the point at which the file is to be saved. It also shows using the other [IPNSession events](#) to monitor the start and end of the print job, as well as to log errors and messages.

- **ConsoleConvertFolder** - illustrates batch conversion with a folder of files using Parallel.For to take advantage of the printer pool and setting a custom name for each file. Demonstrates using the printer pool and setting options in a thread-safe way.

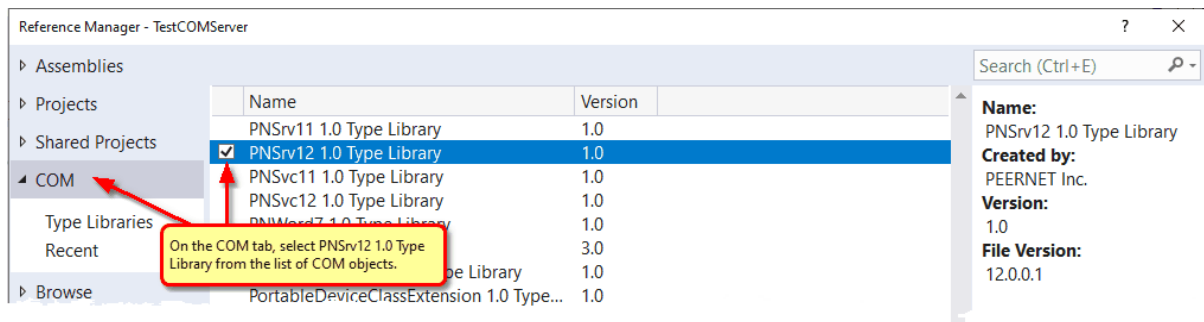
The samples all use the folder *C:\PEERNET\Samples* to store the created files, with a sub folder for the output created when running each sample.

For the purposes of the samples, all of the profiles are configured to use copy protection when creating files and default to use the name of the profile as the preset output file name unless changed as part of the sample.

Referencing PNSrv12Lib in Your Application

To add PNSrv12Lib as a COM reference in your application select PNSrv12 1.0 Type Library from the list of available COM objects.

If you are updating an older application that uses a previous version of the COM interface see [Migrating to PNSrv12Lib](#) for upgrade instructions.



Creating Your own Conversion Profiles

The samples are designed to work with any of the PEERNET printers and profiles for each of the printers that included in the samples folder. For your own programs, you will instead want to create your own profiles.

The sample profiles ending in *pnpdfprofile* are for PDF Image Printer printer. They can be copied and edited using the [Profile Editor](#). You can also create your own profiles in the [Profile Manager](#) and then [export the profile](#) to use in your programs.

Conversion profiles are used to set the conversion settings when initializing the IPNSession object with the [SetSessionPrinter](#) method. This approach works well when you are using the same settings for all of your documents.

When your conversion settings are the same for all documents, but you need to control the output folder and/or the output file name for each document, the section [Customize the Output File Name](#) shows how to use a single conversion profile and only alter the file destination and/or name using [SetSaveOptionsOutputLocationAndOutputFileName](#).

If you need to set different conversion settings individually for each document, [SetPrinterProfile](#) allows you to change printer profiles before printing each document. Again, this can be combined with [SetSaveOptionsOutputLocationAndOutputFileName](#) to customize the file name for each file.

Initializing PNSession

The starting point of working with the PDF Image Printer is the [IPNSession](#) interface.

Once you have an instance of a IPNSession object, that object is then initialized with one of PEERNET's printers through a call to [SetSessionPrinter](#). This establishes the [printer](#) that will be used by this IPNSession object and the number of available [printer queues](#) in the [printer pool](#) for this session.

A process ID is passed to the COM object and used to monitor the running process to ensure all COM objects, references and printers are cleaned up if the current owner process (your program) unexpectedly crashes or is terminated.

An optional prefix can be used when naming the GUID-named printers in the printer pool for easy recognition. This can be useful if you have more than one program using PNSrv12Lib running at a time and you need to examine the printer queues.

The last argument is the path to an exported conversion profile containing the settings you wish use. This can be overridden later using [SetPrinterProfile](#) or, in rare cases, the [property](#) methods.

C#

```
PNSession session = new PNSession();
int pID = Process.GetCurrentProcess().Id;

session.SetSessionPrinter(pID, "PDF Image Printer 12", 2, "Converter-",
    "C:\\Profiles\\NonSearchablePDF.pnpdfprofile");
```

Visual Basic

```
Dim session As PNSession = New PNSession
Dim pID As Integer = Process.GetCurrentProcess().Id

session.SetSessionPrinter(pID, "PDF Image Printer 12", 2, "Converter-",
    "C:\Profiles\NonSearchablePDF.pnpdfprofile")
```

Customize the Output File Name

Providing custom file naming for your output files can normally be accomplished by setting up your file name formatting in the conversion profile used by the printer. See the [Filename Creator](#) settings available in the conversion profile for configuring custom naming, including unique IDs, prefix and suffix terms, page numbers and date and time strings as part of the name..

When your file naming requirements vary too much from file to file, the main object [IPNSession](#) has two alternative options.

SetSaveOptionsOutputLocationAndOutputFileName

The [SetSaveOptionsOutputLocationAndOutputFileName](#) method allows you to override the output folder and/or the output file name before you print the file. One or the other or both of the arguments can be set by passing empty string for the unneeded argument.

An example scenario would be if you need to read an index file that contains the path to the source file to convert and the desired name and final output location. This method would be used to set the output folder or the output file name from the index file.

The **ConvertWord** sample uses this method to override the chosen conversion profile settings and set the output directory to *C:\PEERNET\Samples\ConvertWordOutput* and to set the output file name to any custom filename entered on the form.

OnGetNextFileName Event

The [OnGetNextFileName](#) event is called each time the printer needs to create a new file on disk.

For example, when creating a single, multi-paged file from a single print job, the event will be call exactly once, at the start. When when creating serialized output where one output file is created for each page in a single print job, this event is called once for each page.

The sample, **CustomNaming**, uses this event to name each file based on a fictional call to get an order number from an external source.

Printing Using IPNPrintSession

The [IPNPrintSession](#) object is used to manage a printer from the pool to be used to print a single document. A new **IPNPrintSession** object is needed for each document printed. This object should not be retrieved until just before you are about to print the document and should be released back into the printer pool as soon as possible.

In pseudo-code:

- get an **IPNPrintSession** object to control the printing steps
- using the printer name ([PrinterName](#)) from the object, print the document to that printer
- check for the document to have been sent to the printer using [WaitForJobsSpooled](#)
- wait for the document to finish printing using [WaitForJobsCompleted](#)
- handle error cases with [Cancel](#)
- free the **IPNPrintSession** object using `Marshal.FinalReleaseComObject`

All of the samples demonstrate these steps, as well as handling error cases and exceptions to clean up properly.

As there may not be a free printer available, [NewPrintSession](#) is a timed method and will return *null* if no printer is available. This allows looping while waiting for a printer and the ability to cancel if a set time period has been exceeded.

How to Tell When the File is Converted

With the PNSrv12 COM object it is easy to determine when the output file has been created, or "done".

In many cases, this information is needed in order to know when to move on to the next file, or continue the workflow for the current file. There are two different approaches that can be used to find this out.

Using the OnEndJob Event

The first way is to add an event handler to the **IPNSession** [OnEndJob](#) event. This event is called when the file is complete. An [IPNJob](#) object is passed to the event that contains information about the job, such as the name of the source file, and a list of the file or files created.

This allows you to get the exact name of the file created, even when serialized or other custom file naming properties have been set.

The **CustomNaming** sample demonstrates using an **OnEndJob** event handler to retrieve the names of the created files. It also demonstrates how to use `Marshal.FinalReleaseComObject` to safely dispose of the objects passed into and used in the event handler. These objects must be released properly in order for the COM object to shutdown cleanly when your application is finished.

Using the WaitForJobsCompleted method

The other way is to use the **IPNPrintSession** [WaitForJobsCompleted](#) method after printing the file.

This method does not return until the file(s) have been created, or until a specified timeout period has expired. If the timeout period has not expired then the printer has created the file and it is available for further processing.

This approach works when the exact file name created is not needed, such as when creating all output files in a specific folder, and then uploading the entire folder contents to an archive system.

If events are not supported, and you need the names of the created files, **WaitForJobsCompleted** and *job tracking* using [TrackingOn](#) and [Reset](#) on the **IPNSession** object can track the created files.

Job tracking will add an [IPNJob](#) item to the [Jobs](#) collection on the parent [IPNSession](#) object for every job printed on any printer in the pool. This collection will continue to grow until [Reset](#) is called to clear the current list, or the IPNSession is released using `Marshal.FinalReleaseComObject`.

When using this technique with a very large number of files, or with long running applications, it is critical to periodically call [Reset](#) to clear this list or you will eventually run out of memory and resources.

The **ConvertWord** sample uses *job tracking* to store the completed job information for the file conversion. The information is outputted to the form and then cleared to keep the memory use low.

PNSrv12Lib Object Reference

The PNSrv12 COM interface provides developers with the ability to control the PEERNET printers through their own application code for easy print automation. You can easily configure the printer settings and you have complete control over the printing process right to the end.

- [Classes](#)
- [Enumerations](#)
- [Obsolete Classes and Enumerations](#)

Classes

[IPNSession](#)

The IPNSession object is the starting point for working with the PNSrv12Lib COM interface. It is associated with a single PEERNET printer, and creates a pool of printers containing one or more copies of the printer requested using the [SetSessionPrinter](#) method.

[IPNPrintSession](#)

Represents a single printer from the pool of printers held by the [IPNSession](#) object. Each document printed needs its own IPNPrintSession object to control and synchronize the printing process.

[IPNNextFileNameOptions](#)

Used to set the file naming options used in the [OnGetNextFileName](#) event to customize the output file name. The most common use of this event is to customize the file name of the output file.

[IPNJobs](#)

A collection of [IPNJob](#) objects, one for every job that has been printed.

[IPNJob](#)

Each IPNJob object represents a single print job sent to any one of the printer queues in the current [IPNSession](#) object. A job object contains information about the print job, such as the size of the job, submitted time, print job status among others.

[IPNFiles](#)

A collection of [IPNFile](#) objects, one for every file created by the printer.

IPNFile

An IPNFile object is created for every file created by the printer and represents the physical file on disk. Stores the filename for the file created on disk.

Enumerations

Enumerations are common groups of settings used to set printer properties.

pnBWCompressionMethod

Compression algorithms for monochrome, or black and white, images.

pnColorCompressionMethod

Compression algorithms for color images.

pnColorReduction

Color reduction options for reducing the number of colors in true color images.

pnDitheringMethod

Dithering algorithms to control how color images are reduced to black and white.

pnFaxPageScaling

Scale the original information is placed on the fax sized paper.

pnFaxPageScalingHAlign

Horizontally align the incoming image on the fax sized paper.

pnFaxPageScalingVAlign

Vertically align the incoming image on the fax sized paper.

pnFaxPaperHeight

Height of the fax paper.

pnFaxPaperWidth

Width of the fax paper.

pnFaxProfile

Choose the fax profile used to create a fax image.

[pnFaxResolution](#)

The resolution of the fax image.

[pnGreyscaleCompressionMethod](#)

Compression algorithms for greyscale images.

[pnImageCopyScaling](#)

Determines how the original page is placed on the new image.

[pnImageCopyScalingHAlign](#)

Horizontally align the image on the output page when copying the image to a new page size.

[pnImageCopyScalingVAlign](#)

Vertically align the image on the output page when copying the image to a new page size.

[pnIndexedCompressionMethod](#)

Compression algorithms for indexed images.

[pnOutputFileFormat](#)

The type of file to create.

[pnOverwriteActionWhenSaving](#)

Action to take when handling overwrite situations where a file of the same name already exists.

[pnPDFContentEncodingMethod](#)

The content encoding, or compression methods used by PDF files.

[pnPDFEncryption](#)

The encryption levels for PDF files.

[pnPDFStandard](#)

The PDF output standard for creating image-based (or raster) PDF files, one of None or PDF/A-1b.

[pnPrinterResolution](#)

Sets the printer resolution, or dots per inch (DPI) for the printer.

pnResampleUnits

How to scale the output image.

pnRotation

How much to rotate the output image. Rotation is counter-clockwise.

pnTextEncoding

The encoding formats for the output text extraction file.

pnTextEOL

The end-of-line encoding formats of the output text extraction

pnTextLayout

The layout of the text in the output text extraction file.

pnUnits

The unit of measure used to enter options requiring a unit of measure.

Obsolete Classes and Enumerations

The following class and enumerations are for features that have been deprecated.

- IPNPages
- IPNPage
- IPNImages
- IPNImage
- pnEmailDialog
- pnEmailService
- pnErrorMessageBoxStyle
- pnJobVariable
- pnMAPIEmailLogon
- pnNamingProfile
- pnPrinterOrientation
- pnPrinterColorMode

- pnRunCommandsWaitMode
- pnRunCommandWindowState
- pnShellAndCommandWaitMode
- pnUserVariable
- pnWatermarkPosition

IPNSession

The IPNSession object is the starting point for working with the PNSrv12 COM object. It is associated with a single PEERNET printer, and creates a pool of one or more printers as defined using the [SetSessionPrinter](#) method.

The IPNSession object also holds the settings used to control each print job's output. These settings are first determined by the conversion profile passed in to either [SetSessionPrinter](#) at the beginning, or passed to [SetPrinterProfile](#) on a per file basis. The settings can be further modified using the [property methods](#) listed in the table below. Not all methods are valid for all printers.

If no conversion profile is specified, the default system conversion profile for the printer is used.

The printer settings must be set before calling [NewPrintSession](#) to get an [IPNPrintSession](#) object for printing. The IPNPrintSession object returned contains a copy of the settings from the IPNSession object and is associated with a single non-busy printer from the pool of printers. A new IPNPrintSession object is needed for each document printed.

To further control the print and conversion process, there are several [events](#) that are fired that enable an application to intercept and apply specific custom logic. For example, the [OnGetNextFileName](#) event can be used to further customize the filename used to store the output file.

There are two main groups of methods for the IPNSession object. The first group, the initialization methods, are methods used to initialize the object and provide access to top-level objects. For example, [NewPrintSession](#) returns an [IPNPrintSession](#) object. The property methods, the second group of methods, are used to modify the settings for the print jobs over and above the settings in the conversion profile.

Optionally, you can choose to track job information as the documents are printed. This option is off by default and can be turned on by setting the IPNSession property [TrackingOn](#) to TRUE. When job tracking is enabled, the [Jobs](#) property, an [IPNJobs](#) collection, is populated with an [IPNJob](#) object for every print job processed.

- [Breaking Changes](#)
- [Initialization Methods](#)
- [Job Tracking Methods](#)
- [Property Setting Methods](#)
- [Properties](#)

➤ [Events](#)

Breaking Changes

The following methods, properties, events and enumerations have been removed as of PNSrvLib12.

- AddSessionPrinter
- NewPrintSessionEx
- EnableControlStrings
- ForcePrinterColorMode, ForcePrinterOrientation, ForcePrinterPaperSize, ForcePrinterResolution
- SetCompressionOptions
- SetDevmodeSettings
- SetEmailMessageOptions, SetEmailOn, SetEmailService, SetMAPIEmailService, SetSMTPEmailService, SetVIMEmailService
- SetErrorReporting
- SetFileNamingOptions
- SetLandscapeWatermarkOptions, SetPortraitWatermarkOptions, SetWatermarkOptionsOn
- SetMessageBoxAlerts
- SetNamingProfileFormat
- SetPDFFileFormatOptions
- SetRunAtStartCommand, SetRunAtFileCloseCommand, SetRunAtPageCommand, SetRunAtEndCommand
- SetUserExit32, SetUserExit64
- SetUserVariable
- All clear properties methods (methods starting with Clear***)
- OnStartPage, OnEndPage events
- OnStartImage, OnEndImage events

Initialization Methods

[SetSessionPrinter](#)

Initializes the IPNSession object to work with a particular printer.

[SetPrinterProfile](#)

Sets the printer profile that contains the settings that the [IPNPrintSession](#) printers will use when converting files.

[NewPrintSession](#)

Replaces the previous NewPrintSession and NewPrintSessionEx methods; returns a new instance of an [IPNPrintSession](#) object for printing.

Job Tracking Methods

[Reset](#)

Clears any accumulated job information when job information is being tracked.

[WaitForCompletion](#)

Waits a given timeout period for all jobs in all print sessions to be completed before returning control back to the calling application.

Property Methods

[GetProperty](#)

Retrieves settings from the printer using a keyword string.

[SetProperty](#)

Set individual printer settings using section and property names. See each individual set options call for a list of section and property names for each call.

[SetCustomPaperOn](#)

Enable or disable any custom paper size set.

[SetCustomPaperOptions](#)

Set or clear custom paper size options. Custom paper must be enabled using [SetCustomPaperOn](#) for these options to be used.

[SetFaxModeOn](#)

Enable or disable fax mode.

[SetFaxOptions](#)

Sets or clears fax options. Fax mode must be enabled by calling [SetFaxModeOn](#) for these options to be used.

[SetHardwareMargins](#)

Set or clear printer hardware margins.

[SetImageCopyToOn](#)

Enable or disabled image copy to options.

[SetImageCopyToOptions](#)

Set or clear image copy options. Image Copy To options must be enabled by calling [SetImageCopyToOn](#) for these options to be applied.

[SetJPEGCompressionOptions](#)

Sets or clears the color and greyscale compression options for creating JPEG files, or JPEG-compressed TIFF or PDF files.

[SetPageBrightness](#)

Set and clear any page brightness options.

[SetPageCropAreaOptions](#)

Set and clear any page cropping area options. Page cropping must be enabled by calling [SetPageCropOn](#) for these options to be applied. Only one of [SetPageCropAreaOptions](#) or [SetPageCropMarginOptions](#) can be set at any one time. Whichever method is last called determines whether margins or a page area is cropped.

[SetPageCropMarginOptions](#)

Set and clear any page cropping margin options. Page cropping must be enabled by calling [SetPageCropOn](#) for these options to be applied. Only one of [SetPageCropAreaOptions](#) or [SetPageCropMarginOptions](#) can be set at any one time. Whichever method is last called determines whether margins or a page area is cropped.

[SetPageCropOn](#)

Enable or disable page cropping options.

[SetPageRotationOptions](#)

Set or clear page rotation options for portrait and landscape pages.

[SetPageTrimOptions](#)

Set or clear page trimming options

[SetPDFCompressionOptions](#)

Set or clear PDF compression options for color, indexed, greyscale and monochrome images.

[SetPDFPassword](#)

Sets or clears the password options for PDF files.

[SetPDFSecurity](#)

Sets or clears the security options for PDF files.

[SetResamplingOn](#)

Enable or disable resampling options.

[SetResamplingOptions](#)

Set or clear resampling options. Resampling must be enabled by calling [SetResamplingOn](#) for these options to be applied.

[SetSaveOptions](#)

Set or clear file location and base file naming options, as well as append, prompting and overwrite options.

[SetSaveOptionsOutputLocationAndOutputFileName](#)

Set or clear file location and base file naming options.

[SetSaveOptionsOutputResolution](#)

Set or clear output resolution options.

[SetTextExtractionOn](#)

Enable or disable the text extraction options.

[SetTextExtractionOptions](#)

Set or clear the text extraction options. Text extraction must be enabled by calling [SetTextExtractionOn](#) for these options to be applied.

SetTIFFAdvancedOptions

Set or clear TIFF options such as fill order, photometric and byte alignment.

SetTIFFCompressionOptions

Set or clear TIFF compression options for color, indexed, greyscale and monochrome images.

Properties

Jobs

Read-only; A collection of IPNJob objects, one for each file printed.

TrackingOn

Read/Write; A boolean flag to turn job information tracking on or off.

Events

OnGetNextFileName

This event is fired each time a filename is needed, allowing full customization of the output file names.

OnStartJob, OnEndJob

Event is fired when a new print job has entered or exited the print queue.

OnOpenFile, OnCloseFile

This event is fired each time a new output file is opened or closed.

OnReportError

This event is fired when an error is reported by the driver.

OnLogMessage

This event is fired when an informational message is reported by the driver.

Initialization Methods

SetSessionPrinter

Description

Sets the active printer used by the session and the number of temporary printers to create in the printer pool. Having more than one printer in the pool of printers allows more than one file to be submitted at a time. While you can have as many printers in your pool as you want, care must be taken to balance the number of printers with your system resources.

Syntax

```
expression.SetSessionPrinter(ProcessId,PrinterName,PrinterPoolSize,  
PrinterPoolBaseNameOptional,PrinterPoolProfileOptional)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Integer ProcessId

The process id of the current process using the PNSrv12Lib. This allows PNSrv12Lib to monitor the running process and ensure all COM objects, references and printers are cleaned up if the current owner process unexpectedly crashes or is terminated.

String PrinterName

The name of the printer to use. Can be one of TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, or Raster Image Printer. The respective printer must be installed on the computer.

Integer PrinterPoolSize

The number of printers to create in the printer pool.

String PrinterPoolBaseNameOptional

Each printer is created with a unique GUID name, and is deleted when all references to this process's IPNSession are closed.

An optional prefix can be added to each GUID printer name to make the printers visually recognizable; this is useful if you have more than one process running and using PNSrv12Lib. The prefix can be combination of letters and numbers that create a valid printer name. '\ ' and ',' are not valid.

Pass empty string if you are not using this.

String PrinterPoolProfileOptional

Full path to the conversion profile to be used by all printers in the pool.

Conversion profiles are created and exported using the printer's **Profile Manager** utility. Once saved on disk, they can then be used from PNSrv12Lib. Exported profiles end with pnpdfprofile.

This can be overridden later using [SetPrinterProfile](#) or the [property methods](#). Pass an empty string if you are not using this. If not set, the default system conversion profile for the printer is used.

Exceptions

An exception will be thrown if any of the following is true:

- The printer cannot be found; check that the printer exists and that the printer name is spelled correctly
- You do not have sufficient privileges to create copies of the printer, or to create local printer ports
- SetSessionPrinter is called more than once on a single IPNSession object

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [NewPrintSession](#), [SetPrinterProfile](#)

SetPrinterProfile

Description

Sets the conversion profile to be used to read the settings for each print job's output.

Conversion profiles are created and exported using the printer's **Profile Manager** utility. Once saved on disk, they can then be used from the PNSrv12Lib. Exported profiles end with pnpdfprofile.

Overrides the profile set in the [SetSessionPrinter](#) printer call. If no conversion profile is passed into either method, the default system conversion profile for the printer is used, followed by any settings configured using the [property methods](#).

Syntax

```
expression.SetPrinterProfile(PrinterPoolProfile)
```

where expression is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

String PrinterPoolProfile

The full path to the conversion profile, or empty string to use the system default profile.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [NewPrintSession](#), [SetSessionPrinter](#)

NewPrintSession

Description

Returns a new instance of an [IPNPrintSession](#) object. A new print session object represents one printer from the pool of printers. A separate print session is needed for each file printed. The IPNPrintSession object copies the current settings from the IPNSession object and is used to monitor the status of the file as it is printed.

Syntax

```
expression.NewPrintSession(Timeout,FirstJobTimeout,AvailableTimeout,OptionsFlags)
```

where *expression* is a [IPNSession](#) object.

Returns a new [IPNPrintSession](#) instance , or NULL if a new printer session could not be retrieved.

Parameters

Integer Timeout

How long to wait, in milliseconds, for a printer in the printer pool to become available.

Integer FirstJobTimeout

How long to wait, in milliseconds, for a job to appear in the printer queue before putting the printer back into the printer pool. This timeout only comes into effect after the printSession object has been released by the calling application.

Integer AvailableTimeout

How long to wait, in milliseconds, for a second job to appear in the printer queue. As long as new print jobs are submitted to the printer, the printer is not available. When *AvailableTimeout* milliseconds have passed with no additional jobs in the printer queue, the printer is made available and returned to the printer pool.

Integer OptionsFlags

Reserved for future use; specify 0 for this parameter.

Remarks

After the document has been printed the print session object needs to be garbage collected in order to be released back into the printer pool. In .NET, use the method *InteropServices.Marshal.FinalReleaseComObject* to trigger the garbage collection.

If the print session is released but the file fails to print to the printer, the *IPNPrintSession* object will wait the timeout specified in the *FirstJobTimeout* parameter before being released back into the printer pool.

To determine if the file has been sent to the printer call the [WaitForDocSpooling](#) method on the print session object before calling *FinalReleaseComObject* to release the print session.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetSessionPrinter](#), [SetPrinterProfile](#)

Job Tracking Methods

Reset

Description

Clears any currently accumulated job tracking information from the [Jobs](#) collection. Job tracking information can only be cleared from the collection when there are no jobs running on any of the printers in your printer pool.

Job information is only accumulated if job tracking is enabled for the session object. Job tracking is off by default and is enabled through the [TrackingOn](#) property.

The *Reset* method should be called after calling [WaitForCompletion](#) to determine that all print sessions have completed, or the *WaitTimeout* parameter can be used to specify a timeout period to wait for any running print jobs to finish. If the print jobs have not completed the method returns **False** and nothing is cleared.

Syntax

```
expression.Reset(WaitTimeout)
```

Returns Boolean **True** if the job collection was cleared within the timeout period, and **False** if it did not.

Parameters

Integer WaitTimeout

The amount of time, in milliseconds, to wait for the job information to be cleared.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [WaitForCompletion](#) [TrackingOn](#) [IPNJobs](#) [IPNJob](#)

WaitForCompletion

Description

Waits for all print jobs in all printers in the printer pool to be completed. The method returns **True** as soon as all print jobs in all printers in the printer pool are completed, or **False** if the timeout period elapses before the jobs are complete.

If any of the IPNSession events, in particular [OnCloseFile](#) and [OnEndJob](#), are being used then this function has to be called before releasing the session object in order to ensure that all event notifications are received.

Syntax

expression.WaitForCompletion (WaitTimeout)

Returns Boolean **True** if all print jobs were completed within the timeout period, and **False** if they did not.

Parameters

Integer WaitTimeout

The amount of time, in milliseconds, to wait for all the jobs to be completed.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [Reset](#) [TrackingOn](#) [IPNJobs](#) [IPNJob](#)

Property Methods

GetProperty

Description

Allows you to retrieve any conversion settings that you have set on the [IPNSession](#) object using the [SetSessionPrinter](#), [SetPrinterProfile](#), [SetProperty](#) method or any of the other set options methods like [SetSaveOptions](#) that group the settings into a single call.

The conversion settings are organized into sections and then by name within that section. The section and properties names are case sensitive. The section and property names, and values for each property are the same as the configuration file settings explained in the [Printer Script File Settings](#) section.

Not all properties are available to all printers, and some properties are specific to certain printers. GetProperty uses the same arguments as [SetProperty](#); see the individual set option methods for a list of section and property names used for each.

Syntax

```
expression.GetProperty(SectionName, PropertyName)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Returns a **VARIANT** containing the property value, or **VT_EMPTY** if that property is not set.

Parameters

String *SectionName*

The section name for the property you are retrieving.

String *PropertyName*

The property name.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetProperty](#)

SetProperty

Description

Allows you to individually set any properties, or options, on the [IPNSession](#) object instead of using other set options methods like

[SetSaveOptions](#) that group the settings into a single call. The *SetProperty* method can also be used to clear a property by passing an empty argument as the property value.



Note:

The section and properties names are case sensitive and they and the values for each property are the same as the configuration file settings explained in the "[Printer Script File Settings](#)" topic. Not all properties are available to all printers, and some properties are specific to certain printers.

The properties are organized into sections and then by name within that section. See the individual [set property methods](#) for a list of section and property names to use for each argument in the method.

Syntax

```
expression.SetProperty(SectionName,PropertyName,varValue)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

String *SectionName*

The section name for the property you are settings.

String *PropertyName*

The property name.

Variant varValue

The value of the property you are setting.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [GetProperty](#)

SetCustomPaperOn

Description

Enables or disables any custom paper size settings.

Custom paper can also enabled or disabled using the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

`expression.SetCustomPaperOn(Enable)`

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Boolean Enable

A Boolean value, **True** to turn on custom paper size, **False** to disable custom paper size.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Enable	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Custom Paper Enable
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetCustomPaperOptions](#) [SetHardwareMargins](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetCustomPaperOptions

Description

Sets a custom paper size for the output file. Custom paper size consists of the width and height and top, left, right and bottom printer area margins for the new paper size. You can enter units with up to three digits of accuracy, or to an eighth of an inch (0.125in or 0.318cm).

These settings are only applied when custom paper size is enabled. The combined *Left* and *Right* printer area margins must be less than the *Width* of the custom paper. The combined *Top* and *Bottom* printer area margins must be less than the *Height* of the custom paper.

Custom paper options can also be set using the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

For a more detailed explanation of the custom paper options, see the [Printer Overrides](#) options in the conversion profile.

Syntax

`expression.SetCustomPaperOn(Units, CustomPaperWidth, CustomPaperHeight,`

```
PrinterMarginLeft, PrinterMarginTop,
PrinterMarginRight, PrinterMarginBottom)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnUnits Units

A [pnUnits](#) constant for the unit of measure used to enter any paper size options.

Double CustomPaperWidth

The width of the new paper size, in units to match Units.

Double CustomPaperHeight

The height of the new paper size, in units to match Units.

Double PrinterMarginLeft

The size of the left printer margin, in units to match Units

Double PrinterMarginTop

The size of the top printer margin, in units to match Units.

Double PrinterMarginRight

The size of the right printer margin, in units to match Units.

Double PrinterMarginBottom

The size of the bottom printer margin, in units to match Units.

Remarks

Use the following to set this option using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Units	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Units
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: .01 Inches 1 Millimeters Ignored if the units are specified in the strings below
CustomPaperHeight	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Custom Paper Height
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: 25-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 64-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter)

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
CustomPaperWidth		0.250in-80000in (inches) 0.640cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Custom Paper Width
PrinterMarginLeft	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: 25-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 64-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0.250in-80000in (inches) 0.640cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Printer Area Margin Left
PrinterMarginTop	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: 0-100 (hundredths of an inch) 0 -254 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-1in (inches) 0cm-2.540cm (centimeters)
	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Printer Area Margin Top
PrinterMarginRight	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: 0-100 (hundredths of an inch) 0 -254 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-1in (inches) 0cm-2.540cm (centimeters)
	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Printer Area Margin Right
PrinterMarginBottom	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: 0-100 (hundredths of an inch) 0 -254 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-1in (inches) 0cm-2.540cm (centimeters)
	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Printer Area Margin Bottom

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetCustomPaperOn](#) [SetHardwareMargins](#) [SetProperty pnUnits](#)

SetFaxModeOn

Description

Enables or disables the fax mode options.

Fax mode can also be enabled or disabled using the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

expression.SetFaxModeOn(Enable)

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Boolean Enable

Set **True** to enable fax mode options, **False** to disable the fax options.

Remarks

Use the following to set this option using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Enable	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fax
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetFaxOptions](#) [SetTIFFAdvancedOptions](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetFaxOptions

Description

Sets fax options on the [IPNSession](#) object.

To set a single fax option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

```
expression.SetFaxOptions(FaxProfile, FaxResolution, FaxPaperWidth, FaxPaperHeight,  
                          FaxPageScaling, FaxPageHAlign, FaxPageVAlign,  
                          FaxPageShrinkIfLarger, FaxPageAutoRotate, FaxPageMaintainAspect
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnFaxProfile FaxPofile

A [pnFaxProfile](#) constant for the fax format profile to to use.

pnFaxResolution FaxResolution

A [pnFaxResolution](#) constant for the fax resolution to create. The fax format profile being used determines what resolutions are valid. Not all resolutions are valid with all fax format profiles.

pnFaxPaperWidth FaxPaperWidth

A [pnFaxPaperWidth](#) constant for the width of the fax paper to be used when creating the faxable image.

pnFaxPaperHeight FaxPaperHeight

A [pnFaxPaperHeight](#) constant to set the height of the fax paper.

pnFaxPageScaling FaxPageScaling

A [pnFaxPageScaling](#) constant to determine how the page is scaled to the size of the fax paper.

pnFaxPageScalingHAlign FaxPageHAlign

A [pnFaxPageScalingHAlign](#) constant to determine how to horizontally align the page on the fax paper.

pnFaxPageScalingVAlign FaxPageVAlign

A [pnFaxPageScalingVAlign](#) constant to determine how to vertically align the page on the fax paper.

Boolean FaxPageShrinkIfLarger

Set to **True** to automatically shrink the page if it is larger than the fax paper size.

Boolean FaxPageAutoRotate

Set as **True** to automatically rotate the page if it will fit on the fax paper without scaling.

Boolean FaxPageMaintainAspect

Set as **True** to prevent distortion when scaling larger or smaller pages. When this option is on, the height and width of the page change in relation to one another.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
FaxProfile	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fax Profile
	varValue:	VT_I4, one of the following: 0 = Profile F 1 = Profile S 2 = Profile C
FaxResolution	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fax Resolution
	varValue:	VT_I4, one of the following resolutions: 0 = 200 x 100, Profile S, F 1 = 200 x 200, Profile S, F, C 2 = 204 x 98, Profile S, F 3 = 204 x 196, Profile S, F 4 = 300 x 300, Profile F, C 5 = 400 x 400, Profile F, C 6 = 408 x 391, Profile F 7 = 204 x 391, Profile F 8 = 300 x 600, Profile F 9 = 400 x 800, Profile F 10 = 600 x 600, Profile F, C 11 = 600 x 1200, Profile F 12 = 1200 x 1200, Profile F, C 13 = 100 x 100, Profile F, C
FaxPaperWidth	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fax Paper Width
	varValue:	VT_I4, one of the following: 0 = Letter 1 = Legal 2 = A4 (ISO) 3 = B4 (ISO) 4 = A3 (ISO)
FaxPaperHeight	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fax Paper Height
	varValue:	VT_I4, one of the following: 0 = Variable Height 1 = Fixed Height

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
FaxPageScaling	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fax Page Scaling
	varValue:	VT_I4, one of the following: 0 = Fit to Page 1 = Actual Size
FaxPageHAlign	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fax Page Scaling H Align
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: Left Middle Right
FaxPageVAlign	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fax Page Scaling V Align
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: Top Middle Bottom
FaxPageShrinkIfLarger	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fax Page Scaling Shrink Larger
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
FaxPageAutoRotate	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fax Page Scaling Auto Rotate
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
FaxPageMaintainAspect	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fax Page Scaling Lock Aspect Ratio
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetFaxModeOn](#) [SetTIFFAdvancedOptions](#) [SetProperty pnFaxProfile](#) [pnFaxResolution](#) [pnFaxPaperWidth](#) [pnFaxPaperHeight](#) [pnFaxPageScaling](#) [pnFaxPageScalingHAlign](#) [pnFaxPageScalingVAlign](#)

SetHardwareMargins

Description

Sets the hardware margin options on the [IPNSession](#) object.

The hardware margins option allows you to customize the size of the printer-supplied edge on your outputted files. Hardware margins cannot be larger than 1.00in (2.54cm) on each side of the paper. You can enter units with up to three digits of accuracy, or to an eighth of an inch (0.125in or 0.318cm).

To clear a single hardware margin option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

For a more detailed explanation of hardware margins, see the [Printer Overrides](#) options in the conversion profile settings.

Syntax

```
expression.SetHardwareMargins(Units, HardwareMarginLeftRight, HardwareMarginTopBottom)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnUnits Units

A [pnUnits](#) constant for the unit of measure used to enter any paper size options.

Double HardwareMarginLeftRight

The left and right hardware margin settings in units to match Units.

Double HardwareMarginTopBottom

The top and bottom hardware margin settings in units to match Units.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Units	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Units
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: .01 Inches 1 Millimeters Ignored if the units are specified in the strings below
HardwareMarginLeftRight	SectionName:	Advanced Features

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
HardwareMarginTopBottom	PropertyName:	Hardware Margin Left
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges 0-100 (hundredths of an inch) 0-254 (tenths of a millimeter) 0.0in-1.0in (inches) 0.0cm-2.540cm (centimeters)
	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Hardware Margin Top
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges 0-100 (hundredths of an inch) 0-254 (tenths of a millimeter) 0.0in-1.0in (inches) 0.0cm-2.540cm (centimeters)

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetCustomPaperOn](#) [SetCustomPaperOptions](#) [SetProperty pnUnits](#)

SetImageCopyToOn

Description

Enables or disables the Copy To options.

The Copy To option can also be enabled or disabled using the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

expression.SetImageCopyToOn (Enable)

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Boolean Enable

Set **True** to enable any Copy To options, **False** to disable them.

Remarks

Use the following to set this option using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Enable	SectionName:	Processing

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
	PropertyName:	Copy
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetImageCopyToOptions](#) [SetResamplingOn](#) [SetResamplingOptions](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetImageCopyToOptions

Description

Sets the Copy To options on the [IPNSession](#) object. The concept of image copying is similar to enlarging or shrinking a page using a photocopier, with the added ability to position the page on the new image using the scaling and alignment options. You can enter units with up to three digits of accuracy, or to an eighth of an inch (0.125in or 0.318cm).

These settings are only applied when the Copy To options is enabled. The combined *Left* and *Right* image area margins must be less than the *Width* of the new page. The combined *Top* and *Bottom* image area margins must be less than the *Height* of the new page.

To set a single Copy To option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

For a more detailed explanation of the copy to feature, see the [Page Resizing](#) options in the conversion profile settings.

Syntax

```
expression.SetImageCopyToOn(Units, CopyToWidth, CopyToHeight,
                             CopyToImageMarginLeft, CopyToImageMarginTop,
                             CopyToImageMarginRight, CopyToImageMarginBottom,
                             ImageCopyScaling, ImageCopyHAlign, ImageCopyVAlign,
                             ImageCopyShrinkIfLarger, ImageCopyMaintainAspect)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnUnits Units

A [pnUnits](#) constant for the unit of measure used to enter any Copy To image size options.

Double CopyToWidth

The width of the new image in units to match Units.

Double CopyToHeight

The height of the new image in units to match Units.

Double CopyToImageMarginLeft

The left margin in units to match Units.

Double CopyToImageMarginTop

The top margin in units to match Units.

Double CopyToImageMarginRight

The right margin in units to match Units.

Double CopyToImageMarginBottom

The bottom margin in units to match Units.

pnImageCopyScaling ImageCopyScaling

A [pnImageCopyScaling](#) constant to determine how the page is scaled to fit the new image size.

pnImageCopyScalingHAlign ImageCopyHAlign

A [pnImageCopyScalingHAlign](#) constant for how to horizontally align the page in the new image.

pnImageCopyScalingVAlign ImageCopyVAlign

A [pnImageCopyScalingVAlign](#) constant for how to vertically align the page in the new image.

Boolean ImageCopyShrinkIfLarger

Enter **True** to shrink the page to fit inside the new image size if the original page size is larger.

Boolean ImageCopyMaintainAspect

Enter **True** to prevent distortion when scaling larger or smaller image to different image sizes.

Remarks

Use the following to set this option using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Units	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Units
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: .01 Inches 1 Millimeters Ignored if the units are specified in the strings below

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
CopyToWidth	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Copy to width
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
CopyToHeight	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Copy to height
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
CopyToImageMarginLeft	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Copy to IAM Left
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
CopyToImageMarginTop	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Copy to IAM Top
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
CopyToImageMarginRight	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Copy to IAM Right
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
CopyToImageMarginBottom	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Copy to IAM Bottom

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
ImageCopyScaling	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Copy Page Scaling
ImageCopyHAlign	varValue:	VT_UI4, one of the following: 0 = Fit to page 1 = Actual Size
	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Copy H Align
ImageCopyVAlign	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: Left Middle Right
	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Copy V Align
ImageCopyShrinkIfLarger	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: Top Middle Bottom
	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Copy Page Scaling Shrink Larger
ImageCopyMaintainAspect	varValue:	VT_BOOL
	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Copy Page Lock Aspect Ratio
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetImageCopyOn](#) [SetResamplingOn](#) [SetResamplingOptions](#) [SetProperty](#) [pnUnits](#) [pnImageCopyScaling](#) [pnImageCopyScalingHAlign](#) [pnImageCopyScalingVAlign](#)

SetJPEGCompressionOptions

Description

Sets the compression methods to use when storing color or greyscale JPEG images. The actual compression method used on each page will depend on any color reduction method chosen through the [SetSaveOptions](#) method. Other output options used, such as [SetFaxImageOptions](#) may override any settings chosen here.

To set only a single compression option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

```
expression.SetJPEGCompressionOptions(Color, Greyscale)
```

where expression is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnColorCompressionMethod Color

A [pnColorCompressionMethod](#) constant for the compression method to use for color images. Not all of the constants are valid for this method, only *pnColorCompressionJPEGHighQuality*, *pnColorCompressionJPEGMediumHighQuality*, *pnColorCompressionJPEGMediumQuality*, *pnColorCompressionJPEGMediumLowQuality*, and *pnColorCompressionJPEGLowQuality* apply. If an invalid constant is passed the default compression of *pnColorCompressionJPEGMediumQuality* is used.

pnGreyscaleCompressionMethod Greyscale

A [pnGreyscaleCompressionMethod](#) constant for the compression method to use for greyscale images. Not all of the constants are valid for this method, only *pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGHighQuality*, *pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGMediumHighQuality*, *pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGMediumQuality*, *pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGMediumLowQuality*, and *pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGLowQuality* apply. If an invalid constant is passed the default compression of *pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGMediumQuality* is used.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Color	SectionName:	JPEG File Format

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Greyscale	PropertyName:	Color compression
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: High Quality Medium High Quality Medium Quality Medium Low Quality Low Quality
	SectionName:	JPEG File Format
	PropertyName:	Greyscale compression
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: High Quality Medium High Quality Medium Quality Medium Low Quality Low Quality

Supported Printers: Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetProperty pnColorColorCompressionMethod](#)
[pnGreyscaleCompressionMethod](#)

SetPageCropAreaOptions

Description

Sets any page area cropping options in the [IPNSession](#) object. The concept of page cropping is analogous to scissors that cut away sections of paper. In this case portions of the page are removed and the remaining image area is smaller than the original page.

If all four fields, *CropLeft*, *CropTop*, *CropWidth* and *CropHeight*, are 0 then no cropping is performed.

To set a only a single page area cropping option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

See the [Crop Margins or Areas](#) section for a more detailed explanation.

Syntax

```
expression.SetPageCropAreaOptions(Units, CropLeft, CropTop, CropWidth, CropHeight)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnUnits Units

A [pnUnits](#) constant for the unit of measure used to enter the cropping measurements.

Double CropLeft

This is the leftmost starting point for the cropped area, in [pnUnits](#) from the left side of the page.

Double CropTop

This is the topmost starting point for the cropped area, in [pnUnits](#) from the top of the page.

Double CropWidth

The width of the area you want to crop from the original page in [pnUnits](#). This area starts at *CropLeft*.

Double CropHeight

The width of the area you want to crop from the original page in [pnUnits](#). This area starts at *CropTop*.

Remarks

Only one of *SetPageCropAreaOptions* or [SetPageCropMarginOptions](#) can be set at any one time. Whichever method is last called determines whether margins or a page area is cropped.

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method	SetProperty Parameters	
Parameter		
Units	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Units
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: .01 Inches 1 Millimeters Ignored if the units are specified in the strings below
CropLeft	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Crop left
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches)

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
CropTop		0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Crop top
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
CropWidth	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Crop width
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
	SectionName:	Processing
CropHeight	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Crop height
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
	SectionName:	Processing
There is no parameter for this option, it is automatically set.	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Crop Option
	varValue:	VT_I4, must be 0 to crop by area or region

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetPageBrightness](#) [SetPageCropOn](#) [SetPageCropMarginOptions](#) [SetPageRotationOptions](#) [SetPageTrimOptions](#) [SetProperty](#) [pnUnits](#)

SetPageBrightness

Description

Sets the page brightness options in the [IPNSession](#) object.

You can also set the page brightness adjustment by calling [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

See the [Adjust Page Brightness](#) section for a more detailed explanation.

Syntax

```
expression.SetPageBrightness(Brightness)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Integer Brightness

A value between -100 and 100 that determines the brightness level of the page.

Range	Action
-100 to -1	Darkens the image, with -100 being black.
0	No change
1 to 100	Lightens the image, with 100 being white.

Remarks

Use the following to set this option using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Brightness	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Brightness Adjust
	varValue:	VT_I4, -100 - 100 as above

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetPageCropOn](#) [SetPageCropAreaOptions](#) [SetPageCropMarginOptions](#) [SetPageRotationOptions](#) [SetPageTrimOptions](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetPageTrimOptions

Description

Sets any page trimming options in the [IPNSession](#) object. Trimming is similar to cropping except that all areas on the chosen sides (Left, Right, Top or Bottom) of the page that fall at or below the chosen intensity level will be automatically removed.

To set a single trimming option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

See the [Trim Existing Margins by Color Intensity](#) section for a more detailed explanation.

Syntax

```
expression.SetPageTrimOptions(TrimLeft, TrimTop, TrimRight, TrimBottom, TrimLevel)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Boolean TrimLeft

Pass as **True** to trim the left side of the page, **False** to ignore.

Boolean TrimTop

Pass as **True** to trim the top of the page, **False** to ignore.

Boolean TrimRight

Pass as **True** to trim the right side of the page, **False** to ignore.

Boolean TrimBottom

Pass as **True** to trim the bottom of the page, **False** to ignore.

Integer TrimLevel

This must be a value between 0 - 100. When the intensity is set all the way to the left on White(0), only pure white pixels will be removed. The higher the intensity level, the more colors will removed. If the intensity is set to Black(100), the entire page will in effect be "trimmed", and the trimming operation is abandoned.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
TrimLeft	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Trim left
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
TrimTop	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Trim top
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
TrimRight	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Trim right
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
TrimBottom	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Trim bottom

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
TrimLevel	varValue:	VT_BOOL
	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Trim Threshold
	varValue:	VT_I4 Range of 1-100

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetPageBrightness](#) [SetPageRotationOptions](#) [SetPageCropOn](#) [SetPageCropAreaOptions](#) [SetPageCropMarginOptions](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetPageRotationOptions

Description

Sets any page rotation options in the [IPNSession](#) object.

To set a single page rotation option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

See the [Rotate Pages](#) section for a more detailed explanation.

Syntax

expression.SetPageRotationOptions (Portrait, Landscape)

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnRotation Portrait

A [pnRotation](#) constant for the degree of counter-clockwise rotation for portrait pages.

pnRotation Landscape

A [pnRotation](#) constant for the degree of counter-clockwise rotation for landscape pages.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Portrait	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Rotate portrait

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Landscape	varValue:	VT_I4, one of: 0 90 180 270
	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Rotate landscape
	varValue:	VT_I4, one of: 0 90 180 270

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetPageBrightness](#) [SetPageCropOn](#) [SetPageCropAreaOptions](#) [SetPageCropMarginOptions](#) [SetPageTrimOptions](#) [SetProperty pnRotation](#)

SetPageCropOn

Description

Enables or disables any page cropping options set.

Cropping can also be enabled or disabled using the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

expression.SetPageCropOn(Enable)

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Boolean Enable

Set **True** to enable any Cropping options, **False** to disable them.

Remarks

Use the following to set this option using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Enable	SectionName:	Processing

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
	PropertyName:	Crop
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetPageBrightness](#) [SetPageCropAreaOptions](#) [SetPageCropMarginOptions](#) [SetPageRotationOptions](#) [SetPageTrimOptions](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetPageCropMarginOptions

Description

Sets the page margin cropping options in the [IPNSession](#) object. The concept of page cropping is analogous to scissors that cut away sections of paper. In this case the top, left, right and bottom edges of the page are removed and the remaining image area is smaller than the original page.

To set a single page margin cropping option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

See the [Crop Margins or Areas](#) section for a more detailed explanation.

Syntax

expression.SetPageCropAreaOptions(Units, CropLeft, CropTop, CropRight, CropBottom)
 where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnUnits Units

A [pnUnits](#) constant for the unit of measure used to enter the cropping measurements.

Double CropLeft

The desired width of the left margin to crop in [pnUnits](#) from the left-hand side of the page.

Double CropTop

The desired height of the top margin to crop in [pnUnits](#) from the top of the page.

Double CropRight

The desired width of the right margin to crop in [pnUnits](#) from the right-hand side of the page.

Double CropBottom

The desired height of the bottom margin to crop in [pnUnits](#) from the bottom of the page.

Remarks

Only one of [SetPageCropAreaOptions](#) or [SetPageCropMarginOptions](#) can be set at any one time. Whichever method is last called determines whether margins or a page area is cropped.

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method	SetProperty Parameters	
Parameter		
Units	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Units
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: .01 Inches 1 Millimeters Ignored if the units are specified in the strings below
CropLeft	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Crop margin left
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
CropTop	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Crop margin top
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
CropRight	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Crop margin right
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
CropBottom	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Crop margin bottom
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following ranges: 0-8000000 (hundredths of an inch) 0-20000000 (tenths of a millimeter) 0in-80000in (inches) 0cm-200000.000cm (centimeters)
There is no parameter for this option, it is automatically set.	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Crop Option
	varValue:	VT_I4, must be 1 to crop margins

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetPageBrightness](#) [SetPageCropOn](#) [SetPageCropAreaOptions](#) [SetPageRotationOptions](#) [SetPageTrimOptions](#) [SetProperty pnUnits](#)

SetPDFCompressionOptions

Description

Sets the PDF file format image and content compression methods used to store any images in the output file. The actual compression method used on each image will depend on the color reduction method chosen through the [SetSaveOptions](#) method. Other output options used, such as [SetFaxImageOptions](#) may override any settings chosen here.

When creating vector PDF files, the color, indexed, greyscale and BW compression options apply to any images on the pages of the file. When creating raster, or non-searchable PDF files where each page is an image, the compression options apply to the entire page.

To set only a single compression option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

```
expression.SetPDFCompressionOptions(UseCompression, UseASCIICompression, ContentEncoding, Color, Indexed, Greyscale, BW, PDFStandard)
```

where expression is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Boolean UseCompression

Set **True** to create a compressed PDF file, **False** to create an uncompressed document. Uncompressed PDF files can be very large.

Boolean UseASCIICompression

Set **True** to store the PDF document in ASCII format.

pnPDFContentEncodingMethod ContentEncoding

A [pnPDFContentEncodingMethod](#) constant for the compression method to use to compress any text and line art in the PDF document.

pnColorCompressionMethod Color

A [pnColorCompressionMethod](#) constant for the compression method to use for color images.

pnIndexedCompressionMethod Indexed

A [pnIndexedCompressionMethod](#) constant for the compression method to use for indexed images. An indexed image is an image that has 256 colors or less.

pnGreyscaleCompressionMethod Greyscale

A [pnGreyscaleCompressionMethod](#) constant for the compression method to use for greyscale images.

pnBWCompressionMethod BW

A [pnBWCompressionMethod](#) constant for the compression method to use for black and white images.

pnPDFStandard PDFStandard

A [pnPDFStandard](#) constant for the compression method to use for black and white images.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
UseCompression	SectionName:	PDF File Format
	PropertyName:	Use compression
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
UseASCIICompression	SectionName:	PDF File Format
	PropertyName:	Use ASCII
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
ContentEncoding	SectionName:	PDF File Format

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Color	PropertyName:	Content Encoding
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: None ZIP RLE LZW
	SectionName:	PDF File Format
	PropertyName:	Color compression
Indexed	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: None ZIP RLE JPEG High JPEG Medium High JPEG Medium JPEG Medium Low JPEG Low LZW
	SectionName:	PDF File Format
	PropertyName:	Indexed compression
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: None ZIP RLE JPEG High JPEG Medium High JPEG Medium JPEG Medium Low JPEG Low LZW
Greyscale	SectionName:	PDF File Format
	PropertyName:	Greyscale compression
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: None ZIP RLE JPEG High JPEG Medium High JPEG Medium JPEG Medium Low

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
BW		JPEG Low LZW
	SectionName:	PDF File Format
	PropertyName:	BW compression
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: None Group4 Group3-2D Group3-1D MH
PDFStandard	SectionName:	PDF File Format
	PropertyName:	PDF Standard
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: None PDF/A-1b

Supported Printers: PDF Image Printer, %SUPDRV_RASTER%>

See Also: [SetPDFPassword](#) [SetPDFSecurity](#) [SetProperty](#) [pnColorReduction](#) [pnDitheringMethod](#) [pnPDFContentEncodingMethod](#) [pnColorColorCompressionMethod](#) [pnIndexedCompressionMethod](#) [pnGreyscaleCompressionMethod](#) [pnBWCompressionMethod](#) [pnPDFStandard](#)

SetPDFSecurity

Description

PDF files can be created with or without security. Creating a secure PDF allows you to restrict what can be done with the contents of the file. For instance, you can allow people to read and print the file but not be able to copy any of the text or images out of the file. Supported security options consist of two different levels of encryption and the ability to control what the viewer can do with PDF file. You can also set up to two levels of password protection using the [SetPDFPassword](#) method.

To set only a single security option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

```
expression.SetPDFSecurity(UseSecurity, Encryption,  
                          AllowCopyText, AllowPrinting,
```

AllowDocumentChange, AllowCommentsAndFormFields)

where expression is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Boolean UseSecurity

Set **True** to create a secure PDF file, **False** to create an unsecured document.

pnPDFEncryption Encryption

A [pnPDFEncryption](#) constant for the encryption level of the PDF. The encryption option chosen determines what version of Acrobat is needed to open and view the file

Boolean AllowCopyText

Set **True** to allow text and images in the PDF file to be selected and copied to the clipboard for use in other documents, **False** to disallow.

Boolean AllowPrinting

Set **True** to allow the PDF file to be printed, **False** to disallow.

Boolean AllowDocumentChange

Set **True** to allow pages in the PDF file to be inserted, removed and modified, **False** to disallow. This also allows document signing as well as adding or editing form fields.

Boolean AllowCommentsAndFormFields

Set **True** to allow only form fields and comments to added, edited or removed; **False** to disallow.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
UseSecurity	SectionName:	PDF Security
	PropertyName:	Use Security
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
Encryption	SectionName:	PDF Security
	PropertyName:	Encrypt Level
	varValue:	VT_I4 1 = 40-bit encryption 2 = 128-bit encryption 3 = 128-bit AES encryption 4 = 256-bit AES encryption
AllowCopyText	SectionName:	PDF Security

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
AllowPrinting	PropertyName:	Can Copy
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
	SectionName:	PDF Security
AllowDocumentChange	PropertyName:	Can Print
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
	SectionName:	PDF Security
AllowCommentsAndFormFields	PropertyName:	Can Change Doc
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
	SectionName:	PDF Security
	PropertyName:	Can ChangeOther
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
	SectionName:	PDF Security

Supported Printers: PDF Image Printer, %SUPDRV_RASTER%>

See Also: [SetPDFPassword](#) [SetProperty](#) [pnPDFEncryption](#)

SetPDFPassword

Description

There are two levels of password protection that can be set for PDF files – one for opening the PDF file (also known as the document open password), and one for making changes or modifying the PDF file (also called the permissions, or change, password).

This method allows you to specify these passwords. PDF password protection is only applies if PDF security is enabled. This is done through the [PDFSetSecurity](#) method.

To set only a single security option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

```
expression.SetPDFPassword(EnableOpenPassword, OpenPassword,
                           EnableChangePassword, ChangePassword)
```

where expression is a [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Boolean EnableOpenPassword

Set **True** to require anyone opening this PDF file to type in the password you specify.

String OpenPassword

The password you want to use to allow the PDF file to be opened.

Boolean EnableChangePassword

Set **True** to require anyone making changes to this PDF file to type in the password you specify. When set, this password is required to change the security settings or to modify permissions on the document.

String ChangePassword

The password you want to use to allow changes to the PDF file.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
EnableOpenPassword	SectionName:	PDF Security
	PropertyName:	User Pswd On
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
OpenPassword	SectionName:	PDF Security
	PropertyName:	User Pswd
	varValue:	VT_BSTR
EnableChangePassword	SectionName:	PDF Security
	PropertyName:	Owner Pswd On
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
ChangePassword	SectionName:	PDF Security
	PropertyName:	Owner Pswd
	varValue:	VT_BSTR

Supported Printers: PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetPDFSecurity](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetResamplingOptions

Description

Sets any resampling options in the [IPNSession](#) object. The resample feature allows you to scale the output image to:

- a particular width and height in pixels
- a percentage of the original size, ranging from 1% - 500%
- a new image resolution (DPI), ranging from 50 DPI - 3600 DPI

To set a single resampling option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

See the [Resample Page to New Size](#) section for a more detailed explanation.

Syntax

```
expression.SetResamplingOptions(Resample, ResampleWidthOrXResolution,
                                ResampleHeightOrYResolution, ResampleLockAspectRatio)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnResampleUnits Resample

A [pnResampleUnits](#) constant for resampling using pixels, percentage or resolution.

Integer ResampleWidthOrXResolution

Enter in the new image width in pixels, as a percentage of the original page size, or the new x resolution (dots per inch).

Integer ResampleHeightOrYResolution

Enter in the new image height in pixels, as a percentage of the original page size, or the new y resolution (dots per inch). If *ResampleLockAspectRatio* is *True*, you can pass 0 for the height and it will be calculated automatically to prevent distortion.

Boolean ResampleLockAspectRatio

Pass **True** to constrain the image height and width so the image does not get distorted when resampling.

Remarks

Use the following to set options using [SetProperty](#) when *Resample* is **pnResampleUnitsPixels**:

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Resample	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample Units
	varValue:	VT_I4, must be 0
ResampleWidthOrXResolution	SectionName:	Processing

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
ResampleHeightOrYResolution	PropertyName:	Resample Pixels Width
	varValue:	VT_I4 Range between 0 - 4294967295
	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample Pixels Height
ResampleLockAspectRatio	varValue:	VT_I4 Range between 0 - 4294967295
	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample Lock Aspect Ratio
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Use the following to set options using [SetProperty](#) when *Resample* is **pnResampleUnitsPercentage**:

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Resample	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample Units
	varValue:	VT_UI4, must be 1
ResampleWidthOrXResolution	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample Width Percentage
	varValue:	VT_UI4 Range between 1 - 500
ResampleHeightOrYResolution	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample Height Percentage
	varValue:	VT_UI4 Range between 1 - 500
ResampleLockAspectRatio	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample Lock Aspect Ratio
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Use the following to set options using [SetProperty](#) when *Resample* is **pnResampleUnitsDPI**:

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Resample	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample Units
	varValue:	VT_UI4, must be 2
ResampleWidthOrXResolution	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample X DPI
	varValue:	VT_UI4 Range between 50 - 3600
ResampleHeightOrYResolution	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample Y DPI
	varValue:	VT_UI4 Range between 50 - 3600
ResampleLockAspectRatio	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample Lock Aspect Ratio
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetResamplingOn](#) [SetImageCopyToOn](#) [SetImageCopyToOptions](#) [SetProperty pnResampleUnits](#)

SetResamplingOn

Description

Enables or disables the resampling options. When these options are not set through the [IPNSession](#) object the default options for *Resampling* in the *Page Processing* tab in the PEERNET Inc. printer's *Printing Preferences* dialog will be applied to the output file instead.

Resampling can also be enabled or disabled using the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

```
expression.SetResamplingOn(Enable)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Boolean Enable

Set **True** to enable any resampling options, **False** to disable them.

Remarks

Use the following to set this option using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Enable	SectionName:	Processing
	PropertyName:	Resample
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetPageBrightness](#) [SetPageCropAreaOptions](#) [SetPageCropMarginOptions](#) [SetPageRotationOptions](#) [SetPageTrimOptions](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetSaveOptions

Description

Modifies the file save options on the [IPNSession](#) object.

To set a single save option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

For a more advanced file naming options, use the [file name creator](#) options in a conversion profile.

Syntax

```
expression.SetSaveOptions(OutputLocation, OutputBaseFileName, OutputFileFormat,
                           Append, ColorReduction, Dithering,
                           PromptForOutputLocationAndBaseFileName,
                           OverwriteActionWhenSaving, RemoveExt, RemoveProdName)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

String OutputLocation

Pass the fully qualified path to the directory for storing the output your files. Pass this string as empty to use any OutputLocation setting from the conversion profile. If no location is set in the profile, the last used folder is used as the default directory when running in an interactive process on the desktop. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used. When running non-interactively, such as in

the Task Scheduler or a Windows service, the My Documents folder for the running process is always used if this string is empty.

String OutputBaseFileName

This is the base filename for your output file. The base filename excludes any directory path and file extension. If you want your output files to always be saved under the same filename, enter that name here. If this field is empty the print job name the printing application uses when submitting the file to the printer is used instead.

pnOutputFileFormat OutputFileFormat

A [pnOutputFileFormat](#) constant for the possible types of files that can be created with any of the supported printer drivers. Not all file formats are valid for all drivers.

Boolean Append

Set this to **True** to append, or concatenate, the pages to an existing output file or, if you are creating serialized files, an existing sequence of files.

pnColorReduction ColorReduction

A [pnColorReduction](#) constant for any color reduction options to apply to the output file. There are eight color reduction options available for reducing the number of colors in true color images. In general, the fewer the colors in an image, the smaller the file size.

pnDitheringMethod Dithering

A [pnDitheringMethod](#) constant to determine the method used when reducing color images to black and white. Dithering is used to enhance the appearance of color images that have been reduced to black and white.

Boolean PromptForOutputLocationAndBaseFileName

Set to **True** to show the printer's *Save Image* dialog prompt, or **False** to hide the prompt and use the *Directroy* and *BaseFilename* settings to create the filename.

pnOverwriteActionWhenSaving OverwriteActionWhenSaving

A [pnOverwriteActionWhenSaving](#) constant to determine the action to take in overwrite situations where a file of the same name already exists for the file you are creating.

Boolean RemoveExt

Set to **True** to automatically remove any file extension passed to the printer as part of the filename.

Boolean RemoveProdName

Set to **True** to automatically remove any product names that are added to the printed filename by the printing application. Product names are any text that precedes the following characters: a space, a dash and a space (" - ").

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
OutputLocation	SectionName:	Save
	PropertyName:	Output directory
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, as above
OutputBaseFileName	SectionName:	Save
	PropertyName:	Output filename
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, as above
OutputFileFormat	SectionName:	Save
	PropertyName:	Output File Format
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following driver-dependant values: JPEG TIFF Multipaged TIFF Serialized Adobe PDF Multipaged Adobe PDF Serialized CompuServe GIF CompuServe PNG Windows BMP TARGA Adobe Photoshop 3.0 ZSoft PCX ZSoft DCX
Append	SectionName:	Save
	PropertyName:	Append
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
ColorReduction	SectionName:	Save
	PropertyName:	Color reduction
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following none Optimal

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Dithering		BW grey 256Colors 16Colors optimalMax256Colors optimalMax16Colors
	SectionName:	Save
	PropertyName:	Dithering Method
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following None Floyd Burkes Bayer Halftone
PromptForOutputLocationAndBaseFileName	SectionName:	Save
	PropertyName:	Prompt
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
OverwriteActionWhenSaving	SectionName:	Save
	PropertyName:	When Saving
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
RemoveExt	SectionName:	Save
	PropertyName:	Remove filename extension
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
RemoveProdName	SectionName:	Save
	PropertyName:	Remove product name
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetSaveOptionsOutputLocationAndOutputFileName](#)
[SetSaveOptionsOutputResolution](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetSaveOptionsOutputLocationAndOutputFileName

Description

Modifies the file save options for the output directory and output filename on the [IPNSession](#) object. Overrides any conversion setting from the profile passed in the [SetSessionPrinter](#) or the [SetPrinterProfile](#) method.

To set a single save option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

```
expression.SetSaveOptionsOutputLocationAndOutputFileName (OutputLocation,
                                                             OutputBaseFileName)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

String OutputLocation

Pass the fully qualified path to the directory for storing the output your files. Pass this string as empty to use any OutputLocation setting from the conversion profile. If no location is set in the profile, the last used folder is used as the default directory when running in an interactive process on the desktop. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used. When running non-interactively, such as in the Task Scheduler or a Windows service, the My Documents folder for the running process is always used if this string is empty.

String OutputBaseFileName

This is the base filename for your output file. The base filename excludes any directory path and file extension. If you want your output files to always be saved under the same filename, enter that name here. Pass this string as empty to use the base filename from the conversion profile. If no basename is set in the conversion profile, the print job name set by the printing application when submitting the file to the printer is used instead.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
OutputLocation	SectionName:	Save
	PropertyName:	Output directory
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, as above
OutputBaseFileName	SectionName:	Save

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
	PropertyName:	Output filename
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, as above

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetSaveOptions](#) [SetSaveOptionsOutputResolution](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetSaveOptionsOutputResolution

Description

Modifies the file save options for the output resolution on the [IPNSession](#) object. Other settings, such as [fax options](#) or [resampling](#) can change this as the file is processed.

To set a single save option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

expression.SetSaveOptionsOutputResolution (OutputResolution)

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnPrinterResolution OutputResolution

A [pnPrinterResolution](#) constant for the desired resolution of the output file.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
OutputResolution	SectionName:	Devmode settings
	PropertyName:	Resolution
	varValue:	VT_I4, one of the following: 50, 60, 72, 75, 96, 100, 150, 200, 240, 254, 300, 400, 480, 600, 720, 800, 1200

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetSaveOptions](#) [SetSaveOptionsOutputLocationAndOutputFileName](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetTextExtractionOn

Description

Enables or disables the text extraction options. Text extraction creates a separate text file containing all of the textual elements of your printed documents. The text extraction files are stored in the same location as the output files, with the same name and the *.txt* extension.

Text extraction can also be enabled or disabled using the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

expression.SetTextExtractionOn(Enable)

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Boolean Enable

Set **True** to enable any text extraction options, **False** to disable them.

Remarks

Use the following to set this option using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Enable	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Extract Text
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetTextExtractionOptions](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetTextExtractionOptions

Description

Sets the text extraction options. Text extraction creates a separate text file containing all of the textual elements of your printed documents. The files are stored in the same location as the output files, with a *.txt* extension.

The text extraction feature was not designed to be Optical Character Recognition (OCR) software. Only straight text will be extracted and formatting of the text file may not be exact.

To set a single text extraction options use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments.

Syntax

```
expression.SetTextExtractionOptions (TextLayout, TextEncoding,  
                                     TextEOL, EmitPageBreaks)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnTextLayout TextLayout

A [pnTextLayout](#) constant to determine how the text in your text extraction file is formatted.

pnTextEncoding TextEncoding

A [pnTextEncoding](#) constant to determine the encoding for your text file.

pnTextEOL TextEOL

A [pnTextEOL](#) constant to determine the end of line (EOL) encoding for your text file. This differs between Windows, Unix and Macintosh systems.

Boolean EmitPageBreaks

Pass *True* to emit page breaks (or form feeds) for every page in your document.

Remarks

See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Use the following to set this option using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
TextFilePath	SectionName:	Advanced Features

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
TextLayout	PropertyName:	Extract Text Filepath
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, as above
	SectionName:	Advanced Features
TextEncoding	PropertyName:	Extract Text Layout
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: Physical, Raw, None
	SectionName:	Advanced Features
TextEOL	PropertyName:	Extract Text Encoding
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: ANSI, UTF-8, UTF-16
	SectionName:	Advanced Features
EmitPageBreaks	PropertyName:	Extract Text EOL
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: Windows, Mac, Unix
	SectionName:	Advanced Features
	PropertyName:	Extract Text Emit Page Breaks
	varValue:	VT_BOOL, as above
	SectionName:	Advanced Features

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetTextExtractionOn](#) [SetProperty](#) [pnTextLayout](#) [pnTextEncoding](#) [pnTextEOL](#)

SetTIFFAdvancedOptions

Description

Sets the advanced TIFF options on the [IPNSession](#) object. These options include both monochrome-specific options sometimes needed by older fax printers and some general TIFF options that apply to all TIFF output.

To set a single TIFF advanced option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

```
expression.SetTIFFAdvancedOptions(ReverseBits, EOLByteAlign, InvertPhotometric, IncludeDateTime, MotorolaFormat)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

Boolean ReverseBits

Also known as fill order, pass **True** to store the image data in least significant bit to most significant bit (LSB to MSB) order, or **False** to store the bits in most significant bit to least significant bit (MSB to LSB) order.

Boolean EOLByteAlign

Pass **True** to align rows of CCITT Group 3 1D and 2D image data on word boundaries.

Boolean InvertPhotometric

The photometric interpretation option determines the order of the black and white palette entries for a monochrome TIFF file. Pass **True** to invert the palette entries (MINISBLACK, the palette entry for 0 is black) and create a TIFF with white text on a black background. Pass **False** (MINISWHITE, the palette entry for 0 is white) to create a TIFF with black text on a white background.

Boolean IncludeDateTime

Pass **True** to have the creation time and date added to your outputted TIFF file.

Boolean MotorolaFormat

Pass **True** to create TIFF images using Motorola (big-endian) byte order. The default format is Intel (little-endian) byte order.

Remarks

Use the following to set this option using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
ReverseBits	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Fill order
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following LSB2MSB, MSB2LSB
EOLByteAlign	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	EOLs Byte Aligned
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
InvertPhotometric	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Photometric
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following:

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
IncludeDateTime		MINISWHITE, MINISBLACK
	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Include DateTime
	varValue:	VT_BOOL
MotorolaFormat	SectionName:	Image Options
	PropertyName:	Motorola Format
	varValue:	VT_BOOL

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetFaxModeOn](#) [SetFaxOptions](#) [SetTIFFCompressionOptions](#) [SetProperty](#)

SetTIFFCompressionOptions

Description

Sets the TIFF compression options used to store the image in the output file. The actual compression method used on each page will depend on the color reduction method chosen through the [SetSaveOptions](#) method. Other output options used, such as [SetFaxImageOptions](#) may also override any settings chosen here.

To set only a single compression option use the [SetProperty](#) call with the appropriate arguments. See the **Remarks** below for a list of arguments.

Syntax

```
expression.SetTIFFCompressionOptions(Color, Indexed, Greyscale, BW)
```

where expression is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Parameters

pnColorCompressionMethod Color

A [pnColorCompressionMethod](#) constant for the compression method to use for color images.

pnIndexedCompressionMethod Indexed

A [pnIndexedCompressionMethod](#) constant for the compression method to use for indexed images. An indexed image is an image that has 256 colors or less.

pnGreyscaleCompressionMethod Greyscale

A [pnGreyscaleCompressionMethod](#) constant for the compression method to use for greyscale images.

pnBWCompressionMethod BW

A [pnBWCompressionMethod](#) constant for the compression method to use for black and white images.

Remarks

Use the following to set these options using [SetProperty](#):

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
Color	SectionName:	TIFF File Format
	PropertyName:	Color compression
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: Uncompressed RGB Uncompressed CMYK Packbits RGB Packbits CMYK High quality JPEG Medium High quality JPEG Medium quality JPEG Medium Low quality JPEG Low quality JPEG LZW RGB LZW CMYK
Indexed	SectionName:	TIFF File Format
	PropertyName:	Indexed compression
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: Uncompressed Packbits High quality JPEG Medium High quality JPEG Medium quality JPEG Medium Low quality JPEG Low quality JPEG LZW
Greyscale	SectionName:	TIFF File Format
	PropertyName:	Greyscale compression
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: Uncompressed Packbits High quality JPEG Medium High quality JPEG Medium quality JPEG Medium Low quality JPEG

Method Parameter	SetProperty Parameters	
BW		Low quality JPEG LZW
	SectionName:	TIFF File Format
	PropertyName:	BW compression
	varValue:	VT_BSTR, one of the following: None Group4 Group3-2D Group3-1D MH LZW Packbits

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetProperty pnColorColorCompressionMethod](#)
[pnIndexedCompressionMethod](#) [pnGreyscaleCompressionMethod](#)
[pnBWCompressionMethod](#)

Properties

Jobs

Description

Returns an [IPNJobs](#) collection of [IPNJob](#) objects. If job tracking is enabled through the [TrackingOn](#) property a new IPNJob object is added to this collection each time a file is printed to one of the printers in the printer pool for this session. If nothing has been printed, the collection will be empty. The collection can be cleared using the [Reset](#) method.

Job tracking is off for each session by default.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.Jobs

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Returns an [IPNJobs](#) collection.

See Also: [IPNJobs](#) [IPNJob](#) [TrackingOn](#) [Reset](#)

TrackingOn

Description

Enable or disable job tracking through this property. When job tracking is enabled a new [IPNJob](#) object is added to the [Jobs](#) collection for each print job printed by one of the printers in the printer pool for this session.

When job tracking is enabled, the jobs collection will continue to grow until either the session object is released or [Reset](#) is called to clear the jobs collection. When tracking job information for a large number of files per session, you can use the *Reset* method to keep the collection from getting too large.

Read/write.

Syntax

expression.TrackingOn

where *expression* is an [IPNSession](#) object.

Returns or sets a **Boolean**.

See Also: [IPNJobs](#) [IPNJob](#) [Jobs](#) [Reset](#)

Events

OnCloseFile

Description

The OnCloseFile event occurs each time a file is closed. Attach a handler to this event to perform custom actions with the newly created file.

The [IPNFile](#) object passed to the event handler contains the file path. This object must be released using

System.Runtime.InteropServices.Marshal.FinalReleaseComObject call at the end of the event handler before returning.

Syntax

objectName_OnCloseFile (pFile)

where the [IPNSession](#) object is declared with events.

Parameters

IPNFile pFile

An [IPNFile](#) object representing the file currently being saved.

See Also: [OnEndJob](#) [OnGetNextFileName](#) [OnOpenFile](#) [OnLogMessage](#)
[OnReportError](#) [OnStartJob](#) [IPNFile](#)

OnEndJob

Description

The OnEndJob event occurs each time a file has completed printing. This event, along with [OnStartJob](#), is useful for tracking the files printed.

The [IPNJob](#) object passed into the event handler contains information about the print job such as its print status, and conversion status among others.

The job object must be released using *System.Runtime.InteropServices.Marshal.FinalReleaseComObject* call at the end of the event handler before returning.

Syntax

```
objectName_OnEndJob (pJob)
```

where the [IPNSession](#) object is declared with events.

Parameters

IPNJob pJob

An [IPNJob](#) object representing the print job for the file.

See Also: [OnCloseFile](#) [OnGetNextFileName](#) [OnOpenFile](#) [OnLogMessage](#)
[OnReportError](#) [OnStartJob](#) [IPNJob](#)

OnGetNextFileName

Description

The OnGetNextFileName event occurs each time a filename needs to be created. This can happen once for each file if the output is multi-paged or once for every page that is printed if the output is serialized

The most common use of this event is to customize the output location and filename of the output file. Both of these can be set using the [IPNNextFileNameOptions](#) object passed to the event handler.

Both the job object and the naming options object must be released using *System.Runtime.InteropServices.Marshal.FinalReleaseComObject* call at the end of the event handler before returning.

Syntax

`objectName_OnGetNextFileName(pJob, pOptions)`

where the [IPNSession](#) object is declared with events.

Parameters

IPNJob pJob

An [IPNJob](#) object representing the print job for the file.

IPNNextFileNameOptions pOptions

An [IPNNextFileNameOptions](#) object to store the updated output location and file name information.

See Also: [OnCloseFile](#) [OnEndJob](#) [OnOpenFile](#) [OnLogMessage](#) [OnReportError](#) [OnStartJob](#) [IPNJob](#) [IPNNextFileNameOptions](#)

OnLogMessage

Description

The OnLogMessage event is fired when the print driver logs any non-critical messages. Errors are reported using the [OnReportError](#) event.

Syntax

`objectName_OnReportError(pJob, Message)`

where the [IPNSession](#) object is declared with events.

Parameters

IPNJob pJob

An [IPNJob](#) object representing the print job for the file.

String Message

The message reported by the driver.

See Also: [OnCloseFile](#) [OnEndJob](#) [OnGetNextFileName](#) [OnReportError](#) [OnOpenFile](#) [OnStartJob](#) [IPNJob](#)

OnOpenFile

Description

The OnOpenFile event occurs each time a new output file is opened or created.

Syntax

`objectName_OnOpenFile(pFile)`

where the [IPNSession](#) object is declared with events.

Parameters

IPNFile pFile

An [IPNFile](#) object representing the file currently to be created.

See Also: [OnCloseFile](#) [OnEndJob](#) [OnGetNextFileName](#) [OnLogMessage](#) [OnReportError](#) [OnStartJob](#) [IPNFile](#)

OnReportError

Description

The OnReportError event is fired when the print driver reports an error, such as not having permissions to create the files in the output folder.

Syntax

```
objectName_OnReportError(pJob, Error)
```

where the [IPNSession](#) object is declared with events.

Parameters

IPNJob pJob

An [IPNJob](#) object representing the print job for the file.

String Error

The error message reported by the driver.

See Also: [OnCloseFile](#) [OnEndJob](#) [OnGetNextFileName](#) [OnLogMessage](#) [OnOpenFile](#) [OnStartJob](#) [IPNJob](#)

OnStartJob

Description

The OnStartJob event occurs each time a file is printed, just as the print job enters the print queue. This event is useful for tracking the files printed.

Syntax

```
objectName_OnStartJob(pJob)
```

where the [IPNSession](#) object is declared with events.

Parameters

IPNJob pJob

An [IPNJob](#) object representing the print job information for the file currently printing.

See Also: [OnCloseFile](#) [OnEndJob](#) [OnGetNextFileName](#) [OnLogMessage](#)
[OnReportError](#) [OnOpenFile](#) [IPNJob](#)

IPNNextFileNameOptions

Description

Used by the [OnGetNextFileName](#) event to allow detailed customization of output file names at the time of file creation.

Properties

[OutputFileName](#)

Read/Write; The desired output base file name. Do not add a file extension.

[OutputLocation](#)

Read/Write; The full path to the desired output location,

Properties

OutputFileName

Description

The output base file name for naming the file. Do not add a file extension
Read/Write.

Syntax

expression.OutputFileName

where *expression* is an [IPNNextFileNameOptions](#) object.

Returns or sets a **String**

See Also: [OutputLocation](#) [OnGetNextFileName](#)

OutputLocation

Description

The full path to the output folder in which to store the new output file.
Read/Write.

Syntax

expression.OutputLocation

where *expression* is an [IPNNextFileNameOptions](#) object.

Returns or sets a **String**

See Also: [OutputFileName](#) [OnGetNextFileName](#)

IPNPrintSession

Description

Represents a single printer from the pool of PEERNET Inc. printers held by the [IPNSession](#) object. A new IPNPrintSession object is needed to control and synchronize the printing process for each document that will be printed.

Use the [NewPrintSession](#) method on IPNSession to get a print session object. Each print session object copies the current settings from the IPNSession object. The print session settings are read-only.

The pool of printers is accessed in a round-robin sequence. A printer can only be assigned to a IPNPrintSession when it is *free*. While a printer is being used by any IPNPrintSession object it is seen as busy and cannot be used by any other IPNPrintSession object.

- [Breaking Changes](#)
- [Methods](#)
- [Properties](#)

Breaking Changes

The following methods have been removed as of PNSrvLib12.

- PrintUsingCommand
- ShellPrint, ShellPrintTo

Public Methods

[Cancel](#)

Cancels the current set of print jobs.

[GetProperty](#)

Retrieves print settings from the printer

[MakeSystemDefaultPrinter](#)

Sets the printer associated with this print session as the system default printer.

[Pause](#)

Pauses the printer queue associated with this IPNPrintSession object.

Resume

Resume the printer queue associated with this IPNPrintSession object.

WaitForJobsCompleted

Waits a given timeout period for all jobs in this print session to be completed before returning control back to the calling application.

WaitForJobsPrinted

Waits a given timeout period for all jobs in this print session to be printed before returning control back to the calling application.

WaitForJobsSpooled

Waits a given timeout period for all jobs in this print session to be spooled before returning control back to the calling application.

WaitForJobsSpooling

Waits a given timeout period for all jobs in this print session to be spooling before returning control back to the calling application.

Public Properties

PrinterName

Read-only; The name of the printer associated with this IPNPrintSession object.

PrintSessionGUID

Read-only; A unique identifier associated with this IPNPrintSession object.

Methods

Cancel

Description

Cancel the current print session, allowing the printer to be returned to the pool of available printers. Canceling the print session does not delete any currently printing documents, any remaining jobs in the printer queue will finish printing associated with this [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

Syntax

```
expression.Cancel()
```

where *expression* is an [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

See Also: [Pause](#) [Resume](#)

GetProperty

Description

Allows you to retrieve any properties, or options set on the [IPNPrintSession](#) object. The IPNPrintSession object copies all of the current settings from the IPNSession object when [NewPrintSession](#) is called.

The conversion settings are organized into sections and then by name within that section. The section and properties names are case sensitive. The section and property names, and values for each property are the same as the configuration file settings explained in the [Printer Script File Settings](#) section.

Not all properties are available to all printers, and some properties are specific to certain printers. See the individual set option methods on the IPNSession object for a list of section and property names that can be used to retrieve the individual settings for each.

Syntax

```
expression.GetProperty(SectionName, PropertyName)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

Returns a **VARIANT** containing the property value, or **VT_EMPTY** if that property is not set.

Parameters

String *rSectionName*

The section name for the property you are retrieving.

String *PropertyName*

The property name.

MakeSystemDefaultPrinter

Description

Not all applications have the ability to choose a specific printer and rely on the system default printer when printing. The default printer is a global setting; when you set the default printer, it is set for the entire system.

When printing in a multi-threaded environment, care must be taken to share the default printer setting between the threads to ensure that one thread is not changing the default printer while another thread is about to print to the default printer.

The `MakeSystemDefaultPrinter` method sets the printer associated with this print session as the system default printer and blocks any other [IPNPrintSession](#) printers from becoming the default printer, allowing for thread-safe printing from applications that rely on the system default printer. When this print session is released back into the pool of available printers, the original system default printer is restored.

Note:

*If at all possible, try to avoid having to set the default printer. Even when using **MakeSystemDefaultPrinter** to control the default printer, you cannot protect against the default printer being changed by an outside process or manually by a user. As well, having to share the default printer, a single resource, between multiple threads can slow down processing.*

Syntax

```
expression.MakeSystemDefaultPrinter()
```

where `expression` is an [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

Pause**Description**

Pauses the printer queue associated with this [IPNPrintSession](#) object. Any jobs in the printer queue will not be processed until [Resume](#) is called.

Syntax

```
expression.Pause()
```

where `expression` is an [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

See Also: [Cancel](#) [Resume](#)

Resume**Description**

Resumes the printer queue associated with this [IPNPrintSession](#) object. Any jobs accumulated in the printer queue since the [Pause](#) call will now be processed.

Syntax

`expression.Resume()`

where *expression* is an [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

See Also: [Pause](#) [Cancel](#)

WaitForJobsCompleted

Description

The collection of wait functions allows you to synchronize and control the flow of documents being printed with your application. The `WaitForJobsCompleted` method should be called after the document has been printed and [WaitForJobsSpooling](#) has been called to verify that a print job actually entered the printer queue.

The `WaitForJobsCompleted` method will return when the document is finished printing and the output file is created, or when the given timeout period has elapsed, whichever is first. This method is not needed if any [events](#), such as [OnEndJob](#), are being used to determine when the output file is created and ready for further processed. If events are not being used, this method can be used to determine, in a synchronous manner, when it is safe to process the output file.

Syntax

`expression.WaitForJobsCompleted(Timeout)`

where *expression* is an [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

Returns Boolean **True** if the print job completed within the timeout period, and **False** if the print job did not complete.

Parameters

Integer Timeout

The length of time, in milliseconds, to wait for the print job to be completed.

See Also: [WaitForJobsSpooling](#) [WaitForJobsSpooled](#) [WaitForJobsPrinted](#)

WaitForJobsSpooled

Description

The collection of wait functions allows you to synchronize and control the flow of documents being printed with your application. The

WaitForJobsSpooled method should be called after the document has been printed and [WaitForJobsSpooling](#) has been called to verify that a print job actually entered the printer queue.

In many cases, the document needs to be completely spooled to the printer before either the document or the printing application can be closed. Closing either too early in the process can cause the application to cancel the print job, or send an incomplete print job.

Depending on the behaviour of the printing application this method may not need to be called at all. One example of this is the Microsoft Word automation object where background printing and the *BackgroundPrintingStatus* flag can be used to determine when the file has been completely spooled to the printer and it is safe to close the document and/or the application. In comparison, when automating printing with Microsoft PowerPoint the *WaitForJobsSpooled* method needs to be called in order to determine when it is safe to close the PowerPoint file.

Syntax

```
expression.WaitForJobsSpooled(Timeout)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

Returns Boolean **True** if the print job spooled within the timeout period, and **False** if it did not.

Parameters

Integer Timeout

The length of time, in milliseconds, to wait for the print job to be spooled.

See Also: [WaitForJobsSpooling](#) [WaitForJobsPrinted](#) [WaitForJobsCompleted](#)

WaitForJobsSpooling

Description

The collection of wait functions allows you to synchronize and control the flow of documents being printed with your application.

The WaitForJobsSpooling method should be called just after the document has been printed and will return as soon as the document has started to spool or when the given timeout period has elapsed.

This allows for error recovery if the document fails to print from the printing application. If the document does not start spooling within the timeout period the print session should be canceled using the [Cancel](#) method before releasing the print session object to allow the printer to be returned to the pool of available printers as soon as possible.

If no print job enters the print queue and the print session is not canceled before being released, the printer will wait a specified timeout period before being returned to the pool of available printers. This timeout period determined from the *FirstJobTimeout* parameter passed into the [NewPrintSession](#) method.

In many cases, other printing states such as *spooled* or *printed* may need to be checked before the document or printing application can be safely closed. Closing either too early can cause the printing application to abort the print job.

Syntax

```
expression.WaitForJobsSpooling(Timeout)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

Returns Boolean **True** if a print job started spooling in the print queue within the timeout period, and **False** if it did not.

Parameters

Integer Timeout

The length of time, in milliseconds, to wait for a print job to start spooling.

See Also: [WaitForJobsPrinted](#) [WaitForJobsCompleted](#) [WaitForJobsSpooled](#)

WaitForJobsPrinted

Description

The collection of wait functions allows you to synchronize and control the flow of documents being printed with your application. The [WaitForJobsPrinted](#) method should be called after the document has been printed and [WaitForJobsSpooling](#) has been called to verify that a print job actually entered the printer queue.

There is a distinction between when the document finishes printing and when the output file is complete. The document can be printed and have left the print queue before the printer has finished creating the output file; this difference is minimal and only becomes apparent in automation

code when trying to use the output file before the printer has finished creating it.

Depending on the behaviour of the printing application this method may not need to be called at all. One example of this is the Microsoft Word automation object where background printing and the *BackgroundPrintingStatus* flag can be used to determine when the file has been completely spooled to the printer and it is safe to close the document and/or the application. In comparison, other applications may need to wait for the entire file to completely printed before it is safe to close both the file and the application.

Syntax

expression.WaitForJobsPrinted(Timeout)

where *expression* is an [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

Returns Boolean **True** if the print job has completed printing within the timeout period, and **False** if it did not.

Parameters

Integer Timeout

The length of time, in milliseconds, to wait for the print job to be printed.

See Also: [WaitForJobsSpooling](#) [WaitForJobsSpooled](#) [WaitForJobsCompleted](#)

Properties

PrinterName

Description

Returns the name of the printer associated with this print session object. Use this printer name when setting the default printer or passing the printer name to a program.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.PrinterName

where *expression* is an [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

Returns a **String**.

See Also: [SetSessionPrinter](#) [NewPrintSession](#)

PrintSessionGUID

Description

A string based unique identifier for matching [IPNJob](#) information to a print session. Every new print session is given a unique identifier, and every print job processed by that print session is also assigned that unique identifier.

This identifier can be used to track information from the printing cycle to be used in the event handlers. The *IPNJob* object sent to the event handler also contains a reference to the PrintSessionGUID. An example of this would be to storing the source document name in a key-value mapped collection keyed by PrintSessionGUID to later be used on the [OnEndJob](#) event handler.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.PrintSessionGUID

where *expression* is an [IPNPrintSession](#) object.

Returns a **String**.

See Also: [IPNJob](#) [IPNJob.PrintSessionGUID](#)

IPNJobs Collection

Description

A collection of [IPNJob](#) objects, one for every job that has been printed. Allows quick iteration through the collection using the foreach statement of the C# language and the for each statement in Visual Basic.

- [Methods](#)
- [Properties](#)

Methods

[Item](#)

Returns an individual [IPNJob](#) item from the collection. The collection can be indexed by position or by [JobGUID](#) string.

Properties

[Count](#)

Read-only; Returns an Integer that represents the number of [IPNJob](#) objects in the collection.

Methods

Item

Description

Returns an individual [IPNJob](#) item from the collection.

Syntax

```
expression.Item(Index)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNJobs](#) collection

Returns an [IPNJob](#) item, or E_FAIL if the *Index* is out of range.

Parameters

Object Index

The collection can be indexed by integer position or by [JobGUID](#) string.

See Also: [Count IPNJob](#)

Properties

Count

Description

Returns the number of IPNJob objects in the [IPNJobs](#) collection. Each time a file is printed, a new IPNJob object is added to the collection. If nothing has been printed, the collection will be empty.

Read-only Integer.

Syntax

expression.Count

where *expression* is an [IPNJobs](#) collection

Returns an **Integer**.

See Also: [Item IPNJob](#)

IPNJob

Description

Each IPNJob object represents a single print job sent to any one of the printer queues in the current [IPNSession](#) object.

Most often there is a single print job created each for each document printed, but some applications can send multiple jobs when printing a single file. One example of this is Excel when printing a workbook containing multiple worksheets at different print quality settings. Excel will create a separate print job for each group of worksheets with different print qualities.

The job object is identified by a unique identifier, the [JOBGUID](#) and contains information about the job such as the job status and the number of pages spooled and printed. It also provides access to an [IPNFiles](#) collection of the files created by this job.

- [Breaking Changes](#)
- [Properties](#)

Breaking Changes

The following methods and properties have been removed as of PNSrvLib12.

- GetVariable, SetVariable
- GetVariableByKeyword, SetVariableByKeyword
- IPNPages collection

Properties

[AbortedBySystem](#)

Read-only; Boolean value True if the job was deleted by the system.

[AbortedByUser](#)

Read-only; Boolean value True if the job was deleted by the user.

[BytesPrinted](#)

Read-only; How much of the spooled document has been printed. This value is updated during the printing process.

BytesSpooled

Read-only; Size of the document (in bytes) in the printer queue. This value is updated as the file is spooled.

ConversionStatus

Read-only; Boolean value True if the job was successfully converted to the output file.

Document

Read-only; Name of the document printed.

Files

Read-only; [IPNFiles](#) collection of [IPNFile](#) objects created by this print job. This value is updated during the printing process.

JobGUID

Read-only; Unique identifier for this object. Can be used to query the [IPNJobs](#) collection.

JobID

Read-only; non-unique identifier used by the Windows printing sub-system.

PagesPrinted

Read-only; count of the number of pages printed. This value is updated during the printing process.

PagesSpooled

Read-only; count of the number of pages spooled. This value is updated during the printing process.

PrintSessionGUID

Read-only; Unique identifier that can be used to associate this job with a print session.

Session

Read-only; The parent [IPNSession](#) object that created this IPNJob object.

Status

Read-only; current print status of the job as an Integer value. This value is updated during the printing process.

StatusMessage

Read-only; current print status of the job as a string value. This value is updated during the printing process.

SubmittedTime

Read-only; VT_DATE variant that specifies the time this document was spooled.

UserName

Read-only; name of the user who printed the document.

Properties

AbortedBySystem

Description

This property is *True* if the job was halted during the conversion process. This can happen if the Windows printing subsystem (print spooler) is restarted while the job is being spooled and printed.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.AbortedBySystem

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns a **Boolean**.

See Also: [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

AbortedByUser

Description

This property is *True* if the job was halted during the conversion process. This can happen if the job was manually deleted by the user from the printer queue.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.AbortedByUser

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns a **Boolean**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

BytesPrinted

Description

Returns the size of the printed job in bytes. This can be different from [BytesSpooled](#), and is updated while the file is being printed.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.BytesPrinted

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns an **Integer**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

BytesSpooled

Description

The size of the spooled job in bytes. This value is updated as the file is spooled to the printer and can be different from [BytesPrinted](#).

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.BytesSpooled

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns an **Integer**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

ConversionStatus

Description

This property returns an HRESULT value for the conversion status. To get the status and any error message information the property, use the HRESULT to create an instance of a *Win32Exception* class. This state can only be checked when the job is completely finished.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.ConversionStatus

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns an **Integer** containing the HRESULT return code.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [Document Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

Document

Description

The name of the document printed that created this print job. This is the name the printing application uses in the print queue. It can be different from the actual document name.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.Document

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns a **String**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

Files

Description

The [IPNFiles](#) collection of [IPNFile](#) objects for this job. There will be one IPNFile object for every file created by this job. The collection is updated during the printing process.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.Files

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns an [IPNFiles](#) collection.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

JobGUID

Description

A string based unique identifier for this object. This string can be used to query the [IPNJobs](#) collection.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.JobGUID

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns a **String**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document](#) [Files](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

JobID

Description

This is a non-unique numerical identifier used by the Windows printing sub-system.

Read-only.

Syntax

`expression.JobID`

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns an **Integer**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document](#) [Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

PagesPrinted

Description

Returns the number of pages printed. This can be different from [PagesSpooled](#), and is updated while the file is being printed.

Read-only.

Syntax

`expression.PagesPrinted`

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns an **Integer**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document](#) [Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

PagesSpooled

Description

Returns the number of pages spooled. This can be different from [PagesPrinted](#), and is updated while the file is being spooled to the printer by the printing application.

Read-only.

Syntax

`expression.PagesSpooled`

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns an **Integer**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document](#) [Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

PrintSessionGUID

Description

A string based unique identifier for matching [IPNPrintSession](#) information to jobs processed by that print session. Every new print session is given a unique identifier, and every print job processed by that print session is also assigned that unique identifier.

This identifier can be used to track information from the printing cycle to be used in the event handlers. The *IPNJob* object sent to the event handler also contains a reference to the PrintSessionGUID. An example of this would be to storing the source document name in a key-value mapped collection keyed by PrintSessionGUID to later be used on the [OnEndJob](#) event handler.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.Session

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns a **String**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document](#) [Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

Session

Description

The parent [IPNSession](#) object that created this IPNJob object.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.Session

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns an [IPNSession](#) object.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document](#) [Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [StatusStatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

Status

Description

The current print status of the job as a numerical value. This value is updated during the printing process. See the **Remarks** section for a list of the status values and what they mean.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.Status

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns an **Integer**.

Remarks

The status is reported as a Long and can be one or more of the values in the table below. These are the same values used by the *JOB_INFO_2* structure in Microsoft's Win32 Printing and Print Spooler functions and structures. See the Microsoft documentation for more details.

The values are OR'd together to define the current status of the job. To determine which values, the hexadecimal values must be examined:

If Status = 388, which is 0x00000184

```
JOB_STATUS_DELETED          0x00000100
JOB_STATUS_PRINTED          0x00000080
JOB_STATUS_DELETING         0x00000004
-----
                              0x00000184
```

Job Status	Hexadecimal Value	Integer Value
JOB_STATUS_PAUSED	0x00000001	1
JOB_STATUS_ERROR	0x00000002	2
JOB_STATUS_DELETING	0x00000004	4
JOB_STATUS_SPOOLING	0x00000008	8
JOB_STATUS_PRINTING	0x00000010	16
JOB_STATUS_OFFLINE	0x00000020	32
JOB_STATUS_PAPEROUT	0x00000040	64
JOB_STATUS_PRINTED	0x00000080	128
JOB_STATUS_DELETED	0x00000100	256
JOB_STATUS_BLOCKED_DEVQ	0x00000200	512

Job Status	Hexadecimal Value	Integer Value
JOB_STATUS_USER_INTERVENTION	0x00000400	1024
JOB_STATUS_RESTART	0x00000800	2048
JOB_STATUS_COMPLETE	0x00001000	4096
JOB_STATUS_RETAINED	0x00002000	8192
JOB_STATUS_RENDERING_LOCALLY	0x00004000	16384

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document](#) [Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

StatusMessage

Description

The current print status of the job as a string value. This value is updated during the printing process, and can be an empty string.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.StatusMessage

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns a **String**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document](#) [Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [SubmittedTime](#) [UserName](#)

SubmittedTime

Description

Returns the time this document was spooled.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.SubmittedTime

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns a VT_DATE **VARIANT**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document](#) [Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [UserName](#)

UserName

Description

Returns the name of the user who printed the document.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.UserName

where *expression* is an [IPNJob](#) object.

Returns a **String**.

See Also: [AbortedBySystem](#) [AbortedByUser](#) [BytesPrinted](#) [BytesSpooled](#) [ConversionStatus](#) [Document](#) [Files](#) [JobGUID](#) [JobID](#) [PagesPrinted](#) [PagesSpooled](#) [PrintSessionGUID](#) [Session](#) [Status](#) [StatusMessage](#) [SubmittedTime](#)

IPNFiles Collection

Description

A collection of [IPNFile](#) objects. Allows quick iteration through the collection using the foreach statement of the C# language and the for each statement in Visual Basic.

- [Methods](#)
- [Properties](#)

Methods

[Item](#)

Returns an individual [IPNFile](#) item from the collection. The collection is indexed by position.

Properties

[Count](#)

Returns an Integer that represents the number of [IPNFile](#) objects in the collection.

Methods

Item

Description

Returns an individual [IPNFile](#) item from the collection.

Syntax

```
expression.Item(Index)
```

where *expression* is an [IPNFiles](#) collection

Returns an [IPNFile](#) item, or E_FAIL if the *Index* is out of range.

Parameters

Object Index

The collection is indexed by integer position.

See Also: [Count IPNFile](#)

Properties

Count

Description

Returns the number of IPNFile objects in the [IPNFiles](#) collection. Each time the printer creates a new file, a new IPNFile object is added to the collection. The printer settings for file creation, such as multi-page or serialized output, and append mode will determine the resulting number of IPNFile objects in the collection.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.Count

where *expression* is an [IPNFiles](#) collection

Returns an **Integer**.

See Also: [Item IPNFile](#)

IPNFile

Description

An IPNFile object is created for every file created by the printer. The file object represents the physical file on disk and provides access to the full output filename, the [IPNJob](#) that created the files, and the parent [IPNSession](#) object.

- [Breaking Changes](#)
- [Properties](#)

Breaking Changes

The following properties have been removed as of PNSrvLib12.

- Images collection
- Pages collection

Properties

[Filename](#)

Read-only; The filename of the file created by the printer.

[Job](#)

Read-only; The parent [IPNJob](#) object that created this IPNFile object.

[Session](#)

Read-only; The parent [IPNSession](#) object that created this IPNFile object.

Properties

Filename

Description

The name of the file created. This is the fully qualified path, including directory and filename.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.Filename

where *expression* is an [IPNFile](#) object

Returns a **String**.

See Also: [Job Session](#)

Job

Description

The parent [IPNJob](#) object that created this IPNFile object.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.Job

where *expression* is an [IPNFile](#) object

Returns an **IPNJob** object.

See Also: [Filename Session](#)

Session

Description

The parent [IPNSession](#) object that created this IPNFile object.

Read-only.

Syntax

expression.Session

where *expression* is an [IPNFile](#) object

Returns an **IPNSession** object.

See Also: [Filename Job](#)

Enumerations

pnBWCompressionMethod

Description

Compression algorithms for monochrome, or black and white, images.

Name	Value	Description
pnBWCompressionNone	1	No compression algorithm used
pnBWCompressionGroup4	2	CCITT Group4 Fax compression
pnBWCompressionGroup32D	3	CCITT Group3 2D Fax compression
pnBWCompressionGroup31D	4	CCITT Group3 1D Fax compression
pnBWCompressionMH	5	CCITT Modified Huffman compression
pnBWCompressionLZW	6	LZW compression
pnBWCompressionPackbits	7	Packbits (RLE) compression

Remarks

Not all of the compression methods can be used by each driver. Calling these methods on a driver that does not support them will return an invalid argument exception, or an argument out of range exception.

Name	Driver Support
pnBWCompressionNone	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnBWCompressionGroup4	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnBWCompressionGroup32D	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnBWCompressionGroup31D	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnBWCompressionMH	TIFF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnBWCompressionLZW	TIFF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnBWCompressionPackbits	TIFF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnColorCompressionMethod](#) [pnGrayscaleCompressionMethod](#) [pnIndexedCompressionMethod](#) [pnPDFContentEncodingMethod](#) [SetTIFFCompressionOptions](#) [SetPDFCompressionOptions](#) [SetJPEGCompressionOptions](#)

pnColorCompressionMethod

Description

Compression algorithms for color images.

Name	Value	Description
pnColorCompressionNone	1	No color compression, RGB color
pnColorCompressionNoneCMYK	2	No color compression, CMYK color
pnColorCompressionPackbits	3	Packbits (RLE) compression, RGB color
pnColorCompressionPackbitsCMYK	4	Packbits (RLE) compression, CMYK color
pnColorCompressionJPEGHighQuality	5	High quality JPEG compression
pnColorCompressionJPEGMediumHighQuality	6	Medium-High quality JPEG compression
pnColorCompressionJPEGMediumQuality	7	Medium quality JPEG compression
pnColorCompressionJPEGMediumLowQuality	8	Medium-Low quality JPEG compression
pnColorCompressionJPEGLowQuality	9	Low quality JPEG compression
pnColorCompressionLZW	10	LZW compression, RGB color
pnColorCompressionLZWCMYK	11	LZW compression, CMYK color
pnColorCompressionZIP	12	ZIP compression

Remarks

Not all of the compression methods can be used by each driver. Calling these methods on a driver that does not support them will return an invalid argument exception, or an argument out of range exception.

Name	Driver Supprt
pnColorCompressionNone	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnColorCompressionNoneCMYK	TIFF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnColorCompressionPackbits	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnColorCompressionPackbitsCMYK	TIFF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnColorCompressionJPEGHighQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnColorCompressionJPEGMediumHighQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

Name	Driver Supprt
pnColorCompressionJPEGMediumQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnColorCompressionJPEGMediumHighQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnColorCompressionJPEGLowQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnColorCompressionLZW	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnColorCompressionLZWCMYK	TIFF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnColorCompressionZIP	PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnBWCompressionMethod](#) [pnGrayscaleCompressionMethod](#) [pnIndexedCompressionMethod](#) [pnPDFContentEncodingMethod](#) [SetTIFFCompressionOptions](#) [SetPDFCompressionOptions](#) [SetJPEGCompressionOptions](#)

pnColorReduction

Description

Color reduction options for reducing the number of colors in true color images.

Name	Value	Description
pnColorReductionNone	1	No color reduction
pnColorReductionOptimal	2	Reduce to lowest color count needed per page
pnColorReductionBlackAndWhite	3	Reduce to black and white using selected dithering method
pnColorReductionGreyscale	4	Reduce to greyscale
pnColorReduction256Colors	5	Create all pages as 8-bit color (256 colors)
pnColorReduction16Colors	6	Create all pages as 4-bit color (16 colors)
pnColorReductionOptimalMax256Colors	7	Reduces to lowest color count needed for each page, any pages over 256 colors are reduced to 256 colors.

Name	Value	Description
pnColorReductionOptimalMax16Colors	8	Reduces to lowest color count needed for each page, any pages over 16 colors are reduced to 16 colors.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnDitheringMethod](#) [SetSaveOptions](#)

pnDitheringMethod

Description

Dithering algorithms to control how color images are reduces to black and white.

Name	Value	Description
pnDitheringNone	1	No dithering
pnDitheringFloyd	2	Floyd-Steinberg dithering
pnDitheringBurkes	3	Burkes dithering
pnDitheringBayer	4	Bayer dithering
pnDitheringHalftone	5	Halftone dithering

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnColorReduction](#) [SetSaveOptions](#)

pnFaxPageScaling

Description

Determines how the original information is placed on the fax sized paper.

Name	Value	Description
pnFaxPageScalingFitToPage	1	Scale the original image to fit on the fax paper size chosen.
pnFaxPageScalingActualSize	2	Keeps the original information at the same size, any part that does not fit on the fax paper is cut off.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnFaxProfile](#) [pnFaxResolution](#) [pnFaxPaperWidth](#) [pnFaxPaperHeight](#) [pnFaxPageScalingHAlign](#) [pnFaxPageScalingVAlign](#) [SetFaxOptions](#)

pnFaxPageScalingHAlign

Description

Determines how to horizontally align the incoming image on the fax sized paper.

Name	Value	Description
pnFaxPageScalingHAlignLeft	1	Align to the left of the page
pnFaxPageScalingHAlignMiddle	2	Align in the middle of the page
pnFaxPageScalingHAlignRight	3	Align to the right of the page

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnFaxProfile](#) [pnFaxResolution](#) [pnFaxPaperWidth](#) [pnFaxPaperHeight](#) [pnFaxPageScaling](#) [pnFaxPageScalingVAlign](#) [SetFaxOptions](#)

pnFaxPageScalingVAlign

Description

Determines how to vertically align the incoming image on the fax sized paper.

Name	Value	Description
pnFaxPageScalingVAlignTop	1	Align to the top of the page
pnFaxPageScalingVAlignMiddle	2	Align in the middle of the page
pnFaxPageScalingVAlignBottom	3	Align to the bottom of the page

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnFaxProfile](#) [pnFaxResolution](#) [pnFaxPaperWidth](#) [pnFaxPaperHeight](#) [pnFaxPageScaling](#) [pnFaxPageScalingHAlign](#) [SetFaxOptions](#)

pnFaxPaperHeight

Description

Determines the height of the fax paper.

Name	Value	Description
pnFaxPaperHeightVariable	1	Varies the image length depending on the size of the incoming document.
pnFaxPaperHeightFixed	2	Limit the image length based on the pnFaxPaperWidth chosen

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnFaxProfile](#) [pnFaxResolution](#) [pnFaxPaperWidth](#) [pnFaxPageScaling](#) [pnFaxPageScalingHAlign](#) [pnFaxPageScalingVAlign](#) [SetFaxOptions](#)

pnFaxPaperWidth

Description

Determines the width of the fax paper.

Name	Value	Description
pnFaxPaperWidthLetter	1	Letter
pnFaxPaperWidthLegal	2	Legal
pnFaxPaperWidthA4	3	A4 (ISO)
pnFaxPaperWidthB4	4	B4 (ISO)
pnFaxPaperWidthA3	5	A3 (ISO)

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnFaxProfile](#) [pnFaxResolution](#) [pnFaxPaperHeight](#) [pnFaxPageScaling](#) [pnFaxPageScalingHAlign](#) [pnFaxPageScalingVAlign](#) [SetFaxOptions](#)

pnFaxProfile

Description

Determines the fax profile used to create a fax image.

Name	Value	Description
pnFaxProfileF	1	Profile F (standard) monochrome fax
pnFaxProfileS	2	Profile S (simplified) monochrome fax

Name	Value	Description
pnFaxProfileC	3	Profile C color fax

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnFaxResolution](#) [pnFaxPaperHeight](#) [pnFaxPaperWidth](#) [pnFaxPageScaling](#) [pnFaxPageScalingHAlign](#) [pnFaxPageScalingVAlign](#) [SetFaxOptions](#)

pnFaxResolution

Description

Determines the fax resolution used to create a fax image. Note that the fax profile chosen ([pnFaxProfile](#)) affects which resolutions can be chosen. Not all resolutions are valid for all fax profiles.

Name	Value	Description
pnFaxResolution100x100	1	100 x 100 resolution (Profile F, C)
pnFaxResolution200x100	2	200 x 100 resolution (Profile S, F)
pnFaxResolution200x200	3	200 x 200 resolution (Profile S, F, C)
pnFaxResolution204x98	4	204 x 98 resolution (Profile S, F)"
pnFaxResolution204x196	5	204 x 196 resolution (Profile S, F)
pnFaxResolution300x300	6	300 x 300 resolution (Profile F, C)
pnFaxResolution400x400	7	400 x 400 resolution (Profile F, C)
pnFaxResolution408x391	8	408 x 391 resolution (Profile F)
pnFaxResolution204x391	9	204 x 391 resolution (Profile F)
pnFaxResolution300x600	10	300 x 600 resolution (Profile F)
pnFaxResolution400x800	11	400 x 800 resolution (Profile F)
pnFaxResolution600x600	12	600 x 600 resolution (Profile F, C)
pnFaxResolution600x1200	13	600 x 1200 resolution (Profile F)
pnFaxResolution1200x1200	14	1200 x 1200 resolution (Profile F, C)

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnFaxProfile](#) [pnFaxPaperHeight](#) [pnFaxPaperWidth](#) [pnFaxPageScaling](#) [pnFaxPageScalingHAlign](#) [pnFaxPageScalingVAlign](#) [SetFaxOptions](#)

pnGrayscaleCompressionMethod

Description

Compression algorithms for greyscale images.

Name	Value	Description
pnGreyscaleCompressionNone	1	No color compression
pnGreyscaleCompressionPackbits	2	Packbits (RLE) compression
pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGHighQuality	3	High quality JPEG compression
pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGMediumHighQuality	4	Medium High quality JPEG compression
pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGMediumQuality	5	Medium quality JPEG compression
pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGMediumLowQuality	6	Medium Low quality JPEG compression
pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGLowQuality	7	Low quality JPEG compression
pnGreyscaleCompressionLZW	8	LZW compression
pnGreyscaleCompressionZIP	9	ZIP compression

Remarks

Not all of the compression methods can be used by each driver. Calling these methods on a driver that does not support them will return an invalid argument exception, or an argument out of range exception.

Name	Driver Support
pnGreyscaleCompressionNone	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnGreyscaleCompressionPackbits	TIFF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGHighQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGMediumHighQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGMediumQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGMediumLowQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnGreyscaleCompressionJPEGLowQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnGreyscaleCompressionLZW	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnGreyscaleCompressionZIP	PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnBWCompressionMethod](#) [pnColorCompressionMethod](#) [pnIndexedCompressionMethod](#) [pnDitheringMethod](#) [pnPDFContentEncodingMethod](#) [SetJPEGCompressionOptions](#) [SetTIFFCompressionOptions](#) [SetPDFCompressionOptions](#)

pnImageCopyScaling

Description

Determines how the original page is placed on the new image.

Name	Value	Description
pnImageCopyScalingFitToPage	1	Scales the original page up or down to fit on the new image size chosen.
pnImageCopyScalingActualSize	2	Keeps the original information at the same size, any part that does not fit on the new image size will be cut off.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnUnits](#) [pnImageCopyScalingHAlign](#) [pnImageCopyScalingVAlign](#) [SetImageCopyToOptions](#)

pnImageCopyScalingHAlign

Description

Choose how to horizontally align the image on the output page when copying the image to a new page size.

Name	Value	Description
pnImageCopyScalingHAlignLeft	1	Align to the left of the page
pnImageCopyScalingHAlignMiddle	2	Align in the middle of the page
pnImageCopyScalingHAlignRight	3	Align to the right of the page

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnUnits](#) [pnImageCopyScaling](#) [pnImageCopyScalingVAlign](#) [SetImageCopyToOptions](#)

pnImageCopyScalingVAlign

Description

Choose how to vertically align the image on the output page when copying the image to a new page size.

Name	Value	Description
pnImageCopyScalingVAlignTop	1	Align to the top of the page
pnImageCopyScalingVAlignMiddle	2	Align in the middle of the page
pnImageCopyScalingVAlignBottom	3	Align to the bottom of the page

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnUnits](#) [pnImageCopyScaling](#) [pnImageCopyScalingHAlign](#) [SetImageCopyToOptions](#)

pnIndexedCompressionMethod

Description

Compression algorithms for indexed images. An indexed image is an image that has 256 colors or less.

Name	Value	Description
pnIndexedCompressionNone	1	No color compression
pnIndexedCompressionPackbits	2	Packbits (RLE) compression
pnIndexedCompressionJPEGHighQuality	3	High quality JPEG compression
pnIndexedCompressionJPEGMediumHighQuality	4	Medium High quality JPEG compression
pnIndexedCompressionJPEGMediumQuality	5	Medium quality JPEG compression
pnIndexedCompressionJPEGMediumLowQuality	6	Medium Low quality JPEG compression
pnIndexedCompressionJPEGLowQuality	7	Low quality JPEG compression
pnIndexedCompressionLZW	8	LZW compression
pnIndexedCompressionZIP	9	ZIP compression

Remarks

Not all of the compression methods can be used by each driver. Calling these methods on a driver that does not support them will return an invalid argument exception, or an argument out of range exception.

Name	Driver Support
pnIndexedCompressionNone	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnIndexedCompressionPackbits	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnIndexedCompressionJPEGHighQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnIndexedCompressionJPEGMediumHighQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnIndexedCompressionJPEGMediumQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnIndexedCompressionJPEGMediumLowQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnIndexedCompressionJPEGLowQuality	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnIndexedCompressionLZW	TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer
pnIndexedCompressionZIP	PDF Image Printer

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnBWCompressionMethod](#) [pnColorCompressionMethod](#) [pnGrayscaleCompressionMethod](#). [pnPDFContentEncodingMethod](#) [SetTIFFCompressionOptions](#) [SetPDFCompressionOptions](#) [SetJPEGCompressionOptions](#)

pnOutputFileFormat

Description

The output format, or type of file to create.

Not all formats can be used with all drivers. For instance, pnOutputFileFormatTIFFMultipaged and pnOutputFileFormatTIFFSerialized can only be used with TIFF Image Printer and Raster Image Printer, while pnOutputFileFormatJPEG can only be used with Raster Image Printer.

Name	Value	Description
pnOutputFileFormatTIFFMultipaged	1	TIFF Multipaged (*.tif) (TIFF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer)

Name	Value	Description
pnOutputFileFormatTIFFSerialized	2	TIFF Serialized (*.tif) (TIFF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer)
pnOutputFileFormatAdobePDFMultipaged	3	Adobe PDF Multipaged (*.pdf) (PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer)
pnOutputFileFormatAdobePDFSerialized	4	Adobe PDF Serialized (*.pdf) (PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer)
pnOutputFileFormatJPEG	5	JPEG (*.jpg)
pnOutputFileFormatCompuServeGIF	6	CompuServe GIF (*.gif) (Raster Image Printer)
pnOutputFileFormatCompuServePNG	7	CompuServe PNG (*.png) (Raster Image Printer)
pnOutputFileFormatWindowsBMP	8	Windows BMP (*.bmp) (Raster Image Printer)
pnOutputFileFormatTARGA	9	Targa (*.tga) (Raster Image Printer)
pnOutputFileFormatAdobePhotoshop3	10	Adobe Photoshop 3.0 (*.psd) (Raster Image Printer)
pnOutputFileFormatZSoftPCX	11	ZSoft PCX (*.pcx) (Raster Image Printer)
pnOutputFileFormatZSoftDCX	12	ZSoft DCX (*.dcm) (Raster Image Printer)

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnColorReduction](#) [pnDitheringMethod](#) [SetSaveOptions](#)

pnOverwriteActionWhenSaving

Description

Determines how to handle overwrite situations where a file of the same name already exists for the file you are creating.

Name	Value	Description
pnOverwriteActionWhenSaving_PromptOnOverwriteForCopyProtectOrReplaceOrCancel	1	Show prompt let me choose my action
pnOverwriteActionWhenSaving_NoPromptOnOverwriteReplaceExistingFile	2	Always overwrite the existing files
pnOverwriteActionWhenSaving_NoPromptOnOverwriteCopyProtectExistingFile	3	Auto-name each file with a numbered copy

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetSaveOptions](#)

pnPDFContentEncodingMethod

Description

Compression algorithms for used for encoding the contents of the PDF files.

Name	Value	Description
pnPDFContentEncodingNone	1	No content encoding
pnPDFContentEncodingZIP	2	Use ZIP compression to encode the file contents.
pnPDFContentEncodingPackbits	3	Use Packbits (RLE) compression to encode the file contents.
pnPDFContentEncodingLZW	4	Use LZW compression to encode the file contents.

Supported Printers: PDF Image Printer Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnBWCompressionMethod](#) [pnGrayscaleCompressionMethod](#) [pnColorCompressionMethod](#) [pnIndexedCompressionMethod](#) [SetTIFFCompressionOptions](#) [SetPDFCompressionOptions](#) [SetJPEGCompressionOptions](#)

pnPDFEncryption

Description

Encryption options for PDF security.

Name	Value	Description
pnPDFEncryptionRC40	1	Use 40-bit encryption. The PDF file can be opened in Acrobat 3.0 and later versions.
pnPDFEncryptionRC128	2	Use 128-bit encryption. The PDF file can be opened in Acrobat 5.0 and later versions.
pnPDFEncryptionAES128	3	Use 128-bit AES encryption. The PDF file can be opened in Acrobat 8.0 and later versions
pnPDFEncryptionAES256	5	Use 256-bit AES encryption. The PDF file can be opened in Acrobat 9.0 and later versions.

Supported Printers: PDF Image Printer Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetPDFSecurity](#)

pnPDFStandard**Description**

Set the PDF output standard for creating image-based (or raster) PDF files. The PDF/A-1b standard is often used for long-term archiving of electronic documents.

Name	Value	Description
pnPDFStandardNone	1	Create PDF files that are not PDF/A-1b compliant
pnPDFStandardPDFA1B	2	Create PDF/A-1b compliant PDF files

Supported Printers: PDF Image Printer Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetPDFCompressionOptions](#)

pnPrinterResolution**Description**

Sets the resolution for the output file.

Name	Value	Description
pnPrinterResolutionDefault	0	Uses the profile setting.
pnPrinterResolution50	1	50 DPI
pnPrinterResolution60	2	60 DPI
pnPrinterResolution72	3	72 DPI
pnPrinterResolution75	4	75 DPI
pnPrinterResolution96	5	96 DPI
pnPrinterResolution100	6	100 DPI
pnPrinterResolution120	7	120 DPI
pnPrinterResolution150	8	150 DPI
pnPrinterResolution200	9	200 DPI
pnPrinterResolution240	10	240 DPI
pnPrinterResolution254	11	254 DPI
pnPrinterResolution300	12	300 DPI
pnPrinterResolution360	13	360 DPI
pnPrinterResolution400	14	400 DPI
pnPrinterResolution480	15	480 DPI
pnPrinterResolution600	16	600 DPI
pnPrinterResolution720	17	720 DPI
pnPrinterResolution800	18	800 DPI
pnPrinterResolution900	19	900 DPI
pnPrinterResolution1200	20	1200 DPI

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetSaveOptionsOutputResolution](#)

pnResampleUnits

Description

Determine how to scale the output image.

Name	Value	Description
pnResampleUnitsPixels	1	Scale using new width and height in pixels.
pnResampleUnitsPercentage	2	Scale as a percentage (%) of the original size.
pnResampleUnitsDPI	3	Scale by setting a new image resolution (DPI).

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetResamplingOptions](#)

pnRotation

Description

Determine how much to rotate the output image. Rotation is counter-clockwise.

Name	Value	Description
pnRotationNone	1	Do not rotate the image.
pnRotation90	2	Rotate 90 degrees.
pnRotation180	3	Rotate 180 degrees.
pnRotation270	4	Rotate 270 degrees.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetPageRotationOptions](#)

pnTextEncoding

Description

Determines the encoding format of the output text extraction file.

Name	Value	Description
pnTextEncodingANSI	1	ASCII encoded text
pnTextEncodingUTF8	2	UTF-8 encoded text
pnTextEncodingUTF16	3	UTF-16 encoded text

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnTextLayout](#) [pnTextEOL](#) [SetTextExtractionOptions](#)

pnTextEOL

Description

Determines the end-of-line encoding format of the output text extraction file. Depending on the operating system the text file will be used on, you may need to choose the appropriate line return code.

Name	Value	Description
pnTextEOLWindows	1	Lines end with the carriage return line feed (CRLF, \r\n) used by Windows.
pnTextEOLMac	2	Lines end with the line feed (LF, \n) used by UNIX.
pnTextEOLUnix	3	Lines end with the carriage return (CR, \r) used by Macintosh.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnTextLayout](#) [pnTextEncoding](#) [SetTextExtractionOptions](#)

pnTextLayout

Description

Determines the layout of the text in the output text extraction file.

Name	Value	Description
pnTextLayoutPhysical	1	Matches the format of the text in the original file as best as can be determined.

Name	Value	Description
pnTextLayoutRaw	2	Text is outputted in the order in which is was sent to the printer. This may not be the same order in the original file.
pnTextLayoutNone	3	No formatting is attempted. The text is written to the output file exactly as it is received by the printer.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [pnTextEncoding](#) [pnTextEOL](#) [SetTextExtractionOptions](#)

pnUnits

Description

Determines the unit of measure used to enter options requiring a unit of measure.

Name	Value	Description
pnUnitsEnglish	1	Enter the units in inches
pnUnitsMetric	2	Enter the units in centimeters.

Supported Printers: TIFF Image Printer, PDF Image Printer, Raster Image Printer

See Also: [SetCustomPaperOptions](#) [SetHardwareMargins](#) [SetImageCopyToOptions](#) [SetPageCropAreaOptions](#) [SetPageCropMarginOptions](#)

Using the Printer Script File

PDF Image Printer's automation using a script file is the original technique used by programmers to automate printing, especially batch printing.

This type of automation has been grandfathered into the product to support existing customers already using this technique on previous versions of the driver. If you are just starting to automate using PDF Image Printer, we recommend starting with the following tools instead:

- [Using the .NET API](#)
- [Using the PNSrv12 COM Object](#)

The Script File

If you need to continue using the script file, see the section on [Migrating to Version 12](#) for important script file changes.

Script file automation uses a file named PNRAS12S.INI to control the printer settings. This script file will override any settings that have been set in the printing profile set as the default profile for the printer. The script file is a text based Windows-style initialization file and lists all the settings that can be changed. The settings consist of a key-value pair for each property with related settings are organized into sections.

Automating using the script file allows you to accomplish the following workflow-related tasks. For example, a common use of the script file is to change the name or output location of the file created in between print jobs.

- change driver settings "on the fly" before any print job
- signal events at critical points during the printing process
- use the events to perform thread-safe batch printing

The script file works by being placed in your Windows **TEMP** folder. You can find this folder quickly using the environment variable shortcut **%TEMP%**. This is usually the temp folder in the AppData folder for the logged in user, **%USERPROFILE%\AppData\Local\Temp**.

There is also a system temp folder under the **C:\Windows\temp** folder. In rare cases the script file is placed there.

Sample Script File

A sample script file is included in the **\Setup** folder as part of the installation. If you have installed the driver in the default location, the sample script file will be located in the following folder:

```
C:\Program Files\PDF Image Printer 12\Setup\PNRAS12S.INI
```

Normally, you would write to the script file only the settings you need to change. Go to [Printer Script File Settings](#) to see a listing of the values you can set in the script file.

Using the Script File

When automating, a script file should be dynamically created on an as-needed basis, and then deleted when you are finished with it. A [built-in event](#) is signaled by the print driver when it has read the script file and it is safe to delete it or change the settings for the next print job.

A pseudo-code outline of the printing process would look like the following:

1. Collect any needed information and create the script file with the necessary settings
2. Print the required document to the PDF Image Printer
3. Wait for the driver to signal that it has read the script file
4. Delete the script file
5. It is now safe to loop to step 1 and convert another file

This is only a very simple example. The above steps work for a single-threaded process but extra care must be taken when printing in multiple threads to share access to the script file.

Migrating to Version 12

This section is for users of previous versions of PDF Image Printer who are currently using the script file. It discusses any breaking changes with the new printer driver and offers the changes needed to migrate to version 12.

Breaking Changes

Profiles

The most significant change with PDF Image Printer 12 is that the settings used to create the output file are now stored in a *profile* and the printer is then configured to use a particular profile. Custom profiles can be created, exported and imported using the [Profile Manager](#). In many cases, a profile will replace the need for the script file; in other cases, the script file can be reduced to simply indicating which conversion profile to use.

Simplified Run Commands

The run commands have been reduced to only running a command at the end of the printing job. There is the option to run a command after a successful print, or after a failed print, or after both a successful and failed print. When a run command is executed the last parameter is always a path to a text file that contains a list of the file(s) created by the conversion process.

The options to run commands at the start of the print job, the start of each page, and the end of each page have been removed. Also deprecated are passing command line arguments using the \$(variable) syntax.

See [Using the Run Commands](#) to see how to set up new commands.

Deprecated Script File Sections

With the new version, many script file sections have been deprecated in favor of the more powerful options for these same features in a profiles. If you were using these features, you will need to create and use a profile either instead of the script file, or in conjunction with the script file.

- Watermark, Endorsements - see [Stamping](#)
- Advanced File Naming - use the updated [Filename Creator](#) settings

- Run - use the simplified [Run Commands](#)
- Error Reporting - use [Support Options](#)

Sample Migration Scenarios

This section covers some of the more common use-cases with script files and how to migrate them to using the new profiles.

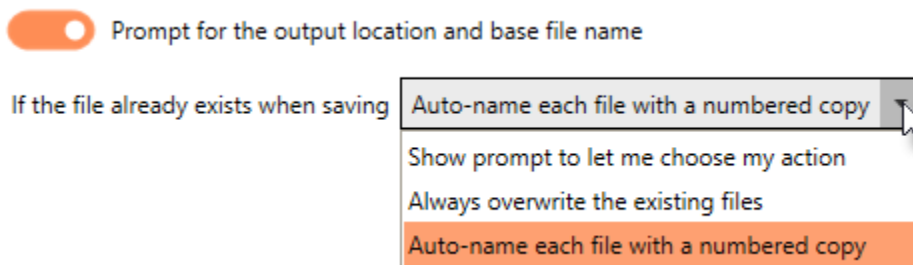
- [Turning off Prompting](#)
- [Setting Default Output Location and Conversion Settings](#)
- [Use the Script File to Set the Conversion Profile](#)
- [Change the Output Folder and Filename on Each Print](#)
- [Customizing How the Files are Named](#)

Turning off Prompting

When using the script file, the file save prompting was often turned off, and commonly the overwrite option turned on to prevent further prompting.

New options have been introduced for handling overwrite situations, and as a result the old script file setting **Overwrite** is no longer valid, and is now ignored.

The new setting in the profile, "If the file already exists when saving" replaces **Overwrite** and has three options:



You will want to set this option in your profile to either "Always overwrite the existing files" or "Auto-name each file with a numbered copy". Setting this in a conversion profile and using the profile instead of the script file is the preferred way control this now. For older programs, a new script file setting was introduced that can be used if needed:

```
[Save]
;Values for When Saving, NEW in Version 12
;NoPromptOnOverwriteCopyProtectExistingFile
;NoPromptOnOverwriteReplaceExistingFile
;PromptOnOverwriteForCopyProtectOrReplaceOrCancel
When Saving=NoPromptOnOverwriteReplaceExistingFile
```

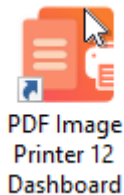
Setting Default Output Location and Conversion Settings

If the script file was used to configure the output location, and/or filename, and the conversion settings used by all users, update this to version 12 by creating a custom profile with the same conversion settings and set to save in the same output location with the same filename, if using..

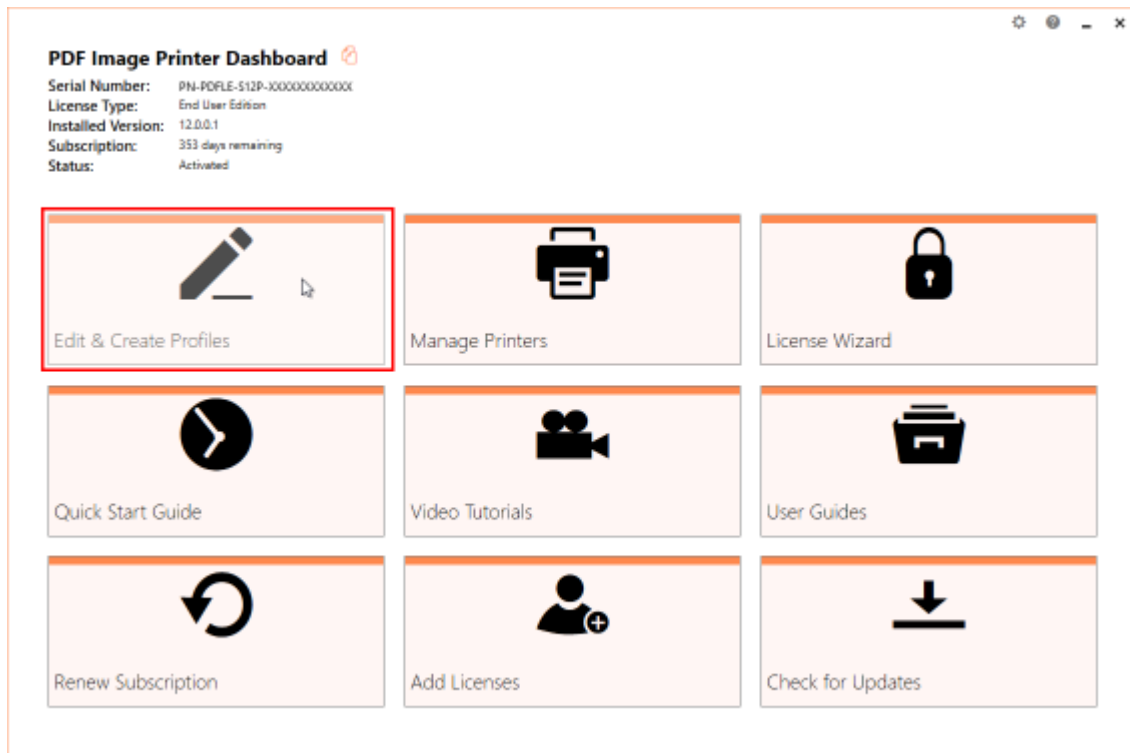
Saving an exported copy of this new profile allows you to push this setup to all your users as covered in the section [Installing a Customized Printer](#). For only one or two users, the profile can be easily [imported](#) and then [set as the default profile](#).

Step by Step Instructions

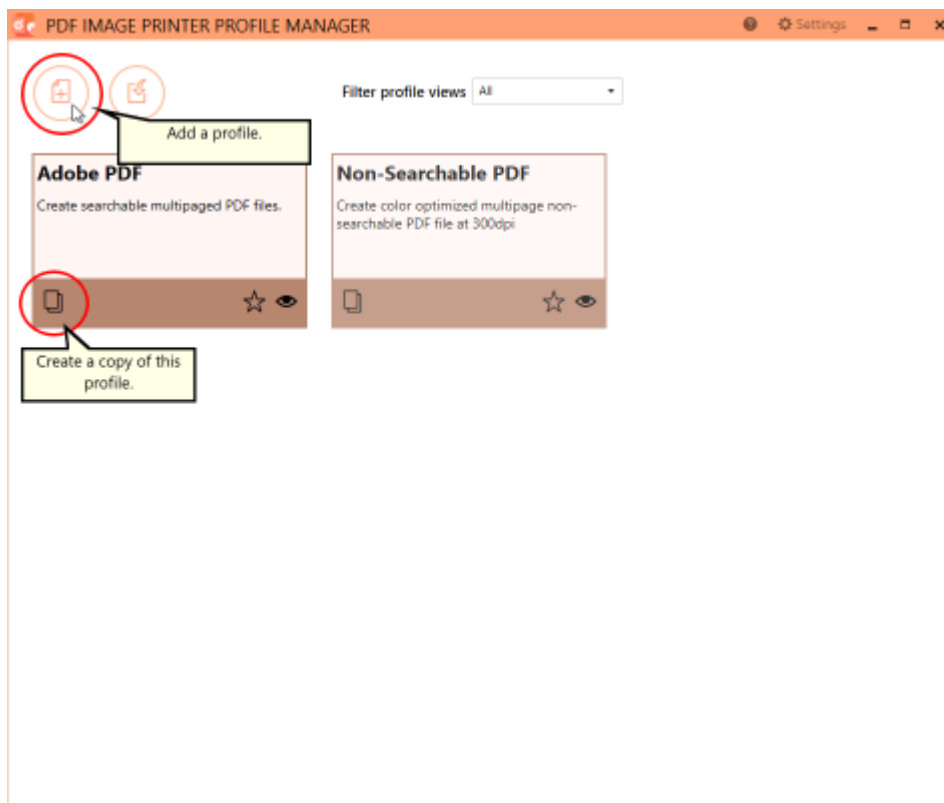
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



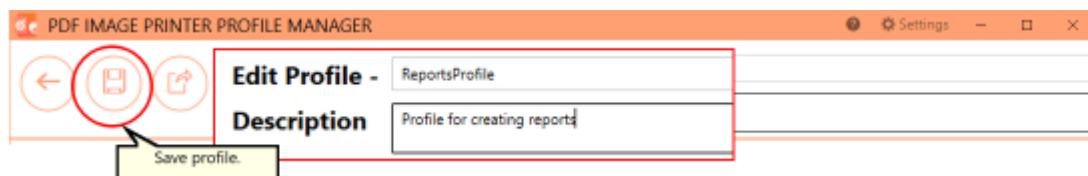
2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.



3. You can either create a copy of a system profile, if it has similar settings to what you require, by selecting "Create a copy of this profile", or create a personal profile by selecting "Add a profile".




4. Name the profile, add a description, and click **Save**.



5. On the **Save Options** tab, set the output location. This can be the same path for all users, or, as shown here, a path to a shared folder on a server where each user has their own folder. The **%USERNAME%** environment variable is used here so the profile can be copied to other users and their name will automatically be used. Other environment variables can also be used as needed.

Output Location

Output folder 

Leave this blank to automatically save to the last used folder. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used.

6. Go through the tabs and adjust the rest of the settings as desired. The topics in the [Working with PDF Image Printer](#) section provide detailed instructions on how to adjust the settings to create different types of images/files.
7. Click **Save** at the top of the screen when you are done editing the profile.
8. To create a custom install to push out to your users, see the section on creating the export file in [Installing a Customized Printer](#).
9. If you only need to set up one or two users. click **Save** at the top of the screen, and then **Export** to [create an external copy of the profile](#). On each users' machine, [import the new profile](#) and follow the steps in [Change Default Profile](#) to set the new profile as the default profile for PDF Image Printer.

Use the Script File to Set the Conversion Profile

A new script file setting has been added to the **Devmode settings** section that can be used to set which conversion profile the printer will apply when printing. The profile set in the script file overrides the conversion profile set on the printer through the [Printer Management](#) screen.

This is similar to pushing a customized printer or importing a conversion profile and changing the printer's default profile but works by placing the script file and the exported conversion profile on the user's computer instead.

The script file is normally placed in the temp folder, and the exported conversion profile can be placed anywhere the printing process will have permission to read.

```
[Devmode settings]
Printer Profile=C:\PEERNETFiles\MyCustomProfile.pnpdfprofile
```

Change the Output Folder and File Name on Each Print

The script file can still be used to customize the the output folder and file name on-the-fly before each print job. The main change is that now all other settings that are not modified in between print jobs should be set using an exported profile referenced in the **Devmode settings** section **Printer Profile** setting.


```
[Devmode settings]
Printer Profile=C:\PEERNETFiles\MyCustomProfile.pnpdfprofile

[Save]
Output directory=C:\PEERNET\OutputFiles
Output filename=CustomFilename
```

Customizing How the Files are Named

The **Advanced Naming** section in the script file has been deprecated. If this section was being used to customize how the file was named, a profile will need to be created and the [Filename Creator](#) options used to control the file naming format instead.

A common use of custom naming was to add a *unique ID* to each file name using the now deprecated JobID variable. The JobID variable has been replaced with a built-in unique id which uses a Globally Unique Identifier (GUID) as part of a file name or folder path.

As an example, the old-style multipaged format string below has been customized here to use the output file name and the JobID as part of the output basename. This would create a file name similar to *document_00001.pdf*.

```
[Advanced File Naming]
Format string S=%s_%3d
Format string SJ=%3d_%s_%3d
Format string M=%s_%5d
Format string MJ=%3d_%s
Use default extension S=1
Use default extension SJ=1
Use default extension M=1
Use default extension MJ=1
Variables S=$(OutputFileName);$(FileNumber)
Variables SJ=$(JobID);$(OutputFileName);$(FileNumber)
Variables M=$(OutputFileName);$(JobID)
Variables MJ=$(JobID);$(OutputFileName)
```

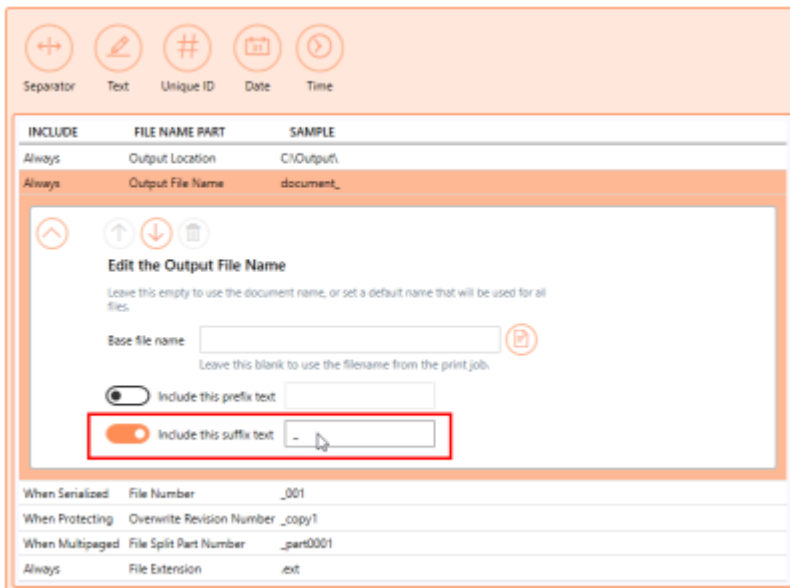
Using the new GUID as part of the filename through the [Filename Creator](#), the output filename would now be similar to *document_e6ce05fd71b24c29bd024188cfdc110d.pdf*.

Step by Step Instructions

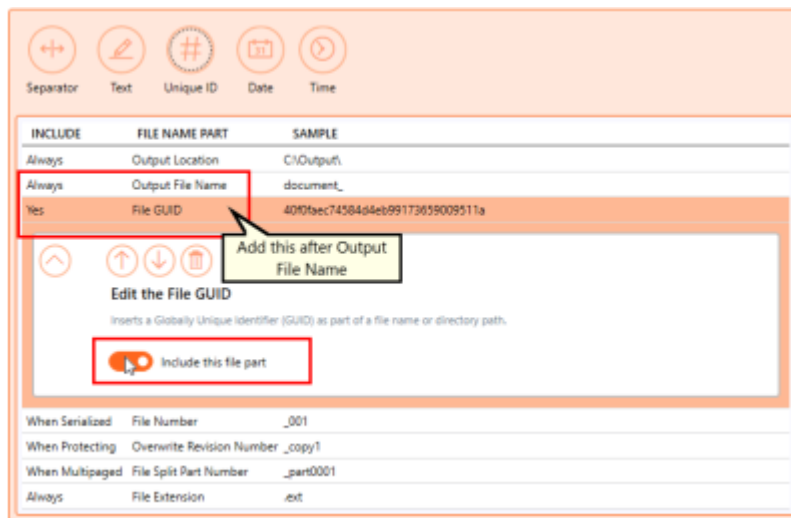
1. Launch the PDF Image Printer **Dashboard**.



2. Select "Edit & Create Profiles" to open **Profile Manager**.
3. Select "Add a profile" to create a new profile or open an existing profile.
4. On the **Filename Creator tab**, go to file name part for **Output File Name** and add the underscore (**_**) as a suffix to this file part. This will provide a separator between the Output File Name, and the unique ID.



5. Then, with the **Output File Name** section selected. add the file name part for **Unique ID (GUID)**. This file name part should be added after the Output File Name.



6. Click **Save**, then **Back**, and close **Profile Manager**.

Using this profile as the [default profile](#) will now give the desired output file name with a unique identifier for each filename. There are many other new options available to control the file naming. See the following sections for additional information:

- [Filename Creator](#)
- [Create a Custom Filename](#)

Built-In Script File Events

There are three built-in events in the script file that can be automatically signaled by the printer if they are set. These events are used to synchronize access to the script file.

To signal an event, set the name of the event in the script file. An event name is limited to MAX_PATH characters and comparison is case sensitive. The name can have a "Global\" or "Local\" prefix to explicitly create the object in the global or session namespace.

```
[EventNames]
CommandsProcessed=Global\PNPDFCommandsProcessed
DocumentSpooled=Global\PNPDFDocumentSpooled
DocumentCancelled=Global\PNPDFDocumentCanceled
```

CommandsProcessed

If you are changing printer settings between print jobs, you must set the **CommandsProcessed** to the name of an event you have created and are waiting on in order to know when the printer has finished reading the script file and it is now safe to move on and change the values in the script file for the next print job.

This is to ensure that each job is matched with the appropriate settings (thread-safe batch printing in a multi-thread multi-process environment). It is the responsibility of the printing application to create and block the event. The printer will automatically signal the event when it has finished reading the script file.

DocumentSpooled, DocumentCanceled

The DocumentSpooled and DocumentCanceled events are signaled by the printer when the print job has finished being spooled successfully or has failed to spool, respectively.

These events do not mean the conversion process has completed, only that the print job was spooled or cancelled. Once a print job has been spooled successfully then PDF Image Printer will start the conversion process.

Using a Separate Script File For Each Printer

The [Add New Printer](#) feature allows you to easily create named copies of the printer. Unless specified, the same script file, PNRAS12S.INI, applies to each printer.

To use a separate script file for each printer, you can add a registry key to the registry information for each printer. This registry key tells the printer where to look for its script file.

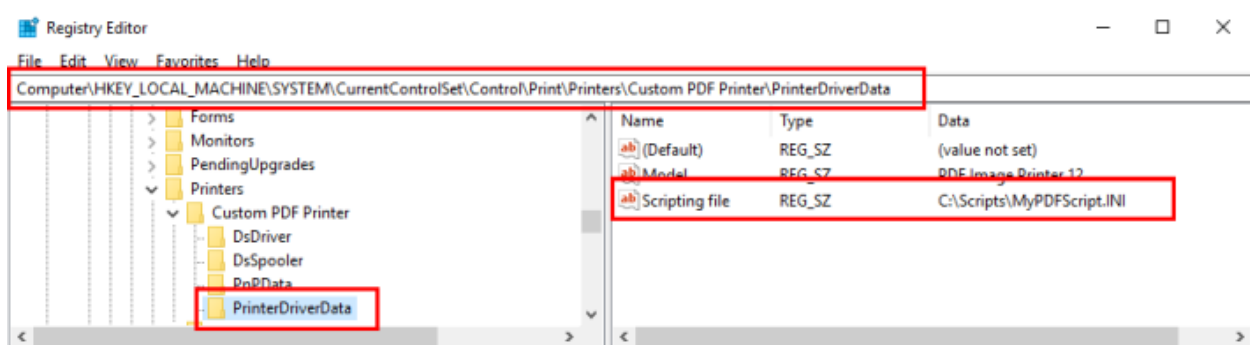
Creating multiple printers, each with its own script file, can be useful when you have more than one automation program running. Each program can have its own printer. Or, a single program can use this "pool" of printers to have multiple conversion threads running.

Open the registry key for the desired printer. Here we are opening the registry key for the printer named **Custom PDF Printer**.

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Print\Printers\Custom PDF Printer\PrinterDriverData
```

Create a new string value named **Scripting file** and set the data in the new string value to the complete path to the script file to use with this printer.

```
C:\Scripts\MyPDFScript.INI
```



Printer Script File Settings

The sample script file provided lists all of the printer settings that can be modified, separated into sections containing related settings.

Not all of the script file sections and settings from previous versions are available in 12. These have been removed or marked as deprecated in the sample script file. See the lists below for breaking changes and deprecated sections as well.

These script file sections are still in use.

- [Save](#)
- [Image Options](#)
- [PDF File Format](#)
- [PDF Security](#)
- [Processing](#)
- [Advanced Features](#)
- [DevMode](#)
- [EventNames](#)

The following script file sections from previous versions of PDF Image Printer have been replaced with new features in the printer profiles.

- Watermark, Endorsements - see [Stamping](#)
- Advanced File Naming - use the updated [Filename Creator](#) settings
- Run - use the simplified [Run Commands](#)
- Error Reporting - use [Support Options](#)

The following script file sections have been deprecated.

- User Exit 1, User Exit 1.x64
- User variables

Save

[Prompt](#), [When Saving](#), [Overwrite](#), [Use JobID](#), [Append](#), [Output directory](#), [Output filename](#), [Remove product name](#), [Remove filename extension](#), [Delete files](#), [Output File Format](#), [Color reduction](#), [Dithering method](#), [SplitFileEveryNPagesEnabled](#), [SplitFileEveryNPages](#), [SplitFileWhenFileSizeExceedsThresholdEnabled](#), [SplitFileSizeThresholdInBytes](#)

Prompt

Default: **1**

Set this to **0** to prompt only when the output path is invalid. When disabling prompting, also set the [When Saving](#) options to control what happens in overwrite situations.

```
[Save]
Prompt=1
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

When Saving

Default: **NoPromptOnOverwriteCopyProtectExistingFile**

Determines how to handle overwrite situations where a file of the same name already exists for the file you are creating.

- NoPromptOnOverwriteCopyProtectExistingFile - auto-name each file with a numbered copy
- NoPromptOnOverwriteReplaceExistingFile - overwrite, or replace, the existing file
- PromptOnOverwriteForCopyProtectOrReplaceOrCancel - show a prompt to choose what to do

```
[Save]
When Saving=NoPromptOnOverwriteCopyProtectExistingFile
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

Overwrite

Deprecated, replaced with [When Saving](#).

Use JobID

Deprecated. Replaced with the **Unique ID** element in the [File Name Creator](#) settings in a printer profile.

Append

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to append new files, of the same base file name and saved to the same output folder, to an existing file or existing sequence if files. The append feature does not apply when creating multipaged PDF files.

```
[Save]
Append=0
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

Output directory

Default: *empty string*

When set to *empty string*, the last used folder is used as the default directory. If there is no last used folder, the My Documents folder is used. Set this to the absolute path (for example, C:\My Files) of the directory to be used

```
[Save]
Output directory=
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

Output filename

Default: *empty string*

The desired base filename without directory path or file extension. When set to *empty string*, the filename from the print job is used.

```
[Save]
Output filename=
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

Remove product name

Default: **1**

Some applications precede the document name with the name of their product; this settings will remove it. Set this to **0** to keep the product name in the output filename.

```
[Save]
Remove product name=1
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

Remove filename extension

Default: **1**

Some applications include the file extension of the original document in the print job name, this settings will remove it. Set this to **0** to keep the original product file extension as part of the output filename.

```
[Save]
Remove filename extension=1
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

Delete files

Deprecated.

Output File Format

Default: **Adobe PDF Multipaged**

The type of file to create.

- Adobe PDF Multipaged
- Adobe PDF Serialized

```
[Save]
Output File Format= Adobe PDF Multipaged
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

Color reduction

Default: **Optimal**

Color reduction reduces the number of colors in the output and can help create smaller files. If the output file type chosen does not support that color mode, the closest match is found.

- none - No color reduction
- Optimal - Reduce to lowest color count needed per page
- BW - Reduce to black and white using selected dithering method
- grey - Reduce to greyscale
- 256Colors - Create all pages as 8-bit color (256 colors)
- 16Colors - Create all pages as 4-bit color (16 colors)
- optimalMax256Colors - Reduces to lowest color count needed for each page, any pages over 256 colors are reduced to 256 colors.
- optimalMax16Colors - Reduces to lowest color count needed for each page, any pages over 16 colors are reduced to 16 colors.

```
[Save]
Color reduction=Optimal
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

Dithering method

Default: **Burkes**

The dithering method affects the appearance of color images that have been reduced to black and white.

- none - No dithering
- Floyd - Floyd-Steinberg dithering
- Burkes - Burkes dithering
- Bayer - Bayer dithering
- Halftone - halftone dithering

```
[Save]
Dithering method=Burkes
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

SplitFileEveryNPagesEnabled

Default: **0**

File splitting is only available for multipaged file formats. Set this to **1** to split the file to a new file after the page count set in [SplitFileEveryNPages](#).

```
[Save]
SplitFileEveryNPagesEnabled=0
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

SplitFileEveryNPages

Default: **10000**

The number of pages to store in one file before splitting. Range: 0-4294967295.

```
[Save]
SplitFileEveryNPages=10000
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

SplitFileWhenFileSizeExceedsThresholdEnabled

Default: **0**

File splitting is only available for multipaged file formats. Set this to **1** to splits the file to a new file after the file size set in [SplitFileSizeThresholdInBytes](#) is exceeded.

```
[Save]
SplitFileWhenFileSizeExceedsThresholdEnabled=0
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

SplitFileSizeThresholdInBytes

Default: **1073741824**

The number of pages to store in one file before splitting. The default of 1073741824 bytes is 1GB. Range: 0-2147483648.

```
[Save]
SplitFileSizeThresholdInBytes=1073741824
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

Image Options

[Fax](#), [Fax Profile](#), [Fax Resolution](#), [Fax Use Printer Resolution](#), [Fax Paper Width](#), [Fax Paper Height](#), [Fax Page Scaling](#), [Fax Page Scaling Auto Rotate](#), [Fax Page Scaling Lock Aspect Ratio](#), [Fax Page Scaling Shrink Larger](#), [Fax Page Scaling H Align](#), [Fax Page Scaling V Align](#), [Fax Page Use 256 Greyscale Palette](#), [Rotate portrait](#), [Rotate landscape](#)

Fax

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to toggle the creation of fax resolution images as determined by Fax Profile and Fax Resolution settings.

```
[Image Options]  
Fax=0
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Fax Profile

Default: **0**

Set the fax profile to use when creating fax resolution images.

- 0 - Profile F
- 1 - Profile S
- 2 - Profile C

```
[Image Options]  
Fax Profile=0
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Fax Resolution

Default: **3**

Set the fax resolution for the image. The chosen fax profile can override the resolution.

- 0 - 200 x 100 resolution (Profile S, F)
- 1 - 200 x 200 resolution (Profile S, F, C)

- 2 - 204 x 98 resolution (Profile S, F)
- 3 - 204 x 196 resolution (Profile S, F)
- 4 - 300 x 300 resolution (Profile F, C)
- 5 - 400 x 400 resolution (Profile F, C)
- 6 - 408 x 391 resolution (Profile F)
- 7 - 204 x 391 resolution (Profile F)
- 8 - 300 x 600 resolution (Profile F)
- 9 - 400 x 800 resolution (Profile F)
- 10 - 600 x 600 resolution (Profile F, C)
- 11 - 600 x 1200 resolution (Profile F)
- 12 - 1200 x 1200 resolution (Profile F, C)
- 13 - 100 x 100 resolution (Profile F, C)

```
[Image Options]  
Fax Resolution=3
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Fax Use Printer Resolution

Deprecated.

Fax Paper Width

Default: **0**

Sets the width of the paper to be used when creating the fax image.

- 0 - Letter
- 1 - Legal
- 2 - A4 (ISO)
- 3 - B4 (ISO)
- 4 - A3 (ISO)
- 5 - Auto

```
[Image Options]
Fax Paper Width=0
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Fax Paper Height

Default: **1**

Sets the height of the fax image.

- 0 - Variable height
- 1 - Fixed height

```
[Image Options]
Fax Paper Height=1
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Fax Page Scaling

Default: **1**

Determines how the original information is placed on the fax sized image.

- 0 - Fit to Page
- 1 - Actual Size

```
[Image Options]
Fax Page Scaling=1
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Fax Page Scaling Auto Rotate

Default: **1**

The image is rotated to fit on the fax-sized paper if it will fit without having to scale the image. Set this to **0** to turn off this behavior.

```
[Image Options]
Fax Page Scaling Auto Rotate=1
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Fax Page Scaling Lock Aspect Ratio

Default: **1**

Prevents distortion when scaling larger or smaller pages by keeping the change in height and width of the page in relation to one another. Set to **0** to disable this behavior.

```
[Image Options]
Fax Page Scaling Lock Aspect Ratio=1
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Fax Page Scaling Shrink Larger

Default: **1**

Scales the image down to fit the fax paper if the original image is larger. Set to **0** to keep the original image size.

```
[Image Options]
Fax Page Scaling Shrink Larger=1
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Fax Page Scaling H Align

Default: **Middle**

Set the horizontal alignment of the image on the fax sized paged.

- Left
- Middle
- Right

```
[Image Options]
Fax Page Scaling H Align=Middle
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Fax Page Scaling V Align

Default: **Middle**

Set the vertical alignment of the image on the fax sized paged.

- Top
- Middle
- Bottom

```
[Image Options]
Fax Page Scaling V Align=Middle
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Fax Page Use 256 Greyscale Palette

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to use a full 256 grayscale palette when dithering to black and white. The default uses a 64 grayscale palette to reduce the size of the fax and eliminate low intensity colors used normally to shape areas.

```
[Image Options]
Fax Page Use 256 Greyscale Palette=0
```

See also: [Fax Mode](#)

Rotate portrait

Default: **0**

Set the degrees of counter-clockwise rotation of the page. Choices are **0**, **90**, **180** and **270**.

```
[Image Options]
Rotate portrait=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Rotate landscape

Default: **0**

Set the degrees of counter-clockwise rotation of the page. Choices are **0**, **90**, **180** and **270**.

```
[Image Options]
Rotate landscape=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

PDF File Format

[PDF Standard](#), [Use compression](#), [Content encoding](#), [Color compression](#),
[Indexed compression](#), [Greyscale compression](#), [BW compression](#), [Use ASCII](#)

PDF Standard

Default: **None**

This setting is only available when creating image-based (or raster) PDF files. The PDF/A-1b standard is often used for long-term archiving of electronic documents.

- None - Create PDF files that are not PDF/A-1b compliant
- PDF/A-1b - Create PDF/A-1b compliant PDF files

```
[PDF File Format]
PDF Standard=None
```

See also: [Compression](#)

Use compression

Default: **1**

Applies compression to the images in your PDF document. Set this to **0** to turn off compression.

```
[PDF File Format]
Use compression=1
```

See also: [Compression](#)

Content encoding

Default: **LZW**

Sets how to store the text and line art in the PDF file.

- None - No compression
- ZIP - ZIP compression
- RLE - Packbits (run length) compression
- LZW - LZW compression

```
[PDF File Format]
Content encoding=LZW
```

See also: [Compression](#)

Color compression

Default: **LZW**

Set the compression to use on color output images with 256 or more colors.

- None - No color compression
- ZIP - ZIP compression
- RLE - Packbits (run length) compression
- JPEG High - High quality JPEG compression
- JPEG Medium High - Medium high quality JPEG compression
- JPEG Medium - Medium quality JPEG compression
- JPEG Medium Low- Medium low quality JPEG compression
- JPEG Low - Low quality JPEG compression
- LZW - LZW compression

```
[PDF File Format]
Color compression=LZW
```

See also: [Compression](#)

Indexed compression

Default: **LZW**

Set the compression to use on color output images where there is less than 256 colors.

- None - No color compression
- ZIP - ZIP compression
- RLE - Packbits (run length) compression
- JPEG High - High quality JPEG compression
- JPEG Medium High - Medium high quality JPEG compression
- JPEG Medium - Medium quality JPEG compression

- JPEG Medium Low- Medium low quality JPEG compression
- JPEG Low - Low quality JPEG compression
- LZW - LZW compression

```
[PDF File Format]  
Indexed compression=LZW
```

See also: [Compression](#)

Greyscale compression

Default: **LZW**

Set the compression to use when the colors in the image are all shades of gray, or grayscale.

- None - No color compression
- ZIP - ZIP compression
- RLE - Packbits (run length) compression
- JPEG High - High quality JPEG compression
- JPEG Medium High - Medium high quality JPEG compression
- JPEG Medium - Medium quality JPEG compression
- JPEG Medium Low- Medium low quality JPEG compression
- JPEG Low - Low quality JPEG compression
- LZW - LZW compression

```
[PDF File Format]  
Greyscale compression=LZW
```

See also: [Compression](#)

BW compression

Default: Group4

Set the compression to use on output images with only two colors, black and white.

- None - No black and white compression
- Group4 - CCITT Group4 Fax compression

- Group3-2D - CCITT Group3 2D Fax compression
- Group3-1D - CCITT Group3 1D Fax compression
- MH - CCITT Modified Huffman compression

```
[PDF File Format]
BW compression=Group4
```

See also: [Compression](#)

Use ASCII

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to create an older style, 7-bit compressed PDF file.

```
[PDF File Format]
Use ASCII=0
```

See also: [Compression](#)

PDF Security

[Use Security](#), [Encrypt Level](#), [Can Copy](#), [Can Print](#), [Can Change Doc](#), [Can ChangeOther](#), [User Pswd On](#), [User Pswd](#), [Owner Pswd On](#), [Owner Pswd](#)

Use Security

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to toggle the creation of secure PDF files.

```
[PDF Security]
Use Security=0
```

See also: [PDF Security](#)

Encrypt Level

Default: **2**

Set the encryption level in the PDF file.

- 0 - 40-bit RC4, for Adobe Reader 3.0 and later
- 1 - 128-bit RC4, for Adobe Reader 5.0 and later
- 2 - 128-bit AES, for Adobe Reader 7.0 and later
- 3 - 256-bit AES, for Adobe Reader 9.0 and later

```
[PDF Security]
Encrypt Level=2
```

See also: [PDF Security](#)

Can Copy

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to allow text and graphics in the PDF to be copied.

```
[PDF Security]
Can Copy=0
```

See also: [PDF Security](#)

Can Print

Default: **1**

Set this to **0** block the document from being printed.

```
[PDF Security]
Can Print=1
```

See also: [PDF Security](#)

Can Change Doc

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to allow users to change the document.

```
[PDF Security]
Can Change Doc=0
```

See also: [PDF Security](#)

Can ChangeOther

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to allow users to add or change comments and form fields.

```
[PDF Security]
Can ChangeOther=0
```

See also: [PDF Security](#)

User Pswd On

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to require a user password to open the document. A password needs to be supplied in the **User Pswd** settings.

```
[PDF Security]
User Pswd On=0
```

See also: [PDF Security](#)

User Pswd

Default: *empty string*

Set the desired password.

```
[PDF Security]
User Pswd=SamplePswd
```

See also: [PDF Security](#)

Owner Pswd On

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to require a password to make changes to the document. A password needs to be supplied in the **Owner Pswd** settings.

```
[PDF Security]
Owner Pswd On=0
```

See also: [PDF Security](#)

Owner Pswd

Default: *empty string*

Set the desired password.

```
[PDF Security]
Owner Pswd=PswdToEdit
```

See also: [PDF Security](#)

Processing

[Units](#), [Trim left](#), [Trim top](#), [Trim right](#), [Trim bottom](#), [Trim Threshold](#), [Crop](#), [Crop Option](#), [Crop left](#), [Crop top](#), [Crop width](#), [Crop height](#), [Crop margin left](#), [Crop margin top](#), [Crop margin right](#), [Crop margin bottom](#), [Copy](#), [Copy to width](#), [Copy to height](#), [Copy to IAM Left](#), [Copy to IAM Top](#), [Copy to IAM Right](#), [Copy to IAM Bottom](#), [Copy H align](#), [Copy V align](#), [Copy Page Scaling](#), [Copy Page Scaling Shrink Larger](#), [Copy Page Lock Aspect Ratio](#), [Resample](#), [Resample Units](#), [Resample Lock Aspect Ratio](#), [Resample Pixels Width](#), [Resample Pixels Height](#), [Resample X DPI](#), [Resample Y DPI](#), [Brightness Adjust](#), [Rotate portrait](#), [Rotate landscape](#)

Units

Default: **.01 Inches**

The unit of measurement used in this section

- .01 Inches - Units are in hundredths of an inch
- .1 Millimeters - Units are in tenths of a millimeter

```
[Processing]
Units=.01 Inches
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Trim left

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to trim any border (pixels) on the left side of the page that fall at or below the chosen [threshold level](#).

```
[Processing]
Trim left=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Trim top

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to trim any border (pixels) on the top of the page that fall at or below the chosen [threshold level](#).


```
[Processing]
Trim top=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Trim right

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to trim any border (pixels) on the right side of the page that fall at or below the chosen [threshold level](#).

```
[Processing]
Trim right=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Trim bottom

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to trim any border (pixels) from the bottom of the page that fall at or below the chosen [threshold level](#).

```
[Processing]
Trim bottom=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Trim Threshold

Default: **0**

Set this from **0 (white) to 100 (black)** to set the color intensity to limit the page trimming.

```
[Processing]
Trim Threshold=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Crop

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to turn on page cropping.

```
[Processing]
Crop=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Crop Option

Default: **1**

Crop each page by trimming page margins or by cutting out a region on the page.

- 0 - crop a region out of the page
- 1 - crop margins from the top, left, bottom and right sides of the page

```
[Processing]
Crop Option=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Crop left

Default: **0**

Desired measurement for the left side of the region to crop out of the page when [Crop Option](#) is **0**.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]
Crop left=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Crop top

Default: **0**

Desired measurement for the top side of the region to crop out of the page when [Crop Option](#) is **0**.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.

- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]
Crop top=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Crop width

Default: **0**

Desired measurement for the width of the region to crop out of the page when [Crop Option](#). is **0**.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]
Crop width=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Crop height

Default: **0**

Desired measurement for the height of the region to crop out of the page when [Crop Option](#). is **0**.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]
Crop height=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Crop margin left

Default: **0**

Desired measurement for the left margin to crop off the page when [Crop Option](#). is **1**.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]
Crop margin left=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Crop margin top

Default: **0**

Desired measurement for the top margin to crop off the page when [Crop Option](#). is **1**.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]
Crop margin top=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Crop margin right

Default: **0**

Desired measurement for the right margin to crop off the page when [Crop Option](#). is **1**.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]
Crop margin right=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Crop margin bottom

Default: **0**

Desired measurement for the bottom margin to crop off the page when [Crop Option](#). is **1**.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]
Crop margin bottom=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Copy

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to copy and scale the page onto a new page size.

```
[Processing]
Copy=0
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Copy to width

Default: **0**

The width of new paper size.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]  
Copy to width=0
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Copy to height

Default: **0**

The height of new paper size.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]  
Copy to height=0
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Copy to IAM Left

Default: **0**

The left image area margin for the new paper size. The original page will be copied inside this area using the scaling options as selected.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]  
Copy to IAM Left=0
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Copy to IAM Top

Default: **0**

The top image area margin for the new paper size. The original page will be copied inside this area using the scaling options as selected.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]
Copy to IAM Top=0
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Copy to IAM Right

Default: **0**

The right image area margin for the new paper size. The original page will be copied inside this area using the scaling options as selected.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]
Copy to IAM Right=0
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Copy to IAM Bottom

Default: **0**

The bottom image area margin for the new paper size. The original page will be copied inside this area using the scaling options as selected.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Processing]
Copy to IAM Bottom=0
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Copy H align

Default: **Middle**

Set the horizontal alignment of the original page contents on the new page.

- Left
- Middle
- Right

```
[Processing]
Copy H align=Middle
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Copy V align

Default: **Middle**

Set the vertical alignment of the original page contents on the new page.

- Top
- Middle
- Bottom

```
[Processing]
Copy V align=Middle
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Copy Page Scaling

Default: **0**

Sets how the original page is scaled onto the new image area.

- 0 - Fit to Page
- 1 - Actual Size

```
[Processing]
Copy Page Scaling=0
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Copy Page Scaling Shrink Larger

Default: **1**

Shrinks the image down to fit the new page size if the original image is larger than the new page. Set this to **0** to maintain the original size. Only applies if [Copy Page Scaling](#) is set to **Actual Size**.

```
[Processing]
Copy Page Scaling Shrink Larger=1
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Copy Page Lock Aspect Ratio

Default: **1**

Locking the aspect ratio prevents distortion when scaling larger or smaller pages to different page sizes. Set this to **0** to allow the height and width of the page change independent of each another.

```
[Processing]
Copy Page Lock Aspect Ratio=1
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Resample

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to enable any resampling options that are set.

```
[Processing]
Resample=0
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Resample Units

Default: **0**

Sets how to resample the output file to a new page size.

- 0 - set the new size in pixels
- 1 - set the new size as a percentage of the original size
- 2. - scale the output to a new image resolution

```
[Processing]
Resample Units=0
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Resample Lock Aspect Ratio

Default: **1**

Locking the aspect ratio prevents distortion when scaling larger or smaller pages to different page sizes. Set this to **0** to change height and width of the page independent of each another.

```
[Processing]
Resample Lock Aspect Ratio=0
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Resample Pixels Width

Default: **200**

The new file width in pixels, range is 1-4294967295.

```
[Processing]
Resample Pixels Width=200
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Resample Pixels Height

Default: **200**

The new file height in pixels, range is 1-4294967295. This setting is not used when [Resample Lock Aspect Ratio](#) is set to 1.

```
[Processing]
Resample Pixels Height=200
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Resample X DPI

Default: **200**

The new resolution for the width of your file, range is 50-3600.

```
[Processing]
Resample X DPI=200
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Resample Y DPI

Default: **200**

The new resolution for the width of your file, range is 50-3600. This setting is not used when [Resample Lock Aspect Ratio](#) is set to 1.

```
[Processing]
Resample Y DPI=200
```

See also: [Page Resizing](#)

Brightness Adjust

Default: **0**

Set this from **-100 to -1** to darken the image, and **1- 100** to lighten the image. The default of **0** means no change.

```
[Processing]
Brightness Adjust=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Rotate portrait

Default: **0**

Set the degrees of counter-clockwise rotation of the page. Choices are **0, 90, 180** and **270**.

```
[Processing]
Rotate portrait=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Rotate landscape

Default: **0**

Set the degrees of counter-clockwise rotation of the page. Choices are **0, 90, 180** and **270**.

```
[Processing]
Rotate landscape=0
```

See also: [Page Editing](#)

Advanced Features

[Units](#), [Hardware Margin Left](#), [Hardware Margin Top](#), [Custom Paper Enable](#), [Custom Paper Width](#), [Custom Paper Height](#), [Printer Area Margin Left](#), [Printer Area Margin Top](#), [Printer Area Margin Right](#), [Printer Area Margin Bottom](#), [Extract Text](#), [Extract Text Filepath](#), [Extract Text Layout](#), [Extract Text Encoding](#), [Extract Text EOL](#), [Extract Text Emit Page Breaks](#), [Control Strings Enabled](#), [Control String Prefix](#), [Control String Suffix](#)

[Units](#), [Hardware Margin Left](#), [Hardware Margin Top](#), [Custom Paper Enable](#), [Custom Paper Width](#), [Custom Paper Height](#), [Printer Area Margin Left](#), [Printer Area Margin Top](#), [Printer Area Margin Right](#), [Printer Area Margin Bottom](#), [Extract Text](#), [Extract Text Filepath](#), [Extract Text Layout](#), [Extract Text Encoding](#), [Extract Text EOL](#), [Extract Text Emit Page Breaks](#), [Control Strings Enabled](#), [Control String Prefix](#), [Control String Suffix](#)

Units

Default: **.01 Inches**

The unit of measurement used in this section

- .01 Inches - Units are in hundredths of an inch
- .1 Millimeters - Units are in tenths of a millimeter

```
[Advanced Features]  
Units=.01 Inches
```

See also: [Printer Overrides](#)

Hardware Margin Left

Default: 0

Customize the desired measurement for the size of the printer-supplied left and right edge on your output.

- 0 - 100 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 254 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 1.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 2.540cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Advanced Features]
Hardware Margin Left=1100
```

See also: [Printer Overrides](#)

Hardware Margin Top

Default: 0

Customize the desired measurement for the size of the printer-supplied top and bottom edge on your output.

- 0 - 100 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 254 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 1.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 2.540cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Advanced Features]
Hardware Margin Top=0
```

See also: [Printer Overrides](#)

Custom Paper Enable

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to have PDF Image Printer use the custom paper size defined for the output file. This setting overrides any other paper size selection that you have set on the application.

```
[Advanced Features]
Custom Paper Enable=0
```

See also: [Printer Overrides](#)

Custom Paper Width

Default: 850

Desired measurement for the width of the new paper size.

- 0.25 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 64 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.250in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.640cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Advanced Features]
Custom Paper Width=850
```

See also: [Printer Overrides](#)

Custom Paper Height

Default: 1100

Desired measurement for the height of the new paper size.

- 0.25 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 64 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.250in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.640cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Advanced Features]
Custom Paper Height=1100
```

See also: [Printer Overrides](#)

Printer Area Margin Left

Default: 0

The desired left margin setting for the custom paper size. The combined Left and Right printer area margins must be less than the Width of the custom paper. Dimensions for printer area margins are entered based on a portrait oriented page.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Advanced Features]
Printer Area Margin Left=0
```

See also: [Printer Overrides](#)

Printer Area Margin Top

Default: 0

The desired top margin setting for the custom paper size. The combined Top

and Bottom printer area margins must be less than the Height of the custom paper. Dimensions for printer area margins are entered based on a portrait oriented page.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Advanced Features]
Printer Area Margin Top=0
```

See also: [Printer Overrides](#)

Printer Area Margin Right

Default: 0

The desired right margin setting for the custom paper size. The combined Left and Right printer area margins must be less than the Width of the custom paper. Dimensions for printer area margins are entered based on a portrait oriented page.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*
- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Advanced Features]
Printer Area Margin Right=0
```

See also: [Printer Overrides](#)

Printer Area Margin Bottom

Default: 0

The desired bottom margin setting for the custom paper size. The combined Top and Bottom printer area margins must be less than the Height of the custom paper. Dimensions for printer area margins are entered based on a portrait oriented page.

- 0 - 8000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.01 Inches*

- 0 - 20000000 - range when [units](#) is set to *.1 Millimeters*
- 0.000in - 80000.000in - range in inches.
- 0.000cm - 200000.000cm - Range in centimeters

```
[Advanced Features]
Printer Area Margin Bottom=0
```

See also: [Printer Overrides](#)

Extract Text

Default: **0**

Set this to **1** to extract any text in the file and save the created text file in the same directory and with the same name as the output file.

```
[Advanced Features]
Extract Text=0
```

See also: [Text Extraction](#)

Extract Text Filepath

Deprecated; all text extraction files are stored in the same location as the output file.

Extract Text Layout

Default: **Physical**

Sets the layout for the text in outputted text.

- Physical - Match the format of the text in the original file
- Raw - Saves the text in the order in which it was sent to the driver. This may not be the same order in the original file
- None - No formatting is attempted. All text is written to the file as it is received

```
[Advanced Features]
Extract Text Layout=Physical
```

See also: [Text Extraction](#)

Extract Text Encoding

Default: **UTF-16**

Sets the encoding format for your text file.

- ANSI
- UTF-8
- UTF-16

```
[Advanced Features]
Extract Text Encoding=UTF-16
```

See also: [Text Extraction](#)

Extract Text EOL

Default: **Windows**

Sets the end-of-line encoding for your text file.

- Windows - Lines end with the CRLF (\r\n) line feed
- Mac - Lines end with the LF (\n) line feed
- Unix - Lines end with the CR (\r) line feed

```
[Advanced Features]
Extract Text EOL=Windows
```

See also: [Text Extraction](#)

Extract Text Emit Page Breaks

Default: **1**

Emits a page break, or form feed (\f) in your text file for every page in your original document. Set this to **0** to disable page breaks.

```
[Advanced Features]
Extract Text Emit Page Breaks=1
```

See also: [Text Extraction](#)

Control Strings Enabled

Deprecated; control strings are no longer supported.

Control String Prefix

Deprecated; control strings are no longer supported.

Control String Suffix

Deprecated; control strings are no longer supported.

DevMode

[Resolution](#), [Printer Profile](#) [Orientation](#) [Color](#), [Paper Size](#)

Resolution

Default: **300**

Set the target rendering DPI (dots per inch) to use. One of 50, 60, 72, 75, 96, 100, 120, 150, 200, 240, 254, 300, 360, 400, 480, 600, 720, 800, 900, 1200.

```
[Devmode settings]
Resolution=300
```

See also: [Save Options](#)

Printer Profile

Full path to an exported printer conversion profile. Overrides the profile selected on the printer.

Orientation

Deprecated.

Color

Deprecated.

Paper Size

Deprecated.

EventNames

[CommandsProcessed](#), [DocumentSpooled](#), [DocumentCancelled](#)

CommandsProcessed

Default: *empty string*

When not an empty string, an event of this name is signaled on each print job when the printer has finished reading the current script file settings. This event is scan be used to synchronize printing when you are changing printer settings between print jobs.

```
[EventNames]  
CommandsProcessed=Global\ScriptFileProcessed
```

See also: [Built-In Script File Events](#)

DocumentSpooled

Default: *empty string*

When not an empty string, an event of this name is signaled on each print job when the print job has been spooled successfully. This **does not** mean that the output file creation is complete.

```
[EventNames]  
DocumentSpooled=Global\PrintJobSpooled
```

See also: [Built-In Script File Events](#)

DocumentCancelled

Default: *empty string*

When not an empty string, an event of this name is signaled on each print job if the user cancels the print job, or if the print job does not spool successfully.

```
[EventNames]  
DocumentCancelled=Global\PrintJobCancelled
```

See also: [Built-In Script File Events](#)